Asecuri Workflow Software

Reference Guide

For more information about ECO3 products, visit *www.ECO3.com* or contact us at the following address:

ECO3 BV
Septestraat 27
B-2640 Mortsel, Belgium
Tel: (+)32 3 444 2111

Date of Issue: July 2024

End User License Agreement

1. IMPORTANT NOTICE

This package includes one or more diskette(s), CD-ROM(s), and/or DVD(s) containing copies of APOGEE™ software programs and documentation relating thereto, and an associated dongle.

You should carefully read the following terms and conditions before accepting this License Agreement, and installing and using this Software (as defined below). This License Agreement ("Agreement") is a legal agreement between You and ECO3 BV, Septestraat 27, B-2640 Mortsel, Belgium ("ECO3"), and describes the terms and conditions pursuant to which ECO3 shall license to You this Software, provided however that in the event a hardcopy license agreement with respect to the Software is signed by or on behalf of both You and ECO3 whose terms vary from this Agreement, then such signed hardcopy license agreement shall govern Your Use of the Software. In this License Agreement "You" means, and "Your" refers to, the corporation or other entity that obtains the Software and enters into this Agreement, including both the reader and any corporate licensee.

BY INSTALLING, COPYING OR OTHERWISE USING THE SOFTWARE, YOU ACCEPT, AND AGREE TO BE BOUND BY, THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS LICENSE AGREEMENT. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE WITH THESE TERMS, DO NOT INSTALL, COPY OR OTHERWISE USE THE SOFTWARE, AND YOU MAY RETURN THE SOFTWARE, WITH PROOF OF PAYMENT, FOR A FULL REFUND TO THE PLACE OF PURCHASE WITHIN THIRTY (30) DAYS OF THE PURCHASE DATE.

You are licensed to use the Software on the following terms and conditions:

2. DEFINITIONS

2.1 "ECO3 order form" means the electronic or hard copy order form by which You have ordered the Software.

2.2 "Authorised Users" means the number of users who concurrently may have access to the Software at any one time, as specified in the ECO3 order form that is incorporated and made part of this Agreement by reference.

2.3 "Confidential Information" means this Agreement, including all of its terms, and all its amendments and addenda, all Software listings, Documentation, information, data, tests, specifications, trade secrets, object code and machine-readable copies of the Software, and any other proprietary information supplied to You by ECO3, or by You to ECO3 and clearly marked as "confidential information", including all items defined as "confidential information" in any other agreement between You and ECO3 executed prior to the date of this Agreement.

2.4 "Designated Output Device" means an Output Device that has been designated by You to be managed by the Software.

2.5 "Documentation" means any instruction manuals, operating instructions, user manuals, online help, tutorials and specifications provided by ECO3 which describe the use of the Software and which either accompany the Software or are provided to You at any time.

2.6 "Dongle" means a small hardware device that connects to a computer and acts as an authentication key for the licensed Software.

2.7 "Effective Date" means the date on which You have accepted to be bound by the terms of this Agreement by installing, copying or otherwise using the Software.

2.8 "Font Programs" means the digitally encoded, machine readable outline programs for certain typefaces.

2.9 "Modules" means the modules elected by You as being part of the Software, as listed in the ECO3 order form that is incorporated and made part of this Agreement by reference.

2.10 "Output Device" means a device that is capable of outputting logical pages, such as, without limitation, a platesetter or imagesetter.

2.11 "Processor" means one (1) single processor core that forms part of a desktop computer or server, as the case may be, on which the Software is installed or executed. For those processors that have multiple execution cores, each such core shall be considered a distinct Processor.

2.12 "Software" means APOGEE™ computer software program, all or part of which are owned by ECO3 or other parties whereby the license is owned by ECO3 ("Other Owners"), consisting of any of the Modules elected by You, provided and licensed to You pursuant to this Agreement.

2.13 "Storage Device" means the diskette(s), CD-ROM(s), DVD(s) and/ or other device on which ECO3 distributes copies of the Software.

2.14 "System" means one or more Processors on which the Software is installed or run, and located at the System Location. The number of Processors on which You are authorised to install or run the Software is set forth in the ECO3 order form that is incorporated and made part of this Agreement by reference.

2.15 "System Location" means, with respect to the System and any part thereof, the address at which the System, and any part thereof, is physically located, as identified in the ECO3 order form that is incorporated and made part of this Agreement by reference.

2.16 "Updates" shall mean updates, if any, to the Software as commercially released by ECO3 at any given time, including, but not limited to, updates, small enhancements, additions, modifications, deletions, incorporation of patches, and/ or error corrections to any previously delivered version of the Software, as designated in ECO3's sole determination.

2.17 "Upgrades" shall mean a new and enhanced release of the Software as commercially released by ECO3 at any given time and that, when made or added, materially changes its utility, efficiency, functional capability or application, as designated in ECO3's sole determination.

2.18 "Use" means loading, utilisation, running, storage or display of the Software by Authorised Users on Your System in connection with a Designated Output Device only, and solely for Your own internal business operations.

2.19 "Warranty Period" means the period ending ninety (90) days after the Effective Date during which the Software is covered by ECO3's warranty as set forth in this Agreement, provided however that in no event the Warranty Period shall exceed a period of one hundred and twenty (120) days after the date You have purchased the Software.

3. LICENSE AND COPIES

3.1 GRANT OF LICENSE. Subject to the terms and conditions of this Agreement, ECO3 hereby grants to You a perpetual, non-exclusive, non-sublicensable and non-transferable limited right and license to (a) Use the Software on the System, and (b) use the Documentation in connection with the Use of the Software. You acknowledge that the License Fee paid by You for the Use of Software is determined by the Designated Output Device. For each Output Device with which You Use the Software different from the Designated Output Device You will have to purchase a license upgrade for the Software or, with respect to additional Output Devices in connection with which You Use the Software, one or more additional licensed copies of the Software. In addition, specific terms and conditions shall apply to the use of Font Programs, as further set out in the about-box of the Software.

3.2 This license transfers to You neither title nor any proprietary or intellectual property rights to the Software, Documentation, or any copyrights, patents, or trademarks, embodied or used in connection therewith, except for the limited rights expressly granted herein. You acknowledge that the Software and any copies thereof are licensed and not sold, and all right, title and interest in and to the Software are and shall remain with ECO3 and/ or the Other Owners.

3.3 COPIES. During the term of this Agreement, You will be entitled to make a reasonable number of machine-readable copies of the Software for backup or archival purposes only. You may not copy the Software, except as permitted by this Agreement. You shall maintain accurate and up-to-date records of the location of all copies of the Software and inform ECO3 in writing of such location(s) upon ECO3's request. All copies of the Software will be subject to all terms and conditions of this Agreement. Whenever You are permitted to copy or reproduce all or any part of the Software, all titles, trademark symbols, copyright symbols and legends, and other proprietary markings must be reproduced.

4. LICENSE RESTRICTIONS

You agree that You are granted a limited right to Use only, and that You will not Yourself, or through any parent, subsidiary, affiliate, agent or other third party:

(a) lease, license or sub-license the Software or the Documentation;

(b) sell or otherwise transfer the Software or Documentation, unless, subject to Article 9.4, You transfer your rights under this Agreement to a corporation or other entity and that at the time of transfer You pass the Software (and any and all copies in Your control) to such corporation or other entity and such corporation or other entity agrees to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement;

(c) decompile, disassemble, or reverse engineer the Software, in whole or in part;

(d) modify the Software or any part thereof, except to the extent that the Software provides for user-modifiable components and such modification is necessary to Use the Software;

(e) write or develop any derivative software or any other software program based upon the Software or any part thereof, or any Confidential Information;

(f) use the Software to provide software related services; or

(g) provide, disclose, divulge or make available to, or permit use of the Software by any unauthorized third party without ECO3's prior written consent.

(h) If the Software is used within a country of the European Community, nothing in this Agreement shall be construed as restricting or prejudicing any imperative rights available under the European Community Software Directive, O.J.Eur.Comm. (No.L.122/42, 1991).

5. LICENSE FEE

5.1 LICENSE FEE. You shall pay the license fees for the Software applicable at the time of purchase (the "License Fee"). All fees hereunder exclude all applicable sales, use, value-added, property and other taxes, including duties and similar mandatory payments, and You will be responsible for payment of all such.

5.2 NO OFFSET. License Fees due from You under this Agreement may not be withheld or offset by You against other amounts due to You for any reason.

6. INSTALLATION - UPDATES - UPGRADES - MAINTENANCE AND SUPPORT

6.1 You shall be responsible for the installation of the Software on the System, in accordance with the Documentation.

6.2 As from the Effective Date, You may elect to purchase support and maintenance services in connection with the Software. In the event such maintenance and support agreement entitles You to Updates and Upgrades of the Software, if, and as from the date that, any such Update or Upgrade is installed on the System, it shall be an integral part of the Software. An Upgrade is covered by the warranty pursuant to paragraph 6.1 during a period of ninety (90) days as from the date of installation of the Upgrade, which in no event shall exceed a period of 120 days after the Upgrade has been shipped by ECO3.

6.3 Notwithstanding the foregoing, ECO3 shall have no obligation to offer, or continue to offer, to You the opportunity to purchase such support and maintenance services with respect to a given release (Updates or Upgrades) of the Software for a period exceeding two (2) years from the date of such release.

7. LIMITED WARRANTY AND LIMITATION OF LIABILITY

7.1 **LIMITED WARRANTY.** ECO3 warrants that during the Warranty Period (a) the Software will perform in substantial accordance with the Documentation and (b) the Storage Device on which the Software is distributed will be free from defects in materials and workmanship under normal use. If during the Warranty Period the Software or the Storage Device on which it is distributed do not perform as warranted, ECO3 at its sole and exclusive option shall use commercially reasonable efforts to correct such non-conformance of the Software or to provide a reasonable workaround, or replace the Storage Device free of charge, or, if neither of those remedies are commercially practicable, terminate this Agreement and repay to You the License Fee. The warranty set forth above is made to and for the benefit of You only. The warranty will apply only if: (a) the Software has been properly installed and used at all times and in accordance with the Documentation or other instructions for Use, and (b) no modification, alteration or addition has been made to the Software by persons other than ECO3 or ECO3's authorised representative, except as authorised in writing by ECO3, and (c) the defect, error or problem does not result from any cause within the control of You. Any supplements or Updates to the Software, including without limitation, any service packs or hot fixes provided to you after the expiration of the Warranty Period are not covered by any warranty or condition, express, implied or statutory. ECO3 warrants that it possesses all of the right, title, interest and authority to enter into this Agreement with You. ECO3 also warrants that no lawsuit or claim concerning the Software is currently pending.

7.2 EXCEPT FOR THE ABOVE EXPRESS LIMITED WARRANTIES, ECO3 MAKES NO WARRANTIES, WHETHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED, OR STATUTORY REGARDING OR RELATING TO THE SOFTWARE OR THE DOCUMENTATION, OR ANY MATERIALS OR SERVICES FURNISHED OR PROVIDED TO YOU UNDER THIS AGREEMENT. ECO3 SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIMS ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, DOCUMENTATION AND SAID OTHER MATERIALS AND SERVICES, AND WITH RESPECT TO THE USE OF ANY OF THE FOREGOING. WITHOUT LIMITING THE GENERALITY OF THE FOREGOING, ECO3 DOES NOT WARRANT THAT OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, OR THAT DATA WILL NOT BE LOST IF FOR ANY REASON OPERATIONS ARE INTERRUPTED.

7.3 **LIMITATION OF LIABILITY.** TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAW, IN NO EVENT WILL ECO3 BE LIABLE FOR ANY COMMERCIAL LOSS, LOSS OF PROFITS, LOSS OF AN OPPORTUNITY, LOSS OF USE, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION, LOSS OF DATA, COST OF COVER OR INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OF ANY KIND IN CONNECTION WITH OR ARISING OUT OF THE FURNISHING, PERFORMANCE OR USE OF THE SOFTWARE OR SERVICES PERFORMED

HEREUNDER, WHETHER ALLEGED AS A BREACH OF CONTRACT OR TORTIOUS CONDUCT, INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE (BUT NOT GROSS NEGLIGENCE OR FRAUD), EVEN IF ECO3 HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. IN ADDITION, ECO3 WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES CAUSED BY DELAY IN DELIVERY OR FURNISHING THE SOFTWARE OR SAID SERVICES. ECO3'S LIABILITY UNDER THIS AGREEMENT FOR DIRECT, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL AND/OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OF ANY KIND, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, RESTITUTION, WILL NOT, IN ANY EVENT, EXCEED THE LICENSE FEE PAID BY YOU TO ECO3 UNDER THIS AGREEMENT.

7.4 **ALLOCATION OF RISK.** The provisions of this Section 6 allocate risks under this Agreement between You and ECO3. You acknowledge and recognise that ECO3's pricing reflects this allocation of risks and limitation of liability accordingly.

8. INDEMNIFICATION

8.1 INFRINGEMENT INDEMNITY. ECO3 represents it has no reason to believe that the Software infringes upon any copyright or any other intellectual property right of any third party. In the event of a claim that the Software infringes upon, or violates, a third party's copyright ECO3 will indemnify and hold You harmless against any action brought against You based on a claim that the unmodified Software, when used in accordance with this Agreement, infringes a European copyright, patent or other proprietary rights, and ECO3 shall pay all costs, settlements and damages finally awarded, except for consequential damages. However, ECO3 will not be obligated to indemnify or hold You harmless from any such action unless You (i) notify ECO3 in writing of any claim within 10 (ten) business days after You learn of such a claim, (ii) give ECO3 sole control of the defence and settlement thereof, (iii) provide all reasonable assistance in connection with the defence and settlement thereof, and (iv) have not yet compromised or settled in any way any such losses, claims or damages for which indemnity is sought. If the Software is finally adjudged to so infringe, or in ECO3's opinion is likely to become the subject of such a claim, ECO3 shall, at its sole option expense, either (1) apply its best efforts to procure for You the right to continue using the Software, or (2) apply its best efforts to modify or replace the Software to make it non-infringing, or, if neither (1) or (2) is commercially practicable (3) terminate this Agreement, and repay to You a portion of the License Fee equal to the amount paid by You less reasonable depreciation. ECO3 shall have no liability regarding any infringement claim arising out of: (i) use of other than a current, unaltered release of the Software; (ii) Use of the Software in combination with non-ECO3 software, data or equipment, if the infringement was caused by the Use of such combination; (iii) any modification or derivation of the Software not specifically authorised in writing by ECO3; or (iv) use of third party software.

8.2 EXCLUSIVE REMEDY. The foregoing states the entire liability of ECO3 and the exclusive remedy for You with respect to infringement of any patent, copyright, trade secret or other proprietary right.

9. CONFIDENTIALITY

9.1 CONFIDENTIAL INFORMATION. Each party acknowledges that the Confidential Information constitutes valuable trade secrets and each party agrees that it shall use Confidential Information solely in accordance with the provisions of this Agreement and will not disclose, or permit to be disclosed, the same, directly or indirectly, to any third party without the other party's prior written consent. Each party agrees to exercise due care in protecting the Confidential Information from unauthorized use and disclosure. However, neither party bears any responsibility for safeguarding information that (i) is publicly available, (ii) already in the other party's possession and not subject to a confidentiality obligation, (iii) obtained by the other party from third parties without restrictions on disclosure, (iv) independently developed by the other party without reference to Confidential Information, or (v) required to be disclosed by order of a court or other governmental entity.

9.2 INJUNCTIVE RELIEF. In the event of actual or threatened breach of the provisions of Section 8.1, the non-breaching party will have no adequate remedy at law and will be entitled to immediate and injunctive and other equitable relief, without bond and without the necessity of showing actual money damages.

10. TERM AND TERMINATION

10.1 TERM. This Agreement will take effect on the Effective Date and will remain in force for as long as any copyright in the Software exist, subject to termination in accordance with Article 9.2

10.2 TERMINATION. This Agreement may be terminated by ECO3 upon written notice to You if (i) You fail to pay any undisputed amount due within thirty (30) days after You have been given written notice of such non-payment; (ii) You are in material breach of any non-monetary term, condition or provision of Agreement, which breach, if capable of being cured, is not cured within thirty (30) days after You have been given written notice of such breach; or (iii) ECO3 elects to do so in accordance with Article 6.1 or 7.1. Except for a termination pursuant to Articles 6.1 or 7.1, no such termination will entitle You to a refund of any portion of the License Fee. You may terminate this Agreement at any time for any reason by submitting written notice to that effect to ECO3.

10.3 EFFECT OF TERMINATION. Upon expiration or termination of this Agreement, You shall promptly uninstall and return to ECO3 the Software, any derivative works, all copies thereof, including computer memory or storage copies, the associated Dongle, all related Documentation and all copies thereof, and any other Confidential Information in Your possession. You shall furnish ECO3 with a certificate signed by an executive officer verifying that the same has been done. Termination or Expiration will not affect the provisions regarding the treatment of Confidential Information, provisions relating to the payment of amounts due, or provisions limiting or disclaiming ECO3's liability, which provisions will survive termination of this Agreement.

10.4 NON-ASSIGNMENT. Neither this Agreement nor any rights under this Agreement may be assigned or otherwise transferred by You, in whole or in part, whether voluntary or by operation of law, including by way of sale of assets, merger or consolidation, without the prior written consent of ECO3, which consent will not be unreasonably withheld or delayed. Subject to the foregoing, this Agreement will be binding upon and will inure to the benefit of the parties and their respective successors and assigns.

11. MISCELLANEOUS

11.1 WAIVER. Any waiver of the provisions of this Agreement or of a party's rights or remedies under this Agreement must be in writing to be effective. Failure, neglect, or delay by a party to enforce the provisions of this Agreement or its rights or remedies at any time, will not be construed and will not be deemed to be a waiver of such party's rights under this Agreement and will not in any way affect the validity of the whole or any part of this Agreement or prejudice such party's right to take subsequent action. Except as expressly stated in this Agreement, no exercise or enforcement by either party of any right or remedy under this Agreement will preclude the enforcement by such party of any other right or remedy under this Agreement or that such party is entitled by law to enforce.

11.2 SEVERABILITY. If any provision, or part of any provision, of this Agreement is invalidated by operation of law or otherwise, that provision or part will to that extent be deemed omitted and the remainder of this Agreement, or applicable attachment, will remain in full force and effect. In place of any such invalid provision or part thereof, the parties hereto undertake to agree on a similar but valid provision the effect of which is as close as possible to that of the invalid provision or part thereof. If the parties fail to agree on such an amendment, such invalid term, condition or provision will be severed from the remaining terms, conditions and provisions, which will continue to be valid and enforceable to the fullest extent permitted by law.

11.3 STANDARD TERMS. No terms, provisions or conditions of any purchase order, acknowledgement or other business form that You may use in connection with the licensing of the Software will have any effect on the rights, duties or obligations of the parties under, or otherwise modify, this Agreement, regardless of any failure of ECO3 to object to such terms, provisions or conditions.

11.4 RIGHT TO AUDIT. ECO3 shall have the right upon its expense to inspect compliance of You with this Agreement, upon a ten (10) working days prior written notice. Such audit shall not be more frequently than once per year, during normal business hours by an accounting firm designated by ECO3. In the event such audit should reveal a substantial non-compliance with this Agreement, You shall reimburse ECO3 for the full out-of-pocket costs in respect of any professional charges incurred for such audit or inspection, in addition to any other right or remedy available to ECO3 hereunder.

11.5 REMOTE ACCESS. You agree that ECO3 has the right to access Your network for the sole purpose of, and to the extent necessary for, supplying support and monitoring services, including processing and retrieving data regarding the Software installed at Your premises.

11.6 AMENDMENTS TO THIS AGREEMENT. This Agreement may not be amended, except by a writing signed by both parties.

11.7 HEADINGS: Headings to the sections of this Agreement are for convenience only and shall not affect the interpretation or construction of this Agreement. Use of the singular includes the plural and vice versa.

11.8 ECO3'S PRIOR CONSENT. Unless expressly provided otherwise in this Agreement, any prior consent of ECO3 that is required before You may take an action may be granted or withheld in ECO3's sole and absolute discretion.

11.9 THIRD PARTY BENEFICIARY. If and insofar parts of the Software are supplied and licensed to ECO3 by Other Owners, such Other Owners are third party beneficiaries of this Agreement and are with respect to such parts of the Software entitled to enforce directly against You the terms and conditions of this License Agreement.

11.10 APPLICABLE LAW. This Agreement is made in Belgium and shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of Belgium, excluding its rules for choice of law.

11.11 PUBLIC ANNOUNCEMENTS. You acknowledge that ECO3 may desire to use Your name in press releases, product brochures and financial reports indicating that You are a customer of ECO3, and You agree that ECO3 may use Your name in such a manner.

11.12 ENTIRE AGREEMENT. This Agreement (including any addenda hereto signed by both parties) contains the entire agreement of the parties with respect to the subject matter of this Agreement and supersedes all previous communications, representations, understandings and agreements, either oral or written, between the parties with respect to said subject matter.

Contents

End User License Agreement ... 3
About This Reference Guide ... 17
- Intended Audience ... 18
- Related Documentation ... 19

Chapter 1 Welcome to Asecuri ... 21
- What is Asecuri? ... 22
- Ticket Editing ... 25
- Basic Workflow ... 26

Chapter 2 Basic Concepts ... 29
- What Are Job Tickets? ... 30
- What Are Hot Tickets? ... 31
- How Are Jobs Created? ... 32
- What Is a Production Plan? ... 33
- What Are Task Processors? ... 34
- What Are Actions? ... 36
- What Are Resources? ... 37
- What is a Page Store? ... 37
- What is a Public Page Store? ... 38
- What is a Proof? ... 39
- What is the Layout Editor? ... 40
- What is the Product Editor? ... 40

Chapter 3 Getting Started ... 41
- Starting the Client ... 42
- The Management Windows ... 44
- The Ticket Editor ... 46
- Work Area Commands and Indicators ... 47
  - Menus ... 47
  - Toolbar ... 59
  - Navigation Bar ... 60
  - Message Indicator ... 60
  - Tab Area ... 61
- Viewing Messages ... 62
  - Filtering Messages ... 65
  - Critical Messages ... 67
- Viewing Remarks ... 68

- Preferences ... 71
- Customizing Your Work Area ... 76

Chapter 4 Previewing Job Results ... 77

- Asecuri Soft Previews ... 78
- Raster Preview ... 78
- Preview Window and Tools ... 79
  - Preview Window ... 80
  - Navigator Palette ... 81
  - Inks Palette ... 81
  - Rule-ups Palette ... 83
  - Tools Palette ... 84
  - Preview Menus ... 86
- Zooming Images ... 86
- Changing the Default View ... 88
- Measuring Ink Coverage ... 92
- Measuring Screen Angles ... 95
- Measuring Line Frequency ... 96
- Color-Managed Raster Preview ... 97
- Depth Tool ... 98
- Distortion ... 99
- Comparing Results ... 100
- Approving/Rejecting Jobs ... 102
- Viewing/Editing Raster Preview Preferences ... 105
- QuickProof ... 105

Chapter 5 Managing Jobs ... 107

- The Jobs Window ... 108
- The Output Device List ... 110
- The Job List ... 111
  - Job Notification Icons ... 118
  - Job Status Icons ... 119
  - Job Icons ... 121
  - Flow Icons ... 123
- Job and System Logging ... 129
- Viewing the Administration Tab ... 138
- Viewing the Options Tab ... 139
- Viewing the Plan Tab ... 141
  - Production Plan Pane (Jobs Window) ... 141
  - Settings Pane (Jobs Window) ... 142
- Viewing the Results Tab ... 143
  - The Activity Pane ... 143
  - The Job Layout Pane (Jobs Window) ... 144
  - The Separations Pane (Jobs Window) ... 153

- Working with Jobs in the Job List 154
  - Selecting Jobs 154
  - Holding/Resuming Jobs 156
  - Continuing Jobs 157
  - Making Rush Jobs 160
  - Restarting Job Processing 161
  - Duplicating Jobs 161
  - Creating a New Job from an Existing Job 162
  - Deleting Jobs 162
  - Enabling/Disabling Input Channels 165
  - Opening the Job and System Logs 166
  - Archiving Jobs 166
- Working with Jobs in the Results Tab 170
  - Changing Viewing Options 170
  - Re-rendering Results 172
  - Re-imaging Results 173
  - Re-exporting Results 174
  - Viewing Job Results in the Results Tab 174
  - Rejecting Results 175
  - Discarding Results 177
  - Including Results 177
- QuickProofing Pages 179

Chapter 6 Managing Hot Tickets 181

- The Hot Ticket Manager 182
- The Hot Ticket List 183
- Viewing the Hot Ticket Administration Tab 185
- Viewing the Hot Ticket Options Tab 186
- Viewing the Hot Ticket Products Tab 187
- Viewing the Hot Ticket Plan Tab 188
  - Production Plan Pane (Hot Tickets) 188
  - Settings Pane (Hot Tickets) 188
- Working with Hot Tickets 190
  - Fully Automated Imposition 193
- Hot Tickets for Packaging Jobs 195

Chapter 7 Creating and Editing Tickets 199

- The Ticket Editor 200
- Using the Administration Tab 202
- Using the Options Tab 206
- Using the Plan Tab 213
  - Production Plan Components Pane 213
  - Production Plan Pane (Ticket Editor) 230
  - Settings Pane (Ticket Editor) 231

- Using the Pages Tab 233
  - Products 233
  - The Page Store (Ticket Editor) 234
  - The Run List (Ticket Editor) 234
- Using the Results Tab 236
  - The Job Layout Pane (Ticket Editor) 236
  - The Separations Pane (Ticket Editor) 237
- Working with Job Tickets and Hot Tickets 238
  - Preparing Your Plan 238
  - What happens in a Processing Flow 239
  - Creating or Editing a Ticket 239
  - Creating or Editing a Production Plan 242
  - Submitting Tickets 253
  - Opening a Ticket 254
  - Saving a Ticket 254
- Inputting Documents 255
  - Inputting via Hot Folder / JDF Import / Public Page Store 256

Chapter 8 Layout Editor 257

- Overview 258
- Product Panel 263
  - Product Previews 272
- Layout Panel 276
  - Default Product Placement 278
  - Placing Products Interactively 279
  - Working with Frames 284
  - Create Guides 295
  - Copy Count, Cropping, Scaling 298
  - Duplicating Products 298
  - Step & Repeat 299
  - Create Grid 301
  - Placing Products with Auto-Layout 304
  - Placing Products with Auto-Fill 308
  - View Options Palette 315
  - Marks Palette 319
  - Layout Toolbar 320
  - Snag List 322
- Inspectors 323
  - Job Set-Up Inspector 323
  - Frame/Product Inspector 340
  - Colors Inspector 344
  - Mark Sets Inspector (Sheet Layout mode only) 346
  - Sheet Inspector 347
  - Print Layout Inspector 349
- Applying Changes and Submitting a Job 351

- Sheet Layout Templates 354
- QuickProof Products and Sheets 362
- Resources 364
- Layout Editor Menus 365

Chapter 9 Product Editor 373

- Overview 374
- Product Inspector 379
- Mark Sets Inspector and Mark Inspector 388

Chapter 10 Monitoring and Configuring Your System 389

- System Overview Window 390
- Hardware Pane 391
- Task Processor Pane 393
  - Managing your Task Processors 393
  - Monitoring your Task Processors 396
  - Grouping Task Processors for Load Balancing 404
- Resources Pane 405
  - Asecuri System Configuration 405
  - Job Housekeeping 408
  - Logging 411
  - Templates 414
  - Page Sizes 417
  - Products 418
  - Sheet Sizes 418
  - Imposition 419
  - Users 423
  - Accounts 427
  - Disk Storage 428
  - Configuring Your Task Processors 434
  - Managing Parameter Sets 435
  - Managing Resources 437

Chapter 11 Input Task Processors 441

- Hot Folder 442
- Open Connect 447

Chapter 12 Processing Task Processors 453

- Apogee Preflight 454
- Digital Film Proof 460
- Impose 462

- Normalize 468
- PDF Render 479
- Raster Impose 507
- Raster Normalize 508
- Run List 509
  - Using a Run List in a Hot Ticket 509
- TIFF Render 520

Chapter 13 Output Task Processors 525

- Proofers 526
- TIFF Platesetter 537
- Export 546

Chapter 14 Print Task Processors 555

- Generic Press 556

Chapter 15 Task Processor Resources 571

- About Task Processor Resources 572
- Apogee Preflight Action Lists 573
- Borders 577
  - Borders and Output Sizes 582
  - Working with Borders and Border Marks 583
- Calibration Curves 586
- Color Books 589
- Content Profiles 596
- Device Screens 597
- Fonts 598
- Halftone Screens 600
- Ink Sets 607
- Input Color Conversions 609
- Mark Engraver 612
  - Mark Sets Overview 613
  - Mark Types 619
  - Mark Attributes 620
  - Mark Position 650
  - Mark Conflicts 653
  - Mark Repeat 654
  - Mark Special 655
  - Mark Pens 655
  - Mark Layers 656
  - About Colors and Depth for Printing Marks 657
- Marks 660

- Media 662
- Output Color Conversions 666
- Output Sizes 669
- Paper Stock 674
- Preflight Action Lists 678
- Profiles 681
- Quality 684
- Sheet Layout Templates 685
  - Sheet Layout Templates Overview 686
- WebGrowth Profiles 687

Chapter 16 Calibrating Your Output Devices 693

- What is Calibration? 694
- Calibration and Linearization Settings 696
- Curve Editor 700

Appendix A System Variables 707

- Generic Variables 708
- Mark Engraver Variables 719

Appendix B Keyboard Shortcuts 729

Appendix C Icons Overview 743

Appendix D Context Menu Commands 769

- Job List Context Menu Commands 770
- Job List Filter Context Menu Commands 772
- Layout Editor 772
- Product Editor - Presets 773
- Hot Ticket List Context Menu Commands 774

Appendix E Glossary 779

Index 793

About This Reference Guide

This Reference Guide offers you a complete description of the Asecuri Client interface, and provides procedures and settings to help you work efficiently.

- Intended Audience 18
- Related Documentation 19

Intended Audience

This document is designed for operators and administrators who will use one of the Asecuri Client products to create tickets, manage jobs, and configure and monitor the *Asecuri System*.

You should be familiar with your front-end workstations, imagesetter, platesetter, and PostScript software applications, as well as prepress processing methods, printing procedures, and network traffic. If this is not the case, please refer to the relevant user or operator manuals.

The Client software should already been installed, as described in the Asecuri installation documentation.

Related Documentation

The following documents can be referred to for further information:

- Asecuri Tutorial: This documentation is available in several languages from your local ECO3 organization or via the *ApogeeNetwork* website.
- Asecuri Installation Guide: This documentation is provided with your installation.
- Asecuri Licensing Guide: This documentation is provided with your installation.
- Release Notes
- SphereCenter *Help*: instructions on buying PrintSphere licenses and creating users
- PrintSphere *Help*: instructions on using the PrintSphere file-sharing service
- StoreCenter *Help*: instructions on how to create online stores with the Store-Front application
- ProductionCenter *Help*: instructions on how to use the ProductionCenter module and the WebApproval service
- Please visit the *ApogeeNetwork* website for additional information.

CHAPTER 1

Welcome to Asecuri

This section introduces the Asecuri System, and highlights its main innovations and features. Asecuri is the latest generation of ECO3's acclaimed workflow system for commercial printing. This system allows you to automate and distribute prepress processes using JDF, PDF and Digital Film in an integrated all-digital workflow. The system also includes rules-based imposition with the Apogee Impose module.

- What is Asecuri? 22
  - The Asecuri System 22
  - The Asecuri Client 22
  - Asecuri Product Flavors 23
- Ticket Editing 25
- Basic Workflow 26

What is Asecuri?

Asecuri is a fully integrated, digital workflow solution that brings together a wide range of sophisticated, easy-to-use capabilities in a single application. Asecuri uses a client/server architecture, and consists of:

- The Asecuri Server, which runs on a dedicated 64-bit Windows Server, and manages all data and processing functionality.
- An optional Asecuri Satellite, which runs on a dedicated 64-bit Windows Server, and provides additional processing capacity to increase your total production speed.
- The Asecuri Client application, which allows you to access and control the Asecuri Server remotely from any Windows PC or on the network.

The Asecuri System

The Asecuri System handles all resources, processes, and events, and acts as the centralized database of job and system data. The System provides feedback on system events and job processes to all Clients that are currently logged in. All interaction with the Asecuri System is performed via the Client application. Refer to the Installation Guide for detailed system requirements.

The Asecuri Client

The graphically rich and intuitive Client user interface adopts a highly visual design approach, using icons to represent elements in the system and in your workflow. A set of tools and commands allows you to control and interact with all aspects of job production.

The Asecuri Client can be installed on any PC system connected to the network. Using the Client, you can configure, monitor and control the system settings, and create customized input and processing channels for your jobs. You can also use the Client to communicate securely with an Asecuri Server over a VPN (Virtual Private Network) connection.

Asecuri Product Flavors

Depending on what you have purchased, your Asecuri solution will comprise one of the following product flavors, possibly enhanced with one or more of the available options:

- Apogee Render
- Apogee Control

- Apogee Manage
- Apogee Integrate
- Apogee PlateMaker
- Apogee Proof
- Apogee PDF&Proof
- Apogee PlateMaker LE
- Apogee Bridge
- Apogee InkTune

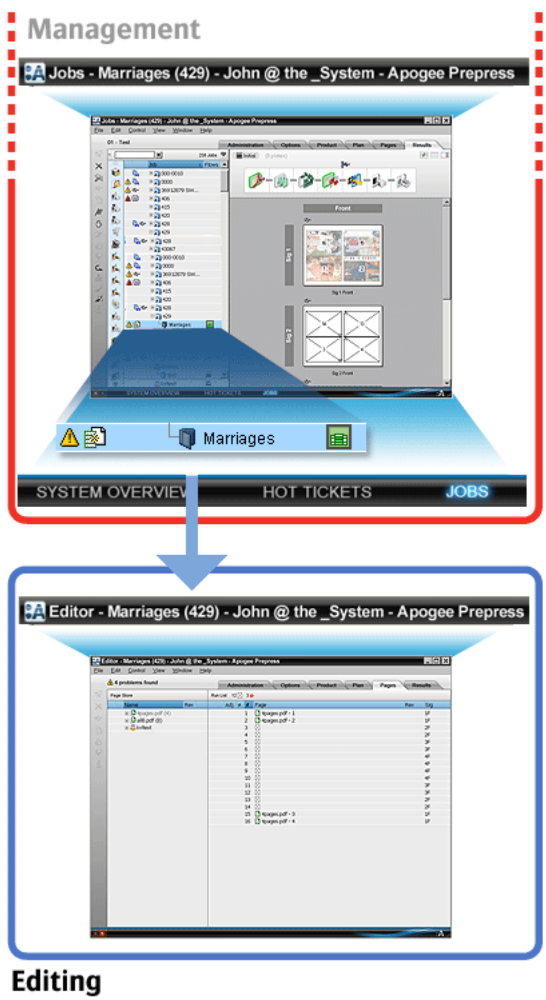
Ticket Editing

You can choose the type of ticket that best suits your workflow:

- Standard Job Tickets for single jobs.
- Reusable Hot Tickets for repeat jobs.

You can create these tickets yourself, or you can choose from a selection of ready-made ticket templates which are directly accessible from the Ticket Editor.

You can edit Job Tickets directly from the jobs you see in the Job List.



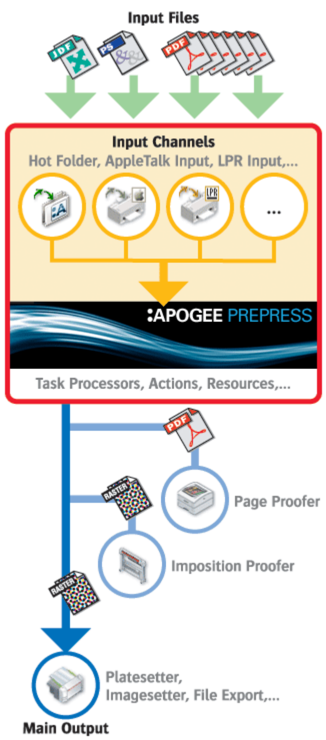
Basic Workflow

A typical Asecuri workflow is as follows:

1 Create Ticket (including input channel)

You start any workflow by creating or editing a Ticket. The Ticket defines an input channel, and describes exactly how all documents received will be processed and output by Asecuri.

NOTE: You can set up one or more input channels for the same ticket (Hot Folders, AppleTalk channels, JDF channels, etc.), and output consistently to a wide range of imagesetters, platesetters, and proofers.



2 Input document(s)

You input your documents to the predefined input channel. Typically, these documents are PostScript, PDF, EPS, MIME, TIFF or JDF format files. You either copy these files to a Hot Folder input channel, or print them to a predefined printer queue (AppleTalk, Named Pipe, etc.). If you are working in the Layout Editor, you will probably want to input images: PNG, JPG, BMP, PSD and AI.

Asecuri automatically processes any input document or images according to the parameters specified in the Ticket. The result of this processing is a job.

3 Check job results

You can check your job results either onscreen, or by outputting them to a Proofer.

4 Approve job for output

If the job results are satisfactory, you can approve them for output to an output device.

CHAPTER 2

Basic Concepts

Asecuri introduces a variety of new product-specific terms and concepts. This section explains the most important and commonly-used terms. More detailed and practical information is provided in the referenced sections.

- What Are Job Tickets? 30
- What Are Hot Tickets? 31
- How Are Jobs Created? 32
- What Is a Production Plan? 33
- What Are Task Processors? 34
  - What Are Task Processor Settings? 34
  - What Are Task Processor Parameter Sets? 34
  - What Is a Task Processor Configuration? 35
- What Are Actions? 36
- What Are Resources? 37
- What is a Page Store? 37
- What is a Public Page Store? 38
- What is a Proof? 39
- What is the Layout Editor? 40
- What is the Product Editor? 40

What Are Job Tickets?

A Job Ticket is a file you create using the Job Ticket Editor. A Job Ticket defines how the pages of a single job are to be assembled, the processing features to be used (imposition, separation, trapping, overprinting, rasterization, etc.), and the output device to which the rendered job will be sent.

A Job Ticket is always associated with one or more unique input channels (Hot Folders, AppleTalk Channels, etc.). When a user sends a document to one of these input channels, the Asecuri System attaches the corresponding Job Ticket to it. The input document and the Job Ticket are combined to become a single Job.

When should you use Job Tickets?

You should use Job Tickets in workflows that are subject to lots of changes, or when you want to process jobs that are made up of several different documents. These documents can be combined in a single job by dragging the required pages from the Page Store to your Run List. You need to create and manually submit a new Job Ticket for every new job.

If you print a weekly magazine, it is recommended that you use standard Job Tickets. This is because you will probably have to create an imposition for different document types (advertisements, articles, etc.). The page count and content will also probably vary from week to week.

What Are Hot Tickets?

You create Hot Tickets using the Hot Ticket Editor. A Hot Ticket defines how multiple jobs are to be assembled and processed. Unlike a Job Ticket, which can create only a single job, a Hot Ticket can create multiple jobs on demand.

When you input a document to a Hot Ticket input channel, the Hot Ticket duplicates its ticket, then creates a job by filling in the pages from the input document, and automatically submitting it to the Asecuri System. A job created from a Hot Ticket does not therefore require any manual Run List editing.

A Hot Ticket always remains active, and automatically processes any documents that are input via the associated input channel. Each of these documents becomes a new job, containing the input document plus a Job Ticket based on the Hot Ticket settings. However, the original Hot Ticket itself does not become part of the job, and remains unchanged.

When should you use Hot Tickets?

Hot Tickets automate the job creation process, creating multiple jobs on demand. If your jobs always have the same parameters, you can use a single Hot Ticket to create as many jobs as you need.

How Are Jobs Created?

To create a job, you must first create a ticket and select or set up one or more input channels.

- With Job Tickets, the job is created as soon as you successfully submit the Job Ticket. At this point, the job becomes visible in the Job List. Initially, the job only contains the Job Ticket.
- With Hot Tickets, the job is not created until a document has been input through the associated input channel.

Each document you send through one of the jobs' input channels is processed and becomes part of the job. The processing results also become part of the job, together with logging data which indicates exactly how the job has been processed. A job may therefore comprise:

- a Job Ticket (required)
- the document(s) to be printed
- the intermediate and/or final job results (optional)
- log information

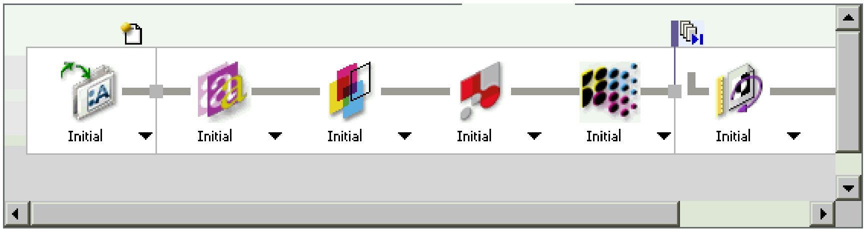
What Is a Production Plan?

You create and modify Production Plans using the Ticket Editor. A Production Plan is a series of components (Task Processors and Actions) linked together to form one or more processing flows. These components can be configured to define exactly how jobs are to be input, processed, and output.

A Production Plan consists of at least one Main processing flow, but you can include as many additional flows as you require. Each flow leads to a unique output device.

To build your Production Plan, you simply drag the components you require to the Production Plan pane, and connect them to other components. The order and the types of connections are governed by specific rules. Once all the components are in place, you can customize each of them in turn by selecting one of a series of predefined settings.

The Production Plan pane provides a graphical overview of your Plan, which can be quickly assembled and modified.



What Are Task Processors?

Task Processors are software components that perform one or more tasks (specified by the Ticket), such as input via Hot Folder, Normalization, Preflight, Trapping, Rendering, etc.

A sequence of Task Processors can be linked together to form a Production Plan.

Task Processors are divided into four categories:

- Input Task Processors
- Processing Task Processors
- Output Task Processors
- Print Task Processors

What Are Task Processor Settings?

Each Task Processor has a default group of settings, which determine how it will handle incoming data. When you add a Task Processor to your Production Plan, you can modify these settings for this particular ticket.

You can also create and save your own customized versions of these settings files, in which you can modify how the Task Processor will operate. These customized settings are referred to as Parameter Sets. When you add a Task Processor to a Production Plan, you can select any Parameter Sets which may be available.

Some Task Processors are multi-functional and require a large number of settings. For practical reasons, these settings are grouped according to their functionality. For example, The Render Task Processor comprises Trapping, Separation, Processing and Screening, each of these functions having their respective settings.

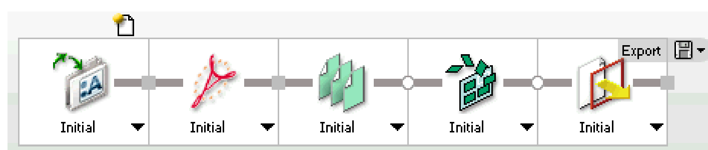
What Are Task Processor Parameter Sets?

Each Task Processor is installed with initial settings which are automatically assigned by Asecuri, and cannot be changed or deleted. However, you can define additional groups of settings based on the initial settings, and save them under different names. These are referred to as Parameter Sets.

You can create as many Parameter Sets as you need, and manage them from the System Overview window. To do this, you select a Task Processor, and then click the Settings icon:

Parameter sets can also be created and managed directly from the Ticket Editor. When you first access a Task Processor's settings, you will see only the factory-default "initial settings". You should define additional Parameter Sets based on the initial settings, and set one of them as "default". In future, whenever you add this Task Processor to a Production Plan, it will always automatically select the default Parameter Set that you specified. However, you can still click on the list, and select any other Parameter Set that may be available.

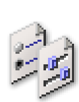
NOTE: The factory-default "initial settings" cannot be deleted.



For detailed information on the settings of a particular Task Processor, open the System Overview window and access the Help information. You can do this by selecting the Task Processor, context-clicking the Settings icon in the Resources pane, and choosing Help from the context menu.

What Is a Task Processor Configuration?

Each Task Processor has a default configuration that is automatically assigned by Asecuri. If you have Service access rights, you can view and modify these configurations using the Configuration icon in the System Overview window.



The Configuration icon is the first icon displayed in the Resources pane of the System Overview window. You can double-click this icon to view or modify the configuration of the currently selected Task Processor.

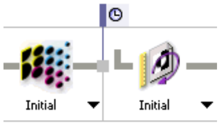
If you have Administrator access rights, you can view and modify the configurations of the Generic Devices and Export Task Processor, as well as some settings for the Press Task Processor. If you do not have any of the necessary access rights, the Configuration icon is hidden from view.

For detailed information on the configuration of a particular Task Processor, open the System Overview window and access the Help information. You can do this by selecting the Task Processor, context-clicking the Configuration icon in the Resources pane, and choosing Help from the context menu.

What Are Actions?

Actions allow you to precisely control the flow of job data through a Production Plan, and keep track of your job results at every point in the processing chain.

Once you have built up a valid Production Plan, you can insert Actions between each step in the Plan. When one of these points is reached during job processing, an event is triggered. For example, the job results may be archived, or the flow may be temporarily halted until specific criteria have been met.



What Are Resources?

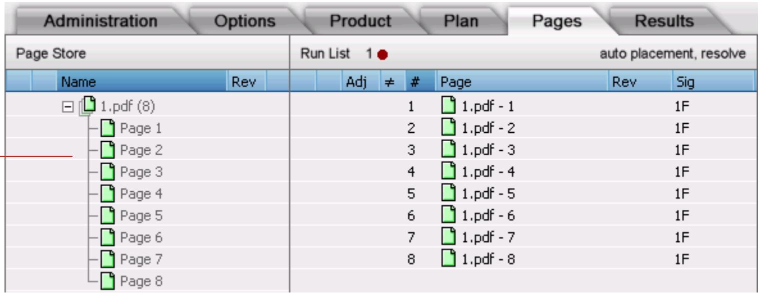
Resources are collections of objects (such as fonts, preflight profiles, or calibration curves) that are required by selected devices or Task Processors. By default, Asecuri provides you with some basic resources for each of the available Resource categories. However, you can also add your own resources to those supplied.

You can view the Resource categories by switching to the System Overview window. Here, the Resource categories displayed depend on the selected Task Processor.

What is a Page Store?

A Page Store is a repository of pages available for a single job. When you input documents to Asecuri, the document pages are stored in the Page Store associated with the job input channel you selected.

A Page Store is automatically generated for each job created. You can view the content of a Page Store by selecting a job in the Job List and then selecting the Pages tab.

1


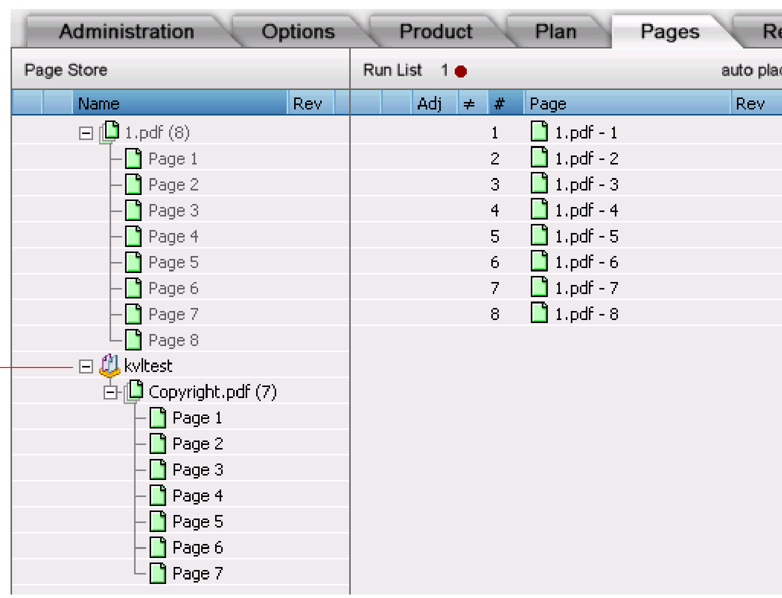
1 Page Store

This type of Page Store is sometimes referred to as a “Private” Page Store, to differentiate it from a Public Page Store.

What is a Public Page Store?

A Public Page Store is a repository of pages available for all jobs. To create a Public Page Store, you need to create a job based on the Public Page Store job template. Any documents or pages that are input via the Public Page Store input channel will then appear in the Pages tab, and will be available for all jobs.

1



1 Public Page Store

A Public Page Store can be viewed and accessed by all users. You can consider it as a central repository of documents ready to be processed.

What is a Proof?

A Proof is a set of job results produced before the final results are output to a platesetter or imagesetter. This allows you to verify and correct different aspects of a job before submitting it to press.

In Asecuri, we can distinguish several different types of proofs, each with their own purpose:

- Page Proof: A Page Proof allows you to check the content and color reproduction of specific pages (color proofs should closely match the expected press print output). In many cases, you may not want to proof all pages, and you may not need an imposition scheme. Instead, you may simply want to pack as many pages onto a flat as possible.

- Imposition Proof: An Imposition Proof allows you to check that the chosen imposition scheme correctly produces the required result after folding and cutting. This is most commonly used to check a new imposition scheme.

- Production Proof: A Production Proof allows you to check job content and page order. This gives you a good idea of how the final result will look, but may use a different imposition scheme than the final result.

There are three ways of viewing any type of proof:

- Hard Proof: This method outputs the proof to a physical proofing device, such as a Sherpa proofer.

  NOTE: Hard Proofs can also be viewed as Soft Proofs.

- Soft Proof: This method does not physically output the proof to a printer. Instead, the job data is displayed on-screen. There are two types of Soft Proof:

  - PDF Proof: A PDF Proof allows you to check PDF job results (flats or pages) on-screen, before the job is rendered. No physical output results are generated. One or more PDF Proofs can be included in your Production Plan. This allows you to view the intermediate job data at different points in the flow.

  - Digital Film Proof: A Digital Film Proof allows you to check the raster job results (flats or pages) on-screen, after the job has been rendered. No physical output results are generated. You can view 8-bit contone data, and zoom in to view the more detailed 1-bit high resolution data (each raster point is represented by a single display pixel).

- Color-Managed Display Proof: This method displays the job data on-screen in Raster Preview. However, in this case you have a preview of the rendered result using color management to convert the press color space to the monitor color space based on ICC profiles. With a calibrated monitor environment and correctly configured monitor profile, contract-proofing quality should be achieved.

  You activate the color-managed preview by pressing the color managed preview button in the toolbar of the preview pane, or selecting its View-menu equivalent. By default the color managed preview mode is idle.

  This is a licensed feature.

What is the Layout Editor?

The Layout Editor is a workspace which has been specially designed to prepare layout jobs and use effective color management for printing on Sign & Display devices. It can also be used to create the layout for Unbound Single-Sided products in regular jobs.

Refer to “Layout Editor” on page 257 for more information about this feature.

What is the Product Editor?

The Layout Editor includes the Product Editor, a dedicated workspace for editing the images you upload in the Layout Editor.

Refer to “Product Editor” on page 373.

CHAPTER 3

Getting Started

This section guides you through the main work areas of Asecuri. It provides general information on the user interface and main windows.

- Starting the Client 42
- The Management Windows 44
- The Ticket Editor 46
- Work Area Commands and Indicators 47
  - Menus 47
  - Toolbar 59
  - Navigation Bar 60
  - Message Indicator 60
  - Tab Area 61
- Viewing Messages 62
  - Filtering Messages 65
  - Critical Messages 67
- Viewing Remarks 68
- Preferences 71
- Customizing Your Work Area 76

Starting the Client

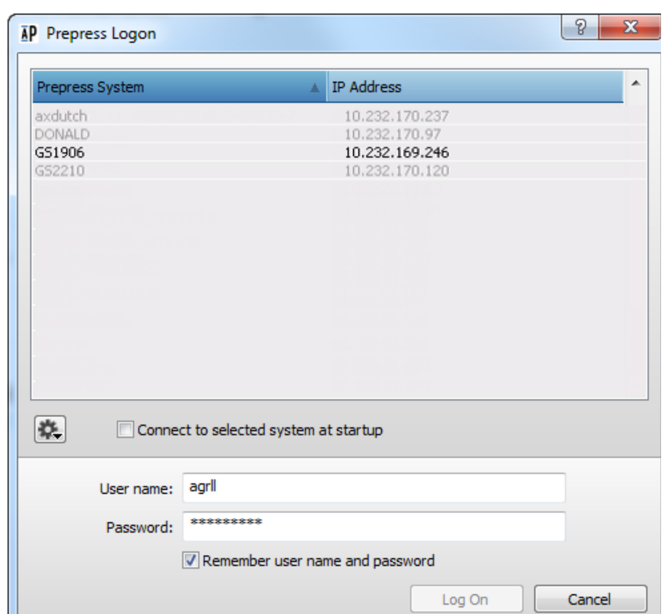
To start the Client, you need to open a session with the Asecuri System. A session is a continuous series of user interactions between the Client application and the Asecuri System. You need to log in to a secured session before running certain portions of the application. Each successive interaction in the session is tracked and recorded by Asecuri.

▷ To open a new Asecuri session

1 Do one of the following:

- PC users: Choose Start > Programs > Asecuri > Asecuri Client.
- Double-click the Asecuri Client icon on your desktop.

The Asecuri Logon dialog box appears.



TIP: PC users can add the Client icon to the Windows taskbar to start the Asecuri Client even quicker.

2 Type your user name/password in the appropriate text boxes.

The user name must be a valid Windows account on the Asecuri server on your network. Add a domain prefix (e.g. domain\username) if the server name is different. User names cannot be configured in the Asecuri Client.

3 Select your Asecuri System from the list.

If you do not know to which system you should connect, ask your Asecuri administrator.

4 Select the 'Connect to selected system at startup' check box.

The next time you start the Asecuri Client, the Logon dialog box will be bypassed. You can reset this option in your Preferences. For more information, see "Logging On" on page 72.

NOTE: If you have a DNS server, you can connect using the server host name. This is recommended for complex networks such as multiple networks, VPN, etc. Click the cogwheel and select the option.

---

5 Click Log On.

The Asecuri Client is started, and a connection is made to the selected Asecuri System. The Jobs Window is then displayed.

▷ To view network information

You can view network information to troubleshoot network issues when logging on.

1 Start the client and click the cogwheel in the Logon dialog.

2 Choose View Network Information.

The Network Information dialog is displayed.

3 Enter the server credentials and a client-server connection test is performed.

The information for the selected Asecuri System is displayed with warnings and errors if the connection fails.

4 Click OK to close the Network Information dialog.

The Management Windows

The Asecuri Client includes three management windows:

- The Jobs Window, for viewing and managing jobs.
- The Hot Tickets Window, for viewing and managing Hot Tickets.
- The System Overview Window, for viewing and configuring the system components (Task Processors and Resources), managing the Asecuri System, and managing individual Task Processor activities.

You can switch between these three windows using the Navigation Bar, which is located at the bottom of each window.

The Jobs Window

The Jobs Window gives you a complete high-level overview of your workflow. In a single window, you can see the complete list and status of jobs in the system and the output devices that are available.

You can track the progress and activity of jobs, and view information about specific processing parameters. Powerful viewing features let you preview rasterized jobs. This allows you to check trapped, imposed, and screened bitmaps before imaging a proof, film, or plate. A Message Board keeps all users up to date about jobs that require attention.

You can also interact with the displayed information. By context-clicking jobs you can set priority handling for rush jobs, hold and resume jobs, approve or reject jobs, resubmit jobs, process quick remakes, or open the Ticket Editor.

The Hot Tickets Window

This is where you monitor, view, and manage the Hot Tickets that are created by the Asecuri System. Unlike Job Tickets, which appear in the Jobs Window together with the jobs they are used to create, Hot Tickets appear only in the Hot Tickets window.

Hot Tickets comprise only 3 tabs: Administration, Options, and Plan. There are no Pages or Results tabs.

- There is no Pages tab because Hot Tickets do not require Run Lists to specify which pages make up the job: The Run List is generated automatically, based on the number of pages in the input document.
- There is no Results tab because Hot Tickets are never associated with the results of a single job: Hot Tickets are used to generate multiple jobs.

Jobs created by Hot Tickets appear in the Jobs List, together with the jobs created by Job Tickets.

The System Overview Window

The System Overview provides centralized system management, allowing you to monitor key components and tasks.

Exactly what you will see in the System Overview window depends on your Access Level, as specified in your Preferences. However, all users can view and configure workflow and process settings, including input channels, normalizing, preflighting, screening, trapping, rendering, and output options.

If you have the necessary Access Level, you can also view and configure the following system elements for optimal performance:

- Global system settings, such as archiving, logging and administration.
- Any available processing resources, including fonts, screens, calibration curves, imposition profiles, ICC profiles, and more.

The Ticket Editor

Efficient and complete job ticketing capabilities are at the heart of Asecuri. You can import job tickets (via JDF), retrieve them from a ticket database (ticket templates), or create new ones of your own.

Ticket Editing is an interactive, flexible process that lets you define a complete Production Plan - including normalizing, preflighting, PDF trapping, imposition, rendering, and integrated proofing.

Asecuri's Production Plan introduces a multi-flow concept, allowing you to define several flows (both input and output) in a single Ticket.

You can access the Ticket Editor from any of the Management windows (see "Creating or Editing a Ticket" on page 239).

There are two types of Tickets: Job Tickets and Hot Tickets. The Ticket Editor allows you to create and edit both types. However, when you create or edit a Hot Ticket, you do not need to specify page and result options. This is because:

- Hot Tickets do not require Run Lists to specify which pages make up the job: The Run List is generated automatically, based on the number of pages in the input document.
- Hot Tickets are never associated with the results of a single job: Hot Tickets are used to generate multiple jobs.

The jobs that are created using these Tickets appear in the Jobs List.

Asecuri also includes a dedicated module for creating an imposition which is called Apogee Impose. This module is accessed from the Products tab of the Ticket Editors.

Work Area Commands and Indicators

The Client contains a number of global tools and indicators that are accessible in some or all of the main and editing windows.

- Menus
- Toolbar
- Navigation Bar
- Message Indicator
- Tab Area
- Preferences

Menus

The Asecuri Menubar is available in each of the main Client windows. It includes the following menus:

- File Menu
- Edit Menu
- Control Menu (Not available in System Overview)
- Processor Menu (Available in System Overview only)
- View Menu (Not available in System Overview)
- View Menu for Raster Preview
- Window Menu
- Help Menu

NOTE: See “Layout Editor” on page 257 for information on the Layout Editor menus.

Not all items included in these menus are available in every window. The active menu or sub-menu items vary according to the window you are working in. This is especially the case for the Apogee Impose module; see “Menus” on page 47.

TIP: Some of the menu options can be accessed more quickly by context-clicking on jobs in the Job List, and selecting an item from the context menu.

File Menu

This menu provides commands that apply to sessions (logging in and out), and documents (job tickets and archives).

File Menu Item	Description
New from Templates	Opens the Ticket Template dialog box. When used from the Hot Tickets window, the Tickets tab is shown and the default Hot Ticket template is selected. Otherwise, the Jobs tab is shown and the default Job Ticket Template is selected.
New Default Job/Hot Ticket	Opens the Ticket Editor with the default Ticket Template selected.
New From Selected	Opens the Job Ticket Editor with an empty Administration tab but with the same plan, imposition, etc.
New Wide Format Job/ Hot Ticket	Opens the Layout Editor.
Create StoreFront Hot Ticket	To create a hot ticket for integration with the web-to-print application.
Open	Allows you to select and open a previously saved ticket (*.ajt).
Save	Saves the current ticket (Ticket Editor only).
Save As	Allows you to save the ticket with a different name (Ticket Editor only).
Save As Template	Allows you to save the ticket as a Ticket Template.
Close	Closes the current window.
Upload Document	Allows you to add a file or a folder containing files to a job, Hot Ticket or Public Page Store. When you upload a folder, Asecuri uploads all files and folders in that folder recursively. The uploaded folder appears as a subfolder in the Page Store.
Submit Job	Submits a new Ticket to the Asecuri System (Ticket Editor only).
Submit Changes	Submits the changes you have made to an existing job (Ticket Editor only).
Archive Job	Allows you to choose a location and file name in order to archive the selected job.
Import Job Archive	Allows you to select and restore a previously saved job archive (*.arch) or create a new job from a selected archive.

File Menu Item	Description
Export	• <selected item> From - Exports the item from a selected point in the flow (Latest, Run List, Normalize, etc.). Document - Saves a PDF document outside Asecuri, where the document can be edited, and then dragged back into Asecuri (Page Store PDF files only). • Export Folder - Exports the selected folder. • Job Dump - Similar to Archive Job, but only accessible by administrators for troubleshooting purposes (only for jobs, not for Hot Tickets). • Export Job Log - Exports the log file for the selected job. • Export CAD Files: Exports the current original CAD file without any changes you may have made. • Export System Log (System Overview only) - Exports the log file for the selected Asecuri System. • InkDrive - Exports the InkDrive files for the selected job (only available when the job has InkDrive files). • Imposition Layout - Exports the Imposition Layout and Marks files for the selected job (only available when the job has received layout information 'from Input'). • Output Device PPD - Creates a PPD file for the selected output device. • Hot Ticket PPD - Creates a PPD file for the selected Hot Ticket.
Open in ProductionCenter	Opens the selected job in the ProductionCenter web application.
Check Consistency	• Checks Ticket Templates and/or Hot Tickets for changed parameter sets and job resources. Any out-of-date references can be updated, and are listed in a Consistency report. This option requires Administrator access level.
Open in Production Dashboard	Opens the selected job in the Production Dashboard web application
Log on / Log off	Allows you to log on to an Asecuri System, or to log off from one. When logging on, the Connect to System dialog box is displayed. If you are already logged on to an Asecuri System, you are asked to confirm before proceeding. Note that Log on always ignores your "automatically log on" preference.
Quit / Exit	Closes the Asecuri Client .

Edit Menu

This menu allows you to find, select, and edit job items. In Windows, you can also access the Preferences from here.

Edit Menu Item	Description
Undo / Can't Undo	Undoes the last Cut, Copy, or Paste operation (only enabled when editing).
Cut	Deletes the selected text, and copies it onto the clipboard.
Copy	Copies the selected text onto the clipboard.
Paste	Pastes the contents of the clipboard at the selected location.
Delete <selected item>	Deletes the current selection.
View Item From	Displays the selected item using the default viewer. You cannot edit the item.
Edit <selected item>	Displays the selected item using the default editor, where you can modify the item.
Edit Imposition	Opens the selected item in the main Apogee Impose window.
Duplicate Job	Duplicates the selected job.
Create Versions	Opens the Create Versions assistant.
Merge Jobs	Merges the selected jobs.
Rename	Renames the selected item.
Select	• All - Selects all items in the current view. • Even Positions - Selects all even placeholders/pages (Page Store Only). • Odd Positions - Selects all odd placeholders/pages (Page Store Only). • Empty Positions - Selects all empty placeholders (Page Store Only). • Different from Expected - Selects all pages in the Run list which have a different size from the expected page size specified in the job. • Fronts - Selects all front sides when the view is set to "Fronts and Backs" (Results tab only). • Backs - Selects all back sides when the view is set to "Fronts and Backs" (Results tab only). • Flat - Selects flat (both front and back sides). • Signature - Selects all sides in the signature when the view is set to "Fronts and Backs" (Results tab only).
Find	• <Page> in Page Store - Allows you to select a page in the Run List or Page Layout pane, and then find the selected page in the Page Store.
Adapt Part's Page Size	• Sets the finished trim size of a Product part to match the pages in the Run List. Pages need to be assigned in the Run List.

Edit Menu Item	Description
Page Adjustments	• Offset By... - Allows you to adjust the offset of the selected page(s) or placeholder(s). • Scale By... - Allows you to adjust the scale of the selected page(s) or placeholder(s). • Rotate By... - Allows you to adjust the rotation of the selected page(s) or placeholder(s). • Edit / View - Opens the Adjustments dialog box for the selected page(s)/placeholder(s). If you are not editing the job, the Adjustments dialog box is read-only. • Clear - Deletes all page adjustments.
Placeholder	• Insert... - Allows you to insert or append placeholders. • Remove... - Removes the selected placeholders from the Run List (disabled when there are no blank pages in the selection). • Make Blank - Puts a blank page in the selected placeholder(s).
Reverse Page Order	Reverses the page order of selected pages placed in the Run List.
Preferences	Opens the Preferences .

Control Menu

This menu allows you to control the processing of jobs, results and Task Processors. These items are active only after you have selected a job in the Job List. This menu is not available for the System Overview.

Control Menu Item	Description
Rush Job	Upgrades the selected job to a Rush job.
Hold <selected item>	Suspends all processing of the selected job(s), result(s) or Task Processor(s) after the current activity for the items has been allowed to finish. This option is disabled if all items are already on hold.
Resume <selected item>	Resumes processing of the selected job(s), result(s) or Task Processor(s) This option is disabled if all items are already running.
Continue <selected item>	Continues all or part of a job that has stopped. The job may have stopped because it has reached a hold Action in its Production Plan, or because it has been aborted, rejected, or in error.
Clear and Rebuild Run List	Used in Versioning jobs to remove all pages from the Run List, then rebuild it using the version names available in the input documents.
Reject <selected item>	Rejects the selected item(s). All processing will be stopped for the rejected item(s).
Stop Plating	Stops the plating process (only available for PrintDrive jobs).
Clear Rejected Status	Removes the rejected status from a previously rejected job, and restarts processing.
Discard	Prevents specific pages, flats or separations from being printed, without stopping the rest of the job from being printed. Available only when the items are waiting on a Hold action or when finished.

Control Menu Item	Description
Include	Includes discarded items.
Re-render <selected item>	Remakes all the existing job results which follow the selected point in the Production Plan. You may want to re-render a job if you have changed your resources (new fonts, color books, etc.) or if you want to remake aborted results, or remake output when no raster data is available.
Re-image <selected item>	Remakes previously imaged raster data (Digital Film) on your output devices. This feature is available only for flows that have an imaging output device and finished raster data.
Re-export <selected item>	Re-exports previously exported results (when resources have changed or exported files have to be recreated).
Re-print <selected item>	Remakes previously imaged raster data (Digital Film) on a digital press. This feature is available only for flows that have a digital press and finished raster data.
Restart Job Processing At	Restarts processing the selected items from a point in the flow. Jobs offer the full list of Task Processors from the main flow: Documents only offer the Task Processors up to and including the Run List.
Enable Inputs	Re-activates all input channels for the selected job(s) or Hot Ticket(s). By default, input channels are enabled. This option is disabled if all job(s) or Hot Ticket(s) have their inputs enabled.
Disable Inputs	De-activates all input channels for the selected job(s) or Hot Ticket(s). This option is disabled if all job(s) or Hot Ticket(s) have their inputs disabled. A Ticket cannot produce any jobs while disabled.
Mark as Finished	Marks the selected job as finished, aborting all current processing and removing all outstanding tasks.

Processor Menu

This menu allows you to control the operation of Task Processors (System Overview only).

Processor Menu Item	Description
Start	Starts the selected Task Processor(s). This option is disabled if all Task Processor(s) are active.
Stop	Stops the selected Task Processor(s). This option is disabled if all Task Processor(s) are stopped.
Restart	Restarts the selected Task Processor(s).
Put Offline	Disables the scheduling of tasks for the selected Output Task Processor. This option is disabled if all Output Task Processors are offline.

Processor Menu Item	Description
Put Online	Enables the scheduling of tasks for the selected Output Task Processor. This option is disabled if all Output Task Processors are online.
Exposure Test	Submits an Exposure Test job for the selected platesetter. This command is available only for platesetters (e.g. Galileo, Palladio)
Configure	Allows you to access the Configuration settings of the selected output device. Administrator access level required,
Resources	Allows you to quickly access the resources of the selected Task Processor.
Flush	Starts printing the collected output for ganging (proofer), or flushes the drum (imagesetter) and cuts the media.

View Menu

This menu allows you to control what information is displayed and how it is displayed. This affects the look of the current window, but does not open or close windows. View Menu items are only active after you have selected the Results tab in the Jobs Window, or in the Ticket Editor.

View Menu Item	Description
Flats Only	Displays only the flat outlines in the Job Layout Pane. In this mode, you cannot select individual pages.
Thumbnails	Displays thumbnail images of all pages in the Job Layout pane.
Page Labels	Displays/Hides the Page Label column in the Run List.
Run List Indexes	Displays/Hides the Run List indexes in the Run List.
Extended Page Adjustments	Extends the Adj column in the Run List to display extra icons (up to 4 icons) which indicate specific page adjustments in the job.
Extras	Displays checked items from the Show menu.
Highlight Unplaced Pages	Highlights against a green background the pages in the Page Store that have not been placed in the Run List.
Show	• Page number - Shows the position of the page in the Run List (Results tab only). • Hold States - Shows pages and flats in blue when on hold (Results tab only).

View Menu Item	Description
Scale	• Small - Displays small thumbnails (Results tab only). • Normal - Displays normal thumbnails (Results tab only). • Large - Displays large thumbnails (Results tab only). • Fit to Window - Scales the results in the Job Layout pane so that they fit horizontally within the width of the pane - otherwise a fixed scaling is used (Results tab only). In the Run List on the Pages tab, these commands scale the page labels for versioning jobs.
Columns	• Front and Back - Displays two columns of pages/flats, and “front”, “back” and “signature” labels in the Job Layout pane. • Fill Width - Displays as many columns of pages/flats as will fit in the width of the Job Layout pane. • 1-10 - Displays the pages/flats over the specified number of columns in the Job Layout pane.
Flow	• Results tab only. Selects the results from the selected flow for viewing.
Panes	• Devices: Opens or closes the Device pane (Hot Ticket and Job Lists only). • Job List: Opens or closes the Job List. • Flow Activity: Opens or closes the Activity pane (Job list/ Results tab only). • Systems: Shows/hides the Hardware pane (System Overview only). • Production Sets • Separations • Resources: Shows/hides the Resources pane (System Overview only).
Versions	Allows you to view All, Previous or Next versions.

View Menu for Raster Preview

The Raster Preview View menu groups all commands that relate to the Preview window. Most of these commands are also available as tools and/or keyboard shortcuts.

Preview Menu Item	Description
Zoom In	Zooms in on the image in the Preview window. Each time you click the Zoom In tool, the zoom factor is doubled, until you reach the maximum zoom-in level (32:1).
Zoom Out	Zooms out on the image in the Preview window. Each time you click the Zoom Out tool, the zoom factor is halved, until you reach the maximum zoom-out level (1:128).
Size To Fit	Selects a zoom level that fits the entire image in the Preview window.

Preview Menu Item	Description
Actual Pixels	Sets the zoom level to 1(each raster pixel is represented by a single display pixel).
Next Side	Displays the next side in the job.
Previous Side	Displays the previous side in the job.
First Side	Displays the first side in the job.
Last Side	Displays the last side in the job.
Turn Sheet	Raster Preview always groups results which have 2 sides (front and back). When viewing results, use this option to toggle the view (front or back).
Color Managed	Displays the raster data using color management to convert the press color space to the monitor color space, based on ICC profiles.
Light Table	Displays blended front/back viewing, allowing you to check the registration of the front and backs, or view whether you have problematic ink coverage.
Rule-Ups	Displays the rule-ups you specified in the Rule-Ups floating palette. This allows you to display additional layers of information on top of the Raster Preview image. These include: Art Box, Trim Box, Crop Box, Bleed Box, Media Box.
Boxes	Allows you to directly toggle on or off any of the following indicators which may be displayed over the raster data: • Art Box • Trim Box • Crop Box • Bleed Box • Media Box • Expected Page Size • Press Sheet Size
Press Sheet	Displays raster data as if it were a press sheet.
Device Output	Displays raster data as it would appear output from an imaging device.
Transform	• Rotate 90 CW: Rotates the current view 90 degrees clockwise. • Rotate 90 CCW: Rotates the current view 90 degrees counterclockwise. • Flip Horizontal: Flips the current view horizontally. • Flip Vertical: Flips the current view vertically. • Invert: Inverts the current view (negative).
Rulers	Toggles on or off the Ruler in the Preview window.
Grid	Toggles on or off the Grid in the Preview window.

Control Menu for Raster Preview

Preview Menu Item	Description
QuickProof	Opens the QuickProof dialog box (only available for 1-bit screened data for CTP/CTF devices).

Window Menu

This menu allows you to open, rearrange, and switch between the Asecuri windows. You can also hide or show any subsidiary windows, and bring any currently displayed window to the front. This menu also lists the titles of all open windows (in order of creation). The currently active window title has a checkmark.

Window Menu Item	Description
Zoom Window	Opens or switches to the Preview window (OS X Raster Preview only).
Minimize Window	Minimizes the frontmost window (OS X only).
Bring All to Front	Brings all Asecuri windows to the front (OS X Raster Preview only).
Cycle Through Windows	OS X only.
New Window	Opens a new Jobs or Raster Preview window.
System Overview	Opens or switches to the System Overview window.
Hot Tickets	Opens or switches to the Hot Tickets window.
Jobs	Opens or switches to the last Jobs window.
Message Board	Opens or switches to the Message Board.
Go to ProductionCenter	Opens the ProductionCenter application in your default internet browser, for example, to manage WebApproval and PrintSphere users.
Go to PrintSphere	Opens the PrintSphere file-sharing application in your default internet browser, for example, to manage PrintSphere users.
Go to SphereCenter	Opens the SphereCenter application in your default internet browser, for example, to set up a PrintSphere subscription.
Go to StoreFront	Opens the StoreCenter application in your default internet browser, for example, to create StoreFront online web stores.
Activity for Task Processor	Opens an Activity window for the selected Task Processor(s). You can open multiple Activity windows.
Info for <selected item>	Opens an Info window for the selected item(s). You can open multiple Info windows (PDF documents only).
Info From	Opens an Info window on the selected item(s) results. You can select the latest or any other of the available results.

Window Menu Item	Description
Remarks	Opens the Remarks window, where you can view some or all comments that were added to this job, as well as the source of the comments (e.g. the Delano System).
Log for <selected item>	Opens a Log window for the selected item(s). You can open multiple Log windows.
Problem Report for <selected item>	Opens a Problem Report window for the selected item(s). You can open multiple Problem Report windows (PDF documents only).
Preflight Report	Opens a Preflight Report window for the selected item(s). You can open multiple Preflight Report windows (PDF documents only).
Palettes (Raster Preview only)	• Show/Hide Navigator: Opens or closes the Navigator palette. • Show/Hide Inks: Opens or closes the Inks palette. • Show/Hide Rule-ups: Opens or closes the Rule-ups palette. • Show/Hide Versions: Opens or closes the Versions palette. • Show/Hide Tools: Opens or closes the Tools palette.

Help Menu

This menu allows you to access the Help system. In Windows, it also includes additional application-specific commands.

Help Menu Item	Description
About Asecuri	Displays the splash screen and software version number. Click anywhere in the About box to dismiss it).
Check for Client Updates	Checks whether you have the latest version of the Asecuri client. See the Installation Guide for more information on Client Updates.
Asecuri Help	Opens the first page of the Asecuri Reference Guide.
What's This?	Allows you to access context-sensitive help on the selected item.
Icons	Displays help information on the Asecuri icons.
Keyboard Shortcuts	Lists the Asecuri keyboard shortcuts.
Variables	Lists the Asecuri variables.
Asecuri Online	Launches your web browser to view: • Asecuri Network: the Asecuri Network home page • Asecuri Tutorials: practical lessons to help you work with Asecuri • Asecuri Forum: an online forum where users of Asecuri can post questions and answers • Download: links to download various files to help you work with Asecuri.

Help Menu Item	Description
Asecuri Report	• Basic - Uses your browser to display a summarized overview of the Asecuri System. • Extended - Uses your browser to display a detailed report of the Asecuri System.
Licenses	• Load License File... - Allows you to select and open an Asecuri license file. The license file is then sent to the system for evaluation. • Save Fingerprint File... - Allows you to save an Asecuri license file in a specific location.
Configuration Wizard	Launches the configuration wizard.

Toolbar

The Toolbar allows you to quickly apply common commands. The buttons displayed vary from window to window, and are available only after you have selected a job in the Job List or job results in the Results tab.

Most of these commands can also be accessed from the Control and Edit menus.

Submit job or submit changes to a job.

Delete the selected item.

Edit Ticket.

View <selected item> (Job Ticket Editor only).

Make Blank (page in Run List - Job Ticket Editor only).

Give priority to processing the selected job (Rush job).

Hold job, or put device offline (System Overview).

Resume a job on hold, or put device online (System Overview).

Continue processing <selected item>.

Reject <selected item>.

	Reprocess job from first.
	Re-image <selected item>.
	Enables the selected Hot Ticket (Hot Tickets window only).
	Disables the selected Hot Ticket (Hot Tickets window only).
	Display information about <selected item>.

Navigation Bar

You can switch between the three management windows by clicking in the Navigation bar, which is located at the bottom of each window.

On the righthand side of the Navigation bar, you will see the Activity Indicator. This indicator is visually active whenever the Client is busy retrieving data from the Server.

Message Indicator

The Message Indicator flashes when one or more of the jobs or devices needs attention. You can click the Message Indicator to open the Message Board and find out what has caused the alarm. The Message Indicator will continue to flash until you acknowledge the event that caused the alarm.

If all the messages in the Message Board have been acknowledged, the Message Indicator stops flashing, but maintains a steady red glow. This is turned off when there are no messages to report.

Even when the Message Indicator is not flashing, you can click it to quickly access the Message Board.

If the Asecuri Client is minimized or hidden, your Operating System's alert mechanism will notify you of any messages with a flashing button in the Taskbar.

Tab Area

The Tab Area appears in the Jobs window, and in the Ticket Editor. In the right of the Tab Area are the tabs you can select to view or edit the selected job (Administration, Options, Plan, Pages, Results.). These tabs are active only after you have selected a job in the Job List.

In the left of the Tab Area you will see the name of the selected job.

Job Status Icons in Tab Area (JTE only)

The Tab Area may display additional information when you are working in the Job Ticket Editor. In some situations, the job name may be followed by a small icon which indicates the current status of the job:

The job is being viewed by you or by another user (JTE only).

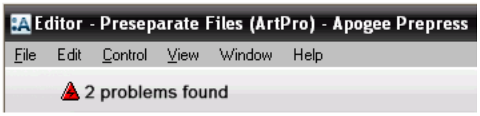
The job is being edited by another user.

You are editing the job.

The selected job was being edited by you or by another user, but the edit session was broken (Jobs window only). You can remove this icon by opening the job for editing.

For example:

If there are problems with a job you are creating or editing in the Ticket Editor, you will see the following type of message in the Tab Area:



In this case, you can click the red error icon to access a Problem Report.

Viewing Messages

The Message Board is your troubleshooting tool within Asecuri. It provides information on jobs, devices, or systems which need attention, and gives you a number of correction options. You can access the Message Board from anywhere in the Asecuri Client. You can also filter it based on a number of different criteria, and on combinations of criteria.

▷ To open the Message Board

- Do one of the following:
  - Click the Message Indicator in any of the management windows.
  - Choose Window > Message Board.

Message Board

The Message Board consists of a Filter pane, Message List, Acknowledge Pane, and Interaction pane.

- The Filter and Message List work together: The messages displayed are determined by the filter (if any) you apply.
- The Acknowledge and Interaction panes work together: They display detailed information on the selected message, and let you decide how the alert should be handled.

Filter pane

The Filter pane allows you to specify which types of messages are displayed in the Message Board. For example, you may only want to see critical warnings, or be notified when user intervention is required. You apply a filter by clicking the Filter icon, and specifying your filter options.

The Filter pane also indicates how many messages have been generated, and how many of these messages have been selected, read, and acknowledged.

When a filter has been used, you will see the text:

Notice that the Filter icon is colored green when the filter has been applied.

By default, all messages are displayed (i.e. no filter is applied).

For example, if you see the text:

```
18 new messages, 21 messages displayed
```

This means there are 21 messages in total, of which 3 have been read and acknowledged. In this case, no filter is applied.

Message List

The Message List displays the status, date, location, and description of each message.

Message status One of the following status symbols is displayed:

 The Asecuri system issued a critical message.

 The job has stopped pending user interaction.

 The job has generated an error, and has stopped.

 The job has generated a warning.

 WebApproval message: A message on this job (or results) was received from WebApproval.

 The job has generated an information message.

NOTE: These status symbols also appear in the Job List.

Date occurred Displays the time and date at which the message was generated. You can sort the messages according to date by clicking the arrow in this column header. Each time you click the arrow, the sort is toggled between ascending and descending order.

Location Displays the name of the job, device, or system which generated the message. If this is a job, then the job order number is also displayed in parentheses. You can sort the messages according to location by clicking the arrow in this column header. Each time you click the arrow, the sort is toggled alphabetically between ascending and descending order.

Description Displays an abbreviated version of the message. You can view the full message by selecting it. You can sort the messages according to description by clicking the arrow in this column header. Each time you click the arrow, the sort is toggled alphabetically between ascending and descending order.

Message background color Each message row has a colored background:

Pink: The message has not yet been Acknowledged.

Yellow: This is the currently selected message.

Gray: The message has been Acknowledged.

Acknowledge pane

The Acknowledge pane displays information and the acknowledgement status of the currently selected message in the Message List.

Message summary Displays the summarized message text from the Message List Description column.

Reported by Indicates which Task Processor generated the message, and when, in the format “Reported by <Task Processor> at <time and date>”.

Acknowledgement status Indicates who (if anybody) first acknowledged the message, and when, in the format “acknowledged by <user> at <time and date>”.

Acknowledgement button Click this button once you have read the message. Any Errors or Warnings that you acknowledge are removed from the Message List. User Interaction messages remain in the list until the required action has been taken.

Notification/Interaction pane

Notification message Displays a more detailed version of the message. Some messages are followed by a suggested course of action, such as:

```
“There is no location for exporting the system log. The default
      C:\Apogee Prepress\SysLog\$DATE.log will be used”
```

Interactive dialog buttons. Some messages include interactive dialog buttons which allow you to correct the cause of the error or warning. For example, Retry, Abort Task, Update, Don’t Update, or Yes/No buttons.

The Edit Job button always appears for job notification messages. You can click this button to edit the job directly, and correct the problem. The Edit Job button is not available for System messages.

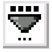
NOTE: If you select more than one message, you will see no specific message information, only “x messages selected”.

Filtering Messages

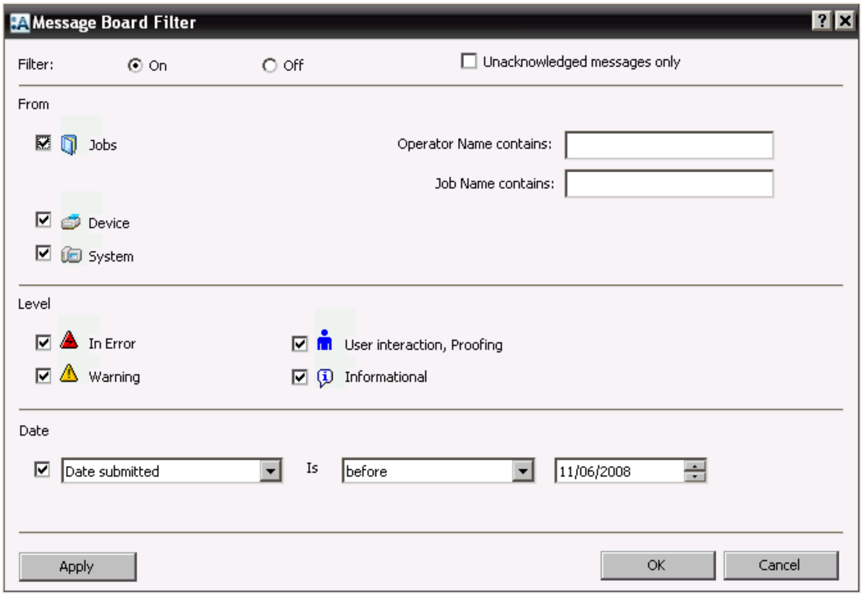
You can filter the Message Board based on a number of different criteria, and on combinations of criteria.

To filter messages in the Message Board

- Click the Filter icon.



The Message Board Filter dialog box is displayed.



Any filters you specify are cumulative. Only the messages which match all the specified criteria are displayed.

Message Board Filter

You can apply three types of filters. The options you select in each type are combined to produce a highly customizable filtering mechanism:

- From: Shows only messages generated by the selected module(s).
- Level: Shows only messages of a specific level(s) of importance or urgency.
- Date: Shows only messages from a specific time frame.

Filter

On/Off Activate or deactivate the filter by clicking the Filter On or Off radio button.

Unacknowledged messages only Select this check box to display only the messages which have not yet been acknowledged.

From

Jobs To filter messages based on a particular operator or job name, select the Jobs check box, click the associated list box, and choose one of the following:

- Operator Name contains: This is the name of an operator as specified in the Administration tab of one or more tickets. Enter the operator's name here. When you apply the filter, all messages which relate to jobs belonging to this operator will be displayed.
- Job Name contains: This is the name of a job as specified in the Administration tab of a ticket. Enter the job name here. When you apply the filter, all messages relating to this job will be displayed.

Device **Administrator access level only!**

To filter messages based on a particular output device, select the Devices check box, click the associated list box, and choose one of the available output devices (such as printers, imagesetters, proofers, etc.).

When you apply the filter, all messages which relate to the selected device will be displayed.

System **Administrator access level only!**

To filter messages based on those generated by the Asecuri System (such as Task Processors, Asecuri Client, etc.), select the System check box.

Level

To filter messages by type, select one or more of the Level filtering check boxes.

In Error Filter on jobs which have generated an error.

Warning Filter on jobs which have generated a warning.

User interaction, proofing Filter on jobs which require user intervention or proofing.

Informational Filter on jobs which have generated a message (information only).

Date

To filter messages by date, select the Date filtering check box, and use the three associated list boxes to choose a specific date or time window.

Apply and OK

Click Apply to save your settings. Click OK to close the Message Board Filter.

TIP: Simply clicking OK will both apply your changes and close the Message Board Filter.

The filter is applied immediately. This is confirmed by the message "(Filter Applied)" in the Filter pane.

Critical Messages

If the Asecuri system detects a situation that jeopardizes the proper functioning of the system (for example, low disk space), it issues a critical message.

A critical message is a high-priority message that cannot be filtered or acknowledged. Because these messages require immediate action, the client intercepts them and displays a special alert window. The client also checks the presence of critical messages at startup.

The Critical System Alert window is a floating window that can be moved but cannot be closed until the particular problem is resolved. This window does not prevent interaction with the client, but normal operation may be affected because of the critical condition of the server (slow response, processing on hold, etc.). The window lists the critical messages and corresponding timestamps. It also includes a 'Review' button which you can use to open the Message Board to view only the critical messages.

Viewing Remarks

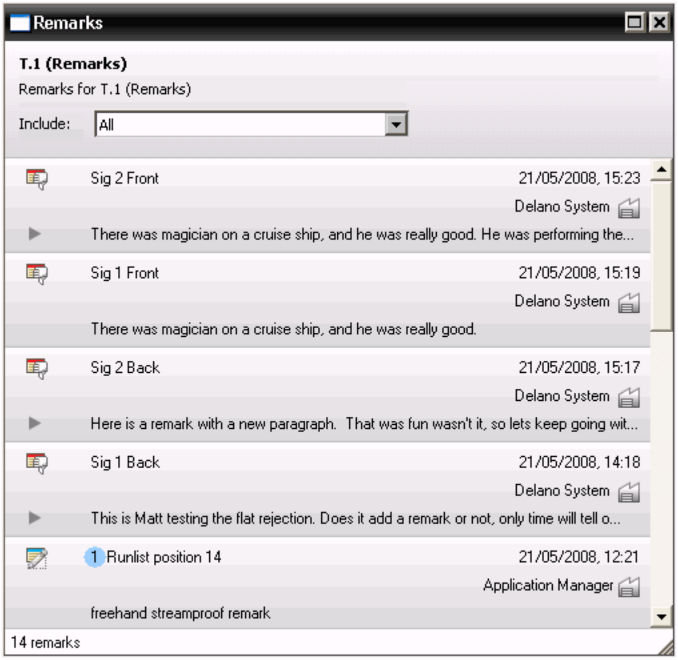
Asecuri jobs are integrated with WebApproval. This means that jobs which include a Web Proof Action can be viewed and assessed by interested third-party's, such as print buyers. These users can add their comments about the job, and can approve or reject it. This feedback can be viewed in Asecuri, where you can open the Remarks Inspector and view some or all comments that were added to this job, as well as the source of the comments (e.g. the WebApproval System).

▷ To open the Remarks Inspector

1 Select a job with a WebApproval message.

2 Select Window > Remarks.

The Remarks Inspector is displayed.



3 Click the arrow at the bottom of each remark to view the full text.

NOTE: You can click the "hot spot" of an annotation remark to open the Raster Preview Client.

---

4 Click the Include list to filter the displayed remarks as follows:

- All
- Today
- Last 2 days
- Last 3 days
- One week
- Most recent

A number of icons are associated with each remark.

Monitor Status


The monitor status is up to date and the overall display rating is greater than 90% (Excellent).


The monitor status is up to date and the overall display rating is between 80% and 90% (Medium).


The monitor status is up to date and the overall display rating is less than 80% (Bad).


There is no monitor status, or it is out of date (Undefined).

Remark Origin


Customer remark (WebApproval jobs only).


Printer remark (WebApproval jobs only).

Remark Type


An annotation remark created in WebApproval. Click the associated (blue -encircled) annotation number to jump directly to the referenced location in Raster Preview.


The job has been approved by the corresponding reviewer (printer, customer).


The job has been rejected by the corresponding reviewer (printer, customer).


A job remark.


A page remark.


Preflight remark


Preflight remark - warning

	Preflight remark - error
	Internal remark which cannot be seen by the customer
	Remark has attachment (customer remarks only)
	View file produced after preflight
	View report produced by preflight

Additionally, you may see blue-circled number next to the remark text. You can click this number to jump directly to the referenced location in the job.

Preferences

Your Preferences are divided into the following categories:

- General
- Logging On
- Viewers
- Imposition Editor
- Validation
- Layout Editor

General

Display units

Select the unit of measurement that you want Asecuri to display and the Precision of the measurements.

- millimeters
- inches

Notifications

Select the check box to hear a sound when critical system messages are generated.

User Interaction

- Enable double-clicking a job to Edit: Select the check box if you want to open a job in the Job List by double-clicking it. The job will open in the Job Ticket Editor or the Layout Editor, depending on the type of job.
- Open Layout Editor when imposition is Layout: Select if you always want to open packaging jobs in the Layout Editor.
- Open Product Editor when double-clicking a product (in stead of Preview): Select the check box to open the Product Editor when you double-click a product in the Product panel of the Layout Editor (default). Clear the check box if you want the product to open in the Raster Preview module and automatically create a preview.
- Prompt for details when adding artwork files: Select this option if you want to control how products are named when you select artwork to add products in the Layout Editor. See “Adding Products from Artwork” on page 264.

Language

Lists all the languages in which the user interface is available. The available languages were selected when the Asecuri System was installed.

JDF Sheet Names

Show MIS press sheet names when present: Select this option to display JDF sheet names instead of Asecuri names, in the Results tab and main Apogee Impose windows.

Job Operator

The job operator receives notifications that pertain to his/her jobs. This option determines whether the operator field in a job can be edited at anytime, or whether it is locked after a job has been submitted.

Lock operator name after submitting the job: The Operator field is locked and cannot be edited after the job has been submitted. This is the default setting.

Always allow changing the operator name: The Operator field remains editable at all times. Note that the operator field is always editable if it is empty or when it contains a 'JDF' string, regardless of the preference.

Create color-managed Previews

Select the check box to automatically create color-managed previews and calculate final output CMYK values when you add new images to a layout job, in the Layout Editor. It is recommended to leave this option off unless you always need color-managed previews in the Layout Editor.

Logging On

The Logging On tab defines your access rights, and allows you to specify how the Client selects and logs on to an Asecuri System.

User name

Enter the name supplied to you by your Asecuri administrator.

Preferred system

Enter the name of the system you want to connect to at startup. You can also click the Browse button and select a system from the displayed list.

Password

Enter the password supplied to you by your Asecuri administrator.

Automatically log on at startup

Select this check box if you want to automatically log on to your preferred Asecuri System each time the Client is started.

Viewers

There are two viewers: PDF Viewer, for checking PDF job results and Raster Preview, for checking raster job results.

PDF Viewer/Editor

If you want to be able preview PDF job results in the Pages or Results tabs of the Jobs window, you must specify where your viewing application is located. This tab defines the applications that can be used for viewing and/or editing PDF files.

You can add applications using **Add** button (+). This opens a standard File Open dialog where you can select an executable file. To remove an application, select the application, and click the **Delete** button (x).

Use as Default Viewer: Select that option, if you want to use an application as the Default Viewer. Default Viewer Application is shown in bold text.

NOTE: Acrobat Reader will always display the first page of the job. To directly view a specific page within the job, you need to use Acrobat Professional.

Raster Preview

These fields allow you to specify the settings that will be used by Raster Preview. You can temporarily override any of these settings while you are previewing pages. However, this does not change the default settings.

Gridline every: Sets the default units of measurement of the grid (cms, inches, mms, picas, pixels, or points), and the distance between the major gridline divisions.

Subdivisions: The grid displays gridlines for every major and minor division of the ruler. Major divisions are drawn in solid blue, subdivisions in light blue. This parameter sets the distance between the gridline subdivisions.

Auto-switch zoom factor: Select the switchover point from low resolution (contone) viewing to high resolution viewing when previewing a job (4x, 2x, 1, 1/2, 1/4, 1/8).

Display single separation in color: When you view a single separation (a single separation selected in the Raster preview Inks palette), it is by default displayed in grayscale. If you select this check box, it is displayed in color. If more than 1 separation is selected in the Raster Preview, these separations are always displayed in color.

When preview is color managed

You can choose from the following for color-managed previewed results:

Rendering Intent: The following Rendering Intents available, although not all profiles contain Look Up tables (LUTs) for each of them. In this case often a duplicate of one Look Up table is used for missing Render Intent LUT. The Rendering Intent defines the way the source colors are mapped to the destination space.

- Relative Colorimetric: A colorimetric conversion, tries to maintain the exact relationship (Smallest Delta E), between in-gamut colors, while out of gamut colors will be clipped. With Relative Colorimetric RI the white point from source color space is mapped to the white point of destination, this means that white stays white. No ink will be placed in white areas.

- Absolute Colorimetric: Absolute Colorimetric rendering intent is similar to Relative except that here the white point of the two profiles is preserved. White of source color space is simulated with CMYK values from the destination color space. The consequence is that every white object/area is covered with certain ink amounts.

Accurate Spot Color Mixing: In this enhanced mode, spot color visualization is superior to the standard color-managed mode. You can choose from the following:

- Off
- Max. 2 colors
- Max. 3 colors

Use Press Paper White: Pantone\spot color inks are transparent and appear differently when printed on different substrates. Normally, you should select this option when creating a proof which will be used by the printer to print a spot color on the Press (when the simulated spot color on proof needs to resemble the final printed result). In this case, the paper white from the press profile is used in the color calculation.

If this option is not selected, the measured paper white of the color book is used in the calculation of the spot colors. The option should therefore be deselected when the simulated spot colors on the proof are compared to the color book reference prints (with a measurement device, for example).

NOTE: A spectral press profile is required for this option.

Line Appearance

Display design lines using: Selects the Line Appearance Set used by the Layout Editor and Product Editor to draw the Operations. The following options are available from the drop-down list:

- Fixed: Draw the Operations using the fixed colors (default option).
- <list-of-line-appearance-sets>: The list of all available Line Appearance set resources, sorted alphabetically in ascending order.
- Manage Line Appearance Sets: Opens the Line Appearance Set resource editor.

Imposition Editor

This tab is used to set your preferences for Apogee Impose.

When closing the Imposition Editor Choose your preferred behavior for when you close the main Apogee Impose windows.

Assembly View Choose how you want the Product assembly to be viewed in the Assembly pane.

Apogee Impose Client License Select 'Make this an Apogee Impose editing station' if you want an Apogee Impose license to be assigned to this particular user.

Auto Fit Enter the time in seconds to allow Apogee Impose to search for an Auto Fit rule in automatic imposition mode.

Validation

These validation checks only performed for Apogee Impose jobs.

Product Intent Select the **Warn when amount of Kept spot colors doesn't match the Part's spot colors** check box to generate warnings when the number of spot colors in the parts is not equal to the kept spot colors in the Separation operation.

Apogee Imposition Select the option to allow the job to be submitted with imposition errors. This means that the press sheets must be inspected before further processing.

Layout Editor

These preferences are used by the Layout Editor.

Fitting Options This field allows you to control Fitting Options for any frame that is created in the Layout Editor.

Auto-fit: Select the **Enable Auto-fit for new frames** check box to enable Auto-fit option when a new frame is created. This check box is selected by default.

NOTE: This option is only applicable when you create a new frame in the Layout Editor. Frames which are present in the existing Jobs, Ticket Templates and Sheet Layout are not affected.

You can select the **Show Auto-fit option in Position bar** check box when you want to show the Auto-fit option in the Position bar. You can use that option to prevent the change of the Auto-fit option accidentally.

Snapping and Guides This field groups the preferences for snapping and the guides in the Layout Editor.

Snap distance: The threshold distance (in pixels) at which the items will be snapped to the nearest item. The default value is 10 pixels.

Check alignment distance: The threshold distance on a sheet at which the frames will be checked for alignment to the guide(s). The default value is 3 mm.

▷ To open your Preferences

- Choose Edit > Preferences.

Customizing Your Work Area

When you start the Asecuri Client, the Jobs window is automatically opened. From here, you can open the other Main windows (Hot Tickets and System Overview), and arrange all three windows on your desktop.

You can reposition and resize each window, and adjust the panes inside the windows. Most of these panes can be resized by dragging the pane borders. Some panes also have an expansion triangle. This is a small triangular icon in the centre edge of the pane pointing either to the right or left. For example, the Job List pane in the Jobs window has an expansion triangle on the right edge. You can close the pane, and open it again by clicking on this expansion triangle.

When you quit the Client, any adjustments you have made to the positions and sizes of the windows and panes are saved. The next time you start the Client, The Jobs window will open with these new settings. When you open the other Main window, these too are restored with the last settings used (position and size).

▷ To adjust the width of a pane

1. Select a pane, and position the mouse pointer over the one of the borders.

   If the pointer changes to a two-headed arrow, you can adjust it.

2. Click and drag the pointer to the left or right, and release the mouse button.

CHAPTER 4

Previewing Job Results

This section describes how you can view and analyze job results. On the basis of this detailed preview, you can then approve and send the job results directly to an output device, or reject them.

- Asecuri Soft Previews 78
- Raster Preview 78
  - Post-Preview Options 79
- Preview Window and Tools 79
  - Preview Window 80
  - Navigator Palette 81
  - Inks Palette 81
  - Rule-ups Palette 83
  - Tools Palette 84
  - Preview Menus 86
- Zooming Images 86
- Changing the Default View 88
- Measuring Ink Coverage 92
- Measuring Screen Angles 95
- Measuring Line Frequency 96
- Color-Managed Raster Preview 97
- Depth Tool 98
- Distortion 99
- Comparing Results 100
- Approving/Rejecting Jobs 102
- Viewing/Editing Raster Preview Preferences 105
- QuickProof 105

Asecuri Soft Previews

You can preview your job data at any point in the Production Plan. This "soft preview" data is not physically output to a printer. Instead, the job data is displayed on-screen.

There are two types of Preview:

- PDF Preview: The purpose of a PDF Preview is to allow you to check PDF job results (flats or pages) on-screen, before the job is rendered. No physical output results are generated.

- Raster Preview: The purpose of a Raster Preview is to allow you to check raster job results (flats or pages) on-screen, after the job has been rendered. No physical output results are generated. Raster Preview is an integrated part of Asecuri, and is described in detail in this section.

Raster Preview

Raster Preview allows you to examine rasterized job data. Once Asecuri has rendered one or more jobs, you can select and view the individual job pages by double-clicking the job results in the Job Layout pane. Asecuri creates an exact, viewable image of the data on your front-end workstation. The requested raster data is displayed as a series of overlapping separations. You can open and view pages at different magnifications, and check individual color separations, ink coverage, and screen angles.

On the basis of this detailed job preview, you can approve and send the job directly to your output device (platesetter, imagesetter, etc.) or abort the job before submitting it to output. You can also save the rendered job data to disk.

Preview supports all resolutions, screening modes, and page sizes. You can simultaneously preview several pages from the same job, and multiple previews of a single page. Images can be displayed at any zoom factor from 1:128 to 32:1.

You can preview one page of a job which has been rendered, while the following page is being rendered. Overlap between "rendering/previewing" and "imaging" is also supported on a page-by-page or flat-by-flat basis.

NOTE: Preview is a “read-only” application: Tools are provided for zooming and panning the image, and for displaying various types of image information. However, no changes can be made to the raster data. If errors are found in the previewed data, the job content must be corrected in the original application, and then re-submitted.

Post-Preview Options

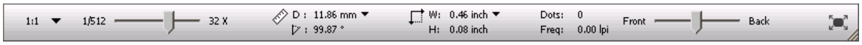
When you have finished previewing the pages of a job, you can:

- Approve the results: You can approve the previewed page, or the entire job, and send it directly to your output device. Once it has been output, the raster data is automatically deleted, and will no longer be available for previewing or imaging.
- Reject the results: You can reject the previewed page, or the entire job. Rejected items are marked with a red stripe.
- Approve rejected results: You can approve a job or item which is currently marked as rejected. This item is then treated the same as an approved item.

Preview Window and Tools

When you select and open a page or flat for previewing, the Preview window is opened on your desktop. This window displays the selected raster data, and provides a set of tools and options for viewing and measuring the data.

At the bottom of the Preview window is the status bar.



The Preview status bar contains the following tools:

- Zoom slider: You can drag the zoom slider left or right to change the zoom level. This zooms the image around the center of the Preview window.
- Screen angle measurement results: Displays the results of any screen angle measurements you perform.
- Width and height measurement results: Displays the width and height of the box defined by the diagonal you draw with the Measurements tool.

- Screen frequency results: Displays the results of any screen frequency measurements you perform (only displayed when you zoom in to view the raster data).

- Light table tool: Displays blended front and back views of your raster data. This allows you to check the registration of the front and backs, or check if there are problems with the ink coverage.

- Full screen display button: On the right is a button which switches the Preview window to full screen (the shortcut key is ‘f’). You can return to normal view by pressing the Esc key.

You can also display a series of small palettes for the currently active Preview window:

NOTE: These palettes are hidden when the active window is not a raster Preview window.

- Navigator Palette: Provides a snapshot of the entire page or flat, as a low resolution continuous tone image. Using this palette, you can focus on the detail of one area of the selected page or flat. This view can be panned and zoomed over the entire area of the page.

- Inks Palette: Allows you to view the different separations, and measures the ink coverage within the selected area of the Preview window.

- Rule-ups Palette: Rule-ups are additional layers of information which are displayed on top of the Raster Preview image. The Rule/ups palette contains a table which lists the layers you can display.

- The Tools Palette: Provides quick access to common tasks and procedures.

The Preview window and the Navigator and Inks palettes can be resized using the resize handle in the lower right corner. The location and size of all windows is remembered between sessions.

You can open several Preview windows, but only one Inks palette. These display information about the active Preview window. You can close or minimize each of the smaller palettes individually, or you can hide them all at once.

Preview Window

The Preview window displays in detail the area of the image that is currently selected by the Navigator palette locator. The Preview window displays:

- A Title bar: Shows the name of the job, followed by the page or signature number and Task Processor name.

- The selected raster data: When you open an item to preview, the selected raster data (page or flat) is initially shown as a low resolution continuous tone image. When you zoom in to approximately an 8x zoom factor, the continuous tone image is replaced with the high resolution raster data. This allows you to preview traps, halftone dots, etc. The way in which raster data is by default displayed can be customized, as described in “Preferences” on page 71.

- Ruler and Grid (optional): Preview windows can display rulers in user-selectable units of measurement (millimeters, centimeters, inches, pixels, or picas).

You can open as many Preview windows as your system resources allow. You can have several Preview windows showing the same raster data at different magnifications, or windows showing different raster data.

Navigator Palette

The Navigator palette displays a snapshot of the entire page or flats as a low resolution continuous tone image. This palette can be switched on or off by selecting Window > Palettes > Show/Hide Navigator.

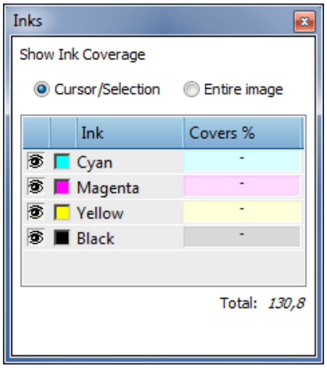
You can open a Navigator palette for every page that you preview.

The Navigator provides a view of the entire page or flat, at a low magnification: A red “locator” rectangle in the Navigator palette indicates which part of the page is enlarged in the Preview window. You can quickly preview different areas of the page by clicking the mouse pointer inside the locator and dragging it to another position. You can click outside the locator to center the view area on the clicked point.

Inks Palette

The Inks palette automatically measures the ink coverage within the selected area of the Preview window. This palette can be switched on or off by selecting Window > Palettes > Show/Hide Inks.

The Inks palette contains a table which lists the separations in the selected page or flat.



The table has three columns:

- Visibility control (eye icon): You can click the eye icon to hide the associated separation. The eye icon then disappears. You can click the same icon to display the separation again.
- Color well: Click here to open the system color picker, and select the color of the associated box. For White, Primer or Varnish, you can also set the transparency.
- Ink: The name of the separation. This may be a CMYK separation, or a spot color. This can also be White, Primer or Varnish if these are included in the document.
- Covers %: The ink coverage is expressed as a percentage, and is represented both numerically and as a color bar. The bar shows the color of the separation. The ink coverage calculation is accurate to within 3 percent of the actual ink coverage.

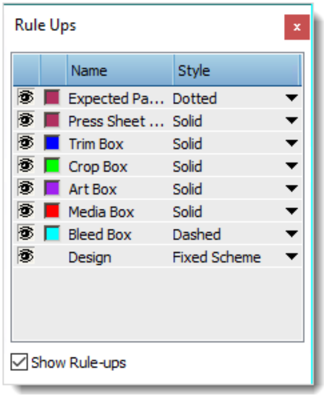
Under the table there is a 'Show ink coverage' check box. By default, this option is unchecked, and Preview does not perform any ink coverage calculations. This avoids unwanted (and possibly lengthy) calculations each time you preview raster results. Click the Cursor/Selection or Entire image button to measure the ink coverage at the cursor point, for a selected area or the entire image.

NOTE: You can press the Alt key and click on a hidden separation to show that separation, hiding all others.

The Inks palette can be resized using the resize handle in the lower right corner, and can be switched on or off by selecting Window > Palettes > Show/Hide Inks.

Rule-ups Palette

Rule-ups are additional layers of information which are displayed on top of the Raster Preview image. The Rule/ups palette contains a table which lists the layers you can display.



The table has five columns:

- Visibility control (eye icon): You can click the eye icon to hide the associated layer. The eye icon then disappears. You can click the same icon to display the layer again.
- Color well: Click here to open the system color picker, and select the color of the associated box.
- Layer: The name of the layer. This may include any of the following:
  - Trim box
  - Crop box
  - Art box
  - Media box
  - Bleed box
  - Press Sheet

- Expected Page Size
- Design

- Line Style: Click the associated dropdown list and select a line style:
  - Solid
  - Dashed (8-pixel / 6-pixel gap)
  - Dotted (1-pixel / 2-pixel gap)

  Initially all line styles are Solid.

- Design: This entry shows all paths that are associated with an Operation using the selected Line Appearance Set, regardless of their origin, i.e., from a CAD or a content file, automatically mapped or assigned manually. The last option in the drop-down menu **Manage Line Appearance Sets** opens Line Appearance Set resource editor where you can adjust or create new sets.

  NOTE: The **Design** is only shown for Layout Editor-based jobs, i.e., Wide Format jobs, Packaging jobs, Plate Assembler jobs. It is hidden for any other job types.

Under the table there is a ‘Show/Hide Rule-ups’ check box. By default, this option is unchecked, and Preview does not display any boxes.

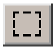
NOTE: You can press the Alt key and click on a hidden box to show that box, hiding all others.

Your last used Rule-ups palette configuration is saved locally (colors, line styles, rule-ups selection shown). It does not change when you browse through your results.

Tools Palette

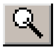
The Tools palette provides quick access to common tasks and procedures.

Each of these tools is described below.



Marquee tool. Allows you to draw a rectangle in the Preview window by clicking and dragging. The ink values for the selected region are measured and displayed in the Inks palette. For more information, see “To measure the ink coverage of a selected area” on page 92.

Hand tool. Pans the image, allowing you to view a page that exceeds the size of the Preview window. With this tool selected, click inside the Preview window and drag the image around.

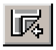


Zoom tool. Zooms in to the next zoom level in the Preview window. You can zoom out by holding down the Alt key. Alternatively, you can click and drag to zoom into a specified area.

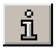
Measure tool. Measures raster angles, and distances between the raster points. You can also use it to calculate the line ruling of a separation.

Next tool: Displays the next side result (e.g. Cover Sig 1 Front > Cover Sig 1 Back > Cover Sig 2 Front > Cover Sig 2 Back etc.). If you hold down the ‘C’ key while clicking the tool, Asecuri displays the next sheet result (e.g. Cover Sig 1 Back > Cover Sig 2 Back > Cover Sig 3 Back).

Previous tool: Displays the previous side result. If you hold down the ‘C’ key while clicking the tool, Asecuri displays the previous sheet result.

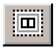


Turn Sheet tool. If your results have 2 sides (front and back), Raster Preview can switch between the two sides. Click this tool (CTRL+T) to toggle the view (front or back). This tool is disabled if the result only contains one side.



Info tool. Display information about the selected item.

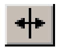
Light Table tool. Displays or hides blended front and back views of your raster data. This feature only works on the front and backs of the same signature/page.



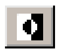
Rule-Ups tool. Displays or hides additional layers of information on top of the Raster Preview image. The Rule/ups palette contains a table which lists the layers you can display.

Rotate clockwise tool. Rotates the current view 90 degrees clockwise.


Rotate counterclockwise tool. Rotates the current view 90 degrees counterclockwise.


Flip vertical tool. Flips the current view vertically.

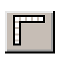

Flip horizontal tool. Flips the current view horizontally.

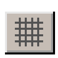

Invert tool. Inverts the current view (negative). For more information, see “To invert an image (negative)” on page 90.


Color Managed tool. Activates color-managed raster preview. This allows you to preview the rendered result using color management to convert the press color space to the monitor color space (based on ICC profiles).


Show/hide a Depth map. See “Depth Tool” on page 98.


Show/hide the Distortion. See “Distortion” on page 99.


Show/Hide rulers tool. Shows/Hides ruler coordinates in the units set in your Preferences.


Show/Hide gridlines tool. Shows/Hides gridlines for every major and minor division of the ruler. The default setting is specified in your Preferences.


Approve tool. Approves a previewed result. This tool is disabled if no soft preview has been requested.


Reject tool. Rejects a previewed result. This tool is disabled if no soft preview has been requested. .

Preview Menus

All the Preview settings and commands are grouped in the View, Control and Window menus.

Zooming Images

There are a number of different ways to zoom in and out, as described below.

The zoom level is always expressed in powers of 2. The available zoom factors are: 1:512 (1 screen pixel corresponds to 512 raster data pixels), 1:256, 1:128, 1:64, 1:32, 1:16, 1:8, 1:4, 1:2, 1:1, 2:1, and so on up to 32:1.

NOTE: When opening pages to preview, the page is initially shown as a low resolution continuous tone image. When zooming in, if you have the Raster Preview option, the continuous tone image is replaced with the high resolution raster data allowing for previewing traps, halftone dots, etc. Only the full version of Asecuri will allow for high resolution raster data previewing. Other versions of Asecuri can be upgraded to include the Raster Preview option.

▷ To zoom the Preview window using the slider or menu option

1. In the Preview status bar, drag the zoom slider to the left to zoom out (up to 1/512), or to the right to zoom in (up to 32X).

   To the left of the zoom slider, Raster Preview displays the current zoom factor. When zooming out, "1/" is displayed, followed by the zoom factor (1/2, 1/8, 1/128). When zooming in, the zoom factor is displayed, followed by a "X" (32X, 4X, 1X).

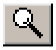
2. You can also select a zoom level from the View menu (View > Zoom In/Out). This zooms the image around the center of the preview pane. The View menu also includes the following options:

   - Size to Fit. This selects a zoom level that fits the entire image in the Preview window.

   - Actual Pixels. This sets the zoom level to 1(i.e. each raster pixel is represented by a single display pixel).

▷ To zoom in on a point using the Zoom tool

1. Click the Zoom tool.

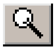
   

2. Click a point in the Preview window to zoom in on that point in the image.

   Preview calculates an appropriate zoom factor to fit the active Preview window on your screen. Each time you click the Zoom tool, the zoom factor is doubled, until you reach the maximum zoom-in level (32:1).

▷ To zoom out on a point using the Zoom tool

1. Click the Zoom tool.

2. Click a point in the Preview window while holding down the Alt key.

3 Preview zooms out on that point in the Preview window.

▷ To zoom in on an area using the Zoom tool

1 Click the Zoom tool.

2 Click-and-drag in the Preview window to select a rectangular area of your choice.

The selected area is re-scaled to fill the current window size. The re-scaling is performed to the nearest zoom factor to the power of 2.

▷ To zoom out on an area using the Zoom tool

1 Click the Zoom tool.

2 Click-and-drag in the Preview window to select a rectangular area of your choice while holding down the Alt key.

The selected area is re-scaled to fill the current window size. The re-scaling is performed to the nearest zoom factor to the power of 2.

NOTE: Each successive zoom operation that you start will interrupt any ongoing operation. This means that if you start a new operation, such as a zoom in, before an ongoing operation is completed, then the ongoing operation will be aborted.

Changing the Default View

This section explains how to manipulate the images you preview, and how to customize your viewing options. In addition to panning, rotating, flipping, and inverting images, you can also display raster data as if it were a press sheet (positive and gripper edge down), or as if it were output from an imaging device (with polarity, orientation, and reading set accordingly).

▷ To pan an image

1 Select the Pan tool.

TIP: You can also pan an image by dragging the rectangular locator in the Navigator palette.

2 Click and hold down the mouse button on a point in the Preview window.

3 While still holding down the mouse button, pan the image by moving the mouse around the Preview window.

The image is updated when you release the mouse button.

▷ To fit the image size to the screen size

1 Select View > Size To Fit.

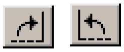
This calculates an appropriate zoom factor to make the active Preview window fit on your screen. Image re-scaling is performed to the nearest zoom factor to the power of 2.

In this mode, any area that is not covered by the image is shown with a gray and white checkerboard pattern.

▷ To rotate an image

1 Select the Preview window which contains the image you want to rotate.

2 Select View > Transform > Rotate 90 CW to rotate the image 90° clockwise, or View > Transform > Rotate 90 CCW to rotate the image 90° counterclockwise. You can also use the Rotate tools:



3 Repeat the procedure to rotate an image through 180°, or 270°.

The thumbnail in the Navigator palette reflects the new orientation. The Navigator palette does not resize; the thumbnail does. The feed direction and punch indicators are also rotated.

In “Size to Fit” mode the window size may need to grow to accommodate the new orientation and to keep the same zoom level. If this is not possible, the zoom level is adjusted to the “Size to Fit” mode. The window only grows if necessary; it never shrinks.

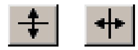
NOTE: Rotating an image does not change the raster data, or affect other views.

▷ To flip an image

1 Select the Preview window which contains the image you want to flip.

2 Select View > Transform > Flip Horizontal to flip the image on the horizontal axis (left-to-right).

3 Select View > Transform > Flip Vertical to flip the image on the vertical axis (upside-down). You can also use the Flip tools:



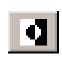
The thumbnail in the Navigator palette reflects the new orientation. The feed direction and punch indicators are also flipped.

NOTE: Flipping an image does not change the raster data, or affect other views.

▷ To invert an image (negative)

1 Select the Preview window which contains the image you want to invert.

2 Select View > Transform > Invert, or click the Invert tool.



The image is inverted. The thumbnail in the Navigator palette also reflects the new state.

Inverting an image is useful for previewing negative separations. It transposes the solid areas of an image to transparent, and transparent areas to solid, and is applied to each of the image separations.

For example, suppose an image is made up of 4 separations; cyan, magenta, yellow, and black. Each separation is actually made up of only 2 types of areas - solid areas (black) and transparent areas. When you select Invert, Preview reverses the display of these areas individually on each separation. This means that, on the cyan plate, all cyan areas are displayed as transparent, and all transparent areas are displayed as cyan. The same reversal is applied to the magenta, yellow, and black plates.

NOTE: Inverting an image does not change the raster data, or affect other views.

▷ To display a full-size image

1 Select the Preview window which contains the image you want to display.

2 Select View > Actual Pixels.

The image in the currently active Preview window is displayed full size, at the zoom factor of 1:1 (i.e. one raster data pixel is displayed using 1 screen pixel).

NOTE: Only the full version of Asecuri allows you to preview high resolution raster data (in order to check traps, halftone dots, etc.). Certain Asecuri versions can be upgraded to include the high resolution Raster Preview option.

▷ To display/hide separations

1. Select the Preview window which contains the image you want to view.
2. Select the Inks palette.

   This window allows you to toggle individual separations on or off.
3. Click the eye icon next to one or more of the ink names to toggle the separations on or off.

   You can hold down the Alt key when you click on the eye icon. This hides all other separations, showing only the one you clicked on. Repeat this action to bring back all hidden separations. Alt-clicking on a hidden separation shows that separation, hiding all others.

   All combinations of process and spot color separations can be selected.

▷ To view raster data as a press sheet

1. Select the Preview window which contains the image you want to view.
2. Select View > Press Sheet.

   The raster data is displayed as a press sheet (positive and gripper edge down).

NOTE: This does not change the raster data or your Client Preference settings, and does not affect any other views.

▷ To view raster data as output from an imaging device

1. Select the Preview window which contains the image you want to view.
2. Select View > Device Output.

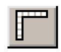
   The raster data is displayed as if it were the output of the imaging device (polarity, orientation, reading, and punch marks are set accordingly). In this view, the feed direction indicator in the Navigator palette always points up.

NOTE: This does not change the raster data or your Client Preference settings, and does not affect any other views.

▷ To show / hide the Ruler

1 Select the Preview window.

2 Select View > Rulers, or click the Rulers tool to toggle on or off the Ruler in the Preview window.



The Ruler is displayed along the edges of the Preview window, starting from the top left corner. The default unit of measurement is taken from your Preferences.

When the zoom level is sufficiently high, the ruler has the following marks:

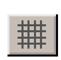
Units	Numbered marks	Major marks	Minor marks
cms	Every cm	Every 1/2 cm	Every mm
inches	Every inch	Every 1/2 inch	Every 1/8 inch

You can display rulers for each of the Preview Windows.

▷ To show / hide the Grid

1 Select the Preview window.

2 Select View > Grid, or click the Grid tool to toggle on or off the Grid in the Preview window.



Gridlines are displayed for every major and minor division of the Ruler. Major divisions are drawn in dark blue, subdivisions in light blue.

NOTE: The gridlines do not necessarily match with the ruler divisions.

Measuring Ink Coverage

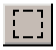
The Inks palette indicates the percentage of ink that is used in any given area of the currently active Preview window. This feature is used in conjunction with the Marquee tool.

▷ To measure the ink coverage of a selected area

1 Select the Preview window which contains the image you want to measure.

2 Make sure the Inks palette is displayed and the **Cursor/Selection** button is selected.

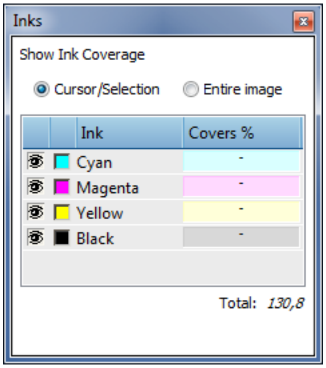
3 Select the Marquee tool.



4 Click and drag the mouse to define a rectangular area in the Preview window.

The selected area is displayed with a dotted outline.

The Inks palette displays the ink coverage within the selected area. To indicate that it is not the global coverage, the total percentage is displayed in italics. If no area was selected, the ink coverage for the entire active Preview Window would be displayed, and the total percentage would be displayed in normal characters.



The ink coverage percentage is displayed for each process color, and any spot colors. This information is calculated on the basis of the real pixel data, and is accurate to within around 3%. When zoomed in at 1:1, the information is accurate to 1%.

NOTE: Calculating ink coverage might take a while. A dash is displayed until the result has been calculated. When you change the selection, Preview restarts the calculation; you do not have to wait for the calculation to finish.

---

5 If you wish, you can select the rectangular area you defined in the Preview window, and drag it around to measure different areas of the image.

6 Click outside the rectangular area to cancel this selection.

When calculation is off, or in progress, the Covers % displays dashes (-).

NOTE: When the Inks palette is displayed, it is updated every time a new area is selected in the Preview Window. If an ink is deselected in the Inks palette, no Cover % for that ink will appear.

▷ To measure the ink coverage at cursor point

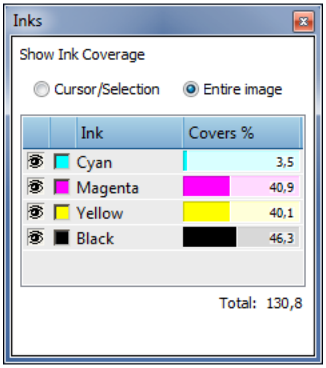
1. Select the Preview window which contains the image you want to measure.
2. Make sure the Inks palette is displayed and the **Cursor/Selection** button is selected.
3. Click where you want to measure the ink coverage.

   The Inks palette displays the ink coverage within the selected area. To indicate that it is not the global coverage, the total percentage is displayed in italics.

▷ To measure the ink coverage of the whole page/image

1. Select the Preview window which contains the page or image you want to measure.
2. Make sure the Inks palette is displayed and the **Image** button is selected.

   The Inks palette displays the ink coverage for the entire active Preview Window. To indicate that it is the global coverage, the percentages are displayed in normal characters (not in italics).



   The ink coverage percentage is displayed for each process color, and any spot colors. This information is calculated on the basis of the real pixel data, and is accurate to within around 3%. When zoomed in at 1:1, the information is accurate to 1%.

NOTE: Calculating ink coverage might take a while. A dash is displayed until the result has been calculated. When you change the selection, Preview restarts the calculation; you do not have to wait for the calculation to finish.

When calculation is off, or in progress, the Covers % displays dashes (-). If an ink is deselected in the Inks palette, no Cover % for that ink will appear.

Measuring Screen Angles

This section describes how to measure screen angles. This helps you to avoid unwanted moiré effects in your final output.

▷ To measure screen angles

1 Select the Preview window which contains the image you want to measure.

2 Select the Measurement tool.

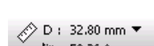
TIP: You need to select a good pattern to achieve useful results.

3 Click a reference point inside the Preview window and drag the mouse pointer to another position in the window.

As you move the mouse, Preview automatically calculates the distance and angle between the point where the mouse button was pressed and the current mouse position. Distances are measured in the units you have specified.

NOTE: If you press the Shift key while dragging the mouse, the direction of the line you draw will be restricted to a horizontal, vertical, or diagonal direction.

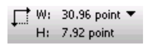
A line connects the start and end reference points. The distance between the reference points and the angle of the line are displayed in the status bar.



- The first of these two values indicates the actual distance between the two points, in the user-specified units.
- The second value indicates the screen angle between the two points, expressed in degrees.

The angle is measured counterclockwise from the zero angle reference axis through to the starting point (i.e. the point you started dragging the mouse). If the value is greater than or equal to 180, the read-out will be decremented by 180.

To the right of the displayed values in the status bar, you will see some additional measurements.



- The first of these two values indicates the horizontal distance between the two points, in the user-specified units.
- The second value indicates the vertical distance between the two points, in the user-specified units.

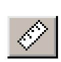
NOTE: By default the unit of measurement for the above fields is taken from your Preferences.

Measuring Line Frequency

This section describes how to measure the line frequency of a separation.

▷ To measure the line frequency of a separation

1. Select the Preview window which contains the separation you want to measure.
2. Select the Measurement tool.

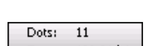


3. Zoom the image so that you can see the raster dots.

When you do this, you will see that

4. Select a dot, and drag the mouse pointer along the line of the raster to another dot.

As you move the mouse, Preview counts the number of dots along the line and automatically calculates the line frequency. The readout in the Status bar shows the number of dots found and the resulting frequency. The frequency is displayed in line per inch (lpi) or lines per cm (lpc), depending on the units you specified in your Preferences.



Color-Managed Raster Preview

Color-managed raster preview is a preview of the rendered result using color management to convert the press color space to the monitor color space, based on ICC profiles. Contract proofing quality can be achieved, provided you have a calibrated monitor and correctly configured monitor profile.

NOTE: Color-managed raster preview is a licensed feature.

▷ Activate color-managed raster preview

1 Select the Preview window which contains the image you want to preview.

2 Click the Color-managed Preview tool to activate the color-managed preview.

Selecting Color-managed mode will disable the ink display in the Inks palette.

To activate the enhanced visualization of overlapping spot colors, the following additional preview license is required:

- accurate spot color mix preview

In this enhanced mode, spot color visualization is superior to the standard color-managed mode.

You may also see one of the following icons, which indicates the status of the monitor (see “Viewing Remarks” on page 68).

Monitor Display Rating

	The monitor status is up to date and the overall display rating is greater than 90% (Excellent).
	The monitor status is up to date and the overall display rating is between 80% and 90% (Medium).
	The monitor status is up to date and the overall display rating is less than 80% (Bad).
	There is no monitor status, or it is out of date (Undefined).

Depth Tool

With the Depth tool you can display a depth map of a monochrome, 8-bit file using indexed colors. Each pixel value (1–254) is mapped to a different color in a one-to-one relation between pixel value and color depth. The color palette uses the colors of a rainbow with color value 0 shown as black.

▷ Activate and show the Depth palette

The tool is only available when the required license is present and the file type being viewed allows for the tool to be used.

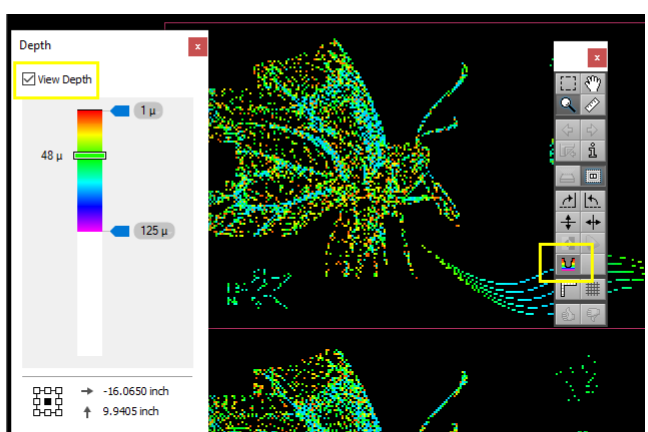
- Choose **Window > Palettes > Show Depth** to open the Depth palette or press CTRL+ALT+H. The option is only enabled if a required file type is being viewed.

  OR

- Click the **Depth** tool in the Tools palette.

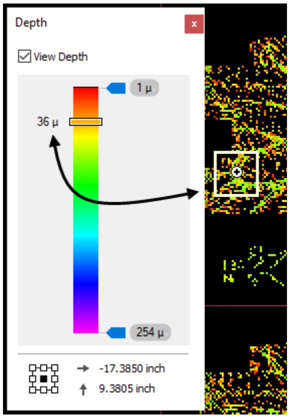
▷ Enabling Depth view

- In the Depth palette, select the **View Depth** check box or press ALT+H.



The depth map is applied to the image and the state of the Depth tool icon changes to enabled. Now you can move the cursor over the image and read the depth on the rainbow bar in the Depth palette.

Depth Palette



View Depth check box Select the check box to show/hide the image using mapped indexed colors.

Rainbow bar The vertical, colored bar represents the full range (1-254) of pixel values. The top of the bar has the lowest values, with black representing zero. The maximum pixel value is 254 at the bottom of the bar.

Range sliders The two sliders define the depth range from 1 to 254. Drag the sliders to adjust the range or click in a slider to type an integer value between 1 and 254.

Pointer value As you move the mouse cursor over the image you can see the depth value on the rainbow bar for the pointer position in question, with the actual values shown next to the sliding marker.

Pointer position The horizontal and vertical distance between the pointer and the selected reference point, with arrows depending on the selected reference point.

Reference point The point on the sheet that serves as the reference point for the pointer position. Click one of the nine reference points to set the reference point.

Related topics:

- Mark Pens on page 655

Distortion

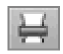
The Distortion Raster Preview shows the distortion caused by the web growth. When Distortion is selected, Raster Preview applies the web-growth compensation, otherwise Raster Preview shows the uncompensated raster.

NOTE: This option requires a special license.

▷ To view the Distortion

Select the Preview window which contains the image you want to view the distortion.

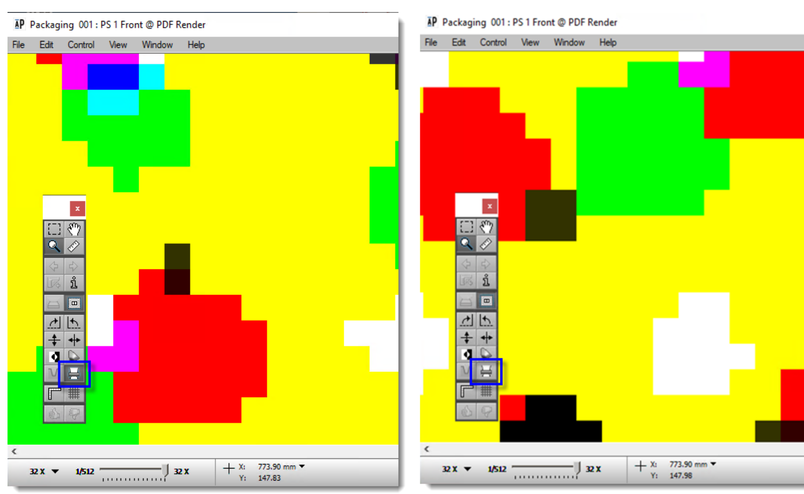
- Choose Window > Palettes > Show Tools to open the Tools palette and click Distortion (Web Growth) tool button.



OR

- Choose View > Distortion (Web Growth), or press ALT+G.

You can toggle between the distorted and not-distorted views. To view the distortion better, it is recommended to zoom in higher resolutions.



Related topics:

- Edit Distortion Values on page 326
- WebGrowth Profiles on page 687

Comparing Results

The Raster Compare feature lets you compare the results of two jobs with each other. This is particularly useful for security printing applications where you may need to check extremely small differences in the raster data. The feature can also be used in regular commercial printing environments to compare the difference between previously rendered data and the latest result.

You start the Raster Compare using the Compare palette, and you can also use the Inks palette to compare ink coverage in the two images.

NOTE: You cannot compare with a job archive result.

▷ Compare the results of two jobs

1. Open the first page or flat you want to use for the comparison.
2. Choose **Window > Palettes > Show Compare** to open the Compare palette.

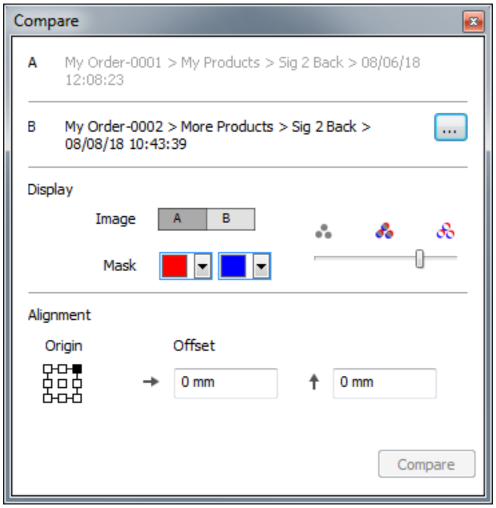
   The current image you are viewing is image A of the comparison and the job name and signature are specified at the top of the palette.

3. Click the browse button on the second line to choose the preview data you want to compare the current image with (image B or reference image).
4. Select the reference job (image B) in the list on the left; if the list is long, use the filter.

   The available Results for the selected job are listed on the right.

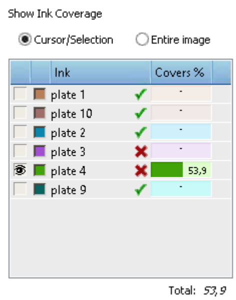
5. Choose the Results you want to compare with and click Open.

   A blue progress bar is displayed as the system compares the two images, and the reference image is now specified on the second line in the palette.



6 A **mask** for each image shows the pixels which are only in the respective image. In the Display panel, moving the slider to the right increases the intensity of these masks and hides the actual image. You can alternate between both images by clicking A or B. You can change the color of the two masks by clicking the patch and selecting another color in the picker.

7 In the Inks palette, you can check whether the ink coverage for the two images is the same (indicated with a green check mark) or not the same (indicated with a red cross).



8 In the Alignment panel you can enter positive or negatives values (Offset) to move the reference image (image B) horizontally and/or vertically and align the images. You can choose a reference point (Origin) to apply the offset.

NOTE: When you've finished comparing and close the Preview window, none of your alignment changes are saved.

Approving/Rejecting Jobs

You can approve or reject any job item which has a Waiting for Soft Approval status (icon on the left) in the Job List or the Job Layout panes. You can also approve any soft proof which was previously rejected (icon on the right).

▷ To approve or reject one or more job items

1 Select the Preview window which contains the image you want to assess.

2 Select and analyze the raster data.

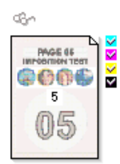
This may be a single page/flat, several pages/flats, or the entire job.

3 If the results are satisfactory, click the Approve tool (left icon): Otherwise, click the Reject tool (right icon).

NOTE: These icons are disabled if no soft proof has been requested.

4 If you select Approve, the selected results are continued.

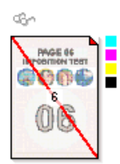
If you return to the Jobs window, you will see that these results are no longer on hold, and the separation indicators have check marks, indicating that they have been output.



Page 5

5 If you select Reject, a Reject confirmation dialog box is displayed. Here, if you wish you can enter some comments about the rejected item, and click Reject to proceed.

If you return to the Jobs window, you will see that these results are no longer on hold, and are marked with a red stripe, indicating that they have been rejected.



Page 6

6 Click OK.

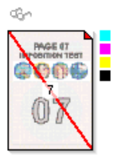
The selected items are now either approved for output to a physical output device, or rejected. Any associated Waiting for Approval icons are removed in both the Job List and Job Layout panes.

When you reject job results, the results are marked as “rejected” in both the Job List and Job Layout panes. However, the results remain in the system, and are not deleted until the date/time specified in your Logging options (see “Logging” on page 411). This gives you a time window during which you can still approve the rejected results before they are automatically deleted from the system.

NOTE: You do not have to approve or reject an item before quitting Preview. You can always approve or reject it later.

▷ To approve a rejected item (override)

1 Select an item marked as rejected in the Job Layout pane.



Page 7

2 Click the Approve tool.

A Continue confirmation dialog box is displayed.

3 Click Continue.

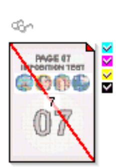
Page 7

This overrides the rejected status. The job item is again put on hold (blue background), and is now approved for output.

NOTE: Although the rejected item has now been approved, it still retains the red stripe, indicating that it was once rejected.

4 To output the results, select the job item and click the Approve tool again.

You will see that these results are no longer on hold, and the separation indicators have check marks, indicating that they have been output.



Page 7

Viewing/Editing Raster Preview Preferences

A set of Raster Preview Preferences allow you to specify default viewing settings (units of measurement, etc.) that will be used each time you launch Raster Preview.

▷ To open and edit your Raster Preview Preferences

1 From the Jobs window, choose Edit > Preferences...

2 Select the Viewers tab.

3 Edit the Raster Preview fields, as described in “Preferences” on page 71.

QuickProof

The QuickProof feature is only available for 1-bit screened data for CTP/CTF devices.

QuickProof allows you to send a full preview or a selected area to a proofing device.

▷ QuickProof a preview

1 Open the preview and select the area that you want to proof.

2 Choose Control > QuickProof.

   The QuickProof dialog box is displayed where you can select a proofing device.

3 If you want to proof only the selected area, select the **Proof selected area** check box. Otherwise, clear this check box.

4 Click QuickProof.

CHAPTER 5

Managing Jobs

This section describes how you can monitor and manage jobs in the Jobs window.

- The Jobs Window 108
- The Output Device List 110
- The Job List 111
- Job and System Logging 129
- Viewing the Administration Tab 138
- Viewing the Options Tab 139
- Viewing the Plan Tab 141
- Viewing the Results Tab 143
- Working with Jobs in the Job List 154
- Working with Jobs in the Results Tab 170
- QuickProofing Pages 179

The Jobs Window

The main purpose of the Jobs window is to allow you to monitor, view, and manage the jobs that are created by the Asecuri System. Much of the information you need is displayed as icons in the Job List. This information, together with the six tabs of selected job details, gives you a full and detailed snapshot of the jobs in hand.

The main window is divided into 4 panes:

- The Output Device List: On the left side of the window, you see a list of currently configured output devices, e.g. Export, TIFF Imagesetter, etc.
- The Job List: Next to the Output Device list, you see the Job List. This list displays the jobs that have been submitted to the Asecuri System.

  NOTE: Only jobs associated with the device selected in the Output Device List are displayed.

- Filters: Above the Job List, you can enter filter criteria directly into the Quick Filter box. Below the Output Device List, you have custom job filters for filtering the Job List based on a variety of criteria.
- Selected Job details: The pane on the right side of the window displays information on the selected job:
  - The Administration tab: Contains customer-specific information that can be used to associate specific processing workflows with particular customers or job types. See “Viewing the Administration Tab” on page 138.
  - The Options tab: Displays information on how the job is to be handled, including archiving and notification settings, post-processing channel settings, etc. See “Viewing the Options Tab” on page 139.
  - The Products tab: For multi-part and multi-product jobs, this tab displays information on how the job is structured, and how each individual section of the job will be processed. See “What are Parts?” on page 139.
  - The Plan tab: The Plan tab displays the selected job’s Production Plan, and allows you to view the individual settings of each of the items in the Plan. See “Viewing the Plan Tab” on page 141.

- The Pages tab: Lists the documents that have been input to the Page Store, and the pages that have been copied from the Page Store and included in the job's Run List. See "Viewing the Results Tab" on page 143.

- The Results tab: Allows you to view the results of the selected job. This tab displays thumbnails of the Run List pages, and job separations (if any). See "Viewing the Results Tab" on page 143.

NOTE: The Job Manager provides a read-only view on jobs. For details on creating or editing jobs, see "Creating and Editing Tickets" on page 199.

The Output Device List

The Output Device List displays all available Output and Print Task Processors. This pane is identical in both the Jobs Window and the Hot Tickets Window.

When you select an Output or Print Task Processor in the Jobs Window, the Job List is filtered to display only the jobs that include the selected Task Processor in their Production Plan.

NOTE: Depending on their software or hardware status, Task Processor icons may be displayed with different colors or with small icon overlays. For more information, see “Task Processor Component (Software) Status” on page 397 and “Output Task Processor Hardware Status” on page 396.

The Job List

The Job List displays the status of jobs that have been submitted to the Asecuri System. This includes jobs created using Job Tickets, as well as jobs created dynamically using Hot Tickets.

Job List Layout

When you create and submit a job, it appears immediately in the Job List with its details displayed in columns. You may see a flat list of jobs or groups of jobs in expandable folders if you choose to group your jobs.

For each job, the Job List displays one or more icons which indicate its current status, and the type of processing that has been applied in this job. A job produced by a Hot Ticket is indistinguishable from any other manually submitted job.

The Job List is divided vertically into the following columns:

- Notification: May display an icon which indicates an error, warning, or remark.
- Status: May display one or more icons (up to 4) which indicate the current or recent job states. These icons are sorted from the left according to priority. You can expand the width of this column to view the lower priority icons.
- Job: Either the name of the job, or an expandable group folder which contains all the jobs that are grouped by the selected property.
- Order Number: The order number of a job.
- Job Number: A unique ascending number assigned chronologically to each job.
- Media: The media selected to print the job.
- Flows: Displays one or more icons which correspond to the number and types of flows specified in the Ticket.
- Create Date: The dates and times when jobs were submitted. The date and time format adapts automatically to the width of the column.
- Modified Date: The dates and times when jobs were modified. The date and time format adapts automatically to the width of the column.
- Company: The company name of the customer.

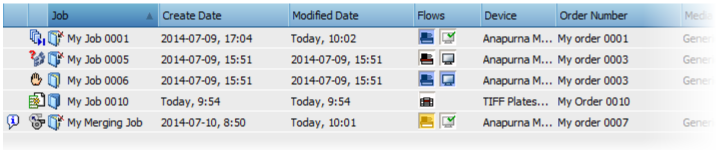
- Device: The device selected to print the job.
- Milestone: The due date you entered for the planning of the job.

These job details are displayed for each job in their respective column.

The Job List is also divided horizontally into two lists. The upper list displays all the Private Page Store jobs which have been created: The lower list displays all the Public Page Store jobs which have been created.

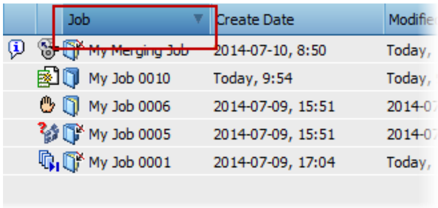
Organizing the Job List

By default, the Job List displays jobs in alphabetical (ascending) order with all the columns displayed. You can organize how the Job List is displayed as follows.



▷ Sort Job List columns

Job List columns can be sorted according to any of the column headers by clicking the relevant column header: Click once to sort alphabetically (ascending); click again (or Shift-click) to sort in reverse alphabetical order (descending).



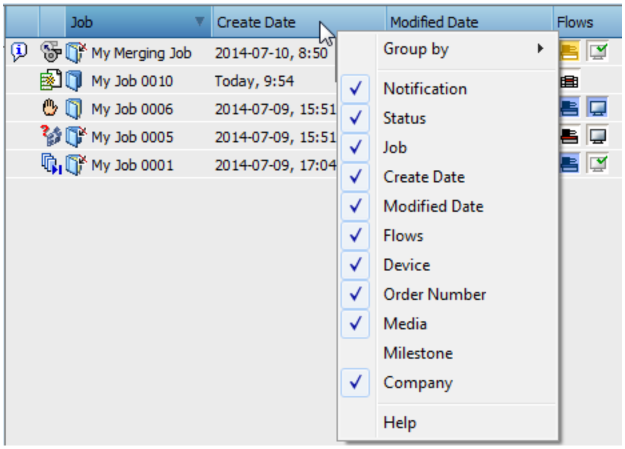
The sort column is indicated with a darker header and an arrow indicates the ascending or descending sort order. You cannot sort on the Flows column.

▷ Rearrange Job List columns

You can rearrange the columns by dragging the column headers horizontally, and adjust the width of the columns by dragging the left or right edges of the column headers.

▷ Show/hide Job List columns

Context-click in any of the column headers to display a menu where you can show/hide the columns by selecting/clearing the appropriate check box.



Group jobs in the Job List

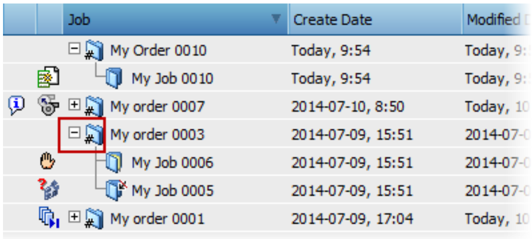
You can group jobs by clicking in the column header context-menu and selecting the **Group by** option. You can group by:

- Order Number
- Create Date
- Modified Date
- Device
- Media
- Company

For example, selecting Group by Order Number, groups the jobs with the same order number in an expandable folder. These expandable order number folders are shown in the Job column and the Order Number column is hidden.

TIP: You can also click the expand/collapse buttons to open and close job folders.

If you double-click a job group in the Job List, the folder is expanded to reveal the individual jobs. The job will have no content until you or other users start inputting documents via the associated input channel.



The # symbol you see on the folders indicates that the jobs in the Job List are grouped into folders.

Filtering the Job List

You can customize the layout and content of the Job List to suit your particular requirements, and to keep track of your jobs more easily. This becomes more important as the size of the Job List increases, while you want to keep track of specific orders and/or jobs.

Asecuri filters the Job List based on a combination of all the selected filters. When you apply the filter, only the jobs which match ALL the selected criteria will be displayed.

The following three filter types are available above and below the Output Device list on the left of the Job List:

- Quick filter: a text entry box
- Output Device filters to filter jobs by device (number of matching jobs to the right of the device name)
- Custom Job filters that allow users to specify custom sets of filter criteria (number of matching jobs to the right of the filter name)

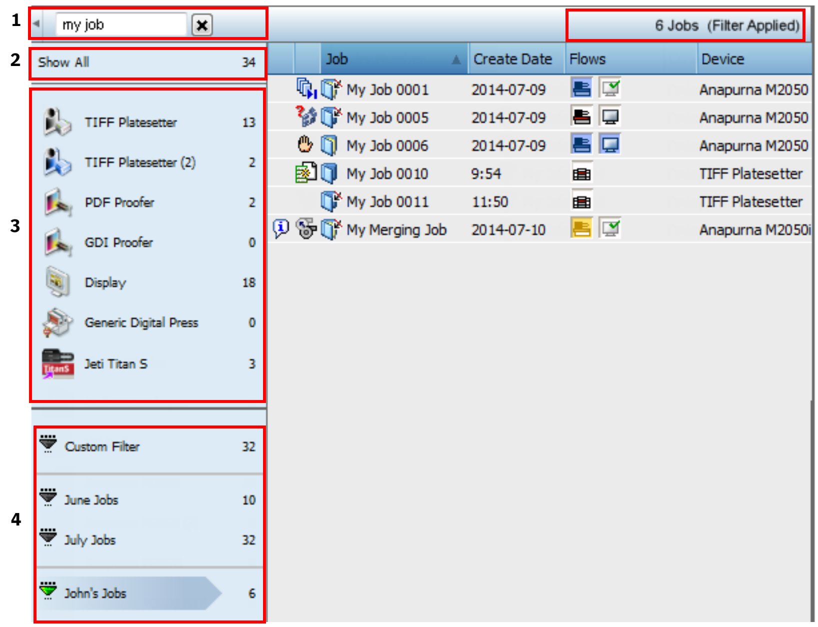
You can apply the filters individually or combine them. Combining filters of the same type, e.g. two Output Device filters, displays the sum of the two filters. Combining filters of different types, e.g. Quick filter + Output Device + Custom Job filter, only displays the jobs that match all the criteria of the filters.

These filtering features also apply for Hot Tickets in the Hot Ticket List.

NOTE: An Administrator can also filter the Job List by user role to allow specified users to see only certain jobs. This filtering is not indicated in the Job List. See "Users" on page 423.

Figure 5.1: Job List filters

1 Quick filter
2 Show All button
3 Output device filters
4 Custom job filters
5 Filter panel



NOTE: The Output Devices pane must be set to show to see the Show All button and the Custom job filters panel. Choose View > Panes > Devices to show/hide the Output Devices pane.

▷ Filter the Job or Hot Ticket List using Quick Filter

The Quick Filter can be used to search for text contained anywhere in the order number, job name or number, media name of jobs or Hot Tickets. The Quick Filter is always applied in addition to other selected filters.

1 Select the Jobs or Hot Tickets Window.

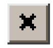
2 Click inside the Quick Filter text field.

3 Start to enter the text you want to search for.

As you type, the list is dynamically filtered.

For example, if you type the letter 'j', the Job List will start filtering for all jobs with fields that contain the letter 'j'. If you extend the search text to 'je', the number of matches are further narrowed down accordingly.

4 Click the Clear button on the right of the Quick Filter text field to remove the Quick filter.



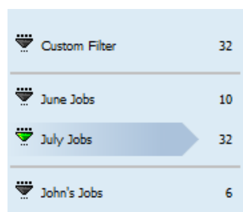
▷ Filter the Job List with one or more custom job filters

1 Select the Jobs Window.

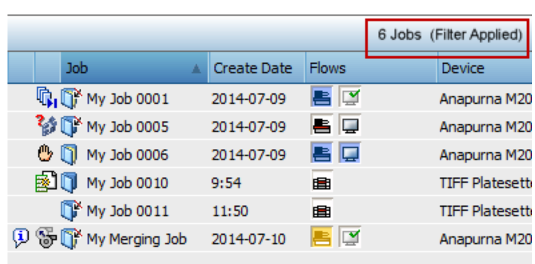
2 Click one of the custom job filters under the output device pane.

The Job List now displays only the jobs which correspond to the selected filter criteria.

The selected Job List Filter icon is colored green to indicate that this particular filter is active, with an arrow pointing to the number of jobs displayed for this filter.

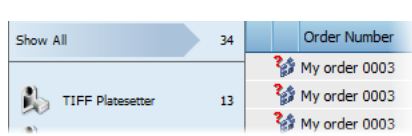


In the filter panel in the top right corner of the Job List, you can also see the total number of jobs displayed in the Job List, with an indication that a filter is applied.

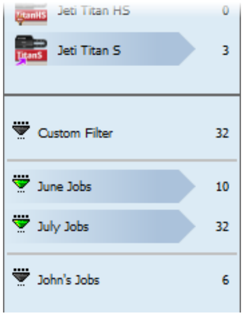


3 To switch off a job filter, click the filter once.

The Show All indicator is highlighted and all the jobs are displayed if no other filters are selected.



4 To apply multiple filters, hold the CTRL button and click the filters you want to combine. Click a selected filter again with the CTRL button pressed to deselect it. You can combine Custom Job filters with Output Device filters and Quick filter.



Combining filters of the same type, e.g. two Output Device filters, displays the sum of the two filters. Combining filters of different types, e.g. Quick filter + Output Device + Custom Job filter, only displays the jobs that match all the criteria of the filters.

▷ Create a new custom job filter

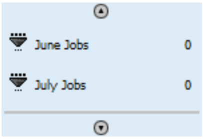
The first new custom filter is created as a duplicate of the initial Custom Filter. Subsequently, you can also duplicate your newly created filters.

1 Hover over the initial Custom Filter and choose Save As in the cogwheel drop-down list.

2 Enter the new name in the Save As box and click Save.

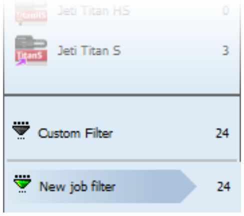
The new filter is added to the bottom of the list. This is a duplicate of the initial Custom Filter which always remains at the top of the list.

You may need to scroll through the list with the Up and Down arrows.



3 To move the filter in the list, hover over the filter and choose Move Up/Move Down in the cogwheel drop-down list. You can also insert a dividing line under a filter by choosing Insert Divider in the same drop-down list.

You can now edit this newly created filter.



▷ Edit a custom job filter

1. Hover over the filter you want to edit and choose Edit in the cogwheel drop-down list.
2. Specify your filter options, as described in "Job Filter Settings" on page 125.
3. Click Apply to see the effects of the filter on the number of jobs displayed in the Job List.
4. Click Save to confirm your changes and close the Job Filter dialog.

▷ Rename/duplicate/delete a custom job filter

- Hover over the filter name you want to rename/duplicate/delete and choose the action in the cogwheel drop-down list.

NOTE: You cannot rename/duplicate/delete/move the initial Custom Filter.

▷ Filter the Job or Hot Ticket List on the selected output device

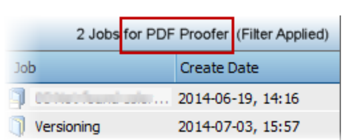
1. Select the Jobs or Hot Tickets Window.

   The number of jobs using a particular output device is shown on the right of each device name in the Output Device list.

2. Select one of the devices in the Output Device list.

   The Jobs/Hot Tickets List now displays only the jobs or tickets which use the selected output device.

   In the filter pane in the top right corner of the Job List, you can see the total number of jobs or Hot Tickets that use the selected output device.



3. Click another output device or the Show All filter to remove the filter. Hold the CTRL button and click multiple output devices to display the jobs of all the selected devices.

Job Notification Icons

Asecuri displays Job Notification icons in the 1st column of the Job and Hot Ticket Lists. These icons indicate errors, warnings and remarks, and are sorted by priority; i.e. when a job has several notifications at the same time, Asecuri displays the highest priority icon.

A group of jobs (order number folder in the job list) shows the icon of the job with the highest priority notification within the group.

NOTE: The Hot Ticket list can only display a limited subset of these Notification icons.

The icons you may see are as follows (listed in order of priority):

 The Asecuri system issued a critical message.

 The job has stopped pending user interaction.

 The job has generated an error, and has stopped.

 The job has generated a warning.

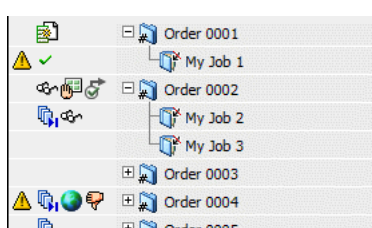
 WebApproval message: A message on this job (or results) was received from WebApproval.

 The job has generated an information message.

You can click any of these icons to display a detailed Problem Report.

Job Status Icons

Asecuri displays Job Status icons in the 2nd column of the Job and Hot Ticket Lists. These icons indicate the current or last activity associated with the corresponding job.



The Status icons are sorted by priority; i.e. when a job has several states at the same time, Asecuri displays the highest priority icon first.

A group of jobs (order number folder in the job list) shows the status icon of the job with the highest priority status within the group. The exceptions are the archiving, deleting and finished status icons. The first two are never shown, and the last is only shown when all jobs in the group are finished.

NOTE: The Hot Ticket list can only display a limited subset of these Status icons.

The icons you may see are as follows (listed in order of priority):

 The job is being archived or dumped.

 The job is being imported from archive.

 The job is being deleted.

 Asecuri is queuing all commands for this job.

 The document is being edited (it is ‘checked out’).

 The job is being edited by another user.

 The Run List is being edited by another user.

 You are editing the job.

 You are editing the Run List.

 The job is finished.

 The job was broken during editing. You can remove this icon by opening the job for editing.

 The job has been manually put on hold.

 The job output is waiting for the correct media to be loaded on the output device.

 The job is waiting for a Task Processor (none currently available).

 A group of results is complete, and is waiting to be printed (blue icon).

 The result is waiting for a hard proof.

 The result is waiting for a web proof.

	The job is waiting for a soft proof.
	A task has been aborted.
	The task has been manually put on hold.
	New (unplaced) documents are available in the (Private) Page Store.
	The job is waiting for results.
	Not all the results of a group are yet available (green icon).
	The job is waiting for After Hours processing.
	Some results have been rejected by the user.
	The layout/imposition is not yet defined.
	The job has reached a Milestone: The Run List is not complete. This Milestone was set up in the Options tab.
	The job has reached a Milestone: The job deadline has been reached. This Milestone was set up in the Options tab.
	The job has reached a Milestone: The result is not available in time. This Milestone was set up using a Milestone Action in the Production Plan.
	The job is managed by PlateMaker (ready to plate). The PlateMaker client will take care of further plate production.
	A job that has been merged
	A merged job: The job resulting from the merging of two or more other jobs.
	A StoreFront job: The job was generated by StoreFront.

Job Icons

Asecuri displays Job icons in the Job or Order No columns of the Job List. These icons indicate the type of job, as well as whether or not the Run List is complete.

With the exception of the Job folder icon, all the basic Job icons may be superimposed with one or more additional icon indicators. These provide supplementary status information, and allow you to make a highly detailed visual assessment of your jobs by simply looking at the Job List.

These icon indicators may be combined, so that up to 4 additional items of information may be displayed for any of the Job icons (see “Job Icon Combinations (Commercial Jobs)” below).

 Job group.

 Commercial job with incomplete Run List.

 Commercial job with complete Run List.

 Rush job (Commercial jobs only).

 Commercial job with disabled input channel.

 Commercial job is scheduled to be archived when it is finished (Options tab).

 Commercial job has been archived.

 Commercial job is scheduled to be deleted when it is finished (Options tab).

 Commercial job has been deleted.

 Commercial job is scheduled to be archived and deleted when it is finished (Options tab).

 Commercial job has been archived and deleted.

 Job group (based on Order Number).

 Commercial job with incomplete Run List.

NOTE: Only the Complete Run List icon is displayed in the Hot Tickets List.

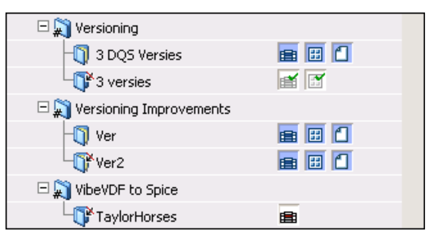
Job Icon Combinations (Commercial Jobs)

The following table lists all the possible icon combinations you may see for Commercial jobs.

Job status	normal	deleting	deleted	archiving/ dumping	archived/ dumped	archiving & deleting	archived & deleting	archived & deleted
Incomplete Run List								
Incomplete Run List disabled input								
Incomplete Run List rushed job								
Incomplete Run List disabled input+rushed job								
Complete Run List								
Complete Run List disabled input								
Complete Run List rushed job								
Complete Run List disabled input+rushed job								

Flow Icons

Asecuri displays Flow icons in the Job and Hot Ticket Lists. These icons correspond to the number and types of flows specified in the job or ticket:



When you create a Ticket, it appears in the Job/Hot Ticket List, together with one or more Flow icons in the Flows column.

The Flow icons display:

- the type of flow, indicated by the icon image.
- the status of the flow, indicated by the icon color.

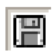
The following icon types are available:

 Main Output to a high resolution output device.

 Main Output to a Sign and Display output device.

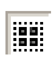
 Imposition Proof: An optional flow which may be added to the Main Output flow, and is used for output to an imposition proofing device.

 Page Proof: An optional flow which may be added to the Main Output flow, and is used for output to a page proofing device.

 Export: An optional or alternate flow to the Main Output flow, used for exporting job results to file in PDF or PostScript format.

 Public Page Store: An optional or alternate flow to the Main Output flow, used for storing job results in a Public Page Store.

 Display: An optional or alternate flow to the Main Output flow, used to create job results for high-resolution soft proofing.

 Digital Quick Strip (DQS): An alternate mode of operation which supports the PrintDrive DQS mode of Apogee Series3. In this mode, Asecuri creates and renders the flat backgrounds and pages separately. These are then sent as separate items to PrintDrive. PrintDrive assembles the pages onto the backgrounds, and then outputs the results as an integral job.

 Collecting Hot Ticket: Uses the Collect TP to collect images and create special Hot Tickets.

The different flows associated with a job can also be monitored in The Activity Pane.

Up to three flow icons may be displayed for each job or ticket.

Flow Icon Color Coding

As a general rule throughout the Asecuri user interface, you will find that specific icon background colors are associated with specific conditions.

In the Job List, the background color of each flow icon indicates one of several states, as follows:


A white background color indicates that this flow is idle.


A green background color indicates that this flow is currently active.


A blue background color indicates that this flow is on hold.


A yellow background color indicates that this flow contains tasks which are queued and waiting to be processed.


A white background color with a green checkmark indicates that this flow has finished.

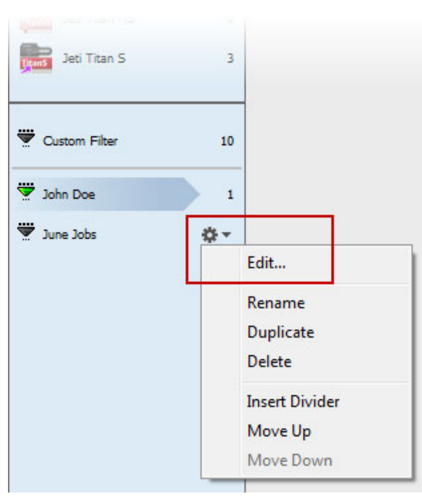

A red background color indicates that this flow has generated an error.


A purple background color indicates that further handling of this flow has been taken over by the PlateMaker Client (Main flow only). For more details, refer to the PlateMaker Client documentation.

Job Filter Settings

The Job Filter allows you to filter the jobs displayed in the Job List according to job status, administration fields, media, or date.

- Display the job filter settings by hovering over the filter name and clicking Edit in the cogwheel drop-down list.



Status

In Page Store To filter on Page Store criteria, select the In Page Store check box, click the associated list, and choose one of the following options:

- New documents: Displays only jobs that contain new documents that have not yet been added to the Run List.
- No new documents: Displays only jobs that have no new documents.

Pages To filter on Run List criteria, select the Pages check box, click the associated list, and choose one of the following options:

- Has All: Display jobs that have a complete Run List.
- Misses Some: Display jobs that have incomplete Run Lists.

For more information, see “The Run List (Ticket Editor)” on page 234.

On Hold To filter on jobs on hold, select the On Hold check box, click the associated list, and choose one of the following options:

- Is: Display jobs that are on hold.
- Is Not: Display the jobs that are not on hold.

In Error To filter on error criteria, select the In Error check box, click the associated list, and choose one of the following options:

- Is: Display jobs that are in error.
- Is Not: Display the jobs that are not in error.

Finished To filter on complete or incomplete jobs, select the Finished check box, click the associated list, and choose one of the following options:

- Is: Display jobs that are finished.
- Is Not: Display the jobs that are not finished.

Archived To filter on archived job criteria, select the Archived check box, click the associated list, and choose one of the following options:

- Is: Display jobs that have been archived.
- Is Not: Display the jobs that have not been archived.

Deleted To filter on deleted job criteria, select the Deleted check box, click the associated list, and choose one of the following options:

- Is: Display jobs that are deleted
- Is Not: Display the jobs that are not deleted

Merged To display jobs that have been merged into a merged job, select the check box, click the associated list, and choose one of the following options:

- Has: Displays jobs that have already been merged
- Has Not: Displays the jobs that have not yet been merged

Merged job To show only merged jobs (i.e. jobs that merge other jobs into a single job), select the check box, click the associated list, and choose one of the following options:

- Is: Displays jobs that are merged jobs
- Is Not: Displays the jobs that are not merged jobs

Layout job To filter by jobs set up in the Layout Editor.

Set up by printer/customer Allows you to filter on the status of WebApproval jobs: the job setup is Pending or Completed by the printer or customer.

Submitted by

Select these check boxes to filter the jobs which have been:

- submitted or not submitted by StoreFront
- enabled or not enabled for WebApproval.

Administration

Use the Administration filter to view jobs based on the criteria specified in the job's Administration tab. You can filter on any combination of these fields, however the Job List will display only the jobs which pass through all of the filters. The following fields can be used to filter:

- Job Name
- Order Number
- Operator Name
- Company Name
- Operator

The following filter parameters can be chosen in the drop-down list:

- Contains/Does not contain
- Starts with/Does not start with
- Ends with/Does not end with
- Equals/Does not equal
- Any/Current User (for Operator Name only)

Media

Allows you to filter on the media used for the job, with the same filter parameters as for Administration.

Date

Use the Date filter to view jobs that were submitted, modified, finished or due, before or after a specific date or within a specific time period. If you use the *between* argument, the first date to enter is the most recent date.

Job and System Logging

Two types of logs are available in Asecuri:

- The Job Log: For logging events related to jobs.
- The System Log: For logging events related to the Asecuri System.

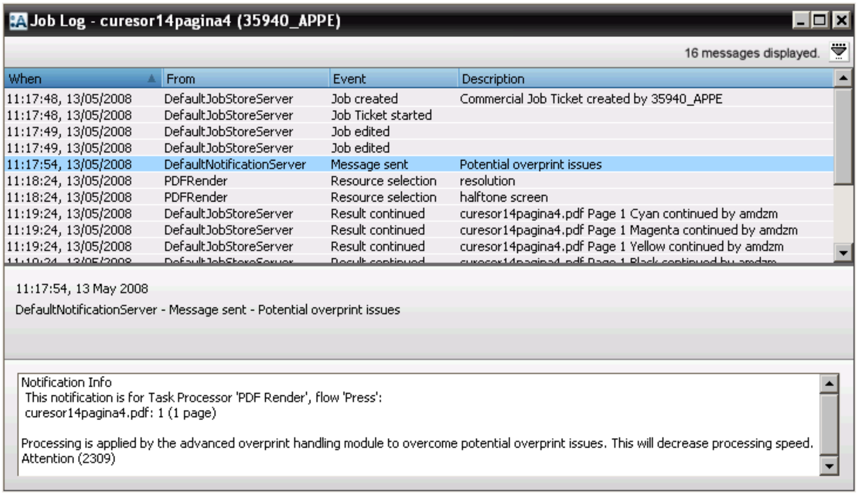
The Job Log

The Job Log is opened when you context-click on a job in the Jobs window, and select Log for Job from the context menu. The Job Log is used to keep track of completed jobs. It is also useful for accounting and troubleshooting. You can specify which job events are logged in the System Overview (see “Logging Settings” on page 411).

NOTE: The Job Log does not list System events. These are recorded in the System Log (see “The System Log” on page 132).

The Job Log is automatically exported when the job completes. This allows an external MIS to pick up the log file and perform any required accounting. One or more logged items can also be copied as text using the Copy/Paste commands. However, the Job Log cannot be manually exported.

The Job Log lists all job events which take place within Asecuri. This is a plain, non-interactive event log.



The Job Log consists of a Filter pane, a chronological list of logged events, and an additional information pane.

- The Job Log Filter and list of events work together: The events displayed are determined by the filter (if any) you apply.
- The lower pane displays more detailed information on the selected event.

List of Events

The list of events displays a date, source, event type and description for each event.

When Displays the time and date at which the event was logged.

From Displays the name of the job which generated the logged message.

Event Displays the type of the event that was logged.

Description Displays an abbreviated version of the generated event. You can view the full message (in the lower pane) by selecting it.

You can sort the events on any of these Message fields by clicking the arrow in the column headers. Each time you click the arrow, the sort is toggled between ascending and descending order.

The Job Log Filter

You access the Job Log filter by clicking on the Filter icon in the Job Log:

Filter

Toggle filtering on or off.

Event Type

Choose one or more event groups for which the filter will be applied.

Life cycle events (created, started, finished): When a job is created, has started or is finished.

Error warning notifications: This includes the error status of Task Processors, device statuses such as error, online and offline and non-informative notifications with their reply.

Informative notifications: Important job-related actions such as job editing.

Proofing actions: Events related to the proofing result such as waiting, continue, approve, reject, resume.

User interactions: Job related events such as resume, rush, edit. Task Processor related events such as hold, resume, rush. Result related events such as remake.

Media usage: Events related to the use of resources such as film and plate or proofing media.

Used resources: Events related to Resource selection such as screen types, profiles, calibration and linearization curves. Events related to Task Processor parameter sets.

Color Management: Events related to input document color management, press and proofing output color management and spot colors.

Event Details

Contains: Find a match on a specified text string (in any of the event's fields). If you type several words, all words must occur. For example, "preflight red" only shows events that contain both the words "preflight" and "red". Leave the field empty if you do not wish to filter on content. This filter is case insensitive.

Occurred Display only the events that were generated during a specific time period.

You apply the filter by toggling the Filter On, choosing or specifying your filtering options, and clicking Apply.

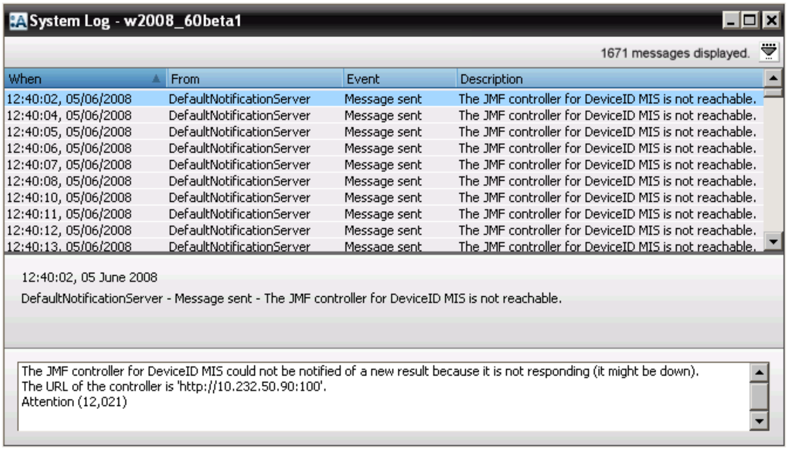
When the filter is in use, you will see the following type of message with an indication of the number of logged events:

NOTE: By default, all events are displayed (i.e. no filter is applied).

The System Log

The System log displays logging information on the selected item in the System Overview (the Asecuri System or a specific Task Processor). The main purpose of the System log is for troubleshooting. The log can be inspected interactively, or can be exported. The Asecuri System keeps logged events for a specified time period, after which they are removed. You can also manually clean up the System log.

System events are events that are not directly related to the processing of jobs (although they may affect job processing).



The System Log consists of a Filter pane, a chronological list of logged events, and an additional information pane.

- The Job Log Filter and list of events work together: The events displayed are determined by the filter (if any) you apply.
- The lower pane displays more detailed information on the selected event.

List of Events

The list of events displays a date, source, event type and description for each event.

When Displays the time and date at which the event was logged.

From Displays the name of the device or system which generated the logged message.

Event Displays the name of the type of event that was logged.

Description Displays an abbreviated version of the generated event. You can view the full message (in the lower pane) by selecting it.

You can sort the events on any of these Message fields by clicking the arrow in the column headers. Each time you click the arrow, the sort is toggled between ascending and descending order.

The System Log Filter

You access the System Log filter by clicking on the Filter icon in the System Log:

Filter

Toggle filtering on or off.

Event Type

Choose one or more event groups for which the filter will be applied.

Major Task Processor events (start, stop): This includes the status such as boot or shutdown of Task Processors.

Error and warning notifications: This includes the error status of Task Processors, device statuses such as error, online and offline and non-informative notifications with their reply.

Informative notifications: Important job-related actions such as job editing.

Proofing actions: Events related to the proofing result such as waiting, continue, approve, reject, resume.

User interactions (start, stop, restart): This includes Task Processor statuses such as start, shutdown, hold or resume.

Used resources: Events related to Resource selection such as screen types, profiles, calibration and linearization curves. Events related to Task Processor parameter sets.

Event Details

Contains: Find a match on a specified text string (in any of the event's fields). If you type several words, all words must occur. For example, "preflight red" only shows events that contain both the words “preflight” and “red”. Leave the field empty if you do not wish to filter on content. This filter is case insensitive.

Occurred Display only the events that were generated during a specific time period.

You apply the filter by toggling the Filter On, choosing or specifying your filtering options, and clicking Apply.

When the filter is in use, you will see the following type of message with an indication of the number of logged events:

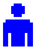
NOTE: By default, all events are displayed (i.e. no filter is applied).

Problem Report

The Problem Report displays all messages generated by the associated job. It is similar to the Message Board. The main difference is that the Problem Report gives an overview of all problems found during ticket editing in the Ticket Editor, or Run List editing in the Jobs window. The Problem Report is generated on the local Client, not on the Asecuri System.

A Problem Report is opened if you click one of the following status icons which may appear next to a job in the Job List:

 The Asecuri system issued a critical message.

 The job has stopped pending user interaction.

 The job has generated an error, and has stopped.

 The job has generated a warning.

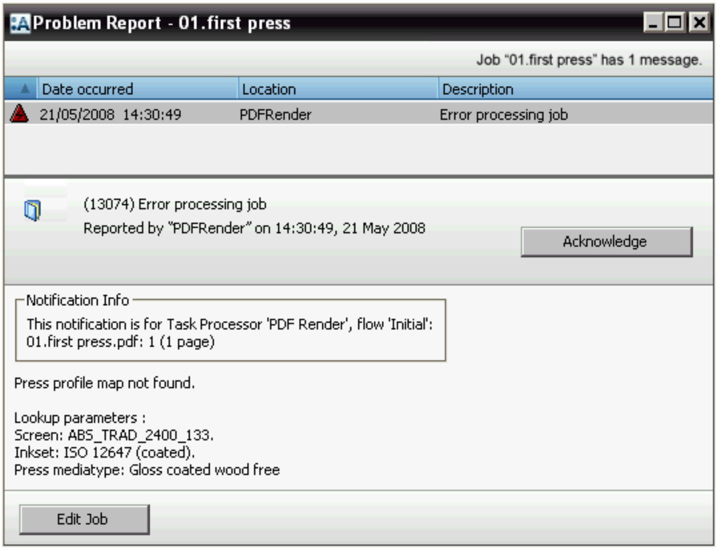
 WebApproval message: A message on this job (or results) was received from WebApproval.

 The job has generated an information message.

NOTE: In the Job List, do not click on the status icon of a collapsed group. You must first expand the group to reveal the job in error.

It is also opened if you click any of the same status icons which may appear in the Tab Area of the Ticket Editor:

The Problem Report consists of a Message List, Acknowledge Pane, and Interaction pane.



Message List

The Message List displays the status, date, type, and description of each message.

Status One of the four job status icons is displayed (see above).

Date occurred Displays the date and time that the problem occurred.

Location Displays the name of the job, device, or system where the message was generated. If this is a job, then the job order number is also displayed in parentheses. You can sort the messages according to location by clicking the arrow in this column header. Each time you click the arrow, the sort is toggled alphabetically between ascending and descending order.

Description Displays an abbreviated version of the message. You can view the full message by selecting it. You can sort the messages according to description by clicking the arrow in this column header. Each time you click the arrow, the sort is toggled alphabetically between ascending and descending order.

Each message row has a colored background:

Pink: The message has not yet been Acknowledged.

Blue: This is the currently selected message.

Gray: The message has been Acknowledged.

Acknowledge pane

The Acknowledge pane displays information and the acknowledgement status of the currently selected message in the Message List.

Message summary Displays the summarized message text from the Message List Description column.

Reported by Indicates which Task Processor generated the message, and when, in the format “Reported by <Task Processor> on <time and date>”.

Acknowledgement status Indicates who (if anybody) first acknowledged the message, and when, in the format “acknowledged by <user> at <time and date>”.

Acknowledgement button This button appears if the selected message has not yet been acknowledged. Click this button once you have read the message. Any Errors or Warnings that you acknowledge are removed from the Message List. User Interaction messages remain in the list until the required action has been taken.

Notification/Interaction pane

Notification message Displays a more detailed version of the message. Some messages are followed by a suggested course of action, such as:

```
“There is no location for exporting the system log. The default
      C:\Apogee Prepress\SysLog\$DATE.log will be used”
```

Interactive dialog buttons. Some messages include interactive dialog buttons which allow you to correct the cause of the error or warning. For example, Edit Job or Resume Job.

NOTE: If you select more than one message, you will see no specific message information, only “x messages selected”.

Viewing the Administration Tab

The Administration tab contains customer-specific information that can be used to associate specific Production Plans with particular customers or job types.

You can use the order number to group jobs in the Job List.

NOTE: The information displayed is read-only. If you want to change the information in any of the fields, you first need to context-click the job in the Job List, and select Edit from the context menu. You can also select the job and click the Edit button.

For full details on each of the fields, see “Administration Tab Information” on page 202.

Viewing the Options Tab

The Options tab displays information on how the jobs which use this ticket are to be handled (archiving, notifications, etc.).

NOTE: The information displayed is read-only. If you want to change the information in any of the fields, you first need to context-click the job in the Job List, and select Edit from the context menu. You can also select the job and click the Edit button.

For full details on each of the fields, see “Using the Options Tab” on page 206.

What are Parts?

A book may consist of a jacket, a cover and a text block. Often, these different parts are made of different materials and have to be processed and printed differently. Parts could also be used to structure a product into content- oriented sections. In this case, parts do not necessarily require different materials or processing, but they help structure the job for content delivery and proofing.

Every job contains at least one default product part. This is the only part in a single-part job. It is a plain part with the name ‘body’, and has continuous page numbering. The number of pages and page ranges is calculated automatically, and the part receives extra pages when you increase the total number of pages. It also receives the pages that you remove from other parts.

What are Production Sets?

A production set is a group of plates that are all processed in the same way. For example, a simple publication may comprise a production set for the cover printed in color, and another for the body printed in black. Each production set can have its own individual settings, and can be sent to a different press. This is done by separating the output plates into sections, and processing each section differently. However, production sets do not always correspond with the parts of a product. If a part requires specific processing (color/gray, different paper type), a corresponding production set will be created. If a part does not require specific processing, the default production set is used.

Every job contains at least one production set: the default production set, called Body plates. It is very similar in concept to the default part: in single-part jobs, it acts as the only production set; in multi-production set jobs, it receives extra sheets or those that are removed from another set.

Production sets describe the results that make up the final product, i.e., the results of the main flow. As such, they are the direct result of the main imposition scheme of the job. Auxiliary flows (page or imposition proofs) usually produce results that are different in layout - their sheets contain a different number of pages and/or different pages. Therefore, auxiliary flows cannot use production sets unless their results are derived directly from the main flow, and remain unchanged.

Production sets provide a different way of partitioning a publication by looking at how the different publication parts need to be produced, and creating Production sets that will process specific parts (e.g. sheets) differently from others.

For simple publications, you can create a production set for every part. For example, a softcover book with a cover in color and a black&white text block can be produced with two sets of settings (two production sets); one set for the cover and one for the text.

However, this simple approach will not work if the text block has a couple of pages in color (that need different processing). To solve this, you can either create an extra product part, or you can create an extra production set.

Production sets give the printer the freedom to solve the issue in any way he likes without impacting the product parts. The printer can put the color pages on a separate sheet, combine them with black-only pages on a larger sheet, or choose whatever production method is appropriate. The printer could also combine signatures of different product parts on the same sheet (provided the different parts are compatible). In a multi-part job, there is no simple one-to-one relation between parts and production sets.

The smallest result a production set can produce is a single side of a press sheet (all color separations for the side). Thus, all sides that are produced by a single production set have the same production settings.

If auxiliary flows use a different imposition task processor (e.g., to make a 2- up page proof), the results of this imposition are not part of the production sets.

Apogee Impose brings together sheets with the same press, paper and color spaces (CMYK, gray) in Production Sets.

For full details on each of the fields, see “Using the Plan Tab” on page 213.

Viewing the Plan Tab

The Plan tab displays the selected job's Production Plan, and allows you to view the individual settings of each of the items in the Plan.

NOTE: The information displayed is read-only. If you want to change the information in any of the fields, you first need to context-click the job in the Job List, and select Edit from the context menu. You can also select the job and click the Edit button.

The Plan tab has two panes:

- Production Plan Pane (Jobs Window)
- Settings Pane (Jobs Window)

Production Plan Pane (Jobs Window)

The Production Plan is a series of components (Task Processors and Actions) linked together to form one or more processing flows. These components are configured to define exactly how jobs are to be input, processed, and output.

When you select one of these components, you will see the associated settings displayed in the lower Settings Pane (Jobs Window).

Below each Task Processor icon, there is a drop-down list from in which you can view the selected Parameter Set. If no Parameter Set is selected, the Task Processor uses its initial settings.

Some Task Processors may display a thick blue underscore beneath their Parameter Sets drop-down list. This indicates that you are viewing a multi-part job, and that the associated Task Processor has multiple settings (known as Production Sets).

The last Task Processor in a flow always displays the Flow Identifier at the end of the flow. In a single-flow plan, this always indicates a Main Output flow.

NOTE: The information displayed is read-only. If you want to change the information in any of the fields, you first need to context-click the job in the Job List, and select Edit from the context menu. You can also select the job and click the Edit button.

Settings Pane (Jobs Window)

The Settings pane displays the name of the component (Task Processor or Action) selected in the Production Plan pane, and its current settings.

NOTE: The information displayed is read-only. If you want to change the information in any of the fields, you first need to context-click the job in the Job List, and select Edit from the context menu. You can also select the job and click the Edit button.

Viewing the Results Tab

The Results tab allows you to view the results of the selected job. This tab displays thumbnails of the Run List pages, and job separations (if any).

NOTE: Double-clicking a result opens it in preview mode (see “Previewing Job Results” on page 77).

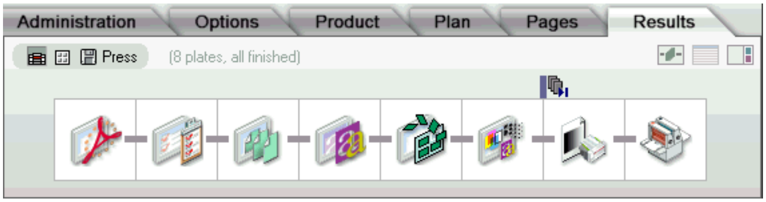
This tab is divided into the following panes:

- The Activity Pane
- The Job Layout Pane (Jobs Window)
- The Separations Pane (Jobs Window)

NOTE: If you are viewing a versioning or multi-part job, the layout of the Results tab is considerably different (depending on the specific parameters of the input documents).

The Activity Pane

This pane allows you to monitor the current processing status of any of the selected job’s Processing and Output Task Processors.

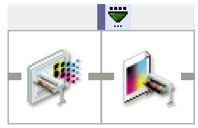


The Activity pane includes the following:

- Flow selection icons

You will see one or more Flow Identifier icons, corresponding to each flow in the selected job. When you click on any of these icons, the selected flow is displayed, and you will see the Task Processors and Actions that are active in this particular flow. This is the same as clicking the Flow Status icons in the Job List.

- Selected flow components (active Task Processors and Actions).



You will see the Task Processors and Actions that are active in the selected flow. If you double-click on any of the Task Processors, you will see the Activity Window for that particular component.

- Results tab display icons.

  - Click the first of these icons to show/hide the Activity pane.
  - Click the second of these icons to show/hide the Production Sets table (Multi-part jobs only).
  - Click the third icon to show/hide the Separations pane.

NOTE: Input channel activity is not displayed in the Activity pane. If you want to check this, switch to the System Overview and double-click the Task Processor that you want to monitor. Any processing is then displayed in the Activity window. For more information, see “Monitoring your Task Processors” on page 396.

The Job Layout Pane (Jobs Window)

TIP: To improve the speed with which job results are displayed, you can disable thumbnail viewing from the View menu.

This pane displays thumbnails of the Run List pages of the selected job. Status icons, corner folds, and colored backgrounds provide additional information about the current status and orientation of each of the displayed thumbnails.

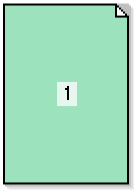
You can double-click any of the thumbnails to launch the appropriate viewer for this specific page (Acrobat for PDF documents or Raster Preview for TIFF files). If the job has not yet received all required pages, you will see only empty placeholders.

NOTE: If you are viewing a versioning job, the layout is considerably different (depending on the specific parameters of the input documents).

Page and Flat Thumbnails

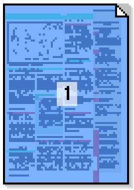
You need to enable thumbnails (View > Thumbnails) in order to view a miniature representation of your job pages in the Job Layout pane.

If no imposition has been specified for the selected job, you will see a series of pages. The current status of each page is indicated by its background color.



A thumbnail view of this page is either not available, or is currently being retrieved from the Asecuri System (green background color).

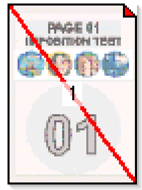
Page has been processed successfully (no background color).



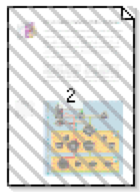
Page has been processed successfully, and is on hold pending approval (blue background color).

Page has been processed with errors (red background color).

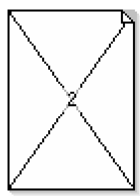
Page is managed by the PlateMaker Client, and is ready to plate (purple background color).



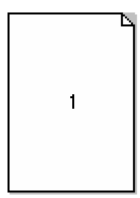
Page has been processed successfully, but has been rejected.



Page has been discarded.



An empty page in the Run List (white background with a cross).



A blank page in the Run List (white background).

If an imposition scheme has been specified, you will see a series of flats. As with pages, the status of each flat is indicated by its background color.

Extra Thumbnail Information

The following additional information is available for both pages and flats:

- Action indicator
- Separation indicator
- Proofing data indicator
- Raster data indicator
- Corner fold indicator
- Page number
- Flat label
- Signature

Action Indicator

Each individual page or flat may have one or more Action indicators above it (corresponding to hold points in the Production Plan). These may be any of the following:

The job's Production Plan contains an After Hours Action. When this point is reached, the job results are held (written to disk) pending the specified time.

The job's Production Plan contains a Soft Proof Action. When this point is reached, the job results are held (written to disk) pending approval/rejection of a Digital Film preview by the user.

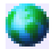
The job's Production Plan contains a Hard Copy Proof Action. When this point is reached, the job results are held (written to disk) pending approval/ rejection of a hard copy proof by the user.

The job's Production Plan contains a Ready for Plating Action. When this point is reached, the job results are taken over and managed by PlateRunner (ready to plate).

The job's Production Plan contains a Collect for Output Action. When this point is reached, the job results are held (written to disk) pending user intervention.

The job's Production Plan contains a Waiting for Results Action. When this point is reached, the job results are held until the target flow or required pages are finished.

The job's Production Plan contains a Discard Action. When this point is reached, the job results are held until the specified pages have been automatically discarded.

 The job’s Production Plan contains a Web Proof Action. When this point is reached, the job results are held (written to disk) pending approval/rejection of a Digital Film preview by the remote user.

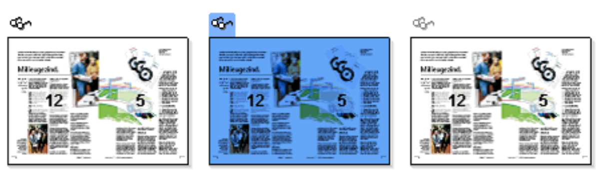
 Result will be frozen once it has been approved by the remote user.

 Result has been frozen because it has been approved by the remote user.

These Action indicators can be in one of three states (as indicated below for the Soft Proof Action):

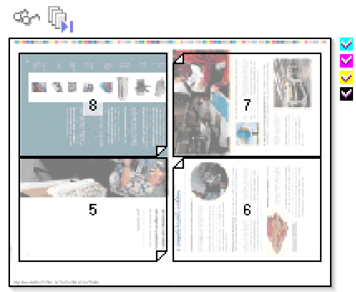
Action icon	Status
	The page or flat has not yet reached this Action.
	The page or flat has reached this Action (blue background).
	The page or flat has passed this Action (dimmed icon).

When a flat is on hold, the entire flat is colored with a blue background in the Results tab, as illustrated below:



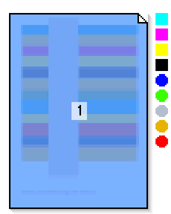
When a page is on hold, only the page is colored with a blue background:

Any actions that have already been passed in the flow are grayed-out (dimmed), as follows:



Separation Indicator

If a page or flat is made up of a series of separations, this is indicated by four (or more) small colored icons to the right. If you select the page or flat, the individual separations are displayed in the Separations pane (see “The Separations Pane (Jobs Window)” on page 153).



A square icon indicates that the separation is a process color; a round icon indicates that the separation is a spot color.

The separation indicators provide the following information for each of the colors.

Square outlined separation indicator:
- A process color separation is expected (it has not yet been rendered). In this example, it is the magenta separation.
- The background is available for an Asecuri DQS job.

Square solid separation indicator: A process color separation has been rendered, and is ready for output. In this example, it is the magenta separation.

Checked separation indicator: The separation has been rendered, and has been successfully output. In this example, it is the magenta separation.

Dimmed separation indicator: The separation has been discarded, and will not be output.

Round outlined separation indicator: A spot color separation is expected (it has not yet been rendered). The outline color is the color of the expected spot color.

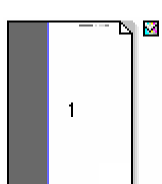
Round solid separation indicator: A spot color separation has been rendered, and is ready for output. The solid color is the spot color.

Checked separation indicator: The spot color separation has been rendered, and has been successfully output.

For example, the page below contains 8 separations: the four CMYK process colors plus four spot colors. All these separations have been rendered (as indicated by the solid separation indicators) and have been successfully output (as indicated by the associated checkmarks):

Proofing Data Indicator

Results may display a small, square multi-colored icon to their right. This is the Proofing Data indicator. It indicates that the page/flat belongs to a proofing workflow, and is a composite TIFF file (i.e., no separations).



A checkmark indicates that the page/flat has been successfully output.

The page/flat belongs to a proofing workflow or a layout job, and is a composite file (i.e., not a separation). The page/flat has been rendered, and is ready for output.

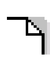
The page/flat belongs to a proofing workflow or a layout job, and is a composite file (i.e., not a separation). The checkmark indicates that it has been successfully printed.

Raster Data Indicator

For DQS and native Asecuri DQS (Raster Impose) results, you can choose View > Show > Page Rendered. Results will then display a square gray-colored indicator in the lower right corner. This is the Raster Data indicator. It means that all separations in the page(s) have been fully rendered and are ready for previewing or output.

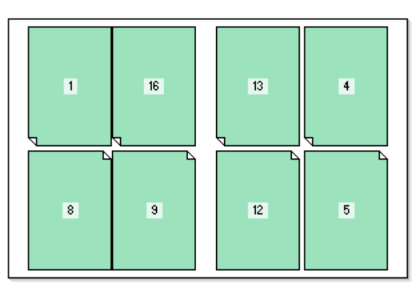
Corner Fold Indicator

Small corner folds in a corner of each page indicate a page’s orientation.



The orientation of a page may vary in an imposition layout. The position of the corner fold tells you where the top of the page is.

The orientation of a page may vary in an imposition layout. The position of the corner fold tells you where the top of the page is:

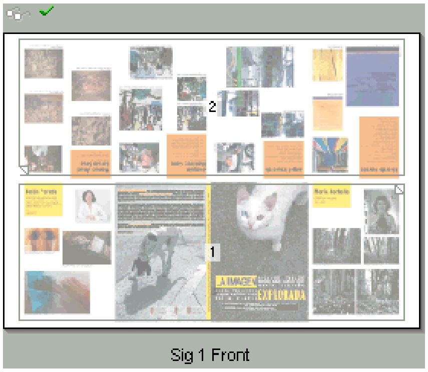


Page Number

Page numbers indicate the position of pages in the Run List. If you are viewing a flat, you will see the position of the pages on the flat.

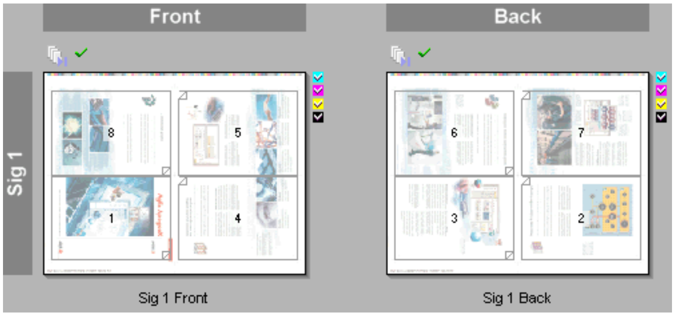
Flat Label

Below each flat you will see a label, which indicates which side of the signature you are looking at. You can click this label to quickly select the entire flat. This is useful if pages cover the entire surface of the flat, making it difficult to select the flat (and not a page) by clicking directly on it.



Signature

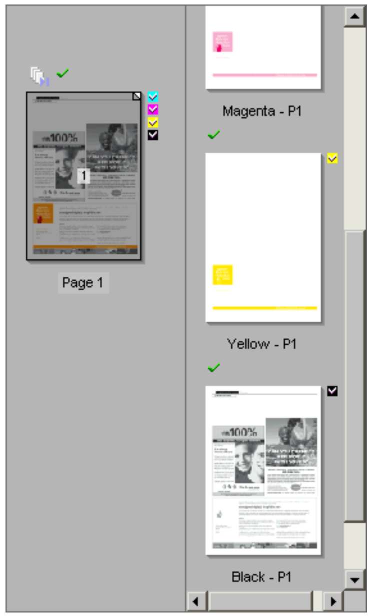
If Front and Back viewing has been enabled, you will see the complete signature for each page or flat in the job.



NOTE: In this example, the small checkmarks you can see indicates that all separations have been output.

The Separations Pane (Jobs Window)

This pane displays thumbnails of each of the separations for the page or signature you select in the Job Layout pane. Double-clicking a thumbnail launches the appropriate viewer. For PDF data, this is your PDF Reader; for raster data, this is Raster Preview.



Working with Jobs in the Job List

The Job List displays information on all jobs that have been submitted to the Asecuri System. From here you can monitor these jobs, and make a variety of changes to their current status:

- "Selecting Jobs" on page 154
- "Monitoring Jobs" on page 155
- "Holding/Resuming Jobs" on page 156
- "Continuing Jobs" on page 157
- "Making Rush Jobs" on page 160
- "Restarting Job Processing" on page 161
- "Duplicating Jobs" on page 161
- "Creating a New Job from an Existing Job" on page 162
- "Deleting Jobs" on page 162
- "Enabling/Disabling Input Channels" on page 165
- "Opening the Job and System Logs" on page 166
- "Archiving Jobs" on page 166

Selecting Jobs

In the Job List and the Results tab, as in other areas of the Asecuri Client, you can use the following procedures to select and de-select multiple items (jobs, Hot Tickets, pages, flats, etc.).

NOTE: Jobs may be grouped in job folders as explained in "Organizing the Job List" on page 112.

▷ To select a job

1. Select the Jobs Window.
2. Double-click a job folder in the Job List.

   The job folder is expanded to reveal the job contents. These are the documents that have been input via the input channel(s) associated with this particular ticket.
3. Select one of the jobs.

   The job details are retrieved from the Asecuri System and displayed in the pane on the right. This information is arranged into 5 tabs - Administration, Options, Products, Plan, Pages, and Results.

TIP: You can also click the expand/collapse buttons to open and close job folders.

▷ To select or de-select multiple jobs or items

1. Select the Jobs Window.
2. Click the first item you want to select in the Job List.
3. While holding down the CTRL key (Windows) or COMMAND key, click each additional item you want to select.
4. To de-select an item, hold down the CTRL key and then click the item.
5. To extend the selection over a block of contiguous items, click the first item and then hold down the SHIFT key while clicking the last item you want to select.

Monitoring Jobs

You can quickly check the status of your jobs as follows:

▷ To monitor a job

1. Select the Jobs Window.
2. Expand the folders in the Job List to view your jobs.

   A series of icons indicate the current status of each job in the Job List. These include Job Notification Icons, Job Status Icons, Job Icons, and Flow Icons.
3. To view information on a job's Run List, select the job and click the Pages tab.

   The Run List is displayed in the pane on the right.
4. To view intermediate job results, select the job and click the Results tab.

If any page results are available, they are displayed in the pane on the right. Otherwise, you will see only empty page holders.

5 To monitor any ongoing processing, expand the Activity pane in the Results tab.

For more information, see “The Activity Pane” on page 143.

Holding/Resuming Jobs

When you manually put a job on hold in the Jobs List, you suspend all processing tasks for the entire job (after the current activity has been allowed to finish). The job remains on hold until you resume it.

NOTE: You cannot “continue” a job that is on hold: The Continue command will be disabled. In this case, you must use the “Resume” command.

▷ To manually hold a job

1 Select the Jobs Window.

2 Context-click a job which has not yet finished processing in the Job List (or job results in the Job Layout pane), and choose Hold Job from the context menu.

3 You can also click the Hold button:

The Hold Job dialog box appears. Here you can choose to stop any ongoing processing, or allow it to finish before the job is put on hold.

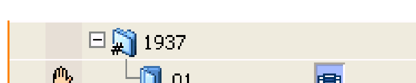
4 If you want to stop processing, choose Stop and Hold.

This means that active tasks are stopped and rescheduled. The rescheduled tasks are then put on hold.

5 If you want to allow any ongoing processing to finish, choose Hold.

This means that all active tasks will be allowed to finish and all queued tasks will be put on hold.

The Hold icon appears in the Status column to the left of the job. Notice also that the background color of the associated Job Flow icon changes to blue.



All flats and pages that still need to be processed in the Pages and Results tabs will also be colored blue. Only results that were finished are not colored blue.

The job's input channels will continue to receive and deliver documents to the Page Store, but no further processing will be done on them. This means that although you may see new documents arrive in the Page Store, you cannot add these document pages to your Run List since they have not yet been processed by the Normalizer.

NOTE: Manually holding a job from the Jobs Window stops all processing tasks for the entire job. This is different from including an Action in the job's Production Plan, where you can put any individual job item on hold at any time, whether it is a page, a flat or a separation.

▷ To resume a job on hold

1. Select the Jobs Window.
2. In the Job List, select a job which has been manually put on hold.

   The following Status icon is attached to jobs which are on hold:

   Additionally, the background color of the associated Job Flow icon will be blue.
3. Choose Control > Resume Job, or click the Resume button in the Toolbar.

   The Hold icon disappears, and the background color of the associated Job Flow icon changes to green.

   Resuming a job does not resume results and/or tasks that are waiting on an Action, or that are rejected or in error.

   NOTE: Resuming a job resumes processing of the entire job which was manually put on hold. This is different from Continuing an individual job item (page, flat or separation) which was automatically put on hold by an Action in the job's Production Plan.

Continuing Jobs

A job may be stopped because it has reached a hold Action in its Production Plan, or because it has been aborted, rejected, or in error. In all cases, you can continue all or part of the job manually.

NOTE: You cannot manually continue jobs that are waiting for a Task Processor: They will be continued automatically when a Task Processor becomes available.

▷ To continue results which are waiting on an Action

1. Select the Jobs Window.
2. In the Job List, select a job which has been stopped by Asecuri, and is waiting for user interaction.

   Jobs which have been stopped due to a hold Action will be flagged with one of the following Status icons:

    The job's Production Plan contains an After Hours Action.

    The job's Production Plan contains a Soft Proof Action.

    The job's Production Plan contains a Hard Copy Proof Action.

    The job's output device is controlled by the PlateMaker Client.

    The job's Production Plan contains a Collect for Output Action.

    The job's Production Plan contains a Waiting for Results Action.

    The job's Production Plan contains a Discard Action.

    The job's Production Plan contains a Web Proof Action.

3. Select the Results tab.

   In the Job Layout pane, you will see thumbnails of all the pages or flats in the selected job. Above each job item, you will see one or more Action icons. These correspond to the Actions included in the job's Production Plan. The color of each icon indicates the current processing status of the selected page or flat within the job:

   - If the icon is displayed normally, the page/flat has not yet reached this checkpoint in the Production Plan.
   - If the icon has a blue background, the page/flat has reached this check-point in the Production Plan, and is on hold. In this case, the page/flat itself is also colored blue. The exception to this is the pages with the Collect for Output Action, these only turn blue when ALL the specified pages are available.

- If the icon is dimmed (grayed out), the page/flat has already passed this checkpoint in the Production Plan.

4 Select one or more pages or flats which are on hold (blue background).

5 Click Continue.

The selected pages or flats resume processing, the blue color is removed, and the associated Action icon is dimmed.

NOTE: If you continue a job that is being collected (Collect for Output) but is not yet complete, only the currently available results will be output: Asecuri will automatically continue to collect the remaining results, but you will need to select them and again click Continue to output them.

▷ To continue results which were aborted, rejected, or in error

1 Select the Jobs Window.

2 In the Job List, select a job which is flagged with one of the following Notification or Status icons:

- aborted
- rejected
- warning
- error

3 Select the Results tab.

In the Job Layout pane, you will see thumbnails of all the pages or flats in the selected job.

4 Select one or more pages or flats (with the aborted, rejected, warning or error status).

5 Click Continue.

A Continue confirmation dialog box is displayed.

6 If you wish, enter a comment explaining why you are continuing to process this result.

TIP: You can view this comment later by checking the Job Log (Log for Job).

7 Click Continue.

The selected pages or flats resume processing. However:

- In the Job List, the status of jobs with the rejected or warning condition does not change. Only aborted and error conditions are cleared.
- In the Results tab, the status of results with the rejected, warning or error condition does not change. Only the aborted condition is cleared.

▷ To continue multiple results

1 Select a job in the Jobs window which is waiting on an Action, or is rejected, aborted or in error.

2 Select the Results tab, and choose the first item you want to continue.

3 Extend your selection, as described in “To select or de-select multiple jobs or items” on page 155. If the items are part of a flat, select the entire flat.

4 Click Continue.

NOTE: You can only continue multiple results provided they are all in the same waiting state. This button is disabled if one or more items have a different state, or are not waiting on an Action.

If one or more of the selected items contains rejected, aborted, or error results, a Continue confirmation dialog box is displayed.

5 If you wish, enter a comment explaining why you are continuing to process this result.

TIP: To view this comment later, click the Status icon next to the page in the Page Store or Run List.

6 Click Continue.

Making Rush Jobs

You can upgrade any job in the Job List to a “rush” job. This puts the job to the top of the queue of jobs waiting to be processed by Asecuri. A rush job will be processed as soon as Asecuri has finished processing the current job.

▷ To make a rush job

1. Select the Jobs Window.
2. In the Job List, select a job.
3. Choose Control > Rush Job, or click the Rush Job button in the Toolbar.

The Job icon changes to a chequered background, indicating that this job will be given priority over the other jobs in the Job List.

Restarting Job Processing

You can remake all the existing job results which follow a selected point in the Production Plan. You may want to do this if you have changed your resources (new fonts, color books, etc.), or if you want to remake aborted results or remake output when no raster data is available.

▷ To restart job processing

1. Select the Jobs window.
2. In the Job List, select a job and choose Control > Restart Job Processing At.
3. Select the Task Processor from which you want to restart processing.

   Asecuri starts to re-render the job from the selected point in the Production Plan.

Duplicating Jobs

Asecuri allows you to duplicate jobs. This is useful for applications which require nearly identical jobs (e.g. where only a single separation - usually black - needs to be changed across different jobs)

When you duplicate a job, Asecuri makes an exact copy of the job, ready for editing. The ‘source’ job is not affected.

▷ To duplicate a job

1. Select the Jobs window.
2. In the Job List, select a job and choose Edit > Duplicate Job.

   Asecuri duplicates the job, and opens the duplicate version in the Ticket Editor. Here, you can make any changes you require (e.g. change the job name).

Close the Ticket Editor.

The duplicate job is automatically submitted, and appears in the Job List.

Creating a New Job from an Existing Job

You can create a new empty job by using the job ticket of an existing job. The new job re-uses certain settings from the existing job while others are reset:

- Job Name and Order Number are blank
- Operator Name is taken from the existing job
- Print Center, Company and Collaborators are taken from the existing job
- Guest collaborators are removed
- Hot Folder is reset to the settings stored in the selected parameter set
- Content files are removed
- The job has a new job-ID
- The new job has no history
- All other settings are re-used: plan, products, imposition, production sets, etc.

▷ To create a new job from an existing job

1. Context-click a job or highlight a job and choose **File > New From Selected**.
2. The Job Ticket Editor opens with an empty Administration tab and you can complete the job ticket set up and upload new content files.

Deleting Jobs

By default, jobs are not automatically deleted from the system. You must delete them manually. When you delete a job, all the job's resources and results are erased, but the job still remains logged in the system and can still be seen in the Job List by the Administrator (these jobs have a strike-through). To permanently remove all traces of a deleted job, the Administrator needs to delete it a second time from the Job List. Alternatively, he can set up a schedule for automatically removing deleted jobs from the system.

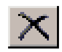
NOTE: You can also delete a job together with all its logging information in a single step by purging it, as described below.

▷ To delete a job from the Job List

1 Select the Jobs Window.

2 Select the job that you want to delete in the Job List.

3 Choose Edit > Delete Job, or press the Delete key.

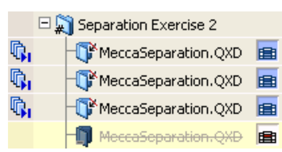


You will see the message “The job <jobname> will be deleted. You cannot undo this”.

4 Click Delete.

NOTE: If you delete a Job created from a Hot Ticket, the Hot Ticket itself is not deleted.

The Job is deleted, together with the Job Ticket, and any intermediate job results. Only the job log remains. If you are logged in as an Operator, the job immediately disappears from the Job List. However, if you are logged in as an Administrator, you will still see the job in the Job List: The job has a strike-through and is grayed out:



To remove a job with a strike-through from the Job List (Administrators only), you need to select it and delete it a second time.

NOTE: If you delete a Job created from a Hot Ticket, the Hot Ticket itself is not deleted.

▷ To view/remove all ‘deleted’ jobs from the Job List

Administrator access level only!

Deleted jobs can still be seen in the Job List by Administrators: They have a strike-through and are grayed out.

1 Select the Jobs Window.

To quickly located all deleted jobs, you can use the Custom Job Filter.

2 Edit the Custom Job Filter by hovering over the Custom Filter button and clicking Edit in the cogwheel menu to open the filter settings.

3 In the filter settings, select the 'deleted' Status check box, and choose 'Is' from the associated list options.

4 Click Apply to activate the filter, then click OK.

5 Select the deleted job(s) that you want to permanently remove in the Job List.

6 Choose Edit > Delete Job, or press the Delete key.

The selected job(s) are permanently deleted. No trace of them remains on the system, in the Job List, or in the Job Log.

▷ To purge a job from the Job List

1 Select the Jobs Window.

2 Select the job that you want to purge in the Job List.

3 Hold down the Shift key while pressing the Delete key.

You will see the message "The job <jobname> will be deleted immediately. You cannot undo this".

4 Click Delete.

The job is permanently deleted. No trace of the job remains on the system, the Job List, or the Job Log.

▷ To automatically clean up deleted jobs

Administrator access level only!

1 Select the System Overview window.

2 Click the Asecuri System icon.

A set of icons is displayed in the Resources pane.

3 Double-click the Job Housekeeping icon.

The Job Housekeeping Settings dialog box is displayed.

4 Select a schedule for cleaning up deleted jobs, as described in “Job Housekeeping Settings” on page 409.

5 Click OK.

Enabling/Disabling Input Channels

By default, all input channels are enabled when they are first created. However, you may want to disable them from time to time - to prevent other users inputting documents, or to improve system performance.

You can enable or disable input channels from the Hot Tickets List (for Hot Tickets which will be used to create jobs) or from the Jobs List (for jobs which have already been created).

▷ To disable an input channel

1 Select a Hot Ticket in the Hot Ticket List, or select a job in the Job List.

2 Choose Control > Disable Inputs.

The inputs for this job are closed. Asecuri will no longer accept document input on this channel. Any documents which are input will be queued up, pending reactivation of the channel.

You will see that the disabled job or Hot Ticket now has a “disabled input” job icon:

▷ To enable an input channel

1 Select a disabled Hot Ticket in the Hot Ticket List, or a disabled job in the Job List.

Disabled jobs and Hot Tickets Have a “disabled input” job icon:

2 Choose Control > Enable Inputs.

The job icon changes to indicate that the inputs have been successfully opened.

▷ To automatically enable or disable an input channel

1 Create a new Job Ticket/Hot Ticket, or context-click a job in the Job List and select Edit Job from the context menu.

2 Select the Options tab.

3 To disable an input channel, select the 'Deactivate input when' check box, then click open the associated list box and select one of the available options, as described in "Input Channels" on page 210.

4 To enable an input channel, clear the 'Deactivate input when' check box.

Opening the Job and System Logs

The Job and System Logs list all job and system events which take place within Asecuri. They provide information on jobs, devices, or systems which need attention.

▷ To open the Job Log

1 Select the Jobs Window.

2 Context-click on a job in the Job List, and select Log for Job from the context menu.

Make sure you context-click a job, and not the job folder.

The Job Log is displayed.

NOTE: The largest item you can select is a job. You cannot view the log for several jobs at once. If you select a flat, the log includes all separations of that flat, but not the pages that make it up.

▷ To open the System Log

1 Select the System Overview Window.

2 Choose Window > Log for Asecuri System.

The System Log is displayed.

Archiving Jobs

When a job is processed by Asecuri, all the input files, intermediate processing results, resources, profiles, etc. are by default automatically discarded. If you want to keep them (or part of them), you must archive them. There are three different ways of doing this. You can:

- archive jobs manually in the Job List
- include archiving "Actions" in the Jobs Production Plan
- set up an automated job archiving schedule

Asecuri Archive Icons in Windows Explorer

When you archive a job, the job is exported from the Asecuri environment, and is stored as a file in the specified archive location (this location is defined in your Job Housekeeping Settings). You can see these archive files using Windows Explorer. The icons vary according to the type of job:


Archived Commercial job (.arch)


Archived Public Page Store job (.arch)

What gets Archived?

You can specify your job archiving preferences in the Job Ticket Options. This allows you to define exactly which parts of the job are archived (marked results, all available results).

▷ To archive a job manually from the Job List

1. Select the Jobs Window.
2. Select a job in the Job List.
3. Choose File > Archive Job.

   The following status icon appears next to the job name while the job is being archived:

   As soon as the job has been successfully archived, the Archiving status icon disappears (any previous status icon reappears), and the job icon displays a small “archived” indicator:

   The default archive name and location are defined in your Job Housekeeping Settings. The location must be a shared disk accessible by both Asecuri Client and System (for example: D:\ArchiveRoot\$ORDER\$JOB).

   Job archive files are saved with the .arch file extension.

▷ To import an archived job, create new job from archive

1. Select the Jobs Window.
2. Choose File > Import Job Archive.

   The Open dialog box appears.

3 Browse to the location where you save your archives.

The default archive name and location are defined in your Job Housekeeping Settings. The location must be a shared disk accessible by both Asecuri Client and System (for example: D:\ArchiveRoot\$ORDER\$JOB). Job archive files are saved with the .arch file extension.

4 Select an archive, and click Open.

Now you can choose how you want to import the archive:

- Restore the original job: puts back the original job as it was
- Create a new job : if you select this option, you can enter a new Job Name and Order Number for the new job. All the other information and content files in the private page store and Run List are the same as the original archive. Can be used for reprints.

5 Choose of the above options and click OK.

The Importing Archive status icon appears briefly next to the job name while the archive is being imported:

As soon as the archive has been successfully imported, the Importing Archive status icon disappears (any previous status icon reappears), and the imported job appears in the Job List.

Asecuri validates the imported ticket against the current configuration of the system. Any ticket errors are reported via the Message Board, and can be corrected using the Ticket Editor.

▷ To set up an automated job archiving schedule

1 Select the System Overview window.

2 Click the Asecuri System icon.

A set of icons is displayed in the Resources pane.

Administrator access level only!

---

3 Double-click the Job Housekeeping icon.

The Job Housekeeping dialog box is displayed.

4 Select a schedule for archiving jobs, as described in “Job Housekeeping Settings” on page 409.

5 Click OK.

Working with Jobs in the Results Tab

The Results tab allows you to preview the results of the selected job, and monitor any ongoing activity in the job's Production Plan:

- "Changing Viewing Options" on page 170
- "Re-rendering Results" on page 172
- "Re-imaging Results" on page 173
- "Re-exporting Results" on page 174
- "Viewing Job Results in the Results Tab" on page 174
- "Rejecting Results" on page 175
- "Discarding Results" on page 177
- "Including Results" on page 177

Changing Viewing Options

By default, all the available viewing options are selected. However, you can always disable or re-enable specific viewing options from the Jobs window.

▷ To show/hide thumbnails

1. Select the Jobs Window.
2. Select a job in the Job List.
3. Select the Results tab.
4. Choose View > Thumbnails to toggle thumbnails on or off for the results displayed in the Job Layout pane.

TIP: Results are displayed faster when thumbnails are turned off.

When thumbnails are turned on, you will see a miniature image of how the selected results will look when printed. When thumbnails are turned off, you will see only a colored background instead of the image.

▷ To show/hide extra information

1. Select the Jobs Window.
2. Select a job in the Job List.
3. Select the Results tab.

4 Choose View > Show, and set your Extra display options by toggling on or off any of the following:

- Page Number: Shows the position of the page in the Run List.
- Hold States: Shows pages or flats in blue when on hold.

5 Choose View > Extras.

This acts as a “master switch”, to toggle all your selected Extra display options on or off.

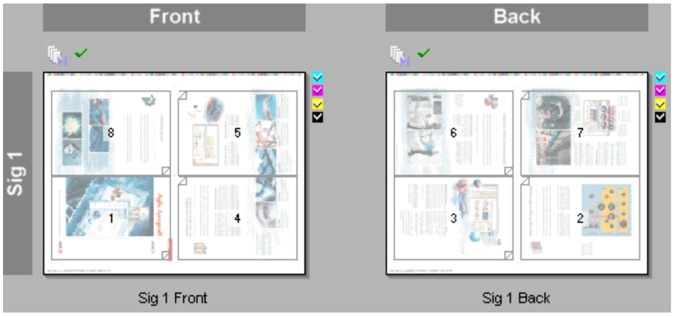
▷ To select front and back sides

1 Select the Jobs Window.

2 In the Job List, select a job which uses imposition in the Production Plan.

3 Select the Results tab.

4 Choose View > Columns > Front and Back.



All the page signatures are displayed (the front and back of each page or flat).

▷ To scale the Results view

1 Select the Jobs Window.

2 Select a job in the Job List.

3 Select the Results tab.

4 Choose View > Scale, and select one of the following:

- Small: Provides the smallest thumbnail visualization of the selected results.
- Normal: Provides the standard thumbnail visualization of the selected results.

- Large: Provides the most detailed thumbnail visualization of the selected results.
- Fit to Window: All selected thumbnail viewing options are displayed, scaled within the limits of the Job Layout pane. The results may be small, but you will not need to scroll to view them all.

▷ To show/hide separations

1. Select the Jobs Window.
2. Select a separated job in the Job List.
3. Select the Results tab.
4. Select a page or flat in the Job Layout pane.

   The individual separations which combine to make up this item are displayed in the Separations pane. Each separation represents a different color.

NOTE: Separations are not available for composite jobs.

Re-rendering Results

You can re-render individually selected results (non-imposed flats, pages, or separations). When you do so, only the results of the selected pages or flats are remade - not the entire job.

You may want to re-render results if you have changed your resources (new fonts, color books, etc.). This is also useful if you want to remake aborted results, or remake output when the raster data (Digital Film) is no longer available.

NOTE: You can also re-render the output when the raster data is still available.

To re-render job results, the job must still have the original input documents (i.e. Keep Results Action on the input channel).

What is the difference between Re-rendering and Re-imaging results?

When you select Re-render, Asecuri will re-render and output the selected job results. When you select Re-image, Asecuri will not render the results again: It will simply output the existing raster data to the selected output device. Re-rendering therefore completely regenerates the selected job results, but takes more time and uses more resources.

▷ To re-render results

1. Select the Jobs window.
2. Select the Results tab.
3. In the Job Layout or Separations pane, select a flat, page, or separation that has already been successfully processed.
4. Choose Control > Re-render <item>.

TIP: This is different from editing a job, where existing results are not affected by any changes you make.

All scheduled and active tasks after the selected point in the flow are aborted, and re-rendering is started. Any archives that were made on the first pass will be remade, and the old archives deleted.

▷ To re-render backgrounds (Asecuri DQS)

1. Select the Jobs window.
2. Select the Results tab.
3. In the Job Layout or Separations pane, select a flat that has already been successfully processed using Asecuri DQS.
4. Choose Control > Re-render backgrounds.

Re-imaging Results

Re-imaging is used to remake previously imaged raster data (Digital Film). This feature is available only for flows that have an imaging output device, and that have kept the finished raster data using the Keep Results Action.

What is the difference between Re-rendering and Re-imaging results?

When you select Re-render, Asecuri will re-render and output the selected job results. When you select Re-image, Asecuri will not render the results again: It will simply output the existing raster data to the selected output device. Re-imaging is therefore quicker and uses fewer resources.

▷ To re-image results

1. Select the Jobs window.
2. Select the Results tab.
3. In the Job Layout or Separations pane, select a flat, page, or separation that has already been successfully processed, and which has kept the finished raster data.
4. Choose Control > Re-image, or click the Re-image button in the Toolbar.

The selected items are automatically re-imaged, ignoring any proofing or After Hours actions. In fact, no manual intervention is required since in most cases you want to re-image a plate as soon as possible.

If you re-image a job, Asecuri re-images only the results of the main flow. If you want to re-image the results of another flow, you must select those results before re-imaging.

Re-exporting Results

You may want to re-export previously exported results if resources have changed, or when exported files have to be recreated.

▷ To re-export results

1. Select the Jobs window.
2. Select the Results tab.
3. In the Job Layout or Separations pane, select a flat, page, or separation that has already been successfully exported, and which has kept the finished raster data.
4. Choose Control > Re-export.

   The selected items are re-exported.

Viewing Job Results in the Results Tab

When you view results in the Results tab view, Asecuri provides a view on the rendered output results. This is different from viewing results in the Pages tab, where Asecuri provides a view on the job's input results.

▷ To view job results in the Results tab

NOTE: To open PDF documents, you must have already specified where your PDF Reader application is located (see “Preferences” on page 71).

TIP: This feature is useful if you want to diagnose errors, by comparing results from different points in your Production Plan.

1. Select the Jobs Window.
2. Select a job in the Job List which has some rendered results.
3. Select the Results tab.
4. You can do either of the following:

- Context-click a page or flat in the Job Layout pane, and select View Page/ Flat From.
- Context-click a separation in the Separations pane, and select View Separation From.

A submenu is displayed, listing the results which are still available at various stages in your Production plan. Provided you attached a Keep Results Action to your output device, you can view the latest rendered results. If any of the earlier Task Processors in the flow have Keep Results Actions attached to them, you can also choose to view these instead.

5 Select the results you want to view.

Asecuri automatically starts the viewing application that supports the selected document type. This is either:

- A PDF Reader for PDF documents.
- Raster Preview for documents which have already been rendered (Digital Film).

If you select a document, the viewing application displays the first page of the selected document. The page or document is opened in read-only mode.

NOTE: You can also simply double-click a page or document to display the last available result in your Production Plan.

Rejecting Results

There are two reasons why you would want to reject results:

- The content of the page/flat is wrong (incorrect information or typographical mistakes).
- The processing is wrong (incorrect screening, traps are too small, etc.). In this case, you can only reject results that are waiting on an Action that requires manual intervention (such as proofing or “collect for output”).

In both cases, in order to correct the problem you must re-submit the original document to the Asecuri System.

If you wish, you can later accept rejected results and continue processing using the Continue command (see “Continuing Jobs” on page 157).

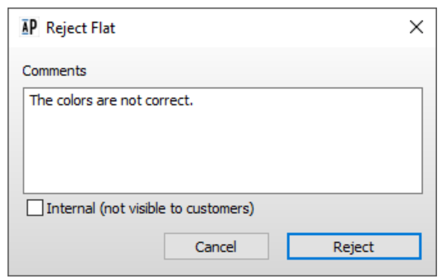
NOTE: Rejected pages are not re-rendered if you later re-render the job.

▷ To reject results

1. Select the Jobs window.
2. Select either the Pages or the Results tab.
3. Select a document, page, flat or separation.
4. Choose Control > Reject <item>, or click the Reject button in the Toolbar.

   The Reject dialog box is displayed.

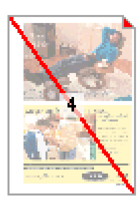
   

5. If you wish, add a comment explaining why you are rejecting the results.

   This information can later be viewed in the Job Log.

6. Click Reject.

   All processing for the selected item is aborted, and the job is marked with a rejected status icon.

   All flats that use the rejected page will be marked as rejected.

NOTE: In a multi-flow Production Plan, you can only reject the processing of a Main or Export flow, not of a Proofer flow.

▷ To clear rejected results

1. Select the Jobs window.
2. Select either the Pages or the Results tab.

3 Select the rejected result(s).

4 Choose Control > Clear Rejected Status.

The rejected status is removed, and processing restarts.

Discarding Results

You discard results in order to prevent specific documents, pages, flats or separations from being printed, without stopping the rest of the job from being printed. You can discard results interactively in the Results tab, or you can add a Discard Action to your Production Plan.

▷ To discard results interactively

1 Select the Jobs window.

2 Select the Results tab.

3 Select a document, page, flat or separation.

4 Choose Control > Discard <item>.

NOTE: You can only discard results that are already output or that are waiting to be output. You cannot discard input files, or pages in an imposition workflow.

The thumbnail of the selected item is dimmed with diagonal stripes across it and the separation icons are dimmed and barred (see below left). If you are discarding a specific separation, only the separation icon is dimmed and barred in the Job Layout pane (see below right). However, the individual separation is barred in the Separations pane.

You can perform no further action on discarded results (delete, reject, etc.) until they are 'included' once more in the job.

Including Results

You can 'include' discarded results in order to remove their discarded status, and to make the selected results part of the job again. Any status that the results had before they were discarded is once again taken into account (e.g., on hold, in error, etc.).

▷ To include results

1. Select the Jobs window.
2. Select the Results tab.
3. Select a document, page, flat or separation that has been discarded.

   The thumbnail of the selected item is dimmed with diagonal stripes across it.
4. Choose Control > Include <item>.

   The thumbnail returns to normal, and the selected item is once more part of the job.

QuickProofing Pages

QuickProofing is a method of proofing one or more documents or pages from a job without having to edit the Production Plan of the job. You can do this by selecting the items you want to proof (a document, page, or multiple documents or pages) and dragging them to a proofer icon in the Output Device panel. You can use all proofing devices (real and file-based) for QuickProofing, and you can drag pages/documents from the Page Store, Run List, or Results tab.

You can QuickProof:

- PDF documents and pages.
- Raster documents (representing pages or flats) that are compatible with the Digital Film Proofer Task Processor (1-bit and 8-bit, composite or pre-separated).

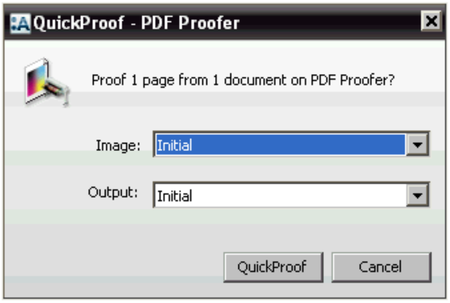
The resulting QuickProof job is no different from any other, user-created job. However, the job is automatically deleted after the proof has been generated.

To QuickProof one or more pages/documents

1. Select the Jobs window.
2. Select a job, and then select the Pages or Results tab.
3. Select the pages or documents you want to QuickProof.

   This may be in the Page Store, Run List or Results tab.
4. Drag the selected item(s) to the Output Device pane, and drop them on a proofing device.

   The proofer icon is highlighted if it accepts the page, and the QuickProof dialog box is displayed.



5. Select the Image and Output parameter sets you want to use, and click the QuickProof button.

The selected items are sent to the proofer. Asecuri creates a new QuickProof job with the same order number as the source job and with normal priority. You will see the new job appear briefly in the Job List with a green activity icon. The selected proofer will also turn green, indicating that it is busy processing the job.

When the proof has been completed, the job is automatically removed from the Job List. You can then collect your proof from the selected proofing device.

NOTE: You can only QuickProof PDF and raster documents. You cannot QuickProof PostScript documents, PDF layers (versioning), separations, or a mixture of different formats.

CHAPTER 6

Managing Hot Tickets

This section describes how you manage your Hot Tickets.

- The Hot Ticket Manager 182
- The Hot Ticket List 183
  - Hot Ticket List Layout 183
  - Hot Ticket Icons 184
- Viewing the Hot Ticket Administration Tab 185
- Viewing the Hot Ticket Options Tab 186
- Viewing the Hot Ticket Products Tab 187
- Viewing the Hot Ticket Plan Tab 188
  - Production Plan Pane (Hot Tickets) 188
  - Settings Pane (Hot Tickets) 188
- Working with Hot Tickets 190
  - Selecting Hot Tickets 190
  - Duplicating a Hot Ticket 190
  - Deleting a Hot Ticket 191
  - Creating a PPD for a Hot Ticket 191
  - Checking Hot Ticket and Ticket Template Consistency 192
  - Fully Automated Imposition 193
- Hot Tickets for Packaging Jobs 195

The Hot Ticket Manager

The Hot Ticket Manager can be opened from any of the main windows in the Asecuri Client by clicking Hot Tickets in the Asecuri Taskbar. This is where you will monitor, view, and manage the Hot Tickets that you create.

The main window is divided into 3 panes:

- The Output Device List: On the left side of the window, you will see a list of currently configured output devices (e.g., Avantra25, Export, etc.).

- The Hot Ticket List: Next to the Output Device List, you will see the Hot Ticket List. This List displays the status of all Hot Tickets that have been submitted to the Asecuri System. For more information, see “What Are Hot Tickets?” on page 31.

- Collecting Tickets List: See “” on page 197.

Filters: Above the Hot Ticket List, you can enter filter criteria directly into the Quick Filter box. Below the Output Device List, you have custom job filters for filtering the Hot Ticket List based on a variety of criteria.

Selected Hot Ticket details: The large pane on the right side of the window displays information on the selected Hot Ticket. This information is arranged into three tabs:

  - The Administration tab (see “Viewing the Hot Ticket Administration Tab” on page 185)

  - The Options tab (see “Viewing the Hot Ticket Options Tab” on page 186)

  - The Products tab (see “Viewing the Hot Ticket Products Tab” on page 187)

  - The Plan tab (see “Viewing the Hot Ticket Plan Tab” on page 188).

The Hot Ticket List

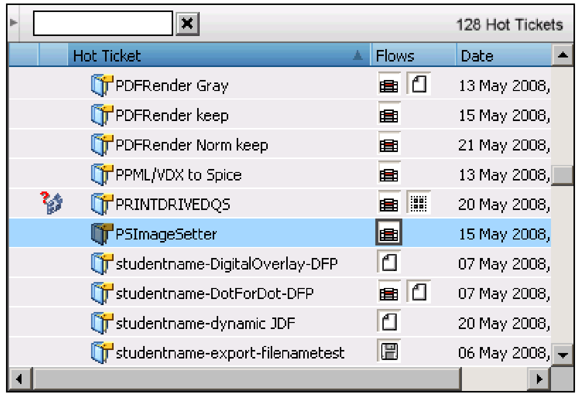
The Hot Ticket List displays all the Hot Tickets that have been submitted to the Asecuri System. When you first create and submit a Hot Ticket, it will be displayed immediately in the Hot Ticket List.

A series of icons indicate the current status of each Hot Ticket in the list. These include Job Notification Icons, Job Status Icons, Hot Ticket Icons, and Flow Icons. Note, however, that a Hot Ticket cannot be finished, cannot be put on hold, and cannot be made into a rush ticket.

Hot Ticket List Layout

The Hot Ticket List is divided vertically into the following columns:

- Notification: May display an icon which indicates an error, warning, or remark.
- Status: May display one or more icons (up to 4) which indicate the current or recent job states. These icons are sorted from the left according to priority. You can expand the width of this column to view the lower priority icons.
- Hot Ticket column - Hot Ticket Icons: Displays an icon which indicates the type of Hot Ticket, as well as the Hot Ticket name.
- Flows: Displays one or more icons which correspond to the number and types of flows specified in the Ticket.
- Create Date: The dates and times when tickets were submitted. The date and time format adapts automatically to the width of the column.
- Modified Date: The dates and times when tickets were modified. The date and time format adapts automatically to the width of the column.
- Media: The media selected to print the job.
- Device: The device selected to print the job.
- Milestone: The due date you entered for the planning of the job.
- Company: The company name of the customer.



These details are displayed for each Hot Ticket in their respective column. These columns can be sorted, rearranged, hidden or grouped just like the Job List. You can also filter hot tickets. Refer to the following sections:

- "Organizing the Job List" on page 112
- "Filtering the Job List" on page 114.

If you want to see the jobs that have been created using these Hot Tickets, click Jobs in the Asecuri Taskbar to switch to the Job Manager window.

Hot Ticket Icons

Asecuri displays the following icons in the Hot Ticket column.


Commercial Hot Ticket


Commercial Hot Ticket with a disabled input channel


Job that requires set-up by Printer (WebApproval jobs only)


Collecting Hot Tickets (tickets grouped in separate panel)

Viewing the Hot Ticket Administration Tab

The Administration tab contains customer-specific information that can be used to associate specific Production Plans with particular customers or job types.

The Hot Ticket name is displayed in the Hot Ticket List after the Ticket has been submitted.

The information displayed is read-only. If you want to change the information in any of the fields, you first need to context-click the Hot Ticket in the Hot Ticket List, and select Edit from the context menu. You can also select the Hot Ticket and click the Edit button.

For full details on each of the fields, see “Using the Administration Tab” on page 202.

Viewing the Hot Ticket Options Tab

The Options tab displays information on how jobs are to be handled, including archiving and notification settings, post-processing channel settings, etc.

The information displayed is read-only. If you want to change the information in any of the fields, you first need to context-click the Hot Ticket in the Hot Ticket List, and select Edit from the context menu. You can also select the Hot Ticket and click the Edit button.

For full details on each of the fields, see “Using the Options Tab” on page 206.

Viewing the Hot Ticket Products Tab

The Products tab for Hot Tickets allows you to set up fully automated imposition. Drop a document onto a Hot Ticket and create a job whose pages are imposed, while the product name, number of pages and page size can all be taken from the uploaded document. This is an interesting feature that enables 'lights-out' printing of digital products, but fully automated imposition can also be used for basic commercial offset jobs.

NOTE: A Hot Ticket can only have one product and the command to add products is disabled.

For more information on the Products tab, see "Using the Plan Tab" on page 213.

Viewing the Hot Ticket Plan Tab

The Plan tab displays the selected Hot Ticket's Production Plan, and allows you to view the individual settings of each of the items in the Plan.

The information displayed is read-only. If you want to change the information in any of the fields, you first need to context-click the ticket in the Hot Ticket List, and select Edit from the context menu. You can also select the ticket and click the Edit button.

The Plan tab has two panes:

- Production Plan Pane (Hot Tickets)
- Settings Pane (Hot Tickets)

Production Plan Pane (Hot Tickets)

The Production Plan is a series of components (Task Processors and Actions) linked together to form one or more processing flows. These components are configured to define exactly how jobs are to be input, processed, and output.

When you select one of these components, you will see the associated settings displayed in the lower Settings Pane (Hot Tickets).

Below the Task Processor icon, there is a drop-down list from in which you can view the selected Parameter Set. If no Parameter Set is selected, the Task Processor uses its factory settings.

The last Task Processor in a flow always displays the Flow ID icon at the end of the flow. By default, this always indicates a Main Output flow.

The information displayed is read-only. If you want to change the information in any of the fields, you first need to context-click the Hot Ticket in the Hot Ticket List, and select Edit from the context menu. You can also select the Hot Ticket and click the Edit button.

Settings Pane (Hot Tickets)

The Settings pane displays the settings that were configured for the component (Task Processor or Action) selected in the Production Plan pane.

The information displayed is read-only. If you want to change the information in any of the fields, you first need to context-click the Hot Ticket in the Hot Ticket

List, and select Edit from the context menu. You can also select the Hot Ticket and click the Edit button.

Working with Hot Tickets

The main purpose of the Hot Ticket window is to allow you to view, and manage the Hot Tickets that are created by the Asecuri System. Much of the information you need is displayed as icons in the Hot Tickets List. This information, together with the four tabs of selected Hot Ticket details, gives you a full and detailed snapshot of all existing Hot Tickets.

- "Selecting Hot Tickets" on page 190
- "Duplicating a Hot Ticket" on page 190
- "Deleting a Hot Ticket" on page 191
- "Creating a PPD for a Hot Ticket" on page 191
- "Checking Hot Ticket and Ticket Template Consistency" on page 192

Selecting Hot Tickets

Hot Tickets are listed in the Hot Ticket List in alphabetical order.

▷ To select a Hot Ticket

1. Select the Hot Tickets Window.
2. Click a Hot Ticket in the Hot Ticket List.

   The Hot Ticket details are retrieved from the Asecuri System and displayed in the pane on the right. This information is arranged into 3 tabs - Administration, Options, and Plan.

   You can now edit the ticket as described in "Creating or Editing a Ticket" on page 239.

▷ To select multiple Hot Tickets

1. Select the Hot Tickets Window.
2. Select the Hot Tickets as described in "To select or de-select multiple jobs or items" on page 155.

Duplicating a Hot Ticket

You can create a copy of a Hot Ticket as follows. This command is also available on the Edit menu or by pressing CTRL+D.

▷ To duplicate a Hot Ticket

1. Select the Hot Tickets Window.
2. Context-click the Hot Ticket that you want to duplicate in the Hot Ticket List.
3. Choose Duplicate Ticket.

   A new Hot Ticket is created and the Administration tab is displayed.
4. Enter a new name and submit the Hot Ticket.

   The duplicate Hot Ticket appears in the Hot Ticket List with the new name.

NOTE: If you do not change the name of the Hot Ticket, it appears greyed-out in the list for editing at a later stage.

Deleting a Hot Ticket

You can delete a Hot Ticket as follows.

▷ To delete a Hot Ticket

1. Select the Hot Tickets Window.
2. Select the Hot Ticket that you want to delete in the Hot Ticket List.
3. Choose Edit > Delete Hot Ticket, or press the Delete key.

   You will see the message “The hot ticket <name> will be deleted. You cannot undo this”.
4. Click Delete.

   The Hot Ticket is deleted from the Hot Ticket List.

NOTE: Only the Hot Ticket is deleted: Any jobs which have been created using this Hot Ticket remain on the system, and can still be viewed in the Job List when you switch to the Jobs window.

Creating a PPD for a Hot Ticket

You can create a PostScript Printer Description (PPD) file for a Hot Ticket, containing all job-related information specific for your output environment. A PPD created from a Hot Ticket allows you to select the parameter sets in the PPD.

▷ To create a PPD for a Hot Ticket

1. Select the Hot Tickets Window.
2. Select the Hot Ticket for which you want to create a PPD file.
3. Choose File > Export Hot Ticket PPD.

   You can also directly context-click on the Hot Ticket and select Export Hot Ticket PPD.

   The PPD User Options dialog box appears.
4. Specify the necessary Format and Content options as specified in "PPD User Options" on page 402.
5. Click OK to create the PPD file.

Checking Hot Ticket and Ticket Template Consistency

Hot Tickets and Ticket Templates store the names of the parameter sets they use, and the values in these sets. However, if you later modify the parameter set, the Hot Ticket/Ticket Template is not automatically updated: It still uses the original parameter set names and values.

In many cases, you will need any such changes to be reflected in the Hot Ticket/ Ticket Template. To do this, you need to run a 'Consistency Check'. This checks every Ticket Template (both Jobs and Hot Tickets templates) and Hot Tickets - in that order - for changed job resources. Any out-of-date references are listed in a Consistency report.

You have the option to simply check if there are any discrepancies (without making any changes), or to both check and update your Hot Tickets/Ticket Templates.

NOTE: Consistency checking is only available to users with Administrator or higher access level, and does not affect existing jobs.

▷ To check the consistency of a Hot Ticket or Ticket Template

1. From any of the Asecuri main menus, choose File > Check Consistency.

   The Consistency Check dialog box is displayed. By default, both the Hot Tickets and Ticket Templates options are selected.
2. Select one or both check boxes, and then click either of the following buttons:

- Verify Only: The selected items are checked and a consistency report is displayed in a browser window. The report lists any consistencies found in the selected items.

- Verify and Update: The selected items are checked and a consistency report is displayed in a browser window. The report lists any consistencies found in the selected items, and indicates that these items have been updated.

Fully Automated Imposition

A Hot Ticket can be set up so that the newly created job takes a number of product settings from the uploaded document and is imposed based on predefined imposition settings. Such a ticket uses the From Input options in the Products tab.

NOTE: This fully automated imposition can only be used for jobs consisting of one product. Only one document can be uploaded to the Hot Ticket.

Create a From Input Hot Ticket

1 Create your Hot Ticket as explained in Creating and Editing Tickets on page 199.

2 In the Products tab, make sure the following are enabled:

- Product Type > Number of Pages: select the **From Input** check box.

- Default Part > Page Size: choose **<From Input>** in the top of the drop-down list.

The Auto Impose button changes to **Set Up Auto Impose**.

3 Click the Set Up Auto Impose button and specify the settings in the Auto Impose window.

4 Click OK.

NOTE: You cannot prepare the actual imposition in this scenario. The imposition will be created on the fly when you create your job from the Hot Ticket.

5 The Auto Impose window closes and details of the imposition are displayed next to the **Run Auto Impose** check box.

These Auto Impose settings are saved to the Impose resource.

6. Select the Run Auto Impose check box.
7. Save the Hot Ticket.

   Jobs created with the Hot Ticket will take the number of pages and the page size of the uploaded document and use the saved Auto Impose settings for the imposition. The document file name (without extension) is used as the name of the product.

Hot Tickets for Packaging Jobs

Hot Tickets Manager allows you also to automate the creation of packaging jobs. Files can be dropped in a hot folder or uploaded, and packaging jobs are created and submitted automatically.

For each product, the system creates an individual job that takes the file name as job name and the job name of the hot ticket as order number.

Packaging jobs Hot Tickets are managed in the Hot Tickets window. To create the Layout, you need the Layout Editor, and use Auto-Layout, Sheet Layout Templates, possibly in combination with Auto-Fill.

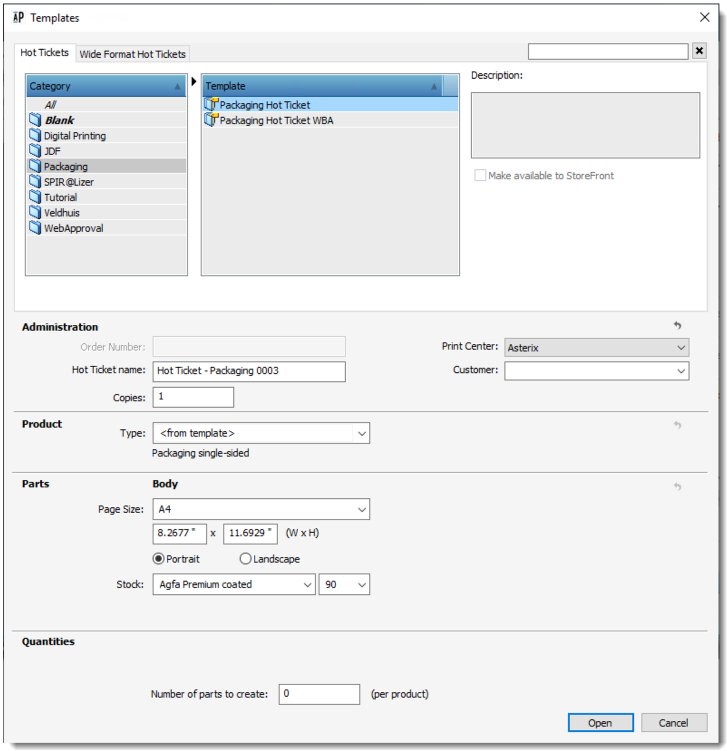
Packaging jobs and their Hot Tickets also support editing their Production Plan, using the commands **Edit Production Plan**, or **Edit Hot Ticket** and then select the **Plan** tab. This opens the job or the Hot Ticket.

▷ Create a Hot Ticket for Packaging Jobs

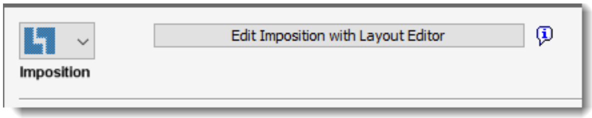
NOTE: This option requires a special license.

1. Go to the Hot Tickets window.
2. Choose File > New from Templates and then the Hot Tickets tab.
3. Choose the packaging template you want to use in the list.
4. Enter the Hot Ticket name, and the values you require; Copies, Product Type, Parts Body page size and orientation, Paper Stock type, number of parts to create (per product), and click Open.

NOTE: Product Type should be Unbound (Packaging single-sided).



5 In the Products tab opened, ensure that Imposition mode **Edit Imposition with Layout Editor** is selected. Click this button to open the Layout Editor.



6 In the Layout Editor, you can set up the layout just like you would do for a regular packaging job. Refer to “Layout Editor” on page 257 for detailed information.

7 Click the **Submit Job** button to save your hot ticket.

▷ Create jobs from a Hot Ticket for Packaging Jobs

1. Go to the Hot Tickets window.
2. Context-click the hot ticket you want to use in the Hot Ticket list and choose Upload Document.
3. Browse to the products you want to upload. Multiple products can be uploaded.
4. Click Open.

   The system creates one or more packaging jobs in the background. Go to the Jobs window and you will see the new jobs appearing in the Job list. An individual job is created for each product. For example, if you uploaded 20 products, the system creates 20 jobs.
5. Double-click a job to edit and fine-tune in the Layout Editor.

▷ Make a Hot Ticket template for Packaging Jobs

A Hot Ticket for packaging jobs is always created from a template. You can create your own templates from an existing Packaging Hot Ticket.

1. Go to the Hot Tickets window.
2. Select the hot ticket you want to save as a template in the Hot Ticket list.
3. Choose File > Save as Template.
4. Choose a template Category, enter the name, and click Save.

   The template is added to the list of templates.

NOTE: To delete a template, go to the Templates resource. Read the section “Monitoring and Configuring Your System” on page 389.

CHAPTER 7

Creating and Editing Tickets

This section describes how you can create and edit Job Tickets and Hot Tickets using the Ticket Editor.

NOTE: The Layout Editor and not the Ticket Editor is opened when you choose to create Layout Tickets or Layout Hot Tickets. See "Layout Editor" on page 257.

- The Ticket Editor 200
- Using the Administration Tab 202
- Using the Options Tab 206
- Using the Plan Tab 213
- Using the Pages Tab 233
- Using the Results Tab 236
- Working with Job Tickets and Hot Tickets 238
- Inputting Documents 255

The Ticket Editor

The Ticket Editor is where you create and edit your Tickets. You can create four types of Tickets:

- Job Tickets: the definition of a job
- Hot Tickets: automatically creates and submits jobs
- Layout Tickets: job tickets for Sign & Display work
- Layout Hot Tickets: hot tickets for Sign & Display work

NOTE: The Layout Editor and not the Ticket Editor is opened when you choose to create Layout Tickets or Layout Hot Tickets. See “Layout Editor” on page 257.

The features of the Ticket Editor are organized in the following tabs. When you create a Job Ticket, you will see two extra tabs which allow you to specify a Run List and view intermediate processing results.

- The Administration tab: Uniquely identifies the job, and associates a specific Production Plan with a particular customer. See “Using the Administration Tab” on page 202.
- The Options tab: Defines how the jobs which use this ticket are to be handled (archiving, notifications, deletion options, etc.). See “Using the Options Tab” on page 206.
- The Products tab: For multi-part jobs and multi-product jobs, this tab allows you to specify how the job is structured, and how each individual section of the job will be processed. See “Using the Plan Tab” on page 213.
- The Plan tab: Allows you to create, view, or modify a Production Plan. See “Using the Plan Tab” on page 213.
- The Pages tab (Job Tickets only): Displays both the list of pages contained in the Page Store, and the pages that have been included in the Run List. See “Using the Pages Tab” on page 233.
- The Results tab (Job Tickets only): Allows you to monitor the current processing status of the selected job, displays thumbnails of the Run List pages, and separation information. See “Using the Results Tab” on page 236.

Related topics:

- Working with Job Tickets and Hot Tickets on page 238
- Shortcuts: Job Ticket Editor on page 730

Using the Administration Tab

The Administration tab contains customer-specific information that can be used to associate specific Production Plans with particular customers or job types. You can use job names or order numbers to group jobs in the Job List.

For Hot Tickets, you use the Hot Ticket name to group the resulting jobs. For example, if you enter "poster6" as the Hot Ticket name, all jobs that are created using this Hot Ticket will be grouped in the Job List under the name "poster6".

Administration Tab Information

The Administration tab includes the following fields:

Order number

You must enter an order number to identify the job that will be generated by a Job Ticket. You can enter a number or a name as your Order Number. As soon as you submit the ticket, the job will appear in the Job List. Initially, the job consists of only the job parameters, and is represented as a folder. The Order Number is displayed next to the job folder icon.

The text you enter in the Order Number field may later be used to automatically sort archived jobs into subfolders. For more information see "When Job is Finished" on page 209.

NOTE: An Order number is not required for Hot Tickets or Public Page Store jobs.

Job name, Hot Ticket name, or Public Page Store name

You must enter a name to identify the Job, Hot Ticket, or Public Page Store.

- If you are creating a Hot Ticket, the Hot Ticket can be seen only in the Hot Ticket window.
- If you are creating a Job (based on a Job Ticket), the Job name can be seen in the Job List after a document has been input. You can see this name when you expand the associated job folder (which is named according to the job Order number).
- If you are creating a Public Page Store Job, the Public Page Store will appear, together with any other Public Page Stores, below the Job List.

The text you enter in this field may later be used to automatically sort archived jobs into subfolders. For more information see "When Job is Finished" on page 209.

Operator

The operator is the person responsible for processing the documents associated with this job. An operator name is automatically entered when you create a job or when jobs are automatically submitted by Hot Tickets. This name is the same as your NT logon user name.

If you wish you can manually edit the operator name.

In the Message Board filter, you can filter on operator name in order to see all the messages for a specific operator (see “Message Board Filter” on page 66).

Description

Any information you may see displayed here is automatically extracted from an incoming JDF file.

Comments

Enter any special comments that apply to this job. This is a free text entry field that is not used by Asecuri.

Print Center

This option is only visible if you have the relevant license to work with multiple Print Centers. These are printing companies or other service providers belonging to the same organization and that can use Asecuri independently from each other. Choose a Print Center from the drop-down list to manage the Customers, Customer’s staff and Printer’s staff for that particular Print Center.

Customer

In this panel you can provide information about the customer and the collaborators who will work on the job at hand (optional). You can select a known company from the Company drop-down list. A known company is a customer which has been defined with all its users and their contact details in the WebApproval (ProductionCenter) or PrintSphere applications. Your own company and staff are also set up in these applications. See the online help of these applications for more information. If you do not select a known company and the Company field is blank, you can fill in the contact details (name, email and phone no.) of the customer for this job.

Printer’s Staff and Customer’s Staff

After selecting a known company, you are presented a list of Customer’s Staff and Printer’s Staff that you can designate to collaborate on this job. If you did not select a company, you only see your own staff. Each collaborator in the

Customer's Staff and Printer's Staff lists can have one or more roles which are activated by clicking the icons in the Roles column. The roles are *Approver, Uploader*, and *Viewer*. Select the **Uploader can place files** check box if you want to allow Uploaders to place files in the run list of a WebApproval job. You can change the role of the default collaborators by clicking these icons.

In addition, collaborators in the Printer's Staff list can be a *candidate Customer Service Representative (CSR)* or a *preferred CSR*. Clicking the candidate CSR icon changes the role of the collaborator to preferred CSR and vice versa. More than one preferred CSR can be assigned to a job.

Add Guest

Use this button to add guests to collaborate on this job. Enter the person's e-mail and select the **User Roles: Uploader** check-box if you want this person to upload files for the job. Click the Add Guest button to create the guest who is subsequently added to the list of Customer's Staff.

NOTE: Once the job is submitted you can no longer edit the Customer's Staff and Printer's Staff lists.

When you select a company from the Company drop-down list, Asecuri looks up the name in the Accounts resource and the PrintSphere application to see if the account is active or inactive. This status is indicated at the bottom of the Customer Contact dialog box.

Approver: This user can approve jobs in the WebApproval application.

Uploader: This user can upload files for this job in the WebApproval application.

Viewer

Candidate CSR (Customer Service Representative)

Preferred CSR (Customer Service Representative)

WebApproval account is inactive: the account exists but is not enabled.

WebApproval account is active: the account exists and is enabled.

PrintSphere account is inactive: the account exists but is not enabled.

PrintSphere account is active: the account exists and is enabled.

Publish to ProductionCenter (WebFlow service)

A drop-down list next to the Company list lets you control whether a job is published to the ProductionCenter web portal or not. You have one or more of the following options, depending on whether you have licenses for the WebFlow service and/or the WebApproval service:

- Publish: (default) The job will also appear in the list of jobs in ProductionCenter, and Printer Company as well as Print Buyer users are able to upload files and approve pages depending on their role.
- Publish Internally: The job will appear in the list of jobs in ProductionCenter but only for Printer Company users.
- Don't Publish: The job is not published to ProductionCenter (e.g. confidential jobs) even if you have the required license to do so.
- Publish for Upload: The job will appear in the list of jobs in ProductionCenter but only for uploading purposes.
- Publish for Approval: The job will appear in the list of jobs in ProductionCenter but only for approval purposes.

The text in the Customer Contact fields may later be used to automatically sort archived jobs into subfolders. For more information see "When Job is Finished" on page 209.

You can print some or all of the Administration tab information on film or plate. This process is handled using marks and variables when setting up the imposition. The variables are prepended with $ characters. These variables correspond to the various fields in the Administration tab and are used to print the job information on your film or plate. For information on the Asecuri variables, refer to System Variables. For more information on imposition, see "Working with Apogee Impose" on page 369 or refer to the user guide supplied with your third-party imposition software.

Related topics:

- Accounts on page 427
- on page 40
- System Variables on page 707
- Working with Apogee Impose on page 369

Using the Options Tab

The Options tab displays information on how the jobs which use this ticket are to be handled (archiving, notifications, etc.). This tab offers options that affect the job as a whole, and which are not related to a specific Task Processor. You need to set Job Options for Job Tickets, Hot Tickets, and Public Page Store jobs, although not all options are used in Hot Tickets and Public Page Store jobs.

The Options tab includes the following sections:

- Job Priority
- Job Update Policy
- Milestones (Jobs only)
- Job States
- When Job is Finished (Jobs and Hot Tickets only)
- Input Channels (Jobs only)
- Notifications
- Validation

Job Priority

- High
- Normal
- Low

NOTE: Job priority can also be changed for one or multiple jobs in the Job List.

Job Update Policy

This section provides a method to control the application of job updates that are sent from an MIS system (when the MIS resubmits a JDF job).

You can overrule the system-wide job update policy on a per-job basis at job level: There is no different policy per part, production set or operation.

Follow System Policy

Uses the update policy specified at the MIS site. This allows the MIS to apply JDF job updates without asking, and without informing the operator that there was an update.

Apply and Inform

Applies all JDF job updates without asking, but posts a notification after applying the updates.

Notify

Posts a notification when a JDF job update needs to be applied. The operator can decide whether to accept or deny the update.

This policy should only be used when the MIS supports asynchronous JMF commands. Otherwise, the MIS will fail the update when the operator does not immediately answer the notification.

Asecuri returns an error to the MIS upon receiving a synchronous command, and posts a notification. The notification states that the update was rejected because of a misconfiguration, and suggests you either change the MIS protocol settings or use a different update policy. The same message is included in the error reply sent to the MIS.

Deny and Inform

Denies the JDF job update without asking, and without informing the operator that the update was denied.

Milestones

You can configure the system to distribute messages to the Message Board (and optionally to a defined e-mail address) when specific milestones have been reached in the job assembly and generation process.

NOTE: The Milestones section is not available in Hot Tickets and Public Page Store jobs.

You can set two such generic milestones for all jobs that are created using this ticket:

- Run list complete by
- Job finished by

Run list complete by

NOTE: Windows users can click the associated Browse button to display the Choose Date/Time dialog box, and select month, day and time.

Select this check box if you want to set a date and time by which time all the documents required for the job have been successfully delivered to the Asecuri System.

If you choose this milestone, the associated Notify check box is enabled. You should select this check box if you want a reminder to be generated, indicating that the final date for document input is approaching. You then need to specify the notification period. This can be set to any period of days or hours before the final input date. When the notification date is reached, a notification is automatically sent to the Message Board (and optionally to a defined e-mail address).

Job finished by

NOTE: Windows users can click the associated Browse button to display the Choose Date/Time dialog box, and select month, day and time.

Select this check box if you want to set a date and time by which time the job must be successfully completed.

When the current date exceeds the due date minus the notification period, Asecuri flags the job with an appropriate job status icon in the Job List (see “Job Status Icons” on page 119).

NOTE: You can also configure the system to send around an e-mail notification when a job has been successfully finished, as described in When Job is Finished, below.

If you choose this milestone, the associated Notify check box is enabled. You should select this check box if you want a reminder to be generated, indicating that the job completion date is approaching. You then need to specify the notification period. This can be set to any period of days or hours before the job completion date. When the notification date is reached, a notification is automatically sent to the Message Board (and optionally to a defined e-mail address).

Job States

Disable input channels when

Choose when you want to disable the input channels:

- when Run List is complete
- when Job is finished

Mark job as finished

Choose when you want to mark the job as finished:

- when All flows finish (e.g. main and proofing flows)
- when Main Output flow finish (e.g. job is marked finished while the proofing flow has not yet finished)

When Job is Finished

To optimize disk space and to keep the Job List easily manageable, it is a good idea to archive and delete jobs that have been successfully created. You can set the following generic post-completion options for all jobs that are created using this ticket:

- Notify
- Mark for archive
- Delete

NOTE: The When Job is Finished section is not available in Public Page Store jobs.

Notify

Select this check box if you want a notification to be sent to the Message Board as soon as the job has been finished. Optionally, an e-mail message can also be generated, and sent to the operator responsible, or to the address you specify in the Notifications section, below.

Mark for archive

Archiving exports the specified intermediate job results from Asecuri to the specified output destination (to tape or other archiving media).

Select this check box if you want to automatically archive all jobs that have been successfully completed when the archiving process runs. Archive makes an external copy of the job.

For information on specifying an archive location, see “Job Housekeeping Settings” on page 409. This location must be a shared disk accessible by both Asecuri Client and Server.

Archive Location Displays the location (path name) where the archive has been saved. You can click the small button at the end of the path name to open the archive location in Explorer.

Delete

Select this check box if you want to delete all jobs that have been successfully completed.

Mark for deletion after Select this option if you want to automatically mark for deletion all jobs that have been successfully completed. You need to specify how long the job should be kept before it is marked for deletion. This can be set at anything up to 99 days or hours after the job completion date.

Immediately Select this option to immediately delete all successfully completed jobs.

For information on how jobs are deleted, see “Job Housekeeping Settings” on page 409.

Input Channels

You can configure a ticket with one or more input channels, such as Hot Folders or AppleTalk channels. These channels normally remain active all the time. However, you may want to deactivate an input channel to prevent further additions to a completed Run List, or to a finished job.

If you want to do this, select the ‘Deactivate input when:’ check box, then click open the associated list box and select one of the available options:

Deactivate input when Job is finished

All the ticket’s input channels are disabled as soon as the job has been successfully completed.

Deactivate input when Run list is complete

All the Job Ticket's input channels are disabled as soon as the Run List is complete. This option is not available for Hot Tickets. For more information on Run Lists, see "Working with Jobs in the Results Tab" on page 170.

Once the input channel has been deactivated, you can reactivate it by selecting the job in the Job List pane, and clicking the Enable/Disable tool.

NOTE: The Input Channels section is not available in Hot Tickets and Public Page Store jobs.

Notifications

This section allows you to send all notifications as e-mails to a specified e-mail address (this is in addition to the normal use of messages in the Message Board - see "Message Board" on page 62). The text of the e-mail is a text-only version of the message. You can enter an e-mail address. No validation is performed.

Validation

Click the **Edit Job Validation Rules** button to open a dialog where you can set the severity level of a selected number of validation rules that do not have a fixed severity level. Most of these validation rules use variables and an explanation of each rule is given under the list of rules. Validation rules generate messages in the Problem Report.

- Select the rule in the list and then click the Severity drop-down list to choose one of the severity levels:
  - Ignore: The rule will be ignored.
  - Inform: An information message will be generated.
  - Warn: A warning message will be generated.
  - Fail: An error message will be generated.
  - Default: Sets the default severity.

NOTE: When you change the severity level, the system re-runs the validation.

Related topics:

- Problem Report on page 134

Using the Plan Tab

The Plan tab allows you to create, view, or modify a Production Plan. This tab has three panes:

- Production Plan Components Pane
- Production Plan Pane (Ticket Editor)
- Settings Pane (Ticket Editor)

Production Plan Components Pane

This pane gives you access to all the available Task Processors and Actions that you can include in your Production Plan. This pane is divided into four tabs:

- Input Tab
- Process Tab
- Output Tab
- Actions Tab

Input Tab

Displays all the available Input Task Processors for your plan in the Production Plan pane. Input Task Processors accept documents or resources from the "outside world". They function as input channels for Asecuri.

When creating a ticket, you need to include one or more Input Task Processors in a Production Plan to accept the documents that will be input using the associated Ticket.

Process Tab

Displays all the available Processing Task Processors for your plan in the Production Plan pane. Processing Task Processors execute tasks such as imposition, preflight, normalization, rendering, separation and trapping on the incoming documents.

When creating a ticket, you normally need to include several Processing Task Processors in a Production Plan. Each of these accepts job data from the preceding Task Processor, processes the data in accordance with a pre-configured setup, and passes the intermediate results on to the next Task Processor in the flow.

Output Tab

Displays all the available Output and Press Task Processors for your plan in the Production Plan pane. These Task Processors represent your output devices: imagesetters, platesetters and proofers. Apart from the physical devices, Asecuri provides additional Task Processors such as Export and Page Store Out.

When creating a ticket, you need to include an Output Task Processor for each flow in the Production Plan. These accept the final job data from the preceding Processing Task Processor, and output the job to the specified printer or press.

Actions Tab

Displays all the available Actions for your plan in the Production Plan pane. Actions allow you to precisely control the flow of job data through the Production Plan, and for keeping track of your job results at every point in the processing chain.

Once you have built up a valid Production Plan, you can insert Actions between each step in the Plan. When one of these points is reached during job processing, an event is triggered. For example, the job results may be archived, or the flow may be temporarily halted until specific criteria have been met.

Two Types of Actions

The available Actions are divided into two categories: Result Actions and Flow Control Actions.

Result Actions

One or more of these actions can be placed directly above a Task Processor in the Production Plan pane. Unlike Flow Control Actions, these actions do not interrupt the flow of job data from one Task Processor to the next. They pass the job data on as normal, but they perform some extra processing, such as archiving the data or sending out a notification.

The following Result actions are available.

 Keep Result

 Archive Result

 Notify

 Milestone

Flow Control Actions

One or more of these actions can be inserted between any two adjacent Task Processors in the Production Plan pane. These actions interrupt the passing of job data from one Task Processor to the next. Once the action criteria have been met, the flow is resumed, and the job data is passed on to the next Task Processor. A typical Flow Control Action is 'After Hours', which interrupts and holds the processing flow until a specific time has been reached.

The following Flow Control actions are available.

 Discard

 Web Proof

 Soft Proof

 Hard Copy Proof

 Wait for Results

 Collect for Output

 After Hours

---

NOTE: To emphasize the fact that Flow Control actions suspend the Production flow, you will see a break in the connector leading to the following component in the Plan.

Discard

This Action may be inserted between two Task Processors in your Production Plan. Discard is used to prevent specific result from being output, without stopping the rest of the job from being printed. You can use this Action to proof only a few pages or flats, instead of having to proof them all in order to finish the job.

Asecuri displays discarded flats, pages or separations by dimming the thumbnail and name and 'striping' the thumbnail.

You can discard one or more results interactively in the Results tab, or by adding a Discard Action to your Production Plan.

Interactive Discard

The goal is to prevent a result from being output. To do so, select that result in the Results tab, and select the Discard item menu command. When you discard a result interactively, the result is immediately marked as `discarded'. All processing for that result is halted.

NOTE: You cannot discard results when editing a job.

Planned Discard

You can plan to discard results based on their location in the job (Run List position, at number, part or production set). You might want to do this to prevent all pages or flats from being proofed: You can then interactively include the pages or flats you want to have a proof of.

Discard Settings

When you add or select the Discard Settings Action in the Production Plan, you will see the default Action parameters displayed in the Settings pane. Discard includes two main switches; one to discard reprocessing, and one to discard or include a range of results, optionally coupled with a condition on original version or revision. These switches work independently; however, the reprocessing switch always affects all results, regardless of the range or condition selected in the other switch.

Discard check box

Enables discarding based on ranges and originals/revisions. When enabled, Asecuri looks at the selection in the Discard/Include list box to determine whether to discard a result or not. When disabled, the Discard/Include list box is disabled and Asecuri does not discard results based on such a condition (i.e., it normally includes all results, except when discarded by the reprocessing condition). By default, this check box is disabled.

Discard/Include list box

Select whether results that match the condition will be discarded or included.

Discard Discards results that match the condition, and includes those that do not.

Include Includes results that match the condition, and discards those that do not.

Results list box

Select this check box to specify a specific set of results that must be discarded or included. See “Specifying Ranges” on page 218.

All Results Select this option to specify all results, regardless of range. Use this option if you want to hand-pick results for inclusion.

NOTE: The QuickProof feature might make this option less useful.

Results in range Select this option to specify all results that fall within the specified range.

Results outside of range Select this option to specify results that do not fall within the specified range. This is the opposite of the previous option. It is convenient if you want to set up a pair of discard actions: one discarding a specific range and the other one discarding the others. Both actions can use the same range, but one uses ‘When in range’ and the other one uses ‘When outside of range’. See “Specifying Ranges” on page 218.

Parts/Production Sets This option is available only in multi-part jobs. You can select which results to discard, using the parts or production sets of the job. This is a much more convenient way of specifying ranges: Because the ranges are already specified and named (in the Parts tab), you can simply select the ones you want to discard.

Condition list box

Select whether to discard or include initial content or changed content.

Always Select this option if you want to always discard (or include) results, regardless of reprocessing, initial or changed content.

If you select Always when the action is set to Discard, the ‘Always discard results when reprocessing’ option is selected as well, and the option is disabled. Note that this leaves you with no set up in which you can discard everything, except reprocessing. In all other cases, the ‘Always discard results when processing’ option remains enabled.

With initial content Select this option if you want to operate on results that are being created, i.e., results which did not already exist.

With changed content Select this option if you want to operate on results that have changed, i.e., the content of the result to be made has changed. Changed content includes using a new page revision, moving pages in the Run List and changing the imposition scheme.

Always discard results when reprocessing check box

When selected, Apogee discards unchanged results that are being reprocessed. In other words, when reprocessing occurs because of a parameter change or an explicit Reprocess (menu) command, but where the content of the result itself has not changed. By default, this check box is selected.

Specifying Ranges

The range field takes allows you to enter a comma-delimited list of sub-ranges. An empty range field is identical to None. The range field is not case sensitive, and you can use spaces anywhere to make the range more readable. Asecuri removes all spaces when processing the range data.

Specify a page range: Examples

Ranges for a page proofer flow for a 20-page job

Range	Pages that are in range
1-$	All
1,$	1 and 20
1,2	1 and 2
1-5	1, 2, 3, 4 and 5
1$	19
3$	17
15-3$	15, 16, 17
1-3, 3$-$	1, 2, 3, 17, 18, 19, 20
1, 2-5, 8, 4$-$	1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 8, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20
(empty)	None

Ranges for imposition proofer flow (4 signatures, each with front/backside)

Range	Flats that are in range
1-$	All
1, $	1F, 1B, 4F and 4B
1	1F and 1B
1F	1F
1 F	Same as 1F

Range	Flats that are in range
1F-3F	1F, 1B, 2F, 2B and 3F
F	All fronts
$F	4F

Ranges for imposition proof with 2 webs, 2 signatures with a front/backside

Range	Flats that are in range
1	1W1F, 1W1B, 1W2F and 1W2B
1,2	1W1F, 1W1B, 1W2F, 1W2B, 2W1F, 2W1B, 2W2F and 2W2B
1W1	1W1F and 1W1B
1W1F	1W1F
1F	1W1F and 1W2F
F	All fronts
1-$	All
1W2-2W2F	1W2F, 1W2B, 2W1F, 2W1B and 2W2F
$	2W1F, 2W1B, 2W2F and 2W2B
1$	1W1F, 1W1B, 1W2F and 1W2B (referring to the signature before the last one)
$W1F	2W1F
1$W1F	1W1F (referring to the flat before the specified flat of the last signature)
$W1	2W1F and 2W1B

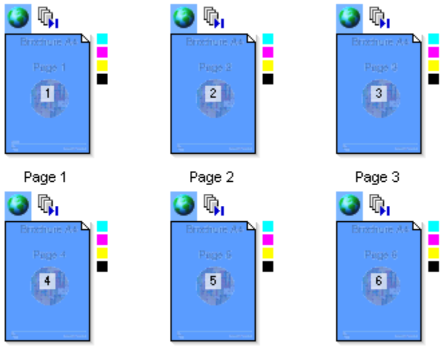
Web Proof

In order to remotely proof a result, you must place a Web Proof action in the Production Plan. This Action may be inserted between two Task Processors in your Production Plan. Web Proof pauses the processing flow as soon as the preceding Task Processor has finished its task.

The Web Proof icon is displayed in Job List when one or more results of a job are on hold pending a Web proof. In this case, the associated Flow Status icon is colored blue.

NOTE: You cannot put a Web Proof Action on a 'PDF flat' path; i.e., between the PDF Impose and Render Task Processors.

In the Results tab, the Job Layout pane indicates graphically which results (pages or flats) are waiting for a Web proof, together with their current status.



The Activity pane indicates where in the Plan the Action was inserted, and which Task Processors (if any) are currently active.

The local operator can continue a result waiting for approval (e.g. at the request of the customer when the internet connection is down). This requires a confirmation.

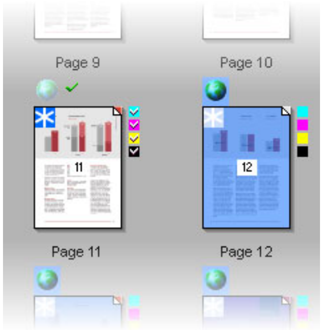
Web Proof Settings

Results must be continued by local operator as well

When selected, results approved by the remote user must also be approved by the operator before processing is resumed.

Freeze results when approved/continued

Select this check box to prevent results being reprocessed once the pages have been approved by the remote user.



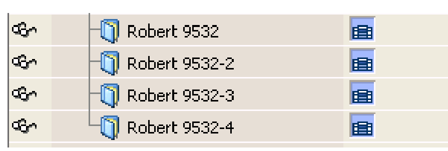
Approval ready by

Here you can set a deadline for approving the web proof. All approvers receive a notification if all the pages have not been approved by the entered date.

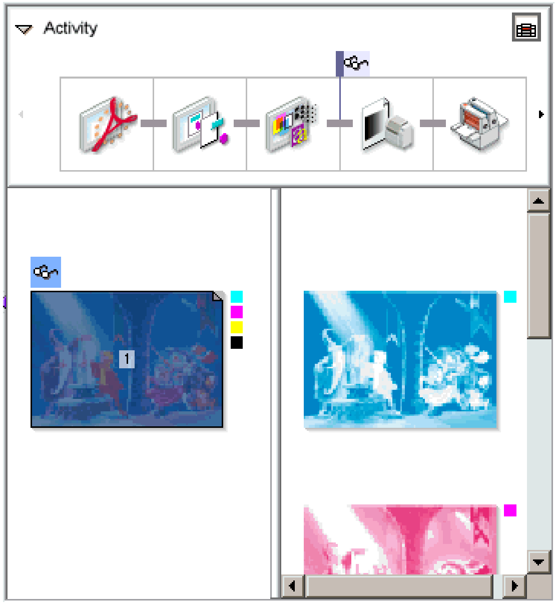
Soft Proof

This Action may be inserted between two Task Processors in your Production Plan. Soft Proof pauses the processing flow as soon as the preceding Task Processor has finished its task. This allows you to view the intermediate job results produced by the preceding Task Processor (also referred to as a "soft proof").

The Soft Proof icon is displayed in Job List when one or more results of a job are on hold pending a soft proof. In this case, the associated Flow Status icon is colored blue.



In the Results tab, the Job Layout pane indicates graphically which results (pages or flats) are waiting for a soft proof, together with their current status. The Activity pane indicates where in the Plan the Action was inserted, and which Task Processors (if any) are currently active.



You can manually continue processing the job. You do this by context-clicking the job in the Job List, and selecting Resume from the context menu.

Soft Proof Settings

When you add or select the Soft Proof Action in the Production Plan, you will see the default Action parameters displayed in the Settings pane. You can modify these parameters as follows.

Send Notification

Select this check box if you want to distribute notifications when some or all of the job results are ready. You can then choose one of two options:

Each time a result is ready A notification is delivered each time the Task Processor receives and processes part of the job.

Only when all results are ready A single notification is delivered when the Task Processor has received and processed all of the job.

For information on specifying notification recipients, see “Notify” on page 228.

Hard Copy Proof

This Action may be inserted between two Task Processors in your Production Plan. Hard Copy Proof pauses the processing unconditionally as soon as the preceding Task Processor has finished its task. The intermediate job results are put on hold, pending Approval.

The Hard Copy Proof icon is displayed in the Job List when one or more results of a job are held for Approval. In this case, the associated Flow Status icon is colored blue.

The job's Results tab indicates more precisely which results are waiting for Approval.

To continue the job, you have to select the job and/or one or more results in the Jobs Window, and select Approve from the Jobs menu.

Hard Copy Proof Settings

When you add or select the Hard Copy Proof Action in the Production Plan, you will see the default Action parameters displayed in the Settings pane. You can modify these parameters as follows:

Send Notification

Select this check box if you want to distribute notifications when some or all of the job results are ready. You can then choose one of two options:

Each time a result is ready. A notification is delivered each time the Task Processor receives and processes part of the job.

Only when all results are ready. A single notification is delivered when the Task Processor has received and processed all of the job.

For information on specifying notification recipients, see "Notify" on page 228.

Wait for Results

The Wait for Results Action tells Asecuri to hold the results at the action point until results from another flow are made (i.e. finished). This action provides the automated continuation of results in the main flow(s), when results in a proofing flow have been finished.

The typical use of the Wait for Result Action is to connect proofing flows and main flows.

Wait for Results Settings

When you add or select the Wait for Results Action in the Production Plan, you will see the default Action parameters displayed in the Settings pane. You can modify these parameters as follows.

Flow to watch

Select the flow that will be watched by the Wait for Results action. The available options display the names of all flows that can be watched.

Continue results in this flow

Only when the watched flow is completely finished

Select this option if you want to wait for all results in the watched flow to be finished before releasing the results.

When the required pages finish in the watched flow

Select this option if you want to release a waiting result as soon as the corresponding results in the watched flow are finished. Asecuri will decide which pages are needed for each watching result, and wait for those pages to finish in the flow being watched.

Collect for Output

Whenever you add an Output Task Processor to your Production Plan, the Collect for Output Action is automatically attached to it. This Action holds the intermediate job results pending receipt of specific groups of job data, as specified in the Action's output settings.

In the Results tab, the Job Layout pane indicates graphically which results are being grouped for output. The Activity pane indicates where in the Plan the Action was inserted, and which Task Processors (if any) are currently active.

The Collect for Output icon is displayed in the Job List when one or more results of a job are waiting to be output. In this case, the associated Flow Status icon is colored blue.

If the job results are only partially complete (i.e., they are still being collected), the pages/flats in the Results tab turn blue, but the Collect for Output Action icon does not. This icon turns blue only when all the results have been collected.

To output these results, see “Continuing Jobs” on page 157.

NOTE: You can place a Collect for Output Action at any point in your Production Plan.

Collect for Output Settings

When you add or select the Collect for Output Action in the Production Plan, you will see the default Action parameters displayed in the Settings pane. You can modify these parameters as follows:

Group and print by

Allows you to specify how the various sections of your job will be arranged and grouped for printing.

- For a job with imposition, this may be:
  - Job: All separations of the job are first grouped together, and then printed. In a Split for Proof flow of a packaging job, collects all results for all placed products of the entire job.
  - Sheet: In a Split for Proof flow of a packaging job, collects the result(s) per product.
  - Version: All the versions of the job are grouped and then printed in sequence.
  - Signature: The job will be grouped together as a series of signatures (a series of press sheets with both front and back print data), and these signatures will be printed in sequence.
  - Web: For newspaper printing (you can have multiple webs, each of which provides one or more inserts for the completed paper).
  - Side: The job will be grouped together into 2 sets - front and back, and the two sets will be printed in sequence.
  - Separation: The job will be grouped together into sets of separations (CMYK and any spot colors), and each set will be printed in sequence.
- For a job without imposition, this may be:
  - Job: All separations of the job are first grouped together, and then printed.
  - Page: The job will be grouped together as a series of pages, and these will be printed in sequence.

- Separation: The job will be grouped together as 4 sets of process separations (CMYK), and each set will be printed in sequence.

For example, if you select Separation, Asecuri will group together all the Cyan separations, and will print these first, followed by the Magenta, Yellow, Black, and spot color separations (i.e., sheet 1 cyan, sheet 2 cyan, sheet 1 magenta, sheet 2 magenta, etc.). If you select Signature, Asecuri will gather the job together as a sequential series of signatures (i.e., sheet 1 front, sheet 1back, sheet 2 front, sheet 2 back, etc.)

NOTE: Since most users adopt a specific method of job output for their specific workflow requirements, it is not likely that you would want to change this setting very often.

Keep versions apart

Select this option to collect the press sheets by product version (e.g. English, French, German).

Print when

Automatically as soon as a group is complete

Select this check box if you want Asecuri to automatically start printing the selected job results when a group is available.

Automatically when all groups are complete

Select this check box if you want Asecuri to automatically start printing the selected job results when all groups are available.

Options

Notify when group is ready for printing

Select this check box if you want Asecuri to send a message as soon as the selected job results are available.

After Hours

This Action may be inserted between two Task Processors in your Production Plan. The After Hours settings suspend the transfer of results from the preceding Task Processor to the next one in the flow until a predefined date and/or time is reached.

The After Hours icon is displayed in Job List when one or more results of a job are on hold pending the specified date/time. In this case, the associated Flow Status icon is colored blue.

In the Results tab, the Job Layout pane indicates graphically which results (pages or flats) are waiting for After Hours processing, together with their current status. The Activity pane indicates where in the Plan the Action was inserted, and which Task Processors (if any) are currently active.

You can manually continue processing the job. You do this by context-clicking the job in the Job List, and selecting Resume from the context menu.

After Hours Settings

When you add or select the After Hours Action in the Production Plan, you will see the default Action parameters displayed in the Settings pane. You can modify these parameters as follows.

Daily

Select this option if you want to specify a daily time period (e.g. 18.00 until 23:00) during which job results are allowed to pass through to the next Task Processor.

Daily, between Select the time to start passing results to the next Task Processor.

and Select the time to stop passing results to the next Task Processor.

Keep Result

This Action may be placed above a Task Processor in your Production Plan. Keep Results passes on the intermediate job results to the next Task Processor in the flow without interruption. By default, when a Task Processor passes on its results, it does not retain a copy of them. However, the Keep Result Action instructs Asecuri to keep this Task Processor’s results.

The Keep Result Action is automatically added whenever you add an Input Task Processor to your Production Plan. This ensures that the intermediate results (the input documents) are saved and kept on the system. This allows you to run fast job remakes, without having to find and input the same source documents.

Keep Result is always applied by default to any Task Processor which immediately precedes a Run List in a Production Plan.

NOTE: The Keep Result Action has no options or settings.

Archive Result

This Action may be placed above a Task Processor in your Production Plan. Archive Result passes on the job results to the next Task Processor in the flow without interruption. However, it also marks these intermediate results for archiving on the Asecuri System.

The Archive icon is displayed in the Job List when one or more results of a job are being archived.

In the Results tab, the Job Layout pane indicates graphically which results (pages or flats) are archived. The Activity pane indicates where in the Plan the Action was inserted, and which Task Processor's (if any) are currently active.

NOTE: The Archive Result Action has no options or settings.

When and where are the Results Archived?

You can specify when and where these results are archived by switching to the System Overview window, and double-clicking the Asecuri System icon in the Hardware pane, and then double-clicking the Job Housekeeping icon. For more information, see "Job Housekeeping Settings" on page 409.

Notify

This Action can be placed above a Task Processor in your Production Plan. Notify passes on the intermediate job results from the associated Task Processor to the next Task Processor in the flow without interruption. However, one of three predefined notifications is also generated, indicating how much of the intermediate job results are available.

Notify Settings

When you add or select the Notify Action in the Production Plan, you will see the default Action parameters displayed in the Settings pane. You can modify these parameters as follows:

When

You can then choose one of three options:

When first result is ready A notification is delivered when the Task Processor produces the first intermediate job results.

Each time a result is ready A notification is delivered each time the Task Processor produces intermediate job results.

Only when all results are ready A single notification is delivered when the Task Processor produces the final job results.

Send

Select either or both of the following check boxes:

As notification To distribute notifications when some or all of the job results are ready.

As e-mail To distribute e-mails when some or all of the job results are ready. In this case, you must enter an e-mail address in the adjacent box.

Additional Text

The text that you enter here will appear in the notification that is generated.

Milestone

This Action can be placed above a Task Processor in your Production Plan. Milestone passes on the intermediate job results from the associated Task Processor to the next Task Processor in the flow without interruption. However, a notification is generated if the associated Task Processor does not deliver all intermediate job results by a predefined date and time.

The Milestone icon is displayed in Job List when a job has generated a Milestone notification. The job's Results tab indicates more precisely which results (pages or flats) are not yet available.

Milestone Settings

When you add or select the Milestone Action in the Production Plan, you will see the default Action parameters displayed in the Settings pane. You can modify these parameters as follows:

Notify if all results not ready by:

Date Select the date by which all intermediate job results are required.

Time Select the time of day by which all intermediate job results are required.

Production Plan Pane (Ticket Editor)

The Production Plan is a series of components (Task Processors and Actions) linked together to form one or more processing flows. These components are configured to define exactly how the job is to be input, processed, and output.

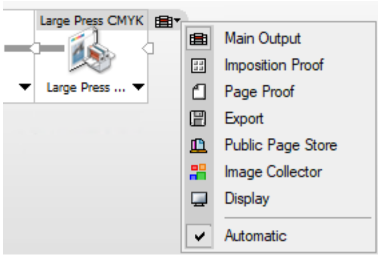
When you select one of the components, you will see the associated settings displayed below in the Settings Pane (Ticket Editor).

Below each Task Processor icon, there is a drop-down list from which you can select a group of predefined settings (a Parameter Set). If none is selected, the Task Processor uses its initial settings.

The last Task Processor in a flow is followed by a Flow Identifier. By default, this always indicates a Main Output flow. However, you can redefine it as described in “Creating a Production Plan with Multiple Proofing Flows” on page 248.

Flow Identifier

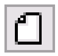
For each Ticket you create, you define one or more output paths in the Production Plan. For example, you may want your jobs to be output both to a proofing device and to a platesetter. When you set this up in the Plan tab, you can select a specific flow identifier at the end of each flow in your Production Plan.



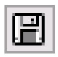
The following flow options are available:

Main Output: The default flow for all jobs, used for output to a high resolution output device.

Imposition Proof: An optional flow which may be added to the Main Output flow, and is used for output to an imposition proofing device.



Page Proof: An optional flow which may be added to the Main Output flow, and is used for output to a page proofing device.

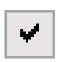


Export: An optional or alternate flow to the Main Output flow, used for exporting job results to file in PDF or PostScript format.

Public Page Store: An optional or alternate flow to the Main Output flow, used for storing job results in a Public Page Store.

Image Collector: An optional or alternate flow to the Main Output flow, which supports image collector Task Processors.

Display: A flow which is used to output the job results to a monitor for high-resolution soft proofing.



Automatic: If this option is selected, Asecuri will automatically select the most appropriate icon, based on the content of the flow.

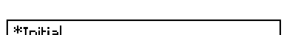
Settings Pane (Ticket Editor)

The Settings pane displays the settings for the component (Task Processor or Action) that is currently selected in the Production Plan pane.

The settings may be locked, as indicated by the Lock icon which is located in the top right of the Settings pane.

If you want to edit individual settings, click the Lock icon to toggle off the lock, and then edit the settings according to your job requirements.

The name of the selected parameter set is displayed in a box at the top of the Settings pane (“initial” by default). If you make any changes to an “initial” parameter set, these changes are indicated by an asterisk in front of the “initial” parameter set name.



You will also see a “Different Processing” check box in the top right of the Settings pane.

This is used specifically in multi-part jobs to select alternate processing settings for one or more parts of the job (for example, different color settings for the cover). If you select this option in a normal job, you will see that the job contains a single part (a Production Set), called “Body plates”. For more information on multi-part jobs, refer to “Using the Pages Tab” on page 233.

For more information, see “What Are Task Processor Settings?” on page 34. For details on editing Task Processor Parameter Sets, see “To create, duplicate, edit, delete, import or export Parameter Sets” on page 435.

For information on individual Task Processor settings, refer to the relevant Task Processor section. For information on individual Action settings, refer to “Two Types of Actions” on page 214.

Using the Pages Tab

For each job you select, the Pages tab displays both the list of pages contained in the Page Store, and the pages that have been included in the Run List.

This tab is subdivided into three panes:

- Products
- The Page Store (Ticket Editor)
- The Run List (Ticket Editor)

The Pages tab is disabled if there is no Run List in the selected job:

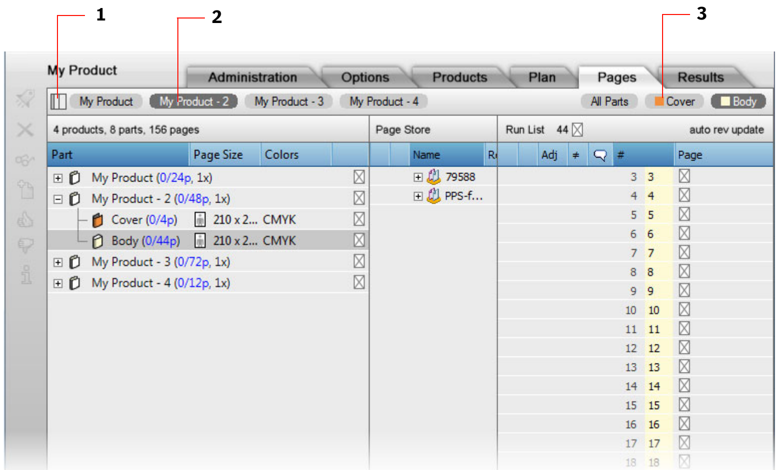
If you are creating a new job ticket, the Pages tab remains disabled until you add a Run List to the Production Plan.

The Pages tab is not available in the Hot Ticket Editor.

Products

In this pane you see the same list of products and parts that you see in the Products tab. Select a product or part in this list to display the corresponding Run List. Products and parts can also be selected by clicking the selectors at the top of the Pages tab (Products: on the left; Parts: on the right). You can show/hide the Products pane by clicking the show/hide button in the top left corner of the tab.

For versioning jobs, which can only consist of one product, this panel lists the versions.



1 Show/hide the Products pane
2 Product selectors
3 Part selectors

The Page Store (Ticket Editor)

The Page Store may be either a Private Page Store, which displays only the documents for a single job, or may include one or more Public Page Stores which display the documents created by all Page Store Out Task Processors.

The Page Store lists the documents that have been input and that may be added to your Run List.

By default, documents are arranged as folders alphabetically in the Page Store. The number of pages is shown in parentheses after the document name. If more than one version of the document has been input, you will see the document revision number in a separate column.

Asecuri automatically names each document with the name of the input file. If no name is available, Asecuri uses the generic name “Document”, immediately followed by a sequence number. If you add a document that is already known by Asecuri (e.g. from another job), then the same document name is used.

When you expand a document folder, Asecuri lists the individual pages in the selected document. It is from this view that you can select the pages that you want to include in your job’s Run List.

The Run List (Ticket Editor)

The Run List displays the pages that have been selected from the Page Store, and that will be included in your job.

A page in the Run List shows similar information to the same page in the Page Store. The page name is the document name as displayed in the Page Store, followed by the page number. Placeholders and blank pages do not have a name.

The Run List provides the following information about the listed pages:

Adjustments	May display up to four columns of page adjustment icons, indicating that the positioning of this individual page has been modified (offset).
≠	The size of the placeholder (as specified in the Production Plan) is different from the size of the page that is placed on it (imposition jobs only).
Lbl	The page label (selected using View > Page Labels). Page labels are displayed when the Run List is (automatically) updated with new revisions.
#	The page number in the Run List.
Page	The name of the page (the same as in the Page Store).
Rev	The revision number of this page (if any).
Sig	The Signature to which the page belongs (when imposition is included in the Plan).

A variety of information may also be displayed in the placard area above the Run List.

8 ☒	The total number of empty placeholders in the Run List. If you position your cursor over this icon, Asecuri displays a Tooltip indicating how many placeholders are empty, placed and blank.
1 ●	The number of spot colors used in the job. If you position your cursor over this icon, Asecuri displays a Tooltip indicating the spot color names. If you click this icon, Asecuri displays the separation settings in the Plan tab.
≠ sizes	Indicates that the Run List contains pages with different sizes.

NOTE: For a versioning or a multi-part job, the layout of the Run List is considerably different (depending on the specific parameters of the input documents).

You can add pages or documents to the Run List, move and delete pages from it, and add blank pages. You can also change the number of pages in the Run List, although this might invalidate any imposition scheme you may have selected.

Job Tickets require a Run List: They will not work correctly without one. Hot Tickets can also use Run Lists, but do not require one if no imposition is specified in the Production Plan.

Using the Results Tab

The Results tab allows you to view the results of the selected job. This tab displays thumbnails of the Run List pages, and job separations (if any).

NOTE: The Results tab is not available in the Hot Ticket Editor.

This tab is divided into two panes:

- The Job Layout Pane (Ticket Editor)
- The Separations Pane (Ticket Editor)

Above these two panes, you will see a row with the Production Sets selector and one or more Flow Identifier icons, corresponding to each flow in the selected job. When you click on any of these icons, you will see the results for this particular flow.

NOTE: If you are viewing a versioning or multi-part job, the layout of the Results tab is considerably different (depending on the specific parameters of the input documents).

The Job Layout Pane (Ticket Editor)

Displays thumbnails of the Run List pages of the selected job. Status icons, corner folds, and colored backgrounds provide additional information about the current status and orientation of each of the displayed thumbnails.

You can then double-click any of the thumbnails to launch the appropriate viewer for this specific page. If the job has not yet been successfully processed, you will see only empty placeholders. Double-clicking a thumbnail launches the appropriate viewer (Acrobat for PDF documents or Raster Preview for Digital Film).

You must correctly configure the location of Adobe Acrobat to enable raster previews. For more information, refer to the Asecuri Installation Guide.

NOTE: For a versioning job, the layout is considerably different (depending on the specific parameters of the input documents).

The Separations Pane (Ticket Editor)

Displays thumbnails of each of the separations for the page you select in the Job Layout pane. Double-clicking a thumbnail launches the Raster Preview viewer.

Working with Job Tickets and Hot Tickets

The procedures for creating and editing Job and Hot Tickets are similar. For both, you specify your options in the Administration, Options, and Plan tabs. The difference is that Job Tickets also include Pages and Results tabs, where you can define a Run List and imposition layout.

Preparing Your Plan

Before starting, it is a good idea to first define the type of Production Plan you require. This will determine the number and types of input channels and output devices you will need to configure, the number of flows required, and the resources and Parameter Sets you will need.

Job or Hot Ticket?

If you are creating a new ticket, the type of ticket you should choose depends on the number and formats of the documents that you want to process.

Layout Ticket?

Choose a Layout Ticket or Layout Hot Ticket for Sign & Display jobs which are prepared in the Layout editor.

New Ticket or Template?

Asecuri provides you with a series of ready-made ticket templates which can be used as a starting point for most types of workflow. Wherever possible, you are advised to start from one of these templates, and adapt it according to your requirements. When you are more familiar with the Asecuri System, you can of course create new tickets from scratch.

Do You Want one or More Proofing Flows?

If you want to include proofing in your Plan, you will need to add one or more flows to your main flow. To avoid time-consuming editing later, it is better to sketch out your proposed Production Plan in advance. Remember that Imposition and Page Proof flows must be connected to the main flow at specific points, and must each be configured with their own unique output devices.

Which Components Do You Need in your Plan?

The components you need in your Production Plan depend on the ticket type, and your prepress requirements. There are some rules, however:

- You always need at least one input component, one processing component, and one output component.
- A Job Ticket must have a Run List.

- A Run List is not required for a Hot Ticket. Documents are delivered to an input channel, and the input channel creates one job per document.
- If you include the Impose component, you will also need to add a Run List component. You can input multiple documents per job for jobs which require imposition, since not all the documents of the job have to be delivered at the same time.
- When you create a flow using either an imagesetter or platesetter output device, you always need to add a Press Task Processor to the end of the flow. This is not required when you use Export with Trapping, or proofer output devices.

Are All Necessary Resources Available?

By default, Asecuri associates some standard Resources (fonts, halftones, etc.) with the available Task Processors. However, you may need to supplement these with additional resources of your own.

What happens in a Processing Flow

The following sequence of events takes place in a typical Production Plan:

- A document is input via an input channel (e.g. Hot Folder).
- The document is processed by the first Task Processor, and the intermediate job results are passed to the next Task Processor in the flow.
- Intermediate job Results are passed successively from Task Processor to Task Processor in the Production Plan flow.
- By default, once a Task Processor passes on its results, it does not keep a copy of them.
- Inserting Actions allows you to control the flow, and to save and view intermediate results.
- The last Task Processor in the flow is a Print, Press, or Export Task Processor to which the final results are delivered.

Creating or Editing a Ticket

You create a new ticket using the Ticket Editor. The Ticket Editor can be opened from any of the main windows in the Asecuri Client.

To edit an existing Job Ticket, you must first select the associated job in the Job List. The jobs displayed in the Job List comprise both the job data and the job ticket (see “What Are Job Tickets?” on page 30).

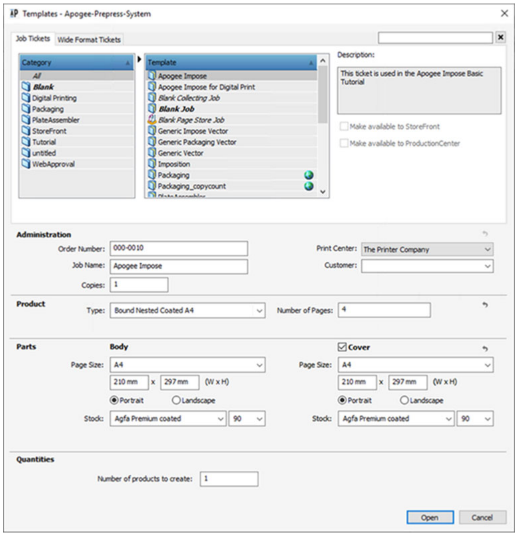
To edit an existing Hot Ticket (from which several jobs may already have been created), you must select the ticket from the Hot Tickets list (see “What Are Hot Tickets?” on page 31).

NOTE: The Layout Editor and not the Ticket Editor is opened when you choose to create Layout Tickets or Layout Hot Tickets. See “Layout Editor” on page 257.

▷ To create a new ticket based on a template

1 Choose File > New from Templates. (CTRL-N).

The Templates dialog box is displayed with the **Quick Fill** panel.



2 Select either the Jobs Tickets or the Layout Tickets tab to create a Job Ticket or a Layout Ticket. You will also see these tabs if you are creating Hot Tickets.

3 Select a Ticket Category.

The Ticket Templates that are available in this category are displayed in the Template panel.

4 Select one of the Ticket Templates.

If the creator of this template entered a template description, then this is displayed in the panel on the right.

If the creator of this template included an Impose Task Processor in the Plan, the Product and Parts panes are also active.

5 Enter the Administration, Product and Parts details in the **Quick Fill** panel and click Open, or click Open directly and enter the details on the tabs as described below.

The Ticket Editor appears. If you defined a Product and its Parts, the Ticket opens with the Products tab selected. The Ticket uses the Administration, Product and Parts details that you entered. Otherwise, the Administration tab is selected.

6 Complete the Administration tab. For details on each of the fields, see "Using the Administration Tab" on page 202.

7 Select the Options tab, and define how the jobs which use this ticket are to be handled (archiving, notifications, etc.). For details on each of the fields, see "Using the Options Tab" on page 206.

8 Select the Plan tab and create a Production Plan in the Production Plan pane. See "Creating or Editing a Production Plan" on page 242.

9 Choose File >Submit to submit the Ticket.

For more information, see "Submitting Tickets" on page 253.

▷ To quickly create a blank ticket

1 From any of the main windows, click CTRL+ALT+N.

A new blank ticket is opened in the Ticket Editor.

2 Edit the ticket, then choose File >Submit to submit it.

▷ To select and edit a Ticket

1 Select the Jobs Window.

2 In the Job List, select the job you want to edit., and click the Edit Ticket button in the Toolbar.

The job is put on hold and the associated ticket is opened in the Ticket Editor.

3 Edit the ticket using the procedures described in the rest of this chapter (see "Creating or Editing a Production Plan" on page 242).

Any errors you introduce will generate the following type of message in the Tab Area:

You can then click the error status icon to access the Problem Report (see “Problem Report” on page 134).

TIP: Any existing results which are not affected by the changes are kept - unlike the Re-render command, which forces the re-rendering of results, whether or not they are required.

4 When you have finished editing the ticket, submit your changes (see “Submitting Tickets” on page 253).

Asecuri checks the changes, determines what needs to be reprocessed, and automatically starts reprocessing those results.

Creating or Editing a Production Plan

You need to create a Production Plan for both Job and Hot Tickets. You do this in 5 steps:

- Adding the First Input Task Processor to Your Production Plan
- Dragging Additional Task Processors to Your Production Plan
- Connecting Task Processors in your Production Plan
- Setting or Changing Task Processor Settings
- Adding Actions to Your Production Plan

Once you have created a basic single-flow Production Plan, you can expand it by adding extra proofing flows. The following sections explain how to do this, as well as how to edit and rearrange your Plan:

- Creating a Production Plan with Multiple Proofing Flows
- Deleting a Component from Your Production Plan

Adding the First Input Task Processor to Your Production Plan

When you create a new ticket, there is no Production Plan. You can start building one by adding the first Task Processor to the Production Plan pane.

▷ To add the first Task Processor to your Production Plan

1 In the Ticket Editor window, select the Plan tab.

You will see the Production Plan Components pane on the left. This gives you access to all the available Task Processors and Actions that you can include in your Production Plan.

2 Select the Input tab in the Production Plan Components pane.

3 Select an Input Task Processor, drag it onto the Production Plan pane, and drop it anywhere in the left of the pane.

Since this is the first Task Processor in your Plan, you will see that it has a square gray connector on the right. This is the point at which you can connect the next Task Processor that you add to this flow. Task Processors use a number of different types of connectors, as described in “Connecting Task Processors in your Production Plan” on page 244.

NOTE: A Keep Results action is always added to input Task Processors.

Below the Task Processor, you will see the name of the initial settings file that the Task Processor will use. If you click this name, you will see a list of all the available Parameter Sets for this Task Processor. For more information, see “Setting or Changing Task Processor Settings” on page 245.

Currently, this is the first and only Task Processor in your flow.

NOTE: When you add any component to the Production Plan, the default component settings are displayed in the Settings pane.

Dragging Additional Task Processors to Your Production Plan

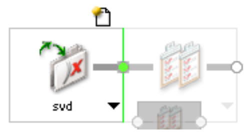
You create a Main prepress flow by linking together a series of Task Processors in the Production Plan pane.

▷ To add more Task Processor to your Production Plan

1 Select the Input, Processing, or Output tab in the Production Plan Components pane.

The type of Task Processor you can add depends on which Task Processor you want to connect it to.

2 Click on a Task Processor, and drag it to the right edge of the last Task Processor in the Production Plan pane.



- If you see a green connection, it means that this is a valid addition to your Production Plan.

- If you see a red connection, then this combination of Task Processors is invalid. For more information, see “Connecting Task Processors in your Production Plan” on page 244.

3 When you have a valid connection, release the mouse button to place the Task Processor.

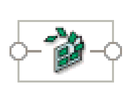
4 Continue adding Task Processors to the flow.

Connecting Task Processors in your Production Plan

To build a flow in the Production Plan pane, you need to link together a series of Task Processors. However, you can only make links between “compatible” Task Processors.

Each Task Processor has a data-in connector and a data-out connector (Input Task Processors only have a data-out connector). These connectors indicate the type of data that can be input to, or output from the Task Processor, and are displayed graphically as follows:

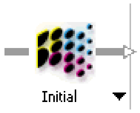
- Round connectors: These represent PDF or PostScript data.



  - A Task Processor with round data-in/data-out connectors (e.g. Impose or Preflight) can only receive or deliver PDF or PostScript data.

  A round connector can only be connected to a square connector, or to another round connector.

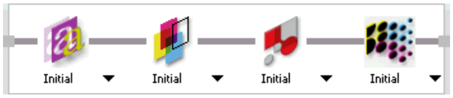
- Arrow connectors: These represent raster data.



- A Task Processor with an arrow data-out connector (e.g. Digital Film Proof) can only deliver raster data.

An arrow connector can only be connected to a square connector.

- Square connectors: These represent multiple data types (PDF, PostScript, Raster, other).



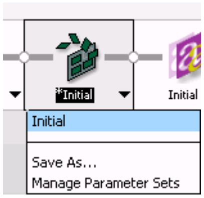
- A Task Processor with square data-in/data-out connectors (e.g. PDF Render, shown above) can receive or deliver any type of data.

A square connector can be connected to any other type of connector.

NOTE: The Run List Task Processor cannot receive PostScript data.

Setting or Changing Task Processor Settings

You customize each Task Processor in the Plan by opening the Task Processor's list box and selecting one of the available predefined Parameter Sets.



When you select a Parameter Set, the corresponding settings are displayed in the Settings pane (below the Production Plan pane). If you wish you can directly modify any of the displayed settings.

The Task Processor list box also has two other options:

- Save As: Displays a dialog box which allows you to enter a name and save the current settings as a new parameter set.

- Manage Parameter Sets: Opens the Parameter Sets dialog box, where you can create, duplicate, edit, delete, import or export parameter sets.

Creating a Production Plan with a Single Main Output Flow

To create a simple Production Plan, you need to build a single Main Output flow containing an Input, Processing, and Output Task Processor.

▷ To create a single main output flow

1. Start a new ticket, click the Plan tab, and add an Input Task Processor to the Production Plan as described in “Adding the First Input Task Processor to Your Production Plan” on page 242. For example, add a Hot Folder.
2. Add a Processing Task Processor to the Production Plan as described in “Dragging Additional Task Processors to Your Production Plan” on page 243. For example, add Render.
3. Add an Output Task Processor to the Production Plan. For example, add TIFF Imagesetter.
4. In the Production Plan pane, click the Input Hot Folder Task Processor.
5. The default Hot Folder settings are displayed in the Settings pane. By default, the location of the Hot Folder is specified as:

   \\$SYSTEMCOMPUTER\HotFolderRoot\$ORDER\

   The default location uses the $ORDER variable. This means a Hot Folder will be automatically created as a subfolder under the HotFolderRoot, using the job’s order number as the Hot Folder name.
6. Click the Settings list of each of the remaining Task Processor Operations and select one of the available Parameter Sets as described in “Setting or Changing Task Processor Settings” on page 245.

Adding Actions to Your Production Plan

You control the flow of job data through the Production Plan by inserting Actions at specific points in the flow. Actions can also be used to keep track of your job results at any point in the flow.

▷ To add a flow control action

1. In the Ticket Editor window, select the Plan tab.

You will see the Production Plan Components pane on the left. This gives you access to all the available Task Processors and Actions that you can include in your Production Plan.

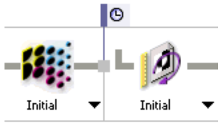
2 Select the Actions tab in the Production Plan Components pane.

To add a Flow Control Action, such as After Hours, you will need to drag and drop the Action onto the right edge of the Task Processor whose results will be held, pending the specified time.

3 Click on one of the Flow Control Actions and, holding down the mouse button, drag it onto the Production Plan pane to the right edge of the selected Task Processor.

The right edge of the Task Processor is highlighted with a blue bar when the Action is in the correct position.

4 Release the mouse button to drop the Action into place.



NOTE: You can add up to 4 Flow Control Actions, and 4 Result Actions to any Task Processor.

Flow Control Actions, such as After Hours, interrupt the flow (indicated by the break in the flowline). The Action icon is positioned above and to the right of the selected Task Processor, after the break.

5 If you select the Action, you will see the default Action parameters displayed below in the Settings pane. You can modify these parameters as described in the topics listed below.

6 If you click the Results tab, you will also see any Flow Control Actions you have added. Here, the Action icons have a background color to indicate their current status. For more information, see “Working with Jobs in the Results Tab” on page 170.

▷ To add a result action

1 In the Ticket Editor window, select the Plan tab.

You will see the Production Plan Components pane on the left. This gives you access to all the available Task Processors and Actions that you can include in your Production Plan.

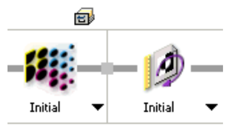
2 Select the Actions tab in the Production Plan Components pane.

To add a Result Action, such as Archive Result, you will need to drag and drop the Action directly on top of the Task Processor whose results you want to archive.

3 Click on one of the four Result Actions and, holding down the mouse button, drag it onto the selected Task Processor in the Production Plan pane.

The background color of the Task Processor changes to light grey when the Action is in the correct position.

4 Release the mouse button to drop the Action into place.



NOTE: You can add up to 4 Flow Control Actions, and 4 Result Actions to any Task Processor.

Result Actions, such as Archive Result, do not interrupt the flow. The Action icon is positioned above and to the right of the selected Task Processor.

If you select the Action, you will see the default Action parameters displayed in the Settings pane. You can modify these parameters as described in the topics listed below.

Deleting a Component from Your Production Plan

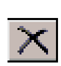
Proceed as follows to delete a component (Task Processor or Action) from your Production Plan:

1 Open the Ticket for editing, and select the Plan tab.

2 Select an Action or Task Processor, and do one of the following:

- Press Delete.

- Click the Delete button.



If you delete a Task Processor, a gap appears in the Production Plan. You can close the gap by dragging one of the broken connectors to the other. You could also insert and reconnect another Task Processor in the gap.

Creating a Production Plan with Multiple Proofing Flows

When you build a Production Plan, you must always create a Main flow. However, if you want to include proofing and/or output to additional devices, you will need to create one or more parallel flows, and link them to your Main flow.

The following procedures describe, step-by-step, how to create a Production Plan comprising three flows:

- Main flow
- Imposition Proof flow
- Page Proof flow

NOTE: In each of these procedures, you will need to specify settings for each component. You will also need to submit the ticket when you have finished.

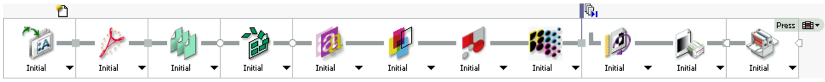
▷ To create a main output flow

1 Create a new Ticket, and select the Plan tab.

2 Create a single Main Output flow, adding components in the following sequence:

Hot Folder - Normalize - Run List - Impose - PDF Render - TIFF Platesetter - Press

Your flow should look like this:



Notice that a “Collect for Output” Action is automatically inserted between the PDF Render and TIFF Platesetter Task Processors.

NOTE: When you create a main flow using either an imagesetter or platesetter output device, you *always* need to add a Press Task Processor to the end of the flow. This is not required when you use export or proofer output devices.

A flow always displays a Flow Identifier after the last Task Processor the flow. By default, this always indicates a Main Output flow. However, you can redefine this as described in “Creating a Production Plan with Multiple Proofing Flows” on page 248.

▷ To add an Imposition Proof flow to your Main flow

When included in a Production Plan, an Imposition Proof flow should branch from the Main flow after the Impose component. This ensures that the results from the Main flow and the Imposition flow are identical in layout.

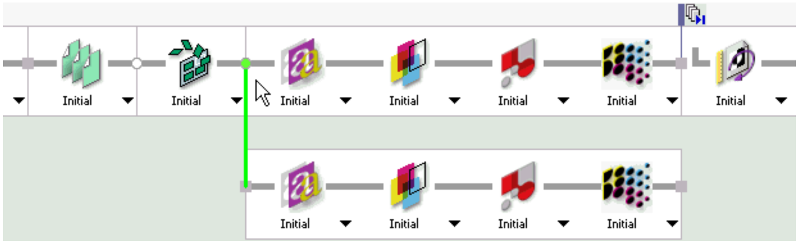
1 Start with the main flow you created in the preceding procedure.

2 Select another PDF Render component from the list of available Processing components in the Production Plan Components pane and drag-and-drop it exactly below the first PDF Renderer in your main flow.

3 Click the square connector on the left edge of this second PDF Renderer.

4 Hold down the mouse button, and drag it up to the round connector on the right side of the Impose component in the Main Output flow.

A connecting line extends between the two components, and is colored green, indicating that this is a valid connection.



5 Release the mouse button.

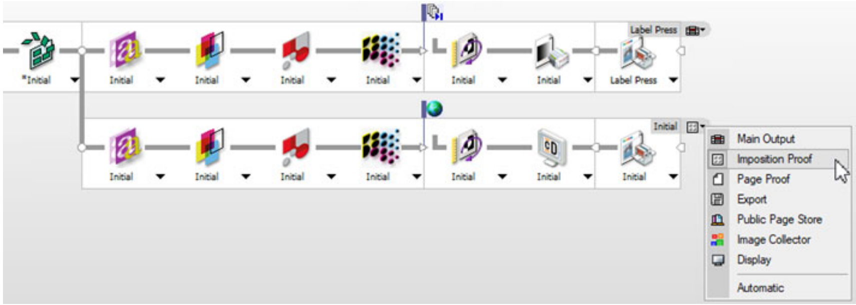
You now have the start of a second flow, extending from the first.

6 Add a Proofer output component to the second flow.

7 Add a Press to the end of the second flow.

Notice the Flow Identifier at the end of the second flow: It automatically indicates that this is an Imposition Proof flow.

8 Click the Flow Identifier to display the name of the flow.



▷ To add a Page Proof flow

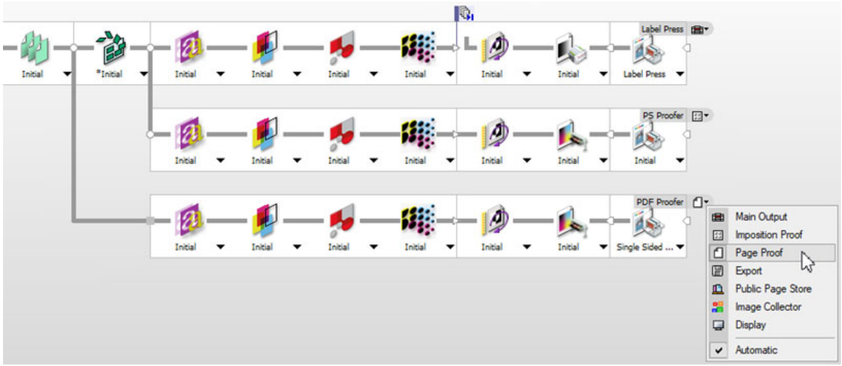
When included in a Production Plan, a Page Proof flow should branch from the Main flow after the Run List and before the Impose component.

NOTE: You always need a Run List if you want to select individual pages for proofing.

1. Select a third PDF Render component, drag it the Production Plan Components pane, and drop it exactly below the PDF Renderer in your Imposition Proof flow.
2. Click the square connector on the left edge of this third PDF Renderer.
3. Hold down the mouse button, and drag it up to the round connector on the right side of the Run List in the Main Output flow.

   A connecting line extends between the two components, and is colored green, indicating that this is a valid connection.
4. Release the mouse button.
5. Add a Proofer output component to the third flow.
6. Add a Press to the end of the third flow.

   Notice the Flow Identifier at the end of the third flow: It automatically indicates that this is a Page Proof flow.
7. Click the Flow Identifier to display the name of the flow:



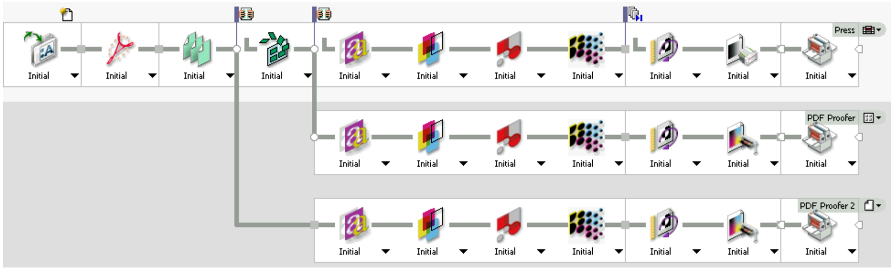
NOTE: When Page Proofs are printed on a large format proofer, a simple media saving page layout should be used. To get as many pages on a sheet as possible, you must switch on the media optimization feature in the output device.

▷ To control your Production Plan using Actions

Finally, you need to insert some Actions in your Plan to control the sequence of events when a document is processed.

- Insert two Hard Copy Proof Actions in the Main flow, one immediately before the Impose component and one immediately after it.

  Your Production Plan should look like this:



You now have a multiple flow Production Plan, which allows you to first check and approve a page proof, then an imposition proof, and finally to output your job to an imagesetter.

This works as follows:

- Page Proof: A document is input and the job results are held in the main flow just before being imposed. However, the results are also passed on to the Page Proofing flow, where they are rendered and output to a Page Proofer. The Page Proof allows you to check colors and content.
- Imposition Proof: If you approve the Page Proof, the results which are on hold at the first point in the main flow are resumed, and the job is imposed. After this, the job results are again held in the main flow. However, they are also passed on to the Imposition Proofing flow, where they are output to an Imposition Proofer. The Imposition Proof allows you to check the layout of the job.
- Print to Imagesetter: If you approve the Imposition Proof, the results which are on hold in the main flow are resumed again, and the job is finally output to an imagesetter.

Exporting Job Results

When you build a Production Plan, you may simply want to export your job results to file, instead of sending them to an output device. In this case, you need to add the Export component to the end of your Production Plan flow.

Export allows you to export processed job results to a specific directory in PDF or PostScript file format. These files can then be used outside the Asecuri environment. For more information, refer to “Export Settings” on page 546.

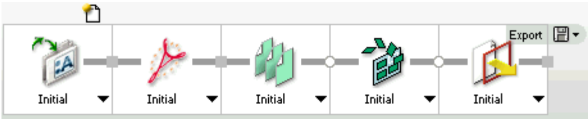
▷ To export job results

1. Create a new Ticket, and select the Plan tab.
2. Create a single Main Output flow, adding some basic input and processing components. For example, you could add the following:

   Hot Folder - Normalize - Run List - Impose

3. Select the Output tab in the Production Plan Components pane, and select the Export component.
4. Drag the component to the Production Plan pane, and add it to the end of your flow.

   Your flow should look like this:



5. Select Export and enter the export settings you require, as described in “Export Settings” on page 546.

Submitting Tickets

When you have completed the information in Using the Administration Tab, Using the Options Tab, and Using the Plan Tab, you are ready to send your Ticket to the Asecuri System. This process is referred to as submitting a ticket. You may do this when you create a new Ticket and send it to the Asecuri System for the first time, or when you open an existing Ticket for editing, and send the updated Ticket to the Asecuri System.

NOTE: When you submit a ticket, Asecuri automatically reprocesses only the required results. This is different from using the Re-render command, which re-renders only the results that follow the selected editing point in the Production Plan.

▷ To submit a ticket

♦ From the Ticket Editor window, choose File > Submit Job.

This process takes a few moments.

If your Production Plan is valid, you will be able to see your ticket either in the Hot Tickets window (Hot Tickets), or in the Jobs window (Job Tickets). The name of the ticket will be the same as the Order Number you specified in the Administration tab.

If your Production Plan is not valid, the Problem Report is displayed, indicating where the problem is. For more information, see “Problem Report” on page 134.

Opening a Ticket

You can open an existing ticket as follows.

▷ To open a ticket

1 Choose File > Open. (CTRL+O).

2 Locate the folder where your tickets are stored, select a ticket, and click OK.

Ticket files can be recognized by their .ajt filename extension.

Saving a Ticket

You can save a Ticket to file for future use. When you save a Ticket, the Ticket is exported from the Asecuri environment, and is stored as a file in the specified save location.

Asecuri Ticket Icons in Windows Explorer

You can see the saved Ticket files using your local file system. The icons and file extensions vary according to the type of Ticket:

Saved Commercial Job Ticket(.ajt)

Saved Commercial Hot Ticket(.aht)

▷ To save a ticket

1 Create or modify your ticket as described in “Creating or Editing a Ticket” on page 239.

2 Choose File > Save (CTRL+S) or File > Save As...

3 Browse to your Tickets folder, enter a filename, and click Save.

4 If you have customized the default location of the Tickets folder, open your Preferences (choose Edit > Preferences...) to check the folder location.

Inputting Documents

The final step in job creation is inputting the documents that will become your job data. There are several different ways of doing this, using a variety of input channel types. These input channels specify the locations or methods which you will use to print or drag the documents that you want to input to the Asecuri System.

There are two basic types of input channel. You should choose the method(s) which best suit your hardware platform and working environment:

- File-based input: This type of input is based on dragging files directly to jobs in the Job List or Hot folders in the Hot Folders list. You can also copy files to the specific folders associated with the following types of input channels:
    - Hot Folder and Open Connect input channels make the input documents available only to a single job (this is referred to as a Private Page Store).
    - PrintSphere Upload is similar to a Hot Folder input channel but files are uploaded to a cloud service by the collaborators of a job who are invited by e-mail.
    - Public Page Store channels make all input documents available to all jobs.
    - JDF Import channels allow you to input JDF files generated by 3rd-party applications (such as MIS systems), and convert them to Asecuri Job Tickets.

  These types of input channels can be assigned specific polling times.

- Stream-based input: This type of input is based on printing jobs directly from your front-end applications. For this, you need to define printers associated with the following types of input channels:
    - Named Pipe channels allow you to print jobs to the Asecuri System directly from your Windows front-end applications.
    - TCP/IP input channels allow you to send jobs to the Asecuri System via the Internet.

  NOTE: By default, any stream-based input channel is spooled (written to disk). To enable spooling, the Keep Results Action is automatically added to all Input components.

Inputting via Hot Folder / JDF Import / Public Page Store

After you have successfully created a ticket and built a Production Plan as described in “Working with Job Tickets and Hot Tickets” on page 238, you are ready to start inputting documents.

▷ To drag a file directly to a Job or Hot Ticket

1 Locate the document(s) that you want to input.

These may be PostScript, EPS, or PDF files. If they are PDF files, then they must be “high-end” PDF files.

2 Drag your input documents directly to a job in the Job List or to a Hot folder in the Hot Folders list.

3 If you want to monitor the process, open the Activity window.

For more information, see “Monitoring Jobs” on page 155.

When your documents have been processed, either open or switch to the Jobs window to view them. For further information, see “The Job List” on page 111.

▷ To drag a file to an input folder

1 Locate the document(s) that you want to input.

These may be PostScript, EPS, PDF, or JDF files. If they are PDF files, then they must be “high-end” PDF files.

2 Locate the folder you associated with this input channel.

The input channel may be a Hot Folder, a JDF Import channel, or a Public Page Store folder.

TIP: You may want to create a shortcut to your Hot Folder on your desktop.

3 Drag your input documents to the folder.

Asecuri polls all configured input folders, and automatically picks up all documents that are dropped in any of them.

4 If you want to monitor the process, open the Activity window.

For more information, see “Monitoring Jobs” on page 155.

When your documents have been processed, either open or switch to the Jobs window to view them. For further information, see “The Job List” on page 111.

CHAPTER 8

Layout Editor

The Layout Editor is a dedicated workspace for setting up wide-format jobs, which are printed on Sign & Display printing devices, packaging jobs and any flat jobs that require an intricate layout.

- Overview 258
- Product Panel 263
- Layout Panel 276
- Inspectors 323
- Applying Changes and Submitting a Job 351
- Sheet Layout Templates 354
- QuickProof Products and Sheets 362
- Resources 364
- Layout Editor Menus 365

Overview

The Layout Editor is used to create wide-format jobs for printing on Sign & Display devices. These jobs open immediately in the Layout Editor from where they are set up and submitted. In addition, the Layout Editor can also be used to prepare the imposition of other unbound flat jobs that require an intricate arrangement of products on the sheet, such as packaging jobs. The latter jobs can be opened in the Layout Editor using the Imposition Mode selector in the Products tab.

NOTE: The Layout Editor workspace does not display all the tabs and inspectors as described in the following sections when it is used for packaging jobs or regular prepress jobs.

Layout Editor Modes

The Layout Editor has two modes when working with wide-format jobs:

- Sheet Layout mode: for uploading, placing and arranging products on *sheets*
- Print Layout mode: for organizing sheets on the *print layout*, i.e. the printer bed or belt of wide-format printers

The products you want to print are first placed on one or more sheets in Sheet Layout mode, and these sheets are placed on print layouts that you can see if you switch to Print Layout mode. The print layout represents the printer bed (flat-bed devices) or the printer belt (roll-fed devices), which can accommodate multiple sheets and has the dimensions of the chosen device. A print layout is created automatically for each sheet that you prepare in Sheet Layout mode, with the sheet positioned by default in the printer's home position. You only need to switch to Print Layout mode if you want to inspect how the sheet is arranged on the print layout, or if you need to combine multiple sheets on one or more print layouts.

The workspace is similar in both modes, except for a few tools and inspectors that are only relevant in the respective modes. To switch between Sheet Layout mode and Print Layout mode, click the Sheets or Print Layouts tabs respectively above the Products panel. You can also edit a placed sheet by double-clicking it on the print layout.

NOTE: Print Layout mode is only available for jobs using wide-format printers, i.e. wide format jobs.

Open and Close the Layout Editor

The Layout Editor is opened when you create or edit a wide-format job or a packaging job. Alternatively, you can open the Layout Editor from the Jobs window:

♦ Choose File > New Wide Format Job.

The Layout Editor opens and a new wide-format job is created using the default template.

OR

♦ Drop an image or document on a supported output device, or context-click a device and choose New Wide Format Job.

The Layout Editor opens and a new wide-format job is created using the default template for the device.

OR

♦ Select a job in the Job List and click the Edit Job icon in the Jobs window toolbar or choose Edit Job in the context menu.

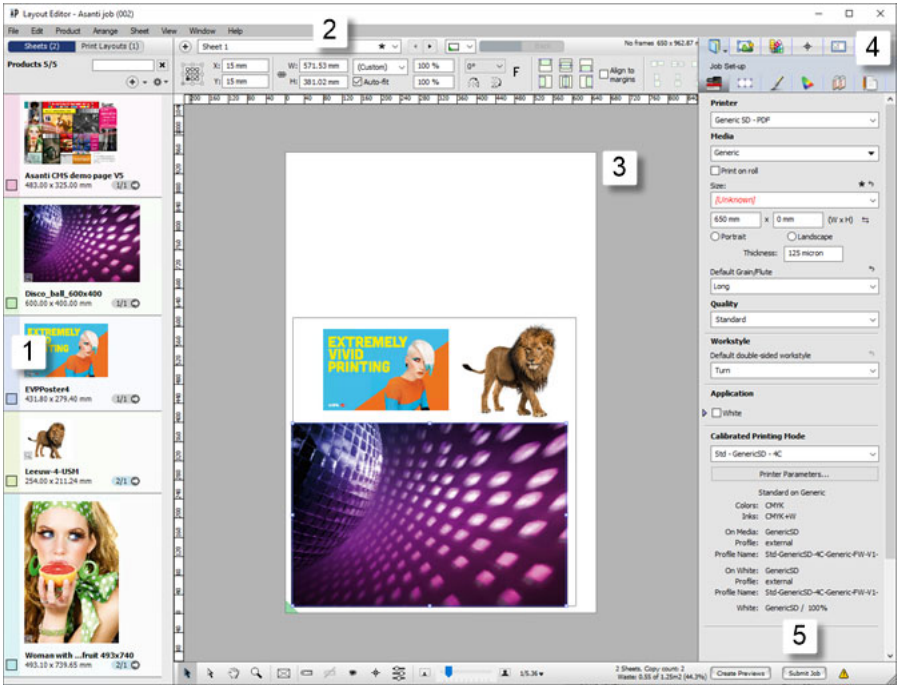
The Layout Editor opens and a new wide-format job is created using the default template.

To exit the Layout Editor, submit the job and choose Delete Job (new job), or Discard (existing job). See “Applying Changes and Submitting a Job” on page 351 for more information.

Related topics:

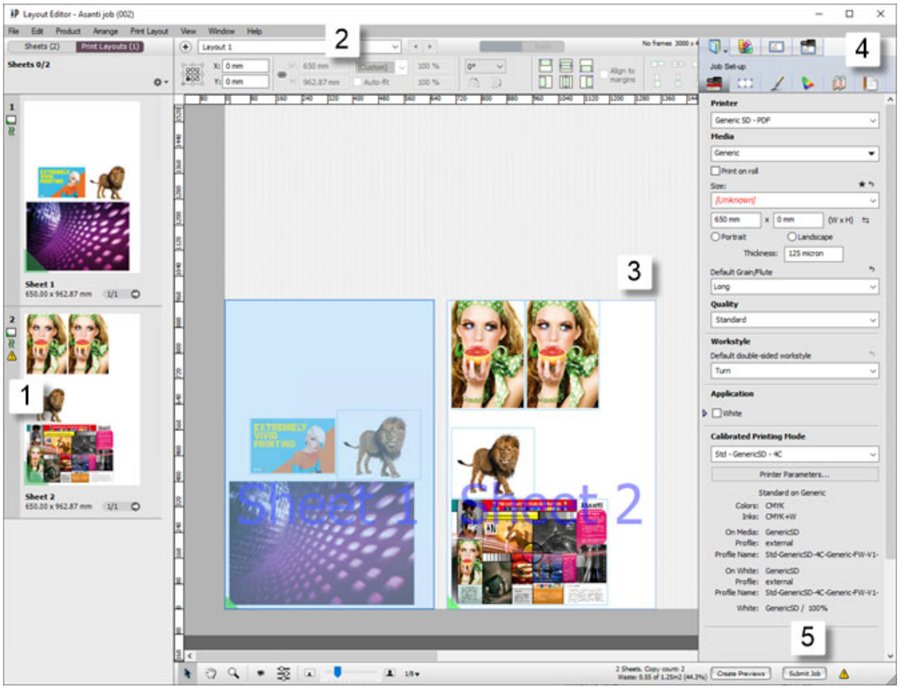
- Templates on page 414
- The Jobs Window on page 108.

Figure 8.2: Sheet Layout mode with different products placed on a sheet



1 Product panel
2 Mode buttons and Sheet tabs
3 Sheet panel
4 Inspectors
5 Edit in Job Editor, Submit and Apply Changes buttons

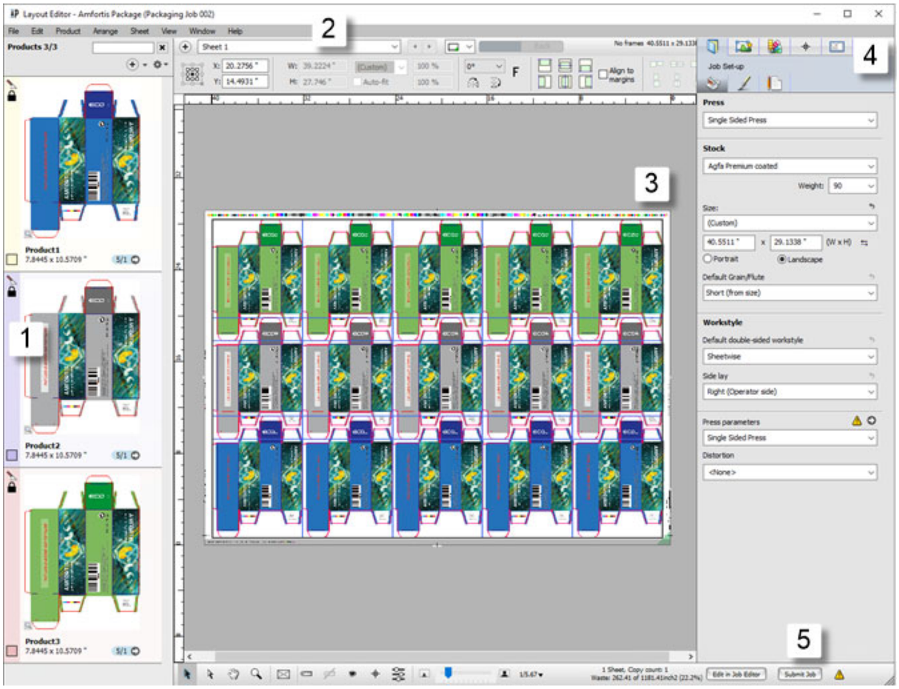
Figure 8.3: Print Layout mode with different sheets placed on a print layout



1. Sheet panel
2. Mode buttons and Layout tabs
3. Print Layout panel
4. Inspectors
5. Submit and Apply Changes buttons

NOTE: The Print Layout Editor is only available for Wide Format jobs.

Figure 8.4: Layout Editor with different products placed in an offset job



1 Products list
2 Mode buttons and Layout tabs
3 Products panel
4 Inspectors
5 Submit and Apply Changes buttons

Product Panel

The Product panel displays thumbnails of the products that you upload and want to place on the sheet for printing.

You can upload artwork files (images and documents) and CAD files to create products.

NOTE: Many of the features in the Product panel only apply for the Sheet Layout mode. Remember that you have a Sheet Panel that contains all your sheets when working in Print Layout mode.

Adding Products

Use the following methods to add products to the Product panel:

- Drag and drop one or more products onto the Product panel.
- Drag and drop one or more products onto a sheet.
- Drag and drop one or more products onto a printing device in the Jobs list.
- Click the **+** button in the top right corner of the Product panel and select one or more files from the location of your choice.
- Choose File > Add Products and select one or more products from the location of your choice.

If you add a product with the same file name, you are prompted to cancel, update or just add the new product:

- Update: Adds the file as a revision of the previous one. This replaces all placed products of the existing file with the new one.
- Just Add: Adds the file to the job as a new file with the same file name but with a `copy` suffix.
- Cancel: Cancels the action.

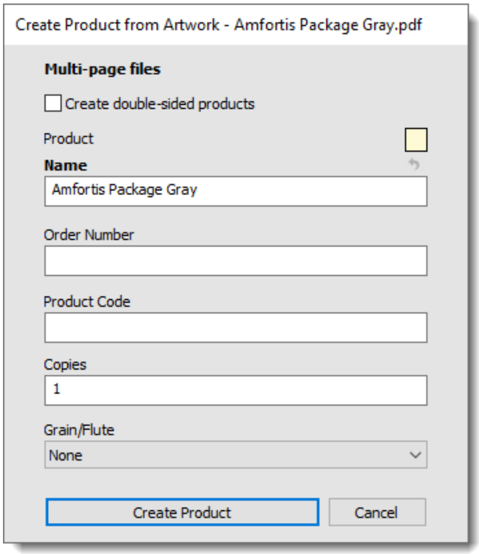
Thumbnails of the uploaded products are displayed in the Product panel.

Product Processing Status

While an uploaded product is being processed, you will see a product icon with a green background. When the processing is finished, you see a thumbnail with the file name and physical dimensions of the product.

Adding Products from Artwork

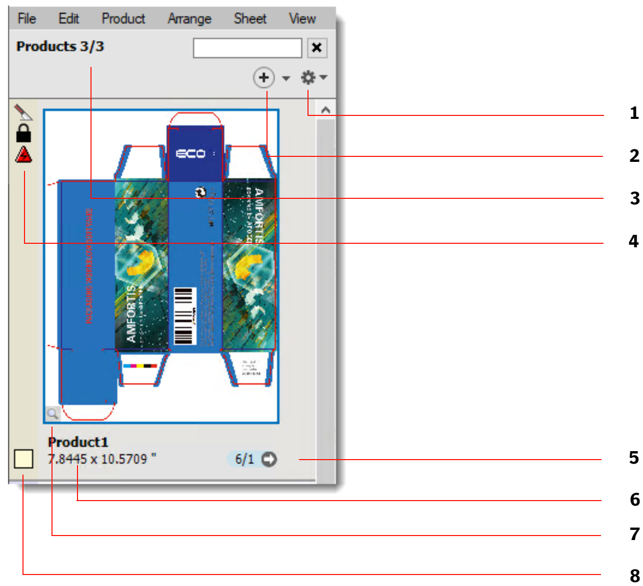
When choosing artwork files to add products to the Product panel, you can change the default information and provide additional information.



NOTE: This needs to be selected in your Preferences. See “General” on page 71.

Organizing Products

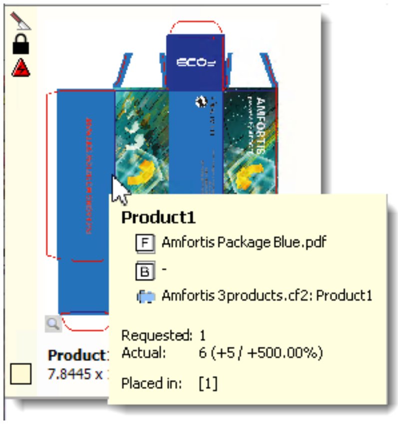
Click the cogwheel to display a menu for organizing and filtering the products you see in this panel.



1 Cogwheel menu
2 Add Products button
3 Number of products displayed according to the chosen filter
4 Product status icons, errors and warnings
5 Instances of a product on all the sheets of a job
6 Product details: file name and physical dimensions
7 Product preview status
8 Product color

Tool Tip

A tool tip appears when hovering over the entire area of the product's cell.



The tool tip shows the following information:

- Product name
- Artwork and design sources names with alignment values (snap-values)
- Requested and actual copy counts
- Content IDs, when the product is assigned to frames with content ID.

Add Products

The following commands are available on the Add Products button:

- Add Products: Creates products from a content file (e.g., PDF).
- Add Products From CAD: Creates products from a CAD file.
- Add Product(s) From Frame(s): Create product(s) from the selected frame(s).
- Duplicate Product(s): Duplicates the selected product(s).
- Place CAD layout: Creates a sheet from a CAD layout file or place a CAD layout on a sheet.

Cogwheel Menu

The following commands are available on the cogwheel menu:

- Show all: Shows all products in the job.
- Show placed: Shows only the products that are placed.
- Show placed on current sheet: Shows only the products that are placed on the current Sheet Layout.
- Show not placed: Shows only the products that are not yet placed.
- Has artwork: Shows products that have artwork assigned.
- Has no artwork: Shows products that do not have any artwork assigned.
- Single-sided: Shows products that are single-sided.
- Double-sided: Shows products that are double-sided.

- Sort by file name: Sorts the products alphabetically by their names, in ascending order.
- Sort by type: Sorts the products alphabetically by the file type of its artwork, in ascending order.
- Sort by Width: Sorts the products by their widths, in descending order.
- Sort by Height: Sorts the products by their heights, in descending order.
- Sort by Largest Dimension: Sorts the products by their largest size (i.e., the maximum of the width and height), in descending order.
- Show small thumbnails: Shows smaller thumbnails.
- Show large thumbnails: Shows larger thumbnails.
- Fit to largest: Shows thumbnails with a dynamic scale, where the widest thumbnail determines the scale.
- Fit each: Shows thumbnails with a dynamic scale per image, where each image is fit individually to the width of the panel.
- Show Product Colors: Colorizes the backgrounds of the cells using the product's colors and draws a color picker to select the color.
- Show Both Sides: Shows a thumbnail that combines the front and back sides of the product side by side.

Managing/Editing Products

In the Product panel, context-click a product to display the following commands for this product:

- Get Info: displays the Info dialog box with information about the original product file organized in the General, Dimensions and Resources tabs; the Resources tab lists the fonts, products and spot colors used in the original product.
- Show Preflight Report: opens a PDF with a preflight report for the selected product, if available.
- Export Original File/Normalized PDF: exports the original file or normalized PDF to a location of your choice.
- Proof Product: opens the QuickProof dialog to proof the selected products. See "QuickProof Products and Sheets" on page 362.

- Delete Product: deletes the selected products from the Product panel, not from your disk.
- Duplicate Product(s): creates an exact copy of the products. See “Duplicating Products” on page 298.
- Assign Artwork: opens the file explorer to select artwork to add to an empty product.
- Front/Back: changes the front/back artwork of a product:
  - From Available: selects a previously uploaded page from the sub-menu; list of all artwork that is available in the Page Store.
  - Open: browses the file system and loads the artwork from a file.
  - Blank: selects to have a blank side.
  - Mirror: mirrors the current artwork, disabled when there is no current artwork.
  - Swap with back: swaps the assignment with that of the other side (front/back).
  - None: selects to have no artwork on that side.
  - Get Info: shows the Get Info window for the assigned artwork.
  - Show Preflight Report: creates and opens the Preflight Report for the document that is assigned to the current side.
  - Check Out and Edit Document: edits the document in the selected editor.
- Design: changes the design of a product:
  - From Product: lists the sub-menu with the other products.
  - Open: browses the file system and loads a design from a CAD file.
  - From Front: the artwork assigned to the front, disabled when the front has no artwork.
  - From Back: the artwork assigned to the back, disabled when the back has no artwork.
  - Mirror: mirrors the current design.

- None: sets the design to a rectangle with the size specified by the Product size, disabled when the Product size is From design.

- Turn Over: turns over the product(s) contained in one or multiple frames.
- Mirror Product: mirrors the front and back artwork and mirrors the design.
- Convert to Single-sided Product(s): creates two single-sided products from a double-sided product (front/back) with the artwork assigned to the respective sides.
- Convert to Double-sided Product(s): combines two products (or multiple pairs of products selected in the Product panel) into double-sided products.
- Open in Product Editor: opens the selected product in the Product Editor.
- Edit with Preview: opens the product in Preview; this feature is useful for soft-proofing images which are color managed; you can perform color adjustments and contrast curve adjustment; see “Previewing Job Results” on page 77 for more information on working with Preview.
- Check Out and Edit Document: opens images and documents in Acrobat or any other PDF Viewer/Editor application such as the Amfortis Editor, from where they can be checked in after editing.
- Auto-Layout Product: opens the Auto Layout dialog box, see “Placing Products with Auto-Layout” on page 304.
- Auto Fill Products: opens the Auto-Fill dialog box, see “Placing Products with Auto-Fill” on page 308.
- Create Grid: opens the Create Grid dialog box, see “Create Grid” on page 301.
- Collapse Tiles: collapses the tiles of a tiled image.
- Expand Tiles: expands a tiled images to see the individual tiles.
- Fitting: opens the Fitting Options dialog box where you can set the cropping, see “Fitting Options Dialog Box” on page 288.
- Revert Product Size: reverts the size of the original product back to the size it initially had when you added it to the Product panel.
- Locate Product on Sheet: highlights all the instances of a product/sheet on the current or first available sheet/print layout.

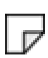
In the Print Layouts panel, context-click a product to display the following commands for this sheet:

- Delete Sheet: deletes the selected sheets from the Print Layout. panel. Deleting a Print Layout does not delete the Sheet Layouts that it contains.
- Duplicate Sheet: duplicates a Print Layout. This creates an exact copy of the current Print Layout, including all Sheet Layouts. See “Duplicating Products” on page 298.
- Edit Sheet: switches to Sheet Layout panel to allow editing the sheet.
- Locate Sheet: locates the placed instance of a sheet on the Print Layout.
- Proof Sheets: opens the QuickProof dialog to proof the selected sheets. See “QuickProof Products and Sheets” on page 362.

NOTE: The Print Layout Editor is only available for Wide Format jobs.

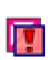
Product Status Icons


The design of the product has a contour-defining operation (other than the frame or trim-box).


The product is double-sided.


At least one of the product’s artworks was rejected. In addition, the thumbnail of the rejected artwork is shown with a red diagonal line.

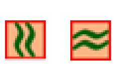

At least one of the product’s artworks has remarks other than rejected.


At least one of the product’s artworks could not be aligned to the design.


At least one of the product’s artworks could not be aligned to the design with great confidence.


The product is Locked or Uniform.


The product requires vertical or horizontal Grain/Flute and there are no placed instances that violate that requirement.

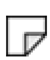
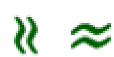
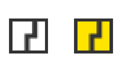
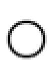

The product requires vertical or horizontal Grain/Flute, but at least one placed instance violates that requirement.


The product has white content, either from the artwork or generated.


The product has varnish content, either from the artwork or generated.

	The product has primer content, either from the artwork or generated.
	The image is being edited via an external editor.
	Indicates that full-gamut color management is applied.
	'F' shows the effects of the rotation and mirror attributes (here shown with 90 degrees rotation and no mirroring.
	Indicates a preflight report has been generated for the image.
	Image preview has been generated (gray) or is being processed (green).
	Color adjustments (saturation, contrast, curves) have been made in Preview.
	The product has Image Operations that prevent changing the product's size (tiling, canvas extensions, etc.).
	There is a notification or snag message present on the product. The icon depicts the severity of the status: error, warning or intervention required.

Sheet Status Icons

	The design of the sheet has a contour-defining operation.
	The sheet is Locked.
	The sheet's workstyle and sidelay.
	The sheet has Grain/Flute running in the specified direction (either can be long or short).
	The sheet has a custom bleed mask. The mask is up-to-date (white) or needs reviewing (yellow).
	The sheet has white content, either from the artwork or generated.
	The sheet has varnish content, either from the artwork or generated.
	The sheet has primer content, either from the artwork or generated.
	There is a notification or snag message present on the sheet. The icon depicts the severity of the status: error, warning or intervention required.

Clicking the status icon opens the message(s) for that sheet/product in the Snag List.

Inspecting Products

You can use the Product inspector to inspect one or more products in the Product panel before placing them on a layout. See “Frame/Product Inspector” on page 340 for more information.

You can also use some of the tools in the positioning toolbar for a product selected in the Product panel: size, scale, mirror and rotate the product. See “Positioning and resizing products with the positioning toolbar” on page 282.

Changes you make to the original in the Product panel do not affect products that are already placed on the sheet and vice versa.

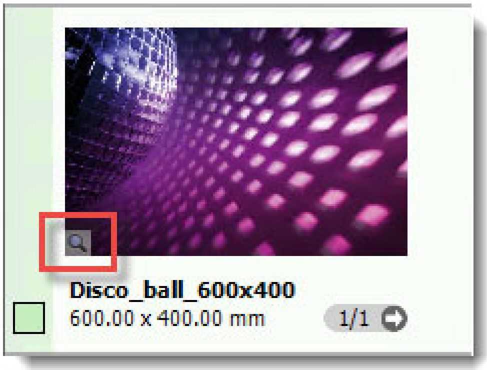
Product Previews

When you upload products to the Product panel, Asecuri does not process product previews automatically by default.

NOTE: You can change the default behavior and let the system create previews automatically when you add products to the Product panel. See “Preferences” on page 71.

When products are added to the Product panel, the Create Previews button appears in the bottom right corner of the Layout Editor. Click this button when you are ready to create the previews.

Products with a preview are indicated in the Product panel with a magnifying glass icon. This icon is grey if the preview has been generated and green while the preview is being processed.



▷ Create product previews

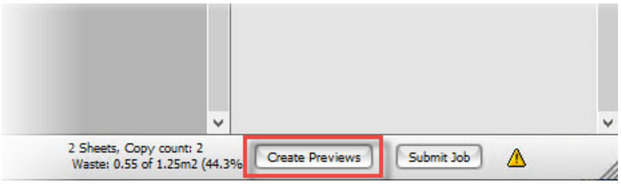
If automatic product previews are not selected in your Asecuri client Preferences, you can create previews as required as you work in the Layout Editor.

- Context-click one or more products in the Product panel and choose Edit with Preview.

  This creates a color-managed preview of the selected products and opens the preview immediately in the Raster Preview module when the processing is finished. The magnifier status icon in the Product panel changes from green to gray to indicate the previews are ready.

  OR

- Click the Create Previews button in the bottom right corner to create product previews of all the products in the Product panel.



  Previews of all the products in the Product panel are generated in the background. The magnifier status icon is gray when the previews are ready. The previews can be opened immediately in the Raster Preview module.

  OR

- Double-click a product in the Product panel.

  You can change the default behavior so the Raster Preview module is opened and previews are created instead of opening the Product Editor. See "Preferences" on page 71.

  If you change settings that modify the preview (for example, choose a different printer), the Create Preview button re-appears and you can choose whether you want to update the previews or not. See also "Applying Changes and Submitting a Job" on page 351.

▷ Previewing white and special colors

The Raster Preview module has special features for previewing white ink and other special colors such as varnish and primer.

1 In the Raster Preview module, make sure the Inks palette is shown.

2 In the Ink table, ALT-click the eye icon next to the white ink.

The white ink is drawn in grayscale with 100% white drawn as 100% black. The other inks are hidden.

3 ALT-click the eye icon again to show all the colors.

Alternatively, you can choose to show white in a different color, as a mask.

1 Click the color patch for the white ink and in the Viewing Options dialog box, choose As Mask.

2 Choose a color and an opacity with the slider.

3 Click OK.

The white layer is drawn in the selected color and opacity on top of the other layers.

Related topics:

• Previewing Job Results on page 77

File Types

The following file types can be processed:

- Content files: Files that contain the content to be printed. In some cases, such files may also contain structural (non-printing) information that can be used by Apogee.
    - Image file types: TIFF, JPG, PNG, BMP
    - Adobe PhotoShop (PSD) and Illustrator (AI)
    - PDF, PS, PSB, EPS
- CAD files: Files that contain structural information but no content.
    - CFF2, DXF

All file types are converted to an internal PDF file format in the background, but they keep their original name and file extension.

NOTE: If you upload a PDF document that consists of several pages, each page is displayed in the Product panel as an individual product. The page no. is suffixed to the file name.

▷ Placing and arranging products on a sheet

NOTE: Some of these shortcuts can also be used for placing sheets on printer layouts.

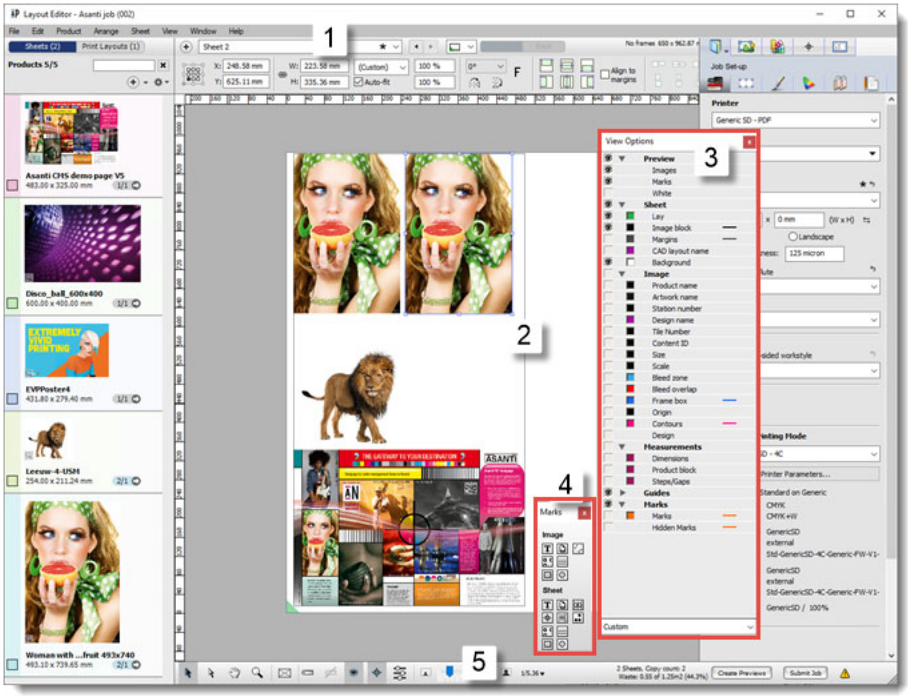
To	Drag the product and
Place one or more products at the cursor position without ganging them.	Hold SHIFT and release
Switch between snapping to margins (magenta snap guides) and snapping to edges (blue snap guides).	Press ALT
Restrain movement horizontally and vertically.	Hold SHIFT
Cancel the product placement.	Press ESC
Rotate one or more products 90° counterclockwise, while moving them	Press space bar once
Copy a selected product.	Press CTRL + C
Paste a copied product.	Press CTRL + V
Center a product on the current sheet or on a new sheet if the current one is not empty. Multiple selected products are centered on individual sheets.	Press C
Center a product on the current sheet even if it is not empty. Multiple selected products are centered on individual sheets.	Press SHIFT + C
Duplicate one or more selected products according to the copy count and gang the products on the current and new sheets.	Press N
Duplicate one or more selected products according to the copy count and gang the products on the current and new sheets but starting at the cursor position.	Press SHIFT + N
Duplicate one or more selected products according to the copy count and center the products on the current sheet if empty and on new sheets.	Press N + C
Duplicate the selected product and fill the current sheet if empty. Fill one sheet for each product if multiple products are selected.	Press F
Duplicate a selected product and gang the products with existing products on the current sheet to fill the sheet. Selecting multiple products fills multiple sheets.	Press SHIFT + F
Duplicate the selected product and fill and center on the current sheet if empty. Fill one sheet for each product if multiple products are selected.	Press F + C
Rotate the selected product or products clockwise.	Press R
Rotate the selected product or products counterclockwise.	Press SHIFT + R
Mirror the selected product or products clockwise.	Press M
Mirror the selected product or products counterclockwise.	Press SHIFT + M

Layout Panel

NOTE: Most of the features in the Layout Panel apply for both the Sheet Layout mode as well as the Print Layout mode. Remember that you work with sheets on a print layout when in Print Layout mode.

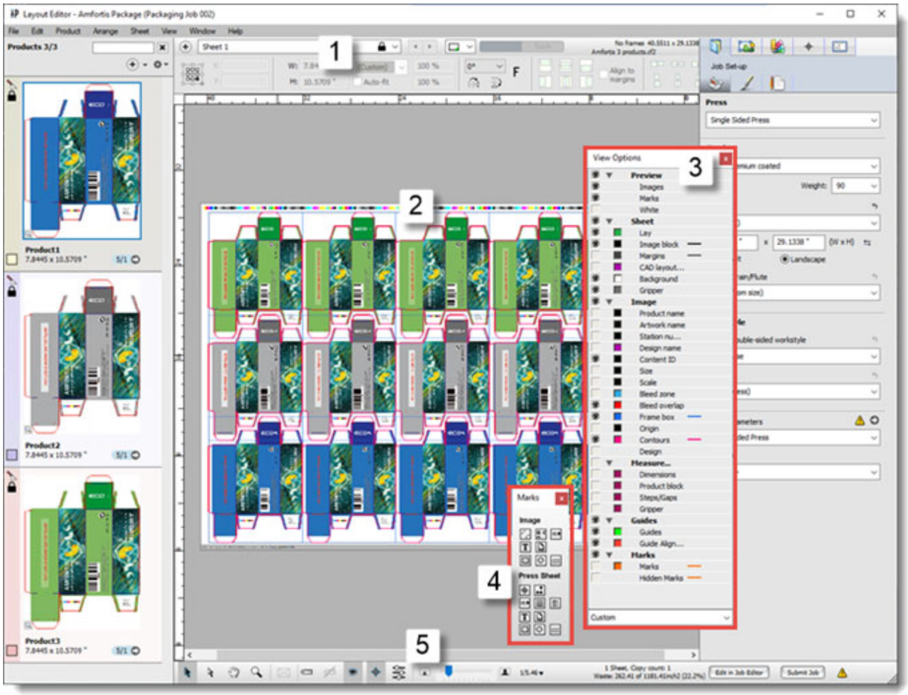
The sheet layout panel consists of one or more sheet tabs where products are placed, positioning tools to position the products on the sheet, and palettes for inspecting the sheet in more detail.

Figure 8.5: The layout panel (Sheet Layout mode)



1. Positioning toolbar
2. Sheet with placed products
3. View Options palette
4. Marks palette
5. Layout toolbar

Figure 8.6: The layout panel with different products placed in an offset job



1 Positioning toolbar
2 Products panel
3 View Options palette
4 Marks palette
5 Layout toolbar

▷ Add a Sheet

♦ Click the + button next to the Sheet 1 tab.

OR

Drag a product onto the + button

OR

Choose **Sheet > New Empty Sheet**.

NOTE: If sheet media is used, layouts are added automatically to accommodate products that you add to an existing layout that does not have sufficient space for the product.

▷ Delete a Sheet

- Context-click the Sheet tab you want to delete and choose **Delete Current Sheet**.

  OR

  Select the Sheet Layout and choose **Sheet > Delete Current Sheet**.

Default Product Placement

Products are placed on the sheet by dragging and dropping. They are arranged automatically in a logical sequence. This initial placement of products is referred to as the default product placement or ganging.

- Select one or more products in the Product panel and drag them onto the sheet.

  The first product is placed against the sheet lay, which is an indication of the leading edge of the printer. For Anapurna printing devices, this is the bottom right corner of the sheet; for Jeti printing devices, this is the bottom left corner of the sheet.

  Subsequent products are ganged adjacent to the placed products, row by row. When the sheet is filled, a new sheet is added automatically.

  Products are placed on the sheet at their native size and they are enclosed in a blue frame.

The resolution of a product is checked when you place it on a sheet. If the resolution is too low, a warning icon appears in the Product panel. Click this warning icon to open the Snag List. See “Snag List” on page 322.

If you want to print several instances of the same product and you have set the copy count, you can fill the sheets while dragging the products onto the sheet.

- Select one or more products in the Product panel and press “n” or “N” while dragging them onto the sheet to duplicate the products in accordance with the copy count.

  The sheet is filled with the products in accordance with the copy count. Additional sheets are created if necessary to accommodate the copy count. If multiple products were selected, the sheets are first filled with the first product in the Product panel and then with the second product, and so on, until the copy count for all the products is obtained.

NOTE: The default placement of sheets on the print layout can be specified in the Media Layout tab.

Placing Products Interactively

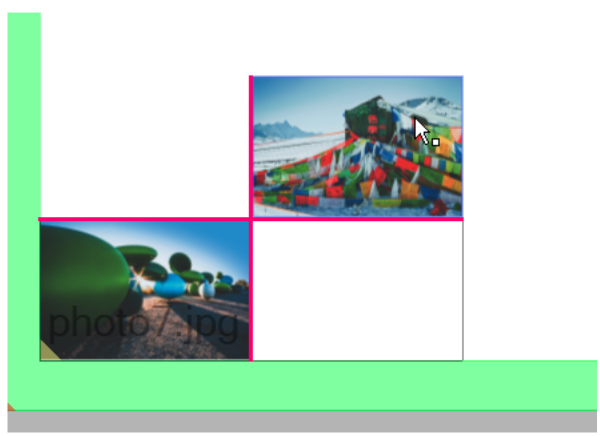
The default product placement can be modified extensively.

Moving Products

- To move one or more products on the sheet, select them with the selection tool and drag them randomly on the sheet.

You can also restrain the dragging to a horizontal and vertical movement by pressing SHIFT as you drag. Snap guides can be activated to help you align products or bounding boxes with each other and with the edge of the sheet.

Figure 8.7: Snap guides to align products on a sheet



Centering Products

- Press “c” or “C” to move one or more selected products to the centre of the sheet.

  If you select multiple products, the group of products is centred. Selecting multiple products consecutively will superimpose the products on top of each other.

▷ Snapping to Margins or Edges

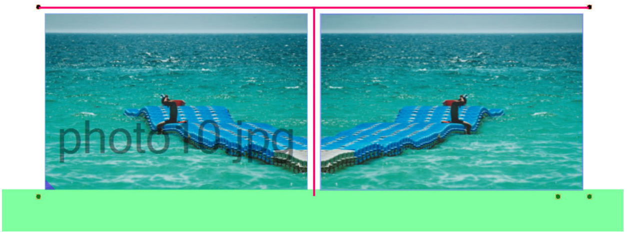
- Choose **View > Guides > Snap to Margins** or **Snap to Edges** to display magenta or cyan snap guides as you move products on the layout.

With either of these options selected, you can switch between snapping to the finishing margins of a product or snapping to its edges by holding down the ALT key. See “Frame/Product Inspector” on page 340 for information on setting finishing margins for products.

The following color codes are used for the snap guides:

Snapping	snap guide color
Finishing margin of the product to the margin of another product or to the edge of the sheet	solid magenta
Finishing margin of the product to the margin of the sheet	dashed magenta
Edge of the product to the edge of another product or to the edge of the sheet	solid cyan
Edge of the product to the margin of the sheet	dashed cyan

Figure 8.8: Snapping to product finishing margins (magenta snap guides)



▷ Grouping products

- You can select multiple products using conventional Windows key combinations. Multiple, selected products are enclosed in a blue bounding box. To keep these products together, choose Arrange > Group.

  The bounding box changes to black. The group of products can be moved on the layout interactively by dragging or with the positioning tools.

▷ Rotating products

- While placing or moving one or more products on the sheet, press the SPACE bar once to rotate the product 90° counterclockwise, twice for 180° counterclockwise, etc.

  OR

  Select a placed product and press the SPACE bar or use the rotation tool in the positioning toolbar.

▷ Restoring the default placement

- After moving products interactively, you may want to restore the default placement of one or more products. Select the product you want to reset and choose Layout > Rearrange Frames.

  The selected products are ganged according to the default placement.

▷ Copy products to another sheet

1. Select one or more products on the active sheet and press CTRL+C to copy them
2. Go to another sheet and press CTRL+V to paste the copied products on this sheet.

▷ Removing Products

- To remove one or more products from the sheet, select them with the selection tool and press the Delete button, or press CTRL+X.

  The product or products are removed from the active sheet.

Removed products are not deleted from the Product panel and can be placed again on the same or a different sheet.

▷ Shortcuts for overriding the default product placement

- Use the following keyboard shortcuts to override the default placement of the products when dragging them onto the sheet or moving them once they are placed on the sheet:

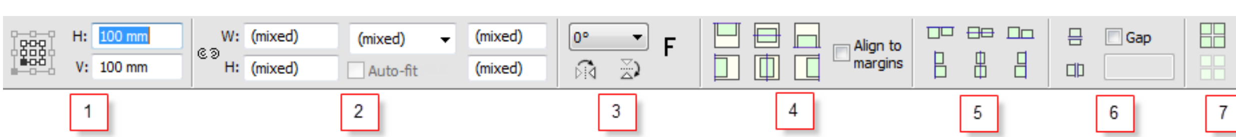
NOTE: Some of these shortcuts can also be used for placing sheets on printer layouts.

To	Drag the product and
Place one or more products without ganging them	Hold SHIFT and release
Switch between snapping to margins (magenta snap guides) and snapping to edges (blue snap guides)	Press ALT
Restrain movement horizontally and vertically	Hold SHIFT
Cancel the product placement	Press ESC
Rotate one or more products 90° counterclockwise, while moving them	Press space bar once
Copy a selected product.	Press CTRL + C
Paste a copied product.	Press CTRL + V
Move a selected product to the center of the sheet.	Press C or c
Duplicate a selected product to accommodate the copy count.	Press N or n
Rotate the selected product or products clockwise	Press R
Rotate the selected product or products counterclockwise	Press SHIFT + R
Mirror the selected product or products clockwise	Press M
Mirror the selected product or products counterclockwise	Press SHIFT + M

Positioning and resizing products with the positioning toolbar

The positioning toolbar provides tools for arranging and resizing products on the sheet interactively.

Select one or more products on the sheet to activate the tools.



1 Horizontal and vertical coordinates relative to the chosen reference point
2 Set size with aspect ratio lock; set Auto-fit option
3 Rotate/mirror one or more products on the sheet
4 Align in sheet
5 Align multiple products with each other
6 Set the gaps horizontally or vertically
7 Group/ungroup multiple products

Depending on whether you have one or more products selected, the positioning toolbar activates the relevant tools.

1 Select one product.

You can now either position the product by filling in a **H**orizontal and **V**ertical position (1)or you can choose one of the **Align in Sheet** options (4) to align along the top, left, right, bottom, center of the layout. If you select the

Align to margins check box, the reference edges are the layout margins as set in the finishing inspector.

Select a rotation angle in the **Rotation** drop-down box (3) to rotate the selected product, or click the horizontal or vertical **Mirror** buttons (3) to mirror the product along its horizontal or vertical axis.

2 Select two or more products.

You can now **Group** the products (7) and align the group in the sheet (top, left, right, bottom, center) (4), or align the selected products with each other (5).

You can also use the **Set Gaps** tools (6) to distribute selected products vertically, horizontally, or both, so that the gaps between the elements are the same. If the gap size is not specified (Distribute), the outermost elements keep their positions and the elements in between move; if a gap size is specified (fixed), the left most or bottommost elements remain in position and the others move.

3 Select one or more products.

With the **Size** tool (2) you can set the size of the product frame. See “Inspecting Frames” on page 286 to read how you can fill a resized frame with the product. If you selected multiple products (i.e. product frames), all the products in the bounding box are modified accordingly.

Figure 8.9: A product which is copied, mirrored and snapped to product edges (cyan snap guides)

▷ Using alignment pins

When placing sheets on a print layout, you can use alignment pins for certain printing devices to ensure the sheet aligns with the media.

1 In Print Layout mode, go to the Media Layout inspector.

2 In the **Horizontally** drop-down list, select the Alignment Pin Set that you want to use, at the bottom of the list.

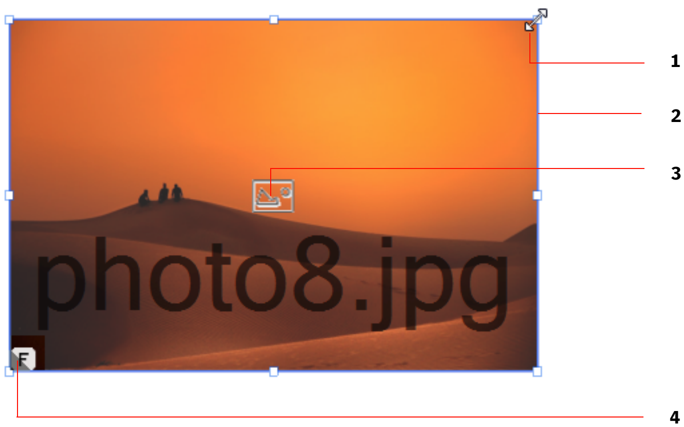
3 In the second drop-down list, select the pin configuration you want to use.

The alignment pins are shown on the print layout and you can now position your sheets against these pins with the snap feature.

Working with Frames

A product placed on a sheet is always enclosed in a frame and most actions you perform in the Layout Editor actually affect the frame, not the product. For placed products, the Auto-fit check box is selected by default in the Positioning toolbar to ensure that the product fits the frame. You can clear the Auto-fit check box if you want to manipulate the frame independently from the product, for example to crop the product disproportionately. The parts of the product that are outside the frame are not printed, except for the bleed.

Figure 8.10: A placed product with its frame highlighted for resizing

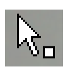


1 Product resize handle
2 Frame
3 Product icon
4 Product origin (indicates rotation/mirroring)

The frame and the product can be resized independently of each other, for example to crop a product.

Figure 8.11: A placed product, selected and enlarged beyond its own frame

A product is selected within its frame by clicking the product icon. The cursor state changes when you do this, as follows:

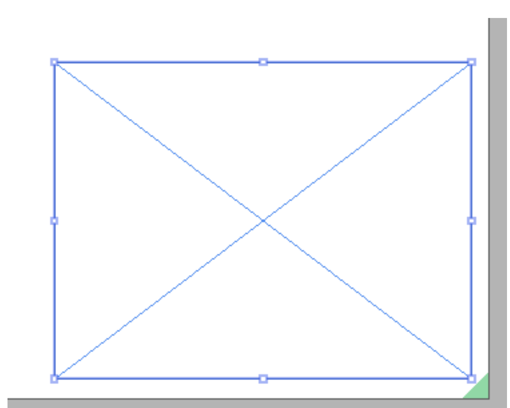
 Product frame is selected.

 Product is selected.

NOTE: Context-clicking a product within a frame provides access to the product-specific commands. See “Managing/Editing Products” on page 267.

Empty frames are frames without a product, which are the result of either deleting the product from the frame of a placed product or drawing a new frame on the sheet.

Figure 8.12: An empty frame



Empty frames can be arranged on a sheet interactively just like placed products, using the Positioning toolbar and commands such as Step and Repeat, Duplicate, etc., and snap guides for aligning. You can also set fitting options to control how products must fit in empty frames. Frames also give you more flexibility when creating sheet templates. There is no Auto-Layout feature for empty frames.

NOTE: Empty frames are saved with a job but they are not processed as content when you submit the job. So you will not see frame boxes, etc. in the output.

Related topics:

- Sheet Layout Templates on page 354
- Fitting Options Dialog Box on page 288

Inspecting Frames

The following commands can be performed by context-clicking a frame:

- Add Products From Frame: When one or more frames are selected on the sheet, creates products with the dimensions of the selected frames and adds them to the Products list.
- Cut: Removes the frames from the sheet.
- Copy: Places a copy of the selected frames on the clipboard.
- Delete Frame: Removes the frame and its product from the sheet.
- Remove Frame: Deletes the product from the frame.
- Duplicate Frame on Sheet: See “Duplicating Products” on page 298.
- Step and Repeat: See “Step & Repeat” on page 299.
- Add Product From Artwork: Creates product by assigning artwork to a frame.
- Assign Artwork: Opens the file explorer to select artwork to add to a frame. See “Managing/Editing Products” on page 267.
- Front/Back: Changes the front/back artwork of a product in a frame. See “Managing/Editing Products” on page 267.
- Design: Changes the design of a product in a frame. See “Managing/Editing Products” on page 267.
- Open in Product Editor: Opens the selected product in the Product Editor.

- Edit with Preview: Opens the product in Preview. See “Previewing Job Results” on page 77 for more information on working with Preview.
- Check Out and Edit Document: Opens images and documents in the selected Acrobat or any other PDF Viewer/Editor application.
- Group/Ungroup: Groups or ungroups the selected frames.
- Fitting: This sub-menu provides the following options:
  - Fit Product in Frame Proportionally: Resizes the product proportionally to fit within the frame.
  - Fill Frame With Product Proportionally: Scales the product proportionally to fill the entire frame.
  - Fit Frame to Product: Resizes the frame to fit the product.
  - Fill Frame With Product: Scales the product to fill the entire frame, but not proportionally.
  - Center Product: Centers the product, in its current size, in the frame.
  - Reset Fitting: Sets the fitting options of the frame to those of the original product in the Product panel.
  - Fitting Options: see “Fitting Options Dialog Box” on page 288.
- Size Frame to Sheet: Fills the sheet with the product; this may change the proportions.
- Size Sheet to Frame: Sizes the sheet to the selected product frame which can be empty or filled.
- Revert Frame: Reverts the frame and product to the size of the original product.
- Scale for Bleed: Extends the product beyond the frame to accommodate the specified bleed.
- Rearrange Frame: Re-positions the frame to the default placement on the sheet and applies modified inspector settings.
- Assign Content ID: Assigns a content ID to the selected frame or all frames if none is selected. The frames must be filled.

- Clear Content ID: Clears the content IDs of the selected frames or all frames if none are selected.
- Locate Product in Product List: Highlights all the instances of a product on the current or first available print layout.

Fitting Options Dialog Box

The Fitting Options dialog box gives you more detailed control for fitting a product within the frame.

- With one or more product frames selected on the sheet, choose Arrange > Fitting > Fitting Options to open the Fitting Options dialog box.

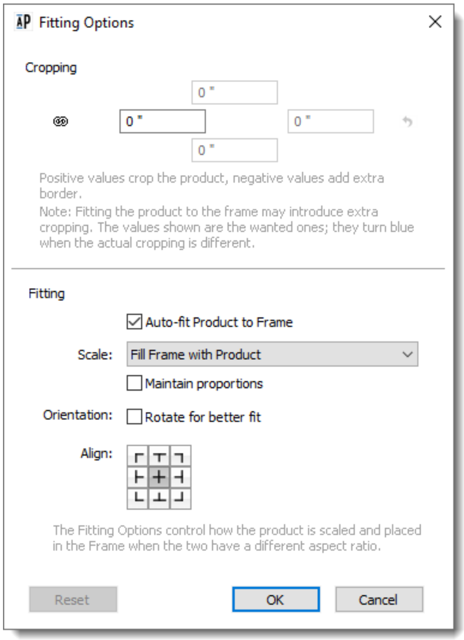
  OR

- Right-click a frame and choose Fitting > Fitting Options.

  OR

- Context-click a product in the Product panel and choose Fitting > Fitting Options.

NOTE: You can only set the crop values for products in the Product panel.



Cropping

The values that you want to apply to products in the frame. If the product fits in the frame exactly, the four values are zero, for example when you drag a product onto a sheet. Positive values crop the product by shifting the product outside the frame. Negative values create more space, a border, between the product and the frame. Values in blue mean the Auto-fit settings have introduced extra cropping.

Fitting

Here you specify the Auto-fit settings for fitting the product inside the frame.

Auto-fit Product to Frame Select this check box to choose a Scale and Orientation for fitting the product automatically in the frame. The check box is selected by default for placed products (i.e. products that you dragged on the sheet).

Scale The following options are available to scale the product when Auto-fit is selected:

- Fit Product to Frame: scales the product so it fits completely in the frame which is not necessarily filled.
- Fill Frame with Product: scales the product so it fills the frame and crops the product if necessary.
- Fill Product to Frame Width: scales the product so its width fits that of the frame.
- Fill Product to Frame Height: scales the product so its height fits that of the frame.

Maintain proportions Keeps the width and height scale factors the same when scaling.

Orientation/Rotate for better fit Rotates the product to match the aspect ratio of the frame when Auto-fit is selected.

Align Sets the alignment of the product in the frame.

Reset Button Resets the product to fill the frame.

Related topics:

- Sheet Layout Templates on page 354

Adding frames to a Sheet

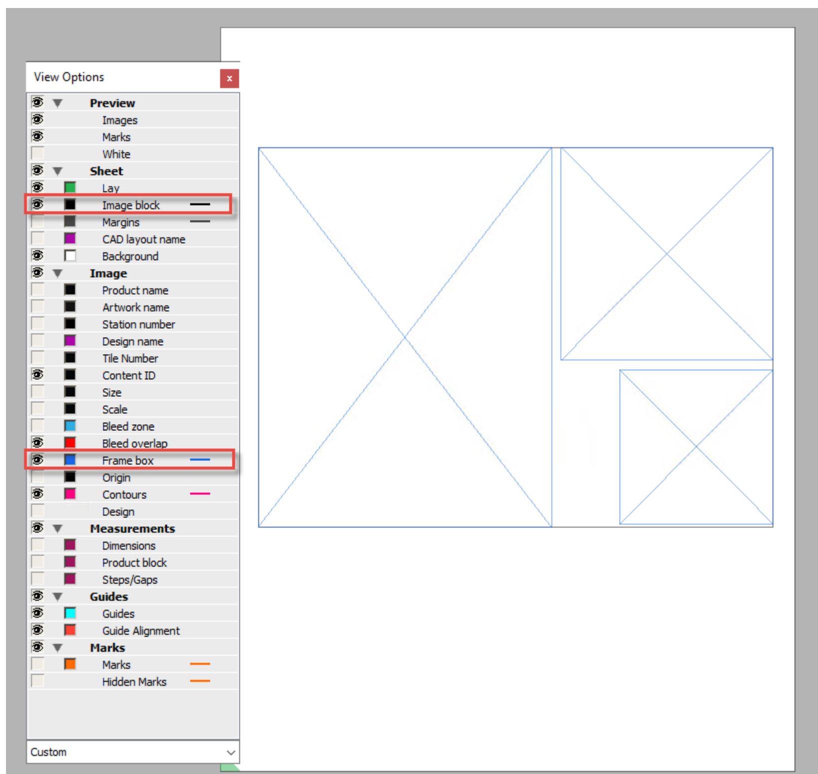
1 On the sheet where you want to draw a new frame, select the Frame tool on the toolbar at the bottom of the Layout Editor.

2 On the sheet, click, drag and release the mouse to draw the frame.

A frame has an outline and two diagonals from corner to corner. The color depends on your View Options settings.

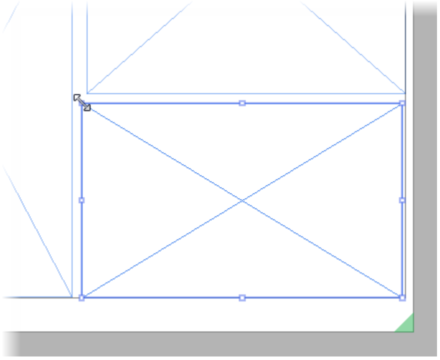
3 With the Frame tool still selected, you can draw additional frames on the sheet.

Figure 8.13: Unnamed frames inside the product block, on a sheet



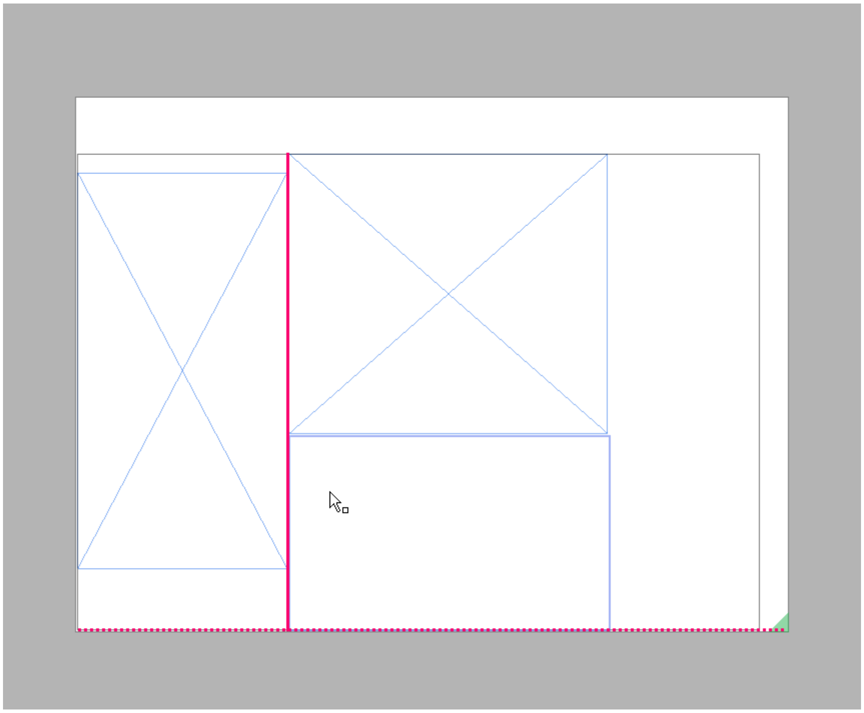
The product block expands accordingly as you add more frames.

4 To position your frames, click the Selection tool in the toolbar and now you can select the frames.



The outline is thicker and has resizing handles.

5 Use the Positioning toolbar to arrange the frames just like you would do with products.



The same snap guides are available to help you align frames with edges and margins.

Related topics:

- Placing Products Interactively on page 279

▷ Rearrange frames

The Rearrange command reverts the placed products on a sheet to the default placement. Depending on the printing device, the products are ganged from left to right or right to left on the sheet. You cannot rearrange locked sheets.

1. Select the products or frames that you want to rearrange on the sheet.
2. Choose Layout > Rearrange Frames.

   The selected products or frames revert to the default placement. Some products may be placed on a new sheet if the current sheet cannot accommodate the rearranged products.

   If no products or frames are selected, then everything on the sheet is rearranged.

Naming frames (content IDs)

Frames that you draw on a sheet are initially so-called *unnamed frames*. Frames created by dragging products on the sheet are also unnamed. It is possible to assign content IDs ([A[, [B], [C], etc.) to frames for automation purposes, and these frames are called *named frames*.

Named frames allow you to use the same product in multiple frames by simply dragging the product once onto the sheet. Each product is placed in the position and with the size, frame rotation, and fitting options specified for the different frames.

NOTE: Content IDs do not work across multiple sheets. For example, placing a product in a frame with Content ID [A] on Sheet 1 does not fill frames with the same ID on Sheet 2.

Named frames are extremely useful when creating sheet layout templates.

Related topics:

- “Sheet Layout Templates” on page 354

▷ Naming empty frames (interactively)

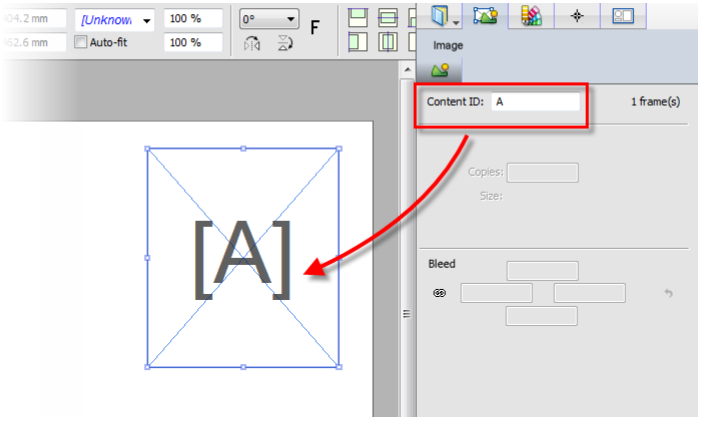
Empty frames on a sheet can only be named manually because they have no content.

1 Draw the frame on the sheet with the Frame tool.

2 Switch to the Selection tool and select one or more frames.

3 In the Product Inspector, enter an ID in the Content ID box.

4 Click outside the ID box, and the ID is displayed in the center of the frame.



If you selected multiple frames, the same ID is assigned to each frame.

You can edit the content ID as long as no products are placed on the sheet.

Naming filled frames

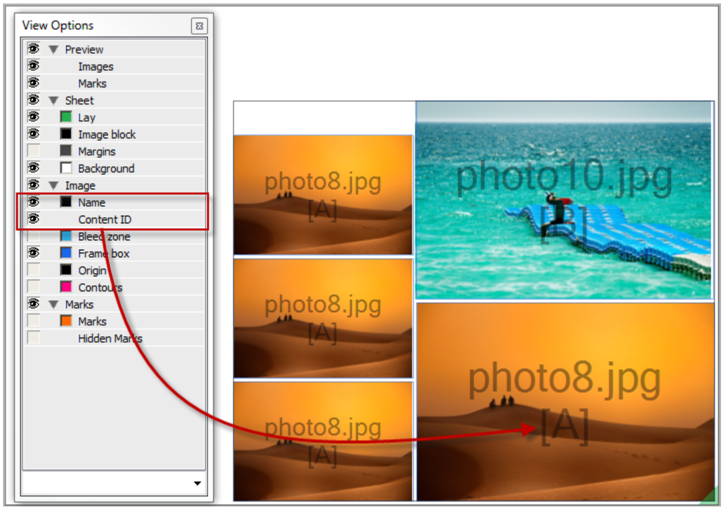
If a sheet contains at least one product, you cannot use the Product Inspector to assign content IDs interactively. You would have to clear all the frames first.

However, there are two methods for naming filled frames automatically: by saving the sheet layout as a template (see "Sheet Layout Templates" on page 354), or by using the Assign Content IDs command. This command lets you assign IDs to filled frames without clearing all the products from the sheet.

1 Select the products you want to name on the sheet.

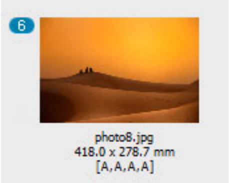
2 Choose Layout > Assign Content IDs.

The selected products are assigned unique IDs and instances of the same product have the same unique ID. If you didn't select any products, then all the frames with products on the sheet are assigned IDs, and empty frames are not assigned IDs.



The content ID is displayed under the product name if this is set to *show* in the View Options.

The content IDs are also displayed under the thumbnail of the original product in the Product panel.



In this example you can see that the product has been assigned to 4 frames with content ID [A].

NOTE: The same product can also be assigned to frames with different IDs, for example, [A,A,B,C,D,D].

---

3 You can repeat the Assign Content IDs command if you drag more products on the sheet. New, unique IDs will be assigned and this is also the case if you add the same original product.

4 You can clear the IDs of selected products or all the IDs by choosing Layout > Clear Content IDs.

NOTE: If all of your frames have IDs, it's not possible to re-assign IDs, for example when you have deleted a product from the sheet.

Create Guides

The Crate Guides allows you to create multiple guides (guidelines) at specified locations.

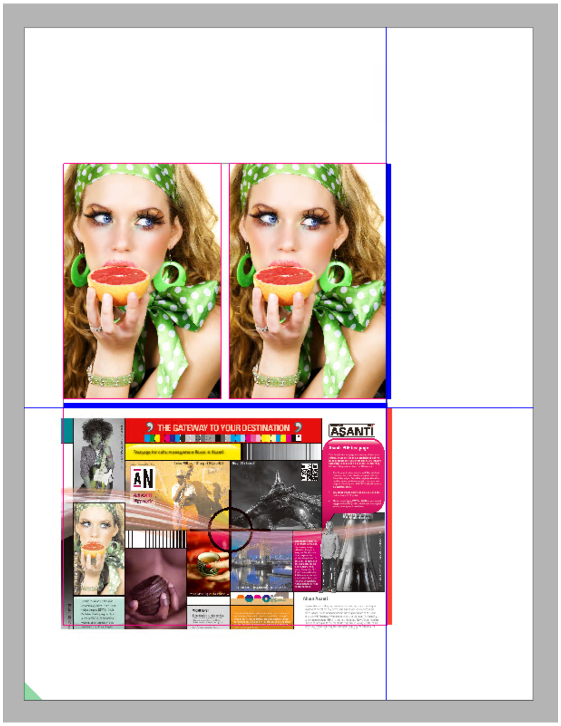
You can create guides as follows:

- Drag from the ruler
- Choose View > Guides > Create Guides command to open the Create Guide dialog box.
- Choose View > Guides > Create Guides From Frame(s).

NOTE: You cannot add guides to a locked sheet.

▷ To create guides dragging from the ruler

1. Make that the ruler is displayed.
2. Click and hold the mouse inside the top or left ruler. Drag the cursor into the layout pane while holding down the mouse.
3. Release the mouse where you want the guide to be placed. The guide(s) are displayed.



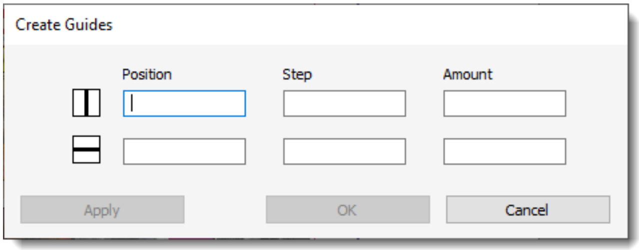
▷ To create guides from the dialog box

1 Choose View > Guides > Create Guides.

2 The Layout Editor opens the Create Guides dialog box. Specify the guides in horizontal/vertical direction(s).

3 The Layout Editor previews the guides in the layout pane. Click the **Apply** button to save the changes, or the **OK** button to apply the changes and close the dialog box.

Create Guides Dialog Box



Position (Horizontal/ Vertical) Enter the position of the guide you want to create. You can leave this field empty, if you do not want to create a guide in that particular orientation.

Step (Horizontal/Vertical) Enter the step distance between each guide to create multiple guides across the entire sheet.

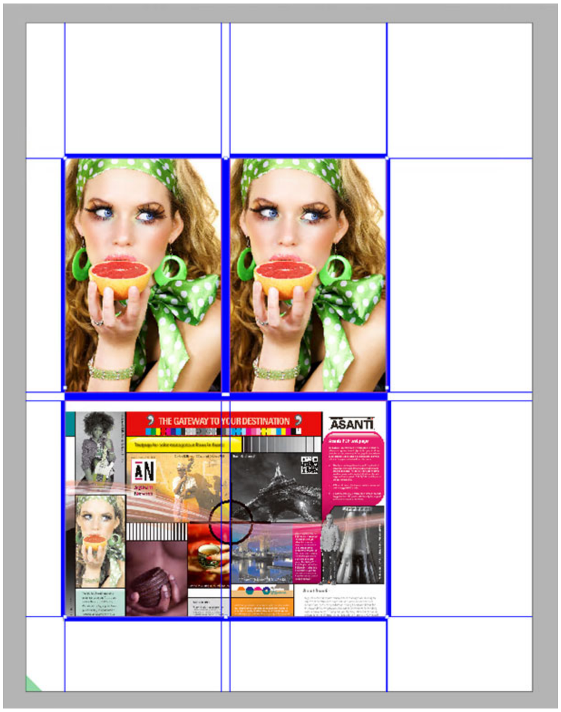
Amount (Horizontal/ Vertical) Specify the total amount of guides when you want to create multiple guides.

▷ To create guides from frame(s)

1 Select a frame or more frames to use as reference guide(s).

2 Choose View > Guides > Create Guides From Frame(s).

The Layout Editor creates guide(s) along every edge in the selection, using the default guide color.



▷ To remove guides

- To remove a guide from the sheet, select the guide and choose View > Guides > Remove Guide(s), or context-click the guide and choose Remove Guide.

  OR

  Select the guide and press the Delete button.

- To remove all guide from the sheet, choose View > Guides > Remove All Guide(s).

NOTE: You can set the colors for the Guides and the Guide Alignment through their respective entries in the View Options palette. See “Place Station Numbers” on page 313.

Copy Count, Cropping, Scaling

You can use the Product inspector to prepare products before placing them on the sheet. See “Frame/Product Inspector” on page 340 for more information.

- With one or more products selected in the Product panel, select the Product inspector and set the Copies, Size, Bleed and Finishing operations as desired. Drag the products onto the sheet.

  The selected products are placed on the sheet and modified accordingly.

Duplicating Products

The Duplicate feature allows you to either create a copy of one or more products that you select in the Product panel, or duplicate and/or fill a sheet with one or more products that you have selected on the sheet.

- Select one product in the Product panel and choose Edit > Duplicate Product.

  OR

  Context-click a product and choose **Duplicate**.

  A copy of the selected product is added to the Product panel and the `Copy` suffix is appended to the file name of the duplicated product.

- Select one or more products or empty frames that have been placed on a sheet and choose Edit > Duplicate Frames on Sheet.

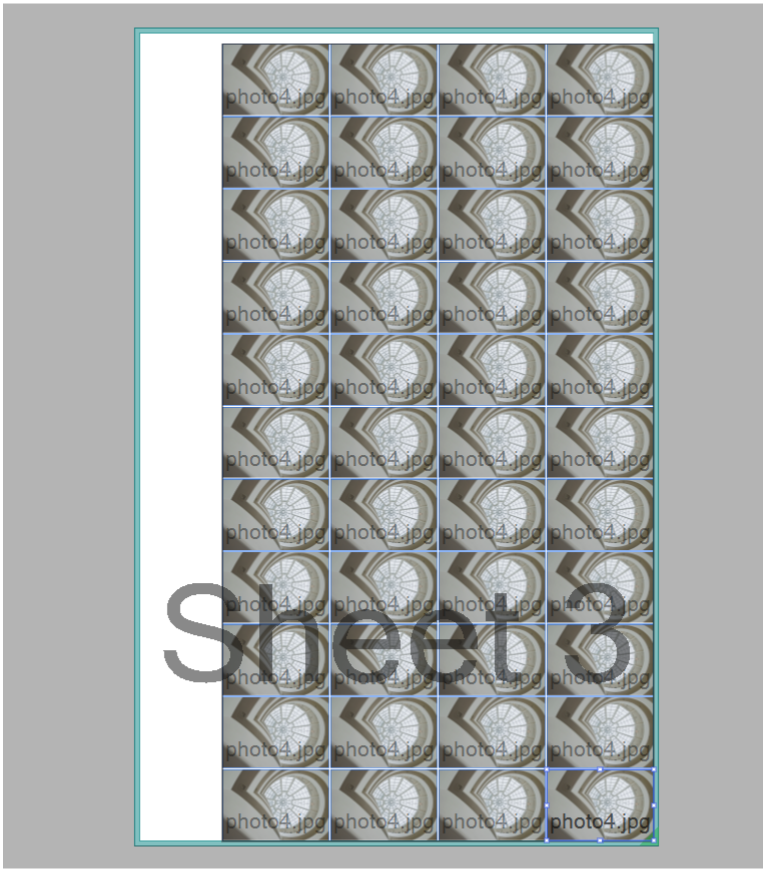
  OR

  Context-click a product and choose **Duplicate Frames on Sheet**.

  You can enter the number of copies you want to make on the sheet, or let Asecuri fill the sheet.

Step & Repeat

Figure 8.14: A product which is stepped and repeated to fill the entire grid of a sheet



- Select a product which has been placed on the layout and choose **Edit > Step and Repeat** to display the Step and Repeat dialog box.

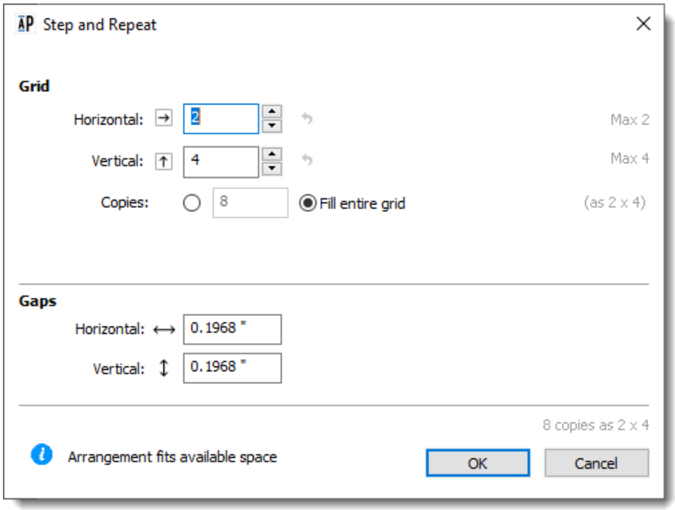
  OR

  Context-click a placed product and choose **Step & Repeat**.

Step and Repeat Dialog Box

Grid

The maximum number of horizontal rows and vertical columns for placing copies are indicated in gray but you can also set the number of rows and columns. A message is displayed if these maximum values are exceeded.



Horizontal Enter the number of copies you want to repeat horizontally. Click the revert button to reset the value to the maximum.

Vertical Enter the number of copies you want to repeat vertically. Click the revert button to reset the value to the maximum.

Copies Enter the number of copies to fill the layout as required; the number of copies should not exceed the number of horizontal rows multiplied by the number of vertical columns; a message is displayed if you exceed this maximum.

Fill entire grid Choose this option to fill the grid you defined. The number of copies is entered automatically (horizontal rows x vertical columns).

Fill Direction If you choose the option to enter the number of copies yourself, you can also choose how the grid is filled: horizontal rows first or vertical columns first.

The total number of copies is indicated in gray in the bottom right corner of the dialog box.

Gaps

Horizontal Enter a value for the horizontal gaps between repeated products.

Vertical Enter a value for the vertical gaps between repeated products.

Create Grid

Create/Edit Grid feature allows you to create a grid or modify the existing one using the Create/Edit Grid commands. The Layout Editor numbers the frames in the grid according to the row/column based order and the last used numbering scheme.

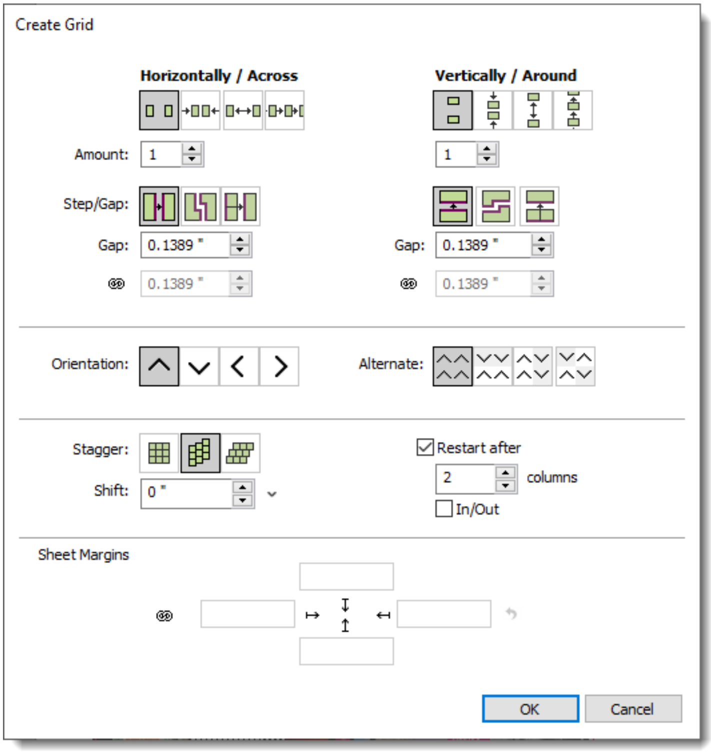
Select a product in the Product panel and open the Create Grid dialog box as follows:

- Choose Arrange > Create Grid

  OR

  Context-click the selected products and choose Arrange > Create Grid.

Create Grid Dialog Box



Crate/Modify Grid dialog box consists of the Row/Column layout, Orientation, Staggering and Sheet Margins options.

Row/Column Layout

Horizontally/Across Vertically/Around

Select the arrangement of the frames: Manual, Center, Distribute, or Repeat:

- Manual: Place the specified amount of frames with the specified gap/step
- Center: Place as many frames as possible and center
- Distribute: Place as many frames as possible and spread out
- Repeat: Place as many frames as possible for continuous printing

Amount

The number of frames in the first row or column.

Step/Gap

Select how to specify the distances between two adjacent frames: Gap between bounding boxes, Gap between contours or a Step size. When you change the mode, the Layout Editor displays the corresponding gap value(s).

- Gap between bounding boxes: Specify the minimum distance between the frames
- Gap between contours: Specify the minimum distance between the contours
- Step size: Specify the minimum step size

(Minimal) Step/Gap

The sizes of the odd and even gaps or steps.

NOTE: The caption changes depending on the selected fill mode and step/gap mode.

Link icon

The link icon keeps the odd/even values in synchronization. Click the link icon and re-enter values if you want to specify different values for the odd/even values.

Orientation

Orientation

Select the orientation of the first frame. The Up orientation is the current orientation of the selected frame, regardless of its actual rotation (or mirroring).

Alternate

Select whether to alternate the orientation for rows and/or columns:

- All the same: Keep the orientation the same in all rows and columns.
- Alternate rows: Rotate the even rows by 180 degrees.
- Alternate columns: Rotate the even columns by 180 degrees.

- Alternate both: Rotate all even rows and columns by 180 degrees. Stations that are in an even row and even column have the same orientation as the first.

Staggering

Stagger Select whether to stagger and in which direction: No Stagger, Stagger Vertically/Around, or Stagger Horizontally/Across.

Shift Specify the how far to shift the next row or column. You can use an absolute value or a value that is relative to the frame's size, either as a ratio (e.g., 1/3) or as a percentage (e.g., 25%). Shift is disabled, when staggering is off.

Restart after Select the check box to restart the staggering after a specified number of columns or row. It is disabled when staggering is off.

Restart value and unit Select the value to restart shifting the column/row. If you specify a value which is larger than the current number of frames, there will be no restart. The unit is displayed either in columns or rows, depending on the stagger direction.

In/Out Select whether to reset the shift and then start shifting again, or to shift back until the original position is reached.

Sheet Margins

This section displays the top, bottom, left and right sheet margins. The link icon keeps all the sheet margins in synchronization. Click the link icon and re-enter values if you want to specify different margins. When you close the link icon, the left margin value is copied into the other margins.

Placing Products with Auto-Layout

The Auto-Layout feature places and arranges all the selected products automatically on the sheet according to the chosen layout strategy. The products are placed on all the sheets of the job, including locked sheets.

CAUTION: Products already placed on sheets are cleared, even if the sheet is locked.

Select one or more products in the Product panel and open the Auto-Layout dialog box as follows:

- Choose Arrange > Auto Layout Products

  OR

  Context-click the selected products and choose Auto-Layout Products.

  NOTE: If no products are selected, Asecuri auto-layouts all the products in the Product panel.

Auto-Layout Dialog Box

Size

Media size By default, the size of the media as defined in the job set-up. Choose a size from the drop-down list or enter a custom size. You cannot change this if you have already placed products on a sheet.

Products

Copy Count Here you can set the number of copies you want to print of each placed product. Asecuri calculates the number of sheets that need to be printed to obtain the entered copy count. See “Sheet Inspector” on page 347.

Layout

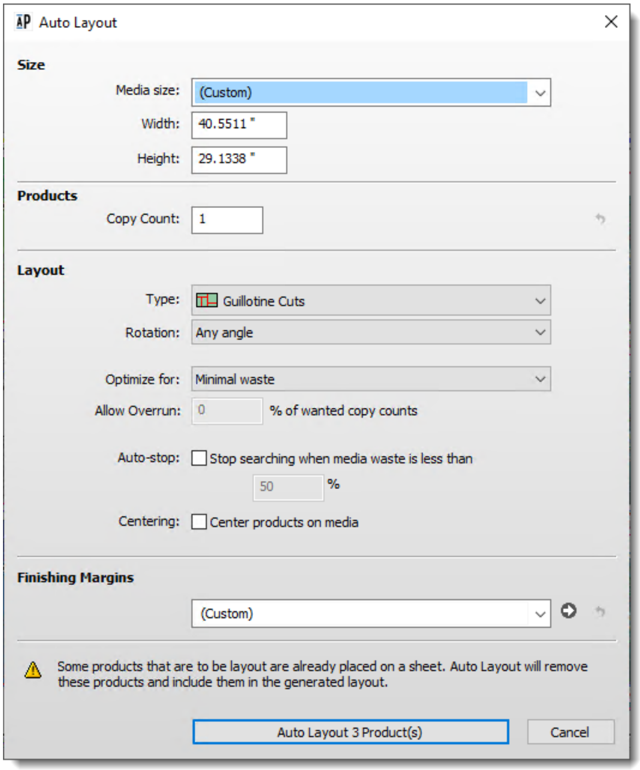
Here you specify the layout strategy.

Type Selecting a layout type shows options which are specific to each type.

True-Shape Nesting: to nest products more intricately based on the cutting path of each product.

Rectangular Nesting: to nest products in an intricate layout that may not be suitable for guillotine cutting.

Guillotine Cuts: to nest products in a sheet that is suitable for guillotine cutting.



Rotation It's possible that more products can be arranged on the sheet by allowing Asecuri to rotate them. Choose one of the following:

None: No rotation is allowed. Places the products in their original orientation.

90 degrees: Rotates the products sideways to the left (90 degrees).

180 degrees: Turns the products upside down.

270 degrees: Rotates the products sideways to the right (270 degrees).

90 or 270 degrees: Rotates the products sideways to the left (90 degrees) or to the right (270 degrees).

0 or 180 degrees: Keeps the products at their original orientation or turn them upside down.

Any angle: Allows to rotate the products when that yield a better fit. You cannot control in which direction they are rotated. This option rotates products to meet the grain/flute requirements. If rotation is needed, it rotates the product by 90 degrees counter-clockwise.

Optimize for Choose whether you want the fitting strategy to reduce waste or reduce the number of sheets:

Minimal waste: Reduces the waste (including the overrun, treating off-cut as non-waste).

Minimal sheets: Reduces the number of different sheets, at the expense of producing a little overrun.

Single sheet: Places all products on a single sheet, using the copy counts of the products as a ratio. This method may produce more waste or overrun.

Single sheet per layout: Places as many copies of a single product on a single sheet. As such, there will be as many sheets as there are products. This method may produce more waste or overrun.

Allow Overrun % Allows you to set a percentage for the number of extra copy counts to achieve the chosen fitting strategy.

Auto-stop Asecuri stops searching for the best arrangement once the specified waste level is obtained (default is 50%).

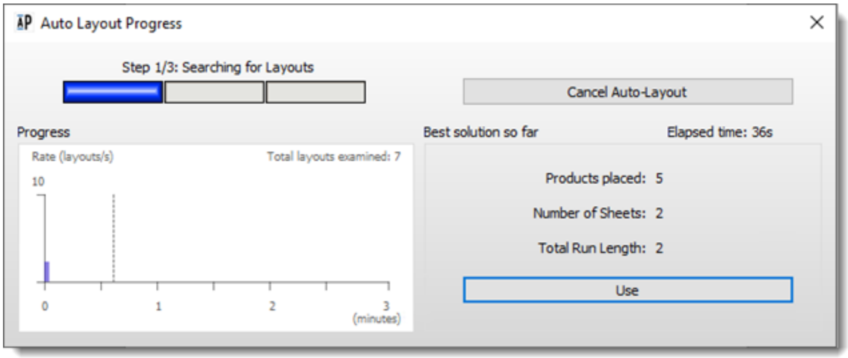
Centering Select to center the resulting product block on the media.

Finishing Margins

In this panel you can change the default finishing margins, i.e. the spacing between products and the edges of the sheet, as defined in the job set-up. See “Finishing” on page 333.

Auto-Layout Progress

This dialog box is displayed when you click the Auto-Layout button and it shows the progress of the auto-layout process. If the layout is complex and the system requires a lot of time to arrange the products, you can click the **Use** button to accept the **Best solution so far**. Otherwise, wait until the process is complete and the Auto-Layout Progress dialog box closes. The longer you wait, the better the proposed sheet.



Progress The diagram shows the total number of layouts found so far.

Best solution so far The proposed number of sheets and the total run length to accommodate the fitting strategy and your copy count as best as possible.

Elapsed time The elapsed processing time to search for possible layouts.

Auto-Layout Progress Steps

The complete Auto-Layout process can be represented in three different steps. Each step clearly marks if something is available that can be ‘used’ for the next step.

- **Step 1 - Searching for Layouts:** This step generates different combinations of products and examine whether that combination can be fitted onto a sheet, by taking into account the requested copy counts, adjusting some copy counts to allow more and better combinations. Every combination is examined. When a combination is successful, Auto-Layout shows it as a possible candidate, and continues searching for a better one. As soon as a candidate layout is found, Auto-Layout shows some information and enables the **Use** button. When you click it, or press the Enter key, process stops searching for alternative layouts and moves to the next step. If the candidate layout matches the criteria, Auto-Layout process immediately proceeds to the next step with that layout.

- **Step 2 - Optimizing Layouts:** Once a layout has been found and accepted, Auto-Layout process tries to compact the layout to provide more off-cut. If the current solution is acceptable, Auto-Layout automatically proceeds to the next step. If you consider the gain to be good enough, you can then click the **Stop Optimizing** button, or press the Enter key.

- **Step 3 - Finalizing:** This last step checks and adjusts the clipping paths between the products that have overlapping bleed.

Placing Products with Auto-Fill

The Auto-Fill feature places the selected products (or all products if there is no selection) in the layout that is on the current sheet.

CAUTION: Products already placed on sheets are cleared, even if the sheet is locked.

Select one or more products in the Product panel and open the Auto-Fill dialog box as follows:

- Choose Arrange > Auto Fill Products

  OR

  Context-click the selected products and choose Auto Fill Products.

NOTE: Auto-fill can only be used on a rectangular grid layout with unnamed, identical frames.

When the sheet has one or more placed products that are part of the selection, they will be removed from the sheet when you apply the Auto-Fill. The sheet will not be changed when you cancel the Auto-Fill.

Products that are part of the selection and that are already placed on other sheets will be removed from those sheets in the same way Auto-Layout removes them. Those sheets will not be changed when you cancel the Auto-Fill.

When the sheet has one or more placed products that are not part of the selection, you have to remove them, or to keep the current sheet and make new sheets before you apply the Auto-Fill.

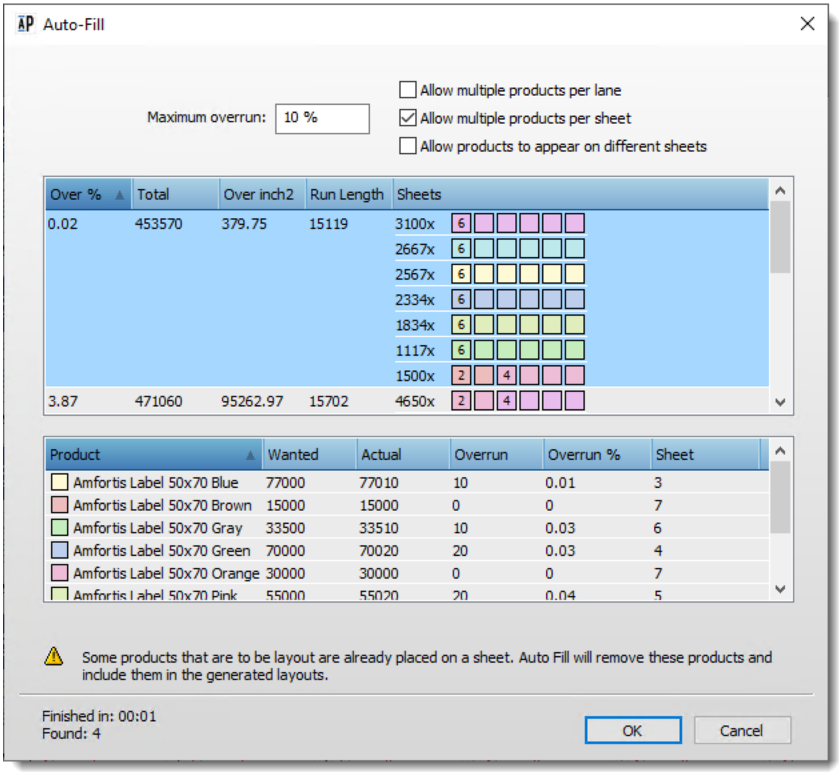
Auto-Fill Dialog Box

Auto-fill starts searching for solutions as soon as the dialog opens, using the options as they were set during the previous session.

The Solutions table shows the solutions that are found. It updates dynamically while the search continues. The search stops when there are no more combinations to try or when you apply a solution. The search restarts when you change the options. This clears the found solutions.

You can sort the solutions by clicking the columns and select a solution to show the product break-down in the Products table. The selected solution remains selected, even when the table gets updated.

Click the **OK** button to apply the selected solution. Apogee applies the selected solution using the current sheet and as many duplicates of it as needed. This includes the station numbers and marks that are on the sheet. In a Wide Format job, the extra sheets are placed on a Print Layout as instructed by the Layout Defaults inspector.



Max overrun The allowed overrun, both per product and for the overall count, expressed in %. Default value is from the last session, 10% on the run.

Allow multiple products per lane Defines whether each lane can have different products or not. Basically, this is the switch between sheet-printing and label-printing. This option is only enabled when **Allow multiple products per sheet** is on.

Allow multiple products per sheet Defines whether a single sheet can have multiple products or not. Default value is from the last session, allow on first run.

Allow products to appear on different sheets Defines whether a product may be placed on different sheets. This option is only enabled, when **Allow multiple products per sheet** is on. Default value is from the last session, allow on first run.

Fix Bleed Overlaps

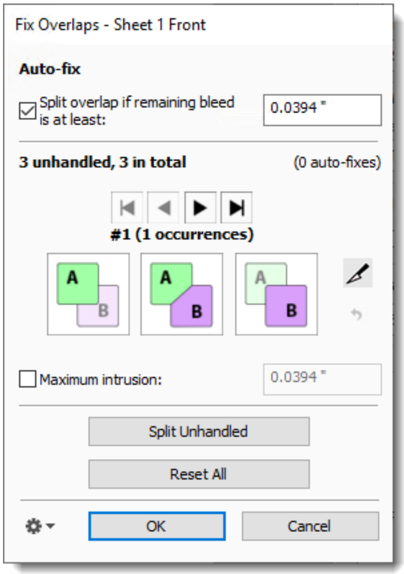
The Layout Editor by default splits the bleed area between products in the middle if the products are located too close to each other. In some cases you may want to override this behavior, e.g. the bleed of product A needs to be printed inside the flap of product B. This is done with the Fix Overlaps feature.

- Choose Sheet > Fix Bleed Overlaps to open the Fix Overlaps dialog

  OR

  Context-click the selected sheet and choose Fix Bleed Overlaps.

Fix Overlaps Dialog Box



The dialog shows the total number of times products overlap and the number of occurrences for each product overlap. You can cycle through the overlaps and choose whether A must overlap B, split A and B (no overlap), or B overlaps A. Choosing one of these options will fix all the occurrences of the overlap, and the wizard takes you to the next overlap. You can cut up a too large bleed zone into smaller ones by using the Slice tool. Click the **Split Unhandled** button, if you want to apply the second option (no overlap) to all the overlaps. Click the **Reset** button to start all over again. Open the cogwheel menu to continue fixing overlaps on other sheets (other side, next sheet, previous sheet).

Auto-fix

Auto-fix options specify how to split the overlaps, when the remaining bleed after fixing is at least the specified size. This allows the Layout Editor to handle most of the overlaps automatically.

Split overlap if remaining bleed is at least Select to split the overlap in two equal parts, if the remaining amount of bleed is at least equal to the specified minimum bleed.

Minimum bleed The minimum amount of bleed that is acceptable. The value must be smaller than or equal zero. This value does not affect manual splits. The minimum bleed is used to eliminate a number of overlaps to be reviewed.

Fixing the Current Overlap

This section allows you to handle the current overlap. The header shows the number of unhandled, total, and auto-fixed overlaps.

Navigation buttons Navigate between the overlaps. Using navigation buttons, you can select the first, previous, next or the last overlap.

Current overlap The sequence number of the current overlap and the number of identical overlaps on the sheet.

NOTE: The sequence numbering ignores the fixes that are made by auto-fix, if the Hide auto-fixes is set.

Method Define how to fix the current overlap. When you are on an overlap that is already handled, the button that corresponds with the selected action is selected. If the fix was made automatically, the label appears below the split-button.

- A over B: Adjust the bleed mask of frame B.
- Split: Adjust both masks.
- B over A: Adjust the bleed mask of frame A.
- Slice tool: Activate the Slice tool.

Slice tool You can slice an overlap that is too large to be handled with a single fix into two or more smaller ones. To slice a bleed overlap zone, navigate to the zone that needs cutting, activate the Slice tool, move to the location where you want the zone to be split and click at the location you want to slice the overlap zone. You can revert a sliced overlap by using the Revert icon.

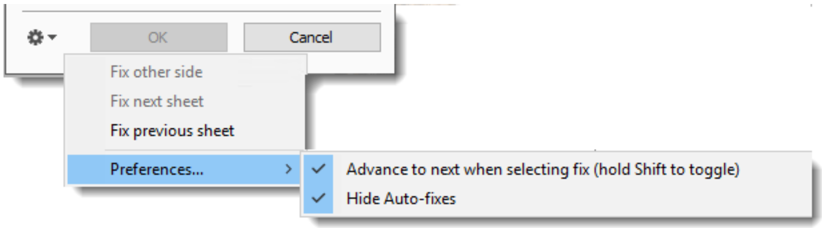
Maximum intrusion When set, allow the overlapping station to bleed into the station that is being overlapped, but not more than the specified value.

Split Unhandled Splits all unhandled overlaps. It is disabled, if all overlaps are handled.

Reset All Restores the working bleed mask to the raw bleed mask, e.g., it brings back all possible overlaps.

Cogwheel menu

You can open the cogwheel menu to continue fixing overlaps.



Fix other side The Layout Editor applies the selected fixes on the current side and moves to the other side of the sheet, option is disabled for a single-sided sheet.

Fix next sheet The Layout Editor applies the selected fixes on the current size and moves to the front of the next sheet, option is disabled when you are at the last sheet.

Fix previous sheet The Layout Editor applies the selected fixes on the current size and moves to the front of the previous sheet, option is disabled when you are at the first sheet.

Preferences

- Advance to next when selecting fix: When set, advance to the next overlap when you fix the current one. Otherwise, stay at the current fix.
- Hide Auto-fixes: When set, the overlaps that where fixed automatically are not included in the navigation. You can uncheck this option, if you want to review them.

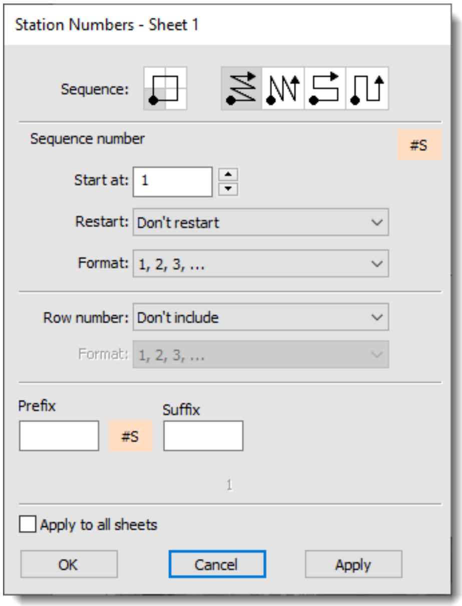
Place Station Numbers

Station numbers are sequence numbers that identify the stations (frames) on a sheet. They can be used to identify, after cutting, where a product was originally positioned on a sheet. The numbers appear in station number marks on the content (see “Station Number Mark Details” on page 648). Station numbers can be imported with a CAD file, defined in a template or set manually in the Product Editor (see “Mark Sets Inspector and Mark Inspector” on page 388).

Station Numbers Dialog Box

This dialog allows you to specify a sequence for numbering stations and what the number consists of.

- Go to the sheet you want to number and choose Sheet > Station Numbers to open the Station Numbers dialog.



Sequence Click in the first icon to specify in which corner of the sheet the sequence will start. The other four icons will change accordingly. Click one of these four icons to specify the sequence horizontally and vertically and whether the numbering starts at the beginning of a row or column.

Start at Set the sequence number to be used for the first station and for the first station of each group, when you select to restart the numbering per row/column or product.

Restart Select one of the options to restart the sequence numbering:

- Don't restart: Do not restart the numbering. All stations will have continuous sequence numbers.
- Every (main direction): Restart the numbering per row or column, depending on the main direction (row/column) of the traversal sequence.
- Every product: Restart the numbering per product.

Format Select whether to print the sequence numbers as numbers or as letters (lower or uppercase).

Row/Column/Product number Select one of the following options to form the station number by combining the sequence number and the group number (row/column/product):

- Don't include: Do not include the row/column/product number.

  (prefix) (sequence-nr) (suffix)

- Before sequence: Print the row/column/product number before the sequence number.

  (prefix) (group-nr) (betweenix) (sequence-nr) (suffix)

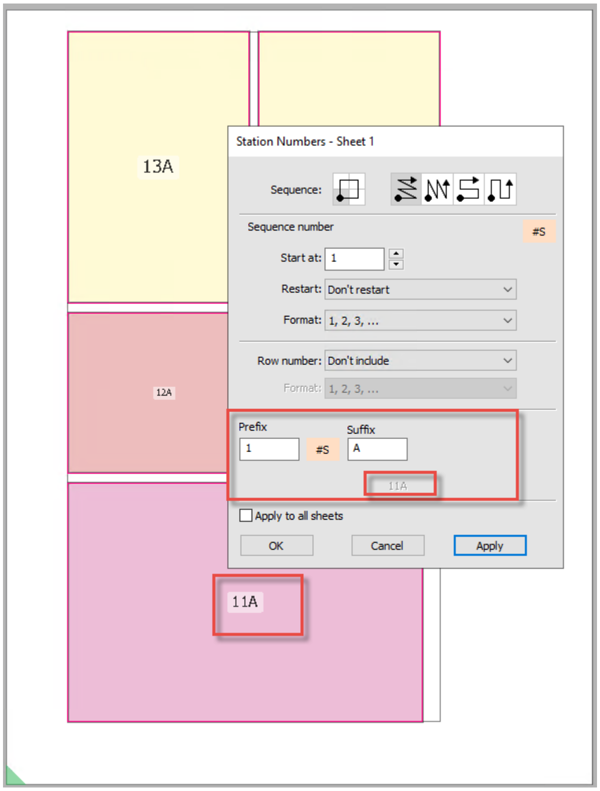
- After sequence: Print the row/column/product number after the sequence number.

  (prefix) (sequence-nr) (betweenix) (group-nr) (suffix)

Format Select whether to print the group (row/column/product) numbers as numbers or as letters (lower or uppercase).

Template Enter the Prefix and Suffix text. Default value is both prefix and suffix fields are empty. The **#S** and **#R**/**#C**/**#P** show the position of the sequence and group numbers.

An example of the station number of the first station in the sequence appears below the template field, using the specified formatting and template. Click the **Apply** button, to see how the rest of the frames will be numbered and apply the changes to the sheet.



Apply to all sheets Select this check box to apply the same station numbering to all sheets in the job.

View Options Palette

The View Options palette is used to show and hide the various components on the layout. The list of available options you see in the palette depends on the layout mode you are working in – Sheet Layout or Print Layout.

NOTE: Hiding content or marks with the View Options palette does not mean they will not be printed.

The following elements can be shown/hidden:

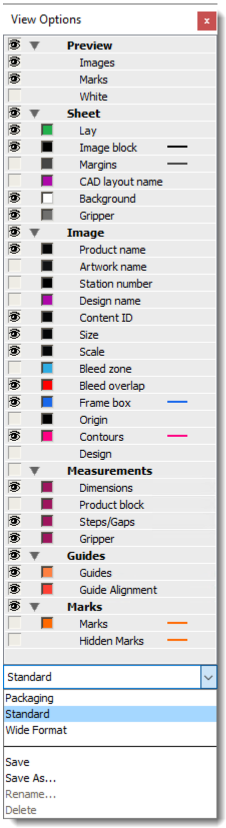
- Preview
  - Images: the content of the products placed on the sheet
  - Marks: the cutting marks selected for finishing, or other marks

- White: the white layer of an image (or generated white)
- Varnish: the varnish layer of an image (or generated primer)

- Sheet
  - Lay: triangle icon indicating the lay of the sheet
  - Image block: the bounding box enclosing all the products
  - Margins: the margin around the sheet as set in the Finishing inspector
  - CAD Layout name: the name of the CAD layout file or of the Sheet layout template
  - Background: the area of the sheet where no products are placed
  - Ink zone: the area on the print layout where printing will effectively occur, similar to the product bleed zone (only for Print Layout mode)
  - Gripper: the gripper zone of the selected Generic Press (hidden for Wide Format jobs)
- Image
  - Product name: the name of the product
  - Artwork name: the base name of the artwork on the currently viewed side, as shown in the Source list of the Product Editor.
  - Station number: the Station number of the frame
  - Design name: the name of the design as shown in the Source list of the Product Editor.
  - Tile number: on a tile, the tile number, row and column numbers
  - Content-ID: the content-ID of the frame, if set.
  - Size: the size of the frame on the sheet as (w) x (h) (units), with units being the same units as those in the Position bar.
  - Scale: the scale of the placed product, relative to its original size, as (hscale) x (vscale) %.

- Bleed zone: the bleed path the Layout Editor always draws the actual bleed content)
- Bleed overlap: the overlaps of the working bleed path
- Frame Box: the bounding box of the frame (the frame box is always shown when the frame is empty, regardless of the state of this option).
- Origin: the lower-left corner of the frame
- Contours: the contour that is used for clipping. When an image has no contour-defining Operations assigned or when its **Clip to contour** option is off, the contour follows the frame.
- Design: the paths and texts that associated with Operations that are present on the sheet and its products, using the appearance as defined in the Line Appearances set that is selected in the Client preferences.

- Printer (only for Print Layout mode)
  - Lay: the lay of the print layout that indicates the leading edge of the layout and the home position of the printer shuttle.
  - Background: representation of the surface of the printer bed or belt and more specifically the area where no printer sheets are placed
- Measurements
  - Dimensions: the dimensions of the printer's sheet or frames
  - Product block: the dimensions of the product block and the distances to the sheet edges
  - Steps/Gaps: the distance between the frames of two neighboring products, per pair of elements.
  - Gripper: the size of the gripper (only for Offset jobs)



- Guides
  - Guides: the guides on the sheet.
  - Guide Alignment: how closely the frames align to the guides
- Marks
  - Marks: the bounding box of the marks
  - Hidden Marks: marks that will not be printed due to conflicts; displayed in a red, hatched box

In the View Options drop-down list you can select, create, rename or delete preference sets for the View Options.

▷ To show/hide content, rule-ups and marks

1 Click the Show/hide View Options button in the toolbar or choose Window > View Options to show the View Options palette.

2 Click the individual or group eye icons to show or hide the various rule-ups and marks.

3 Click the colored boxes to open a color editor where you can change the color of the rule-ups and measurements.

4 Click in the drop-down list at the bottom of the View Options palette to choose, create, rename or delete preference sets for the View Options.

Marks Palette

The Marks palette is used to place marks on a product or sheet interactively. In other words, these marks do not depend on the conditions of a Mark Set and they can be placed relative to any possible object on the product or sheet.

The palette contains the following marks categories:

- Image: e.g. Text, Line, Grommet, Crop
- Sheet: e.g. Text, Line, File, Cut, Registration, File
- Press Sheet Marks: e.g. Cut-off, File, Density, Color Bar, Ink-Eater

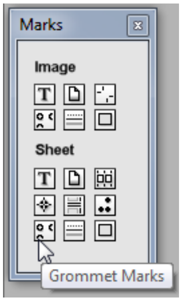
The various mark types in these categories are managed in the Mark Engraver Resource of the Impose Task Processor. Refer to “Mark Engraver” on page 612 and “Mark Types” on page 619 for more information about the different types of marks and their settings.

CAUTION: Marks placed interactively may be positioned at unexpected locations and on other sheets than the sheet you are working on.

▷ To place a mark interactively

1 Click the Marks button in the Toolbar or choose Window > Show Marks Palette to show the Marks palette.

The Marks palette is displayed.



2 Hover over the icons to see what kind of marks are available.

3 Drag the required mark onto the Press Sheet and release the mouse button at the location where you want to place the mark.

NOTE: It is not possible to move the mark once you have dragged it to a certain position.

If you select the Mark Inspector, you can see the default settings for the selected mark. See “Mark Inspector” on page 347.

4 Change the settings as required.

NOTE: Double-clicking a mark in the Marks palette also places the mark on the Press Sheet.

Layout Toolbar

Some of the tools described here may only be available in the Product Editor. You can also use shortcuts to activate the tools and these shortcuts are case-insensitive and some only require a single key. For example, type **Z** or **z** to activate the Zoom tool and then type **A** or **a** to return to the Selection tool.

Selection tool: To select a component or area and display its properties. This is the default tool.

Single Instance Selection tool: To select a single instance of marks which are placed at various locations, or part of a compound mark. In the Paths inspector: selects a path and its anchor points.

Pan tool: To pan layouts in the Layout Editor.

Zoom tool: To zoom into a specific area of a layout.

Frame tool: To draw empty frames on a sheet.

Measurements tool. Use this tool to make measurements on the Press Sheet.

Clear Measurements tool (only activated if the sheet has measurements). Click to remove all measurements displayed on the Press Sheet.

View Options palette button: Shows/hides the View Options palette.

Marks palette button: Shows/hides the Marks palette.

(Licensed feature) Presets: To open the Presets dialog box.

Crop image: Activates the crop mode to crop an image (Image inspector in the Product Editor).

Split tool: Activates the Split tool to split an image into tiles (Tiling inspector in the Product Editor).

Pen tool: Activates the Pen for drawing free-form paths on an image and adding/deleting points of existing paths (Paths inspector in the Product Editor).

Ellipse Path tool: Activates the Ellipse Path tool to draw ellipse and circle paths on an image (Paths inspector in the Product Editor).

Rectangle Path tool: Activates the Rectangle Path tool to draw rectangle paths on an image (Paths inspector in the Product Editor).

Zoom slider with Zoom to fit and Zoom to maximum buttons, and drop-down list with zoom presets

Snag List

The Snag List shows conflicts (errors and warnings) relating to the products in the Product panel or the placement of products on the sheet. These conflicts should be checked before submitting a job.

- The Snag List is opened by clicking a yellow warning icon or a red error icon

  The Snag List contains the following information:

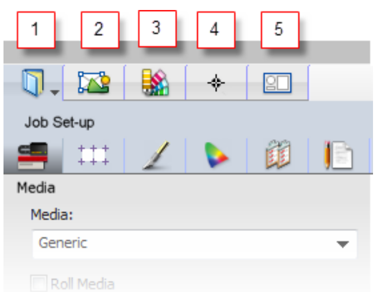
  - Left column - top pane: summary of all conflicts.
  - Left column - bottom pane: conflict categories sorted by severity with errors at the top and OK at the bottom.
  - Right column: conflicts of the selected category; some conflicts can be clicked to open a detailed report.

Inspectors

NOTE: Some of the inspectors may not be visible with your license.

NOTE: Most of the inspectors are available for both the Sheet Layout mode as well as the Print Layout mode, except where indicated otherwise.

The panel on the right of the Layout Editor consists of a number of tabs and sub-tabs which are referred to as inspectors.



1 Job Set-Up Inspector
2 Frame/Product Inspector
3 Colors Inspector
4 Mark Sets Inspector (Sheet Layout mode only)
5 Sheet Inspector/Print Layout Inspector

Job Set-Up Inspector

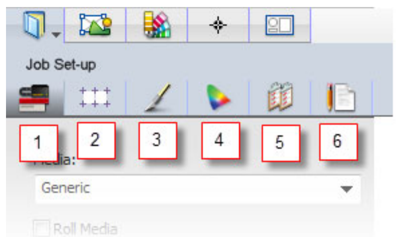
In the Job Set-Up tab, you define the job settings for all the sheets of a job.

- Click the open book icon to display the Job Set-Up.

This tab consists of the following inspector panels:

- Printing Set-Up
- Layout Sheets
- Finishing
- Color Management

- Preflight
- Job Identification



1 Printing Set-Up
2 Layout Sheets
3 Finishing
4 Color Management
5 Preflight
6 Job Identification

Printing Set-Up

In the Job Set-Up inspector, you choose the media, printing quality and printing device for your job.

Printer

In this panel you select the printing device.

Device A list of the printing devices which are available in your printing environment. The device you used for the last submitted job is displayed when you create a new job.

Media

In the Media panel you choose the media you want to print the job on and set its size.

Media This drop-down list displays all the available media, i.e. media for which Calibrated Printing Modes exist. The media you used for the last submitted job is displayed when you create a new job.

Print on roll Select this check box if you want to use roll media. This disables the Height setting for the Size of the media as this is defined by the printing device, and filters the sizes you see in the Size drop-down list. When you add products to a layout, the height increases accordingly.

Size A drop-down list with all available sheet sizes. The last item in the list, Manage Sheet Sizes, is a shortcut to the Sheet Sizes resource. The width and height (W x H) of the sheet, and page orientation (portrait or landscape) are displayed under the drop-down list. You can also edit these fields to create a custom sheet size and save this custom size by choosing Save As in the drop-down list. When you change the size, the preview in the Layout Editor zooms the new size to fit the available preview area. See “Sheet Sizes” on page 418.

NOTE: Only one size can be set for the different sheets of a job.

NOTE: Choose a size which is smaller than the maximum size for the printing device to combine multiple sheets on a single print layout.

Thickness The thickness of the media. The default unit is micron; context-click in the box to change the unit: micron, mil, mm, inch.

Grain/Flute Choose the grain/flute direction of the current sheet; Short, Long, From size, or None.

Quality

Select a quality level to suit the visual quality you expect from the printed result, depending on the selected printer (e.g. Standard or High Quality). Quality levels have corresponding Calibrated Printing Modes. **Workstyle**

Select a workstyle for the selected printer:

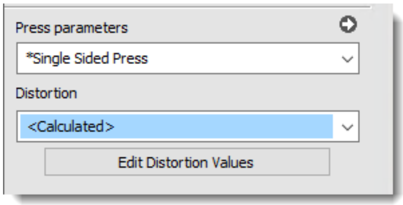
- Sheetwise: Sets the default double-sided workstyle to Sheetwise.
- Perfecting: Sets the default double-sided workstyle to Perfecting.
- Turn: Sets the default double-sided workstyle to Turn.
- Tumble: Sets the default double-sided workstyle to Tumble.

Side lay Select the side-lay that is used to align the sheet to the printer’s side-lay:

- Left (Drive side): Printer lay is on the left.
- Right (Operator side): Printer lay is on the right.

Press Parameters

The Press Parameters section is specially used for Security type of Offset jobs. Select a press parameter set the drop down box. The gray arrow button is a shortcut to the Press parameters resource where you can modify the options specifically for the current job.



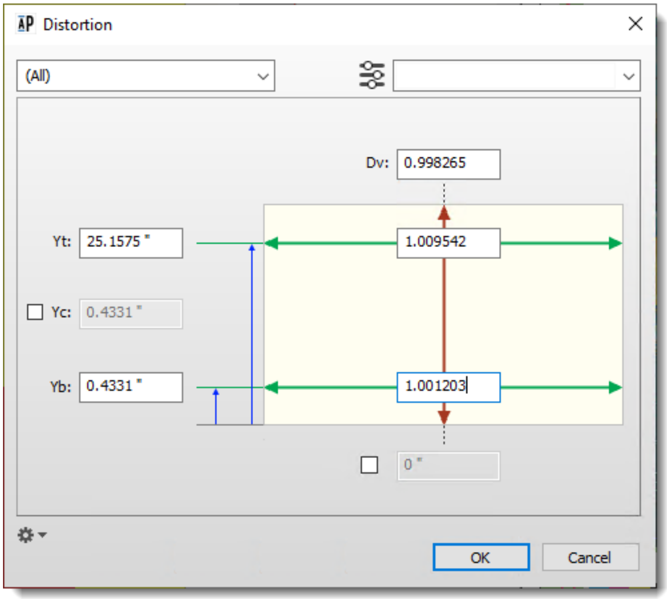
Distortion Select one of the following options:

- None: Do not compensate for web growth.
- Calculated: Compensate using the distortion values as specified in the Distortion Values editor.

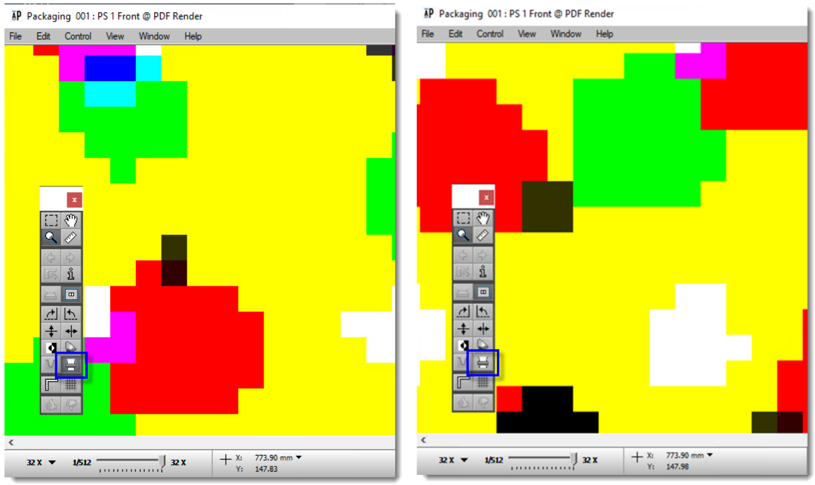
NOTE: This option requires a special license.

Edit Distortion Values This button gives access to the Distortion Values editor. It is only displayed, when the Distortion is set to *Calculated*.

The distortion parameters specify the relative change of the sheet's width near the bottom and near the top of the sheet, and the relative change of the sheet's height. The relative change is expressed as a factor, i.e., 1 is no change. Enter the distortion values (up to 6 significant decimals) you require and click **OK**.



To view the distortion, you can toggle between the distorted and not-distorted views by clicking the Distortion (Web Growth) tool in the Tools Palette (Raster Preview). It is recommended to zoom in higher resolutions.



Related topics:

- Distortion on page 99

Application

In the Application panel you choose how you want to handle printing with special colors: white ink, varnish and primer. The data for printing the special color can be generated by the printing device (on Printer) or by the system (Asecuri). If you let Asecuri do this, you can also set the opacity or have the ink choked or spread.

White

Click the triangle to expand the panel. Select the check box if you are printing with white and choose the method:

- Fill (on Printer): The printing device fills the area of the product block (with bleed) with a solid layer of the special color.
- Mask (on Printer): The printing device prints dots under the color dots; non-ink zones in the product receive no ink. The density of the ink depends on the density of the color dots.
- Fill Entire Image (Asecuri): Asecuri fills the area of the product with the special color at a constant opacity. You can select the opacity.

- Solid Pixel Mask (Asecuri): Asecuri prints with a constant opacity under the dots inside the bleed path (or cut path/frame) of the product. Only areas with data are printed.

- Solid Image Mask (Asecuri): Asecuri prints with a constant opacity under the product which is defined by scanning for color dots at the edges of the bleed path (or cut path/frame).

- Variable Pixel Mask (Asecuri): Asecuri prints within the bleed path (or cut path/frame). The density of the mask depends on the lightness of the product and the given opacity. This option disables the Choke/Spread and Opacity options.

- From Image (Asecuri): The content of the product (usually a spot color) determines where to print and the density. The Opacity value scales the opacity values in the content file.

Opacity The opacity of the special color. An opacity of 100% corresponds with the White density set in the CPM.

Apply Choke/Spread Choke and spread are deactivated by default.

Choke/Spread/Amount To change the direction and amount of choke or spread.

If one of the white printing modes is selected, you can also set how the white ink is applied:

- Pre-white: White is to be printed underneath the product. You first print the white on the media, then the product on top of the white. The most common application is to flood a non-white medium so the product can be printed on a white background.

- Post-white: White is to be printed on top of the product. You first print the product on the media, then print the white on top of the product. The most common application is to print a product on clear (transparent) material, where the white serves as the white background.

- Sandwich white: White is to be printed between a first and second print of the same product.

Spot color names can be mapped to white ink in the Colors inspector. See “Colors Inspector” on page 344.

Print primer Click the triangle to expand the panel. This panel is only visible if the printing device has a primer ink in its inkset. The settings are similar to the settings for white ink. Primer is printed before other layers.

Print varnish Click the triangle to expand the panel. This panel is only visible if the printing device has a varnish ink in its inkset. The settings are similar to the settings for white ink. Varnish is printed after other layers.

Calibrated Printing Mode

A list of calibrated printing modes (CPM) filtered by printing device, so you only see the modes which can be used with the specified device. Selecting a mode that has a different quality setting than what you specified in the Quality list, changes the Quality setting accordingly.

The following warnings in red are possible for this option:

- [Multiple]: multiple modes are suitable for the selected combination of printing device and quality, and the most suitable modes are displayed at the top of the list. Choose a mode.
- [No suitable CPMs]: no suitable modes exist for the selected combination of printing device and quality. Choose a mode and the quality and media will change accordingly.

Printer Parameters button This button is displayed when a printer and CPM are selected. Click the button to open the Printer Parameters for the selected printer:

- Print Mode Parameters
- Media Parameters

You can set and change the parameters specifically for the current job.

The gray asterisk icon next to the button turns red if the printer operator changed the printer settings on the machine. You can clear these changes made by the operator by clicking **Clear All On-Printer Changed Values**.

NOTE: Only for printers that support Asecuri printer parameters.

Media Deformation

Click the triangle to expand the panel. Select this check box to compensate for the stretching or shrinking of the media during printing and finishing. You must enter the percentage of stretching or shrinking and the system scales the product to compensate.

X (Shuttle) Enter the percentage that the media stretches/shrinks in the shuttle direction.

Y (Feed) Enter the percentage that the media stretches/shrinks in the feed direction.

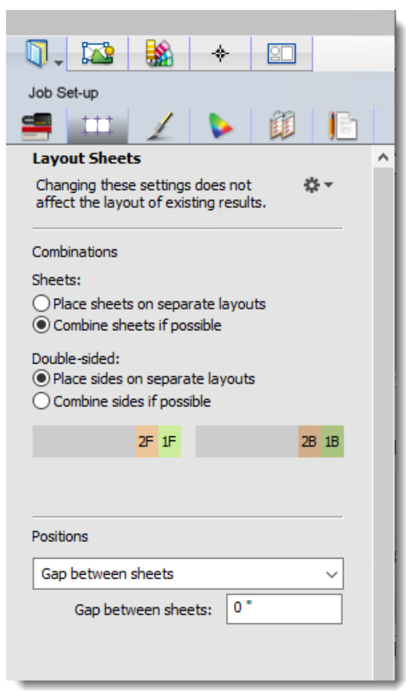
Layout Sheets

In this inspector you can modify the default placement of sheets (also referred to as ganging) on the print layout.

Any changes you make in this inspector do not affect the arrangement of sheets that are already ganged on the print layout. However, you can apply new settings to placed sheets with the rearrange or remake commands.

It is possible to specify different setting while working on the same print layout, and these new settings apply for subsequent sheets you place on the print layout.

NOTE: The Layout sheets section is only available for wide-format jobs and wide-format hot tickets.



Combinations

Combinations controls how the ganging algorithm combines sheets on a Print Layout.

Sheets This option defines whether different Sheet Layout can be placed on the same Print Layout (pair) or not.

- Place sheets on separate layouts: Place different Sheet Layouts on separate Print Layout (pairs).
- Combine sheets if possible: Allow to place different Sheet Layouts on the same Print Layout (pair).

NOTE: Single- and double-sided Sheet Layouts are never combined.

Sides This option defines whether flats of the same side (front or back) can be placed on the same Print Layout or not.

- Place sides on separate layouts: Place the front and back sides on the front- and back Print Layouts of a Print Layout-pair. The front sides are placed on the front Print Layout and the back sides are placed on the back Print Layout.
- Combine sides if possible: Combine front and back flats on the front Print Layout.

NOTE: This option is hidden, when double-sided printing is not allowed.

The default value is to place sheets and sides on separate Print Layouts. This corresponds with the Single sheet per layout in previous versions.

Positions

The Positioning selects the method that is used to define the stops, i.e., the points that can be used to align the sheets with.

Align the nearest stop

Position the sheets against a repeating set of stops, keeping a minimum distance between them, starting at the home position.

- Stops every: The distance between every stop. A stop can be a registration pin or an easy to set/measure marker on the printer’s ruler. The first stop is the printer’s lay itself.
- Minimum gap width: The distance to keep between adjacent sheets.

Gap between sheets

Position each sheet at a fixed distance from the previous one, starting at the home position. This is the default positioning method when combining items.

- Gap between sheets: The distance to keep between adjacent sheets.

▷ Rearrange and remake the print layout

The following commands are available on the cogwheel menu and Print Layout file menu:

- ☐ Rearrange Sheets: Applies the current settings in the inspector to the current layout.

- Rearrange All Sheets in Job: Applies the current settings in the inspector to all layouts.

- Remake All Print Layouts: Deletes all layouts and remakes the layouts according to the inspector settings.

Finishing

In this inspector you can choose your cutting device, set margins and generate a cutting file for a digital cutting/routing device if required.

Cutter

The drop-down list includes the cutting device brands (Fotoba, Zünd, etc.) installed with your resources. Depending on the type of cutter, Asecuri either draws the necessary cutting marks on the sheet, creates a cutting file with the cutting path, or both.

Finishing Margins

Margins are indicated with magenta snap guides when you drag a product next to other products.

- Click the gray arrow button to open the Finishing Margins dialog box and set a custom value for margins on all sides or selected sides of all the products, or choose a preset from the drop-down list. The presets are created in the Finishing Hub.

NOTE: Changing the margins value does not reposition products already placed on the sheet.

Cutting Files

Mirror cutting files

Select to mirror the entire layout in the cutting file, for example if the media will be cut on the back side of the sheet.

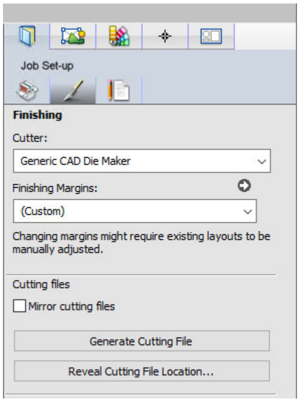
Generate Cutting File (button)

Click this button to generate a cutting file which is used to route certain cutting devices. A 1-page PDF document is created for each sheet and contains registration marks and cutting lines or a cutting path, but not the actual content.

The cutting files are saved immediately in the FinishingRoot folder in your system directory – before you actually submit the job. When you submit the job, you can choose to send the cutting file to the cutter.

Subsequent cutting files that you may create for a job are saved with an incremental suffix.

This button also allows you to generate and export a CAD file for a Packaging job which was not created with a CF2/DXF file, by selecting the **Generic CAD Die Maker** option as a cutter type.



NOTE: A cutting file is only generated for devices that require a separate file for registration and routing. For example, the Fotoba cutting lines are printed on the sheet so a cutting file with extra cutting marks is not necessary.

Reveal Cutting File Location (button) Click this button to display the directory in which the cutting file is created.

The buttons are disabled if no cutting device is selected.

Bleed/Mask

Amount The bleed, i.e. content that goes beyond the trim size, is the same for all products as inherited from the job ticket. You can set a different bleed that you want to render for the selected product here. Leave the link icon closed to set the same bleed on all sides or open the link icon if you want to enter specific values for Left, Right, Top or Bottom.

Content From the drop-list you can specify when bleed is created by the system or taken from the bleed area available in the image file. These options are mainly relevant for images which have a bleed area present in the image file. Only the first and the last options are relevant if the image has no bleed area.

- None: Sets the maximum bleed to 0 even if bleed is provided in the image file. The bleed box coincides with the canvas extension box or the product size.

- From image, fixed size: The system uses the bleed in the image file for the maximum bleed you specified or only what is available if the bleed in the image is less than the specified bleed.

- From image, create if needed: The system uses the bleed in the image file if it is equal or greater than the specified maximum bleed; if the image bleed is less than the specified bleed, the system creates the bleed and does not use the image bleed.

- Always create bleed: The system creates the maximum bleed, effectively replacing any bleed in the image file.

Default Bleed Overlap Handling If products are placed too close to each other on the sheet, the available area for bleed is distributed (split) evenly between the products. This is the default behavior with the **Automatically split bleed overlaps** check-box enabled.

NOTE: This default bleed overlap handling can be overridden whereby you choose which product will have its bleed run over the other product. See “Fix Bleed Overlaps” on page 310.

Color Management

Select one of the color management options to control how your products are rendered. This option is especially important for controlling the output of different kinds of products.

Full gamut Converts all input color values directly to the color space of the printing device, skipping the output intent of the product.

Simulate Allows you to choose a standard output intent or use the output intent of the product. The Simulation drop-down list displays the available output intents.

Decide per document This mode uses *Full gamut* when it’s safe to do so, and switches to *Simulate* when it’s not safe.

No CMS No color management is applied.

♦ Click the pencil icon to open the Input Tagging dialog box and edit the action list.

In this dialog box you can control how input color values are converted to produce the actual output with the default action list. If you change any of the settings, the action list is indicated with an asterisk in the inspector. Click the Revert arrow icon if you want to restore the values to those of the action list.

Preflight

Check product resolution Select this check box to check the resolution of placed products, taking into account the scaling and the expected quality. Warnings will be displayed when necessary.

Preflight Choose a Preflight parameter set from the drop-down list to display Action lists and select/clear the action check boxes as required. Type in the search box to filter the Action List. Choose Manage Preflight Parameter Sets to edit or create parameter sets. See “Apogee Preflight Action Lists” on page 573. Click the arrow icon next to an action list to edit the action list for the current job. An asterisk indicates that the action list has been modified.

Job Identification

Name The order name identifies your job in the Job List. If you do not enter a name here, the job appears in the Job List as *Untitled* if no products have been uploaded for the job, or the name of the first file in your products list is re-used for the job name.

Order number An order number is optional but can be useful to group jobs that are assigned the same number in the Job List.

Remarks Enter any special comments that apply to this job.

Recurring job Select this check box to set the job is a recurring job to prevent deleting automatically.

PrintSphere

Select the **Allow uploading via** PrintSphere check box to enable remote users to upload files for a job via the PrintSphere service. If you choose a known company in the Customer panel, the Assign button is enabled so you can designate collaborators. Alternatively, you can specify occasional *guest* users in the Job List by context-clicking a job and choosing **Invite** PrintSphere **Uploader**.

Print Center

This option is only visible if you have the relevant license to work with multiple Print Centers. These are printing companies or other service providers belonging to the same organization and that can use Asecuri independently from each other. Choose a Print Center from the drop-down list to manage the Customers, Customer's staff and Printer's staff for that particular Print Center.

Customer

In this panel you can provide information about the customer and the collaborators who will work on the job at hand (optional). You can select a known company from the Company drop-down list. A known company is a customer which has been defined with all its users and their contact details in the WebApproval (ProductionCenter) or PrintSphere applications. Your own company and staff are also set up in these applications. See the online help of these applications for more information. If you do not select a known company and the Company field is blank, you can fill in the contact details (name, email and phone no.) of the customer for this job.

Printer's Staff and Customer's Staff

After selecting a known company, you are presented a list of Customer's Staff and Printer's Staff that you can designate to collaborate on this job. If you did not select a company, you only see your own staff. Each collaborator in the Customer's Staff and Printer's Staff lists can have one or more roles which are activated by clicking the icons in the Roles column. The roles are *Approver, Uploader*, and *Viewer.* Select the **Uploader can place files** check box if you want to allow Uploaders to place files in the run list of a WebApproval job. You can change the role of the default collaborators by clicking these icons.

In addition, collaborators in the Printer's Staff list can be a *candidate Customer Service Representative (CSR)* or a *preferred CSR*. Clicking the candidate CSR icon changes the role of the collaborator to preferred CSR and vice versa. More than one preferred CSR can be assigned to a job.

Add Guest

Use this button to add guests to collaborate on this job. Enter the person's e-mail and select the **User Roles: Uploader** check-box if you want this person to upload files for the job. Click the Add Guest button to create the guest who is subsequently added to the list of Customer's Staff.

NOTE: Once the job is submitted you can no longer edit the Customer's Staff and Printer's Staff lists.

When you select a company from the Company drop-down list, Asecuri looks up the name in the Accounts resource and the PrintSphere application to see if the account is active or inactive. This status is indicated at the bottom of the Customer Contact dialog box.

 Approver: This user can approve jobs in the WebApproval application.

 Uploader: This user can upload files for this job in the WebApproval application.

 Viewer

 Candidate CSR (Customer Service Representative)

 Preferred CSR (Customer Service Representative)

 WebApproval account is inactive: the account exists but is not enabled.

 WebApproval account is active: the account exists and is enabled.

 PrintSphere account is inactive: the account exists but is not enabled.

 PrintSphere account is active: the account exists and is enabled.

Job Priority

This option allows you to select the job priority. The following options are available from the drop-down list:

- Low
- Normal (the default priority)
- High

You can change the priority afterwards if needed.

Milestone

This optional information can help you keep track of jobs. Selecting the check box activates the Due Date drop-down list with the following options:

- Today
- Tomorrow
- End of week

- Beginning of next week

You can fine-tune the date by clicking the calendar icon, and also change the default time.

NOTE: Setting a due date does not affect the actual processing of a job by the Asecuri system.

When Job Finishes

Notify Select this check box to send an informational notification, when the job is finished.

Archive Select this check box to automatically archive this job when it has been successfully completed. The archive location is set during installation.

Delete Select this check box to automatically delete this job when it has been successfully completed. You have the following options:

- After 1 day (default value)
- Immediately

Notifications

E-mail notification to Select this check box to send an informational notification, when the job is finished. You can enter the e-mail addresses in the field that appears below, separating them with commas.

Job Report

Select one of the Imposition Report Resources from the drop-down menu to use. The last option opens the Line Appearance Sets - Impose dialog box to manage the Imposition Report Resources.

Export automatically Select this check box to let the Apogee system create the Imposition Report automatically, when the job is submitted with an imposition.

NOTE: This option requires a special license.

Export and Open Click this button to create the Imposition Report interactively. The Layout Editor generates the report and opens it.

▷ Save, Save As and Delete Job Set-Up

- Click the black triangle to open a menu where you can save and delete a job set-up.

  Job set-ups that you already saved appear at the top of the menu and can be applied to the current job.

Frame/Product Inspector

The Frame/Product inspector displays the specifications of products selected in the Product panel or on a layout, and allows you to modify them.

- Click the product icon to display the product inspector.

NOTE: Modifications made in the inspector do not affect products already placed on a layout.

Selection

Title The title shows the type of the selected item(s); Product, Frame, Group, Grid, CAD group, Mixed selection, Embedded product, or No selection.

Size The size of the selected item(s). The size of a placed product can be different from that of the original product or that of other places copies, unless the product is uniform.

Design The Design shows the name of the design and its origin.

Station The station number of the frame displays the current station number. You can change the station number.

Content ID The frame content ID which is only active when a product or frame is selected on a sheet. If the frame contains a product, you cannot edit this box because the sheet is locked. In this case you will see the locked frame icon next to the box.

Original

This section shows the name, copy count, the size-breakdown and the lowest printed resolution of the product when the selected item(s) refer to a single product.

Product name The name of the product.

Fitting options Click the gray arrow next to the file name to open the Fitting Options where you can modify the cropping and fitting settings for a product selected on the sheet. See “Fitting Options Dialog Box” on page 288.

Copies Enter the total number of copies of the selected product that you want to print, i.e. the number of copies on all the layouts multiplied by the run length.

NOTE: This is not the number of products on the current sheet.

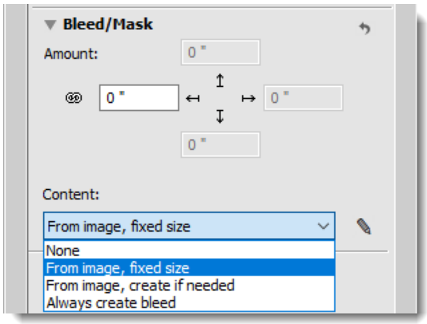
Size The dimensions of the original product. If the product has been edited in the Product Editor, the most recent product size (with crop and scale) is specified instead of the original product size.

Lowest printed resolution The Lowest printed resolution and the corresponding scaling factor. This is the lowest resolution found in all placed copies.

Edit product button Opens a product selected in the list of products in the Product Editor.

Bleed/Mask

Amount The bleed, i.e. content that goes beyond the trim size, is the same for all products as inherited from the job ticket. You can set a different bleed that you want to render for the selected product here. Leave the link icon closed to set the same bleed on all sides or open the link icon if you want to enter specific values for Left, Right, Top or Bottom.



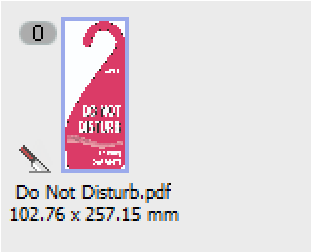
Content From the drop-list you can specify when bleed is created by the system or taken from the bleed area available in the image file. These options are mainly relevant for images which have a bleed area present in the image file. Only the first and the last options are relevant if the image has no bleed area.

- None: Sets the maximum bleed to 0 even if bleed is provided in the image file. The bleed box coincides with the canvas extension box or the product size.
- From image, fixed size: The system uses the bleed in the image file for the maximum bleed you specified or only what is available if the bleed in the image is less than the specified bleed.
- From image, create if needed: The system uses the bleed in the image file if it is equal or greater than the specified maximum bleed; if the image bleed is less than the specified bleed, the system creates the bleed and does not use the image bleed.
- Always create bleed: The system creates the maximum bleed, effectively replacing any bleed in the image file.

You can fine-tune or change the behavior by clicking the pencil icon next to the bleed types to open the Bleed Generator dialog box. See “Bleed Generator” on page 383.

Finishing

Clip to contour Select this check box in the Finishing panel to crop and clip the product to the contour instead of to the frame. Leave unchecked, if you do not want to clip to contours. The default behavior can be changed in the Contour Preferences in the cogwheel menu (Set ‘Clip to Contour’ on new products). If the product has a finishing operation path and this option is selected, the cut path icon is displayed next to the product in the Product panel.



Finishing A list of finishing operations that apply for the product. The table shows how Content Elements of the product (spot colors) are mapped to operations. Click the Add button to add operations, or click the cogwheel to open a menu where you can add, edit, delete, reapply finishing operations and open the Finishing Hub.

Product operations A summary of the product edits made in the Product Editor: canvas extensions, grommets and tiling.

Colors Inspector

The Colors inspector displays the color settings for all the colors used in the job.

- Click the color book icon to display the colors inspector.

Colors

The colors in the Colors list are initially, i.e. before products are uploaded, the colors defined for the printing device – generally CMYK and White, Primer and Varnish for certain devices. Additional colors (e.g. spot colors) appear in the list as you upload products.

Additional colors can be mapped to output colors by choosing the color in the list, clicking the **Print as** check box and choosing a color from the drop-down list, or a new **Color from Color Books**.

The list may also contain one or more *finishing colors* which means that a spot color in the product has been identified for use as a finishing operation. See “Frame/Product Inspector” on page 340 to see how spot colors are mapped to finishing operations.

Colors inspector icons

The color will be printed/output (‘Print as’ check box selected).

The color will not be printed/output (‘Print as’ check box not selected).

The color is a process color or will be printed as a process color.

The color is a spot color, varnish or white.

The color is mapped to a color from a color book.

The color is taken from the application.

The color is mapped to a finishing operation.

The color is mapped to a custom color.

The color is mapped automatically as defined for the colors of the device.

The color is mapped to and depends on another color in the list.

Default Color Policies

The Keep/Convert option determines whether to print colors that are not yet listed as spot colors or as process colors:

Keep as spot: Prints the color as a spot color.

Convert to CMYK: Prints the color with process colors.

Notify: Sends a 'User interaction' message. You must manually select how to print the color.

NOTE: This option is only available for offset printing. In a wide-format job all new colors are printed as process colors, unless they are recognized as a special color (White, Varnish, etc.) or as a finishing operation.

Emulate Overprint emulates the overprint behavior of colors whose color policy has been changed, for example when spot colors are printed with process colors. Changing the policy may require reprocessing.

- Never emulate overprint: Don't emulate overprint.
- Always emulate overprint: Emulate overprint
- Automatically emulate overprint: Apogee decides whether to emulate overprint or not.

Color Definitions

This section specifies how and from where Asecuri will retrieve its color definitions. You have three search options:

Color Books only Apogee searches the specified books. The job will fail if the color is not found in the any of the selected books.

Color Books, then Application CMYK Same as above, but now Apogee will also use the application values if the color is not found in the books.

Application CMYK, then Color Books Asecuri uses the application values, unless the application does not supply the values. Asecuri will then search the books.

NOTE: When this option is selected, the application might find a color in a different color space. In this case, there is a color space conflict.

Books Clicking the Books button displays the book selection window. The table shows all the available books that can be searched.

You can select or clear the check box next to the book's name to either include the book in or exclude it from the search. You can also change the search order by using the up and down arrows or by dragging and dropping.

Trapping

Choose a trapping parameter set from the drop-down list or click the arrow to specify custom settings. See "PDF Render - Trap Settings" on page 480.

Mark Sets Inspector (Sheet Layout mode only)

NOTE: The Mark Sets tab controls marks for the selected sheet and/or selected products, not for the entire job.

- Click the marks icon to display the marks sets inspector.

This tab consists of the following inspector panels:

- Mark Sets
- Mark Inspector

Mark Sets

In the Mark Sets tab you can choose to place Image marks or Sheet marks on the selected products or current sheet.

Image Marks for selected products

Select the check boxes to place sets of marks on the selected product, e.g.:

- apply Grommet marks along the sides of all the products on a sheet
- place text marks on all the products on a sheet

Sheet Marks for all layouts in job

Select the check boxes to place sets of marks on the selected sheet, e.g.:

- apply Grommet marks along the sides of a sheet

- apply cutting marks for different cutting devices and override the Finishing inspector

Press Sheet Marks for press sheets in job

Select the check boxes to place sets of marks on the selected sheet, e.g.:

- apply Color Bars along the press sheet
- place text marks on the press sheet.

Select the **Apply changes to all products/layouts in job** if you want the selected marks to appear throughout the job.

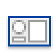
Mark Inspector

This tab shows the details of the selected mark. You can edit the settings for the selected mark. See “Mark Engraver” on page 612 for more information about the different types of marks and their settings.

Click the cogwheel and select Manage Mark Sets to open the Mark Engraver. See “Mark Engraver” on page 612 for more information. The cogwheel also has a command to switch off all the mark sets.

Sheet Inspector

♦ Click the layout icon to display the layout inspector.



Sheet

Sheet number and lock status A sheet can be locked or unlocked as indicated by the black lock icon. Click the lock to change its status.

Copy Count The total number of sheets to be printed to accommodate the requested copy count of products.

Media, Thickness, Size As chosen in the job set-up. The height is not shown for roll media.

Grain/Flute Choose the grain/flute direction of the current sheet; Short, Long, From size, or None.

Workstyle Shows the actual workstyle for the selected printer:

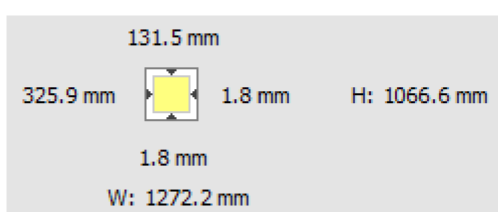
- Single-sided: The workstyle of a single-sided sheet is set to Single-sided and you cannot change it.
- Sheetwise: Sets the default double-sided workstyle to Sheetwise.
- Perfecting: Sets the default double-sided workstyle to Perfecting.
- Turn: Sets the default double-sided workstyle to Turn.
- Tumble: Sets the default double-sided workstyle to Tumble.

Side lay Shows the side-lay that is used to align the sheet to the printer's side-lay:

- Left (Drive side): Printer lay is on the left.
- Right (Operator side): Printer lay is on the right.

Image Area The width and height of the product box, i.e. the area to effectively be printed. This area on the sheet is shown in a small diagram with the distance to the edges of the sheet. This is meant to give you an idea of the position of the print area on the sheet:

- positive distance: the print area is inside the sheet
- 0: the area is exactly on the edge of the sheet
- negative distance: the area is outside the sheet



If all the values are positive, the print area is yellow; if one of the values is negative, the area is magenta.

Cut File Operations

Operation Shows the collected Operations from the products that are on the sheet, e.g. Crease, Through Cut, Print Registration.

Print Layout Inspector

Print Layout

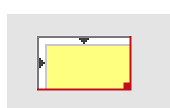
Run Length The number of times the print layout needs to be printed to obtain the copy count of products:

- By default: equal to the sheet copy count because a single print layout is initially created for every sheet
- multiple identical sheets on a print layout: the copy count divided by the number of sheets on the print layout
- different sheets on a print layout: the sum of the run length for each individual sheet

Media, Thickness, Size As chosen in the job set-up. The height is not shown for roll media.

Print Area The area to effectively be printed. This area is shown in a small diagram with the distance to the edges of the print layout. This is meant to give you an idea of the position of the print area on the printer bed:

- yellow: the print area is inside the printer bed
- magenta: the print area is on the edge or outside the printer bed and at least one sheet will be printer borderless



Start Printing The coordinates of the corner of the printing area that is closest to the home position.

End Printing The coordinates of the corner containing the last pixel to be printed diagonally opposite to the starting point

Media

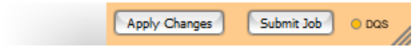
Sheet list A table which lists all the sheets on the print layout, with their position along the horizontal and vertical axes of the print layout (relative to the printer, and their size. The same color code is used for the position. The green border indicates the lay.

Sheet	Position (X, Y)	Size (X x Y)
1. Sheet 2	0, 0 mm	1000 x 700 mm
2. Sheet 2	0, 700 mm	1000 x 700 mm
3. Sheet 2	0, 1400 mm	1000 x 700 mm
4. Sheet 2	245, 2100 mm	1000 x 700 mm

Applying Changes and Submitting a Job

Applying Changes

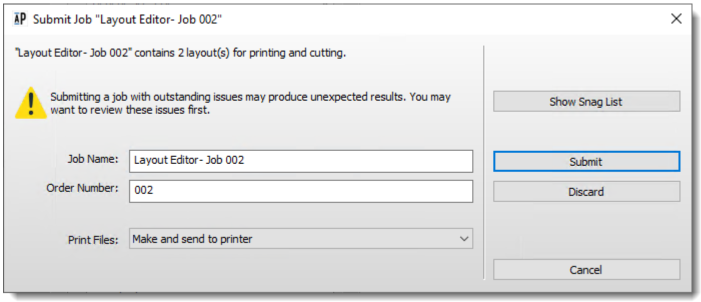
If you change settings that modify the color rendering of the products (e.g. preflight, calibrated printing mode), the **Apply Changes** button appears in the amber status box in the bottom right corner. You can choose whether you want to apply your changes or not because this may take considerable time and interfere with your work.



NOTE: Applying changes does not create new previews of products already added. See "Product Previews" on page 272.

Submitting a Job

After placing your products on the sheet, reviewing the print layout, and completing the job set-up, you can submit the job by clicking the **Submit Job** button in the bottom right corner. Submitting a job also creates previews if you chose not to generate previews while preparing the job.



The Submit Job dialog box displays the Job name, Order number and the following options that you can choose:

Print Files

Hold The job appears in the Jobs list but no files are processed.

Make and hold The files for the printing device are processed but not sent to the printing device.

Make and send to printer The files for the printing device are processed and sent to the printing device.

Cutter Files

Hold The cutting files are not sent to the cutting device.

Make and send to printer The cutting files are processed and sent to the cutting device.

Show Snag List

When you want to submit a job that has warnings, Layout Editor asks you to confirm the submission. Clicking the **Show Snag List** button closes the submission dialog and opens the Snag List. The Snag List shows conflicts (errors and warnings) relating to the products in the Product panel or the placement of products on the sheet. See “Snag List” on page 322 for more information.

Submit button

Click the Submit button to confirm your changes to the job. The Layout Editor closes and the actions you selected for the print files and cutter files are executed. The job is updated in the Jobs list.

Discard/Delete Job button

If the job has not yet been submitted you will see the Delete Job button. Clicking this button will delete the job. If the job has already been submitted and you were making additional changes to the job, you will see the Discard button. Clicking this button closes the Layout Editor without saving your changes to the job.

Cancel button

Click the Cancel button to return to the Layout Editor without confirming your changes.

DQS Indicator

The DQS indicator is visible in the bottom right corner if DQS, or Digital Quick Strip, is enabled. The indicator informs whether DQS is active and at what level (product or sheet). Hover over the indicator to see the status tooltip.

The DQS feature is enabled automatically if duplicate content is found in the job. If the same product is placed multiple times, it is quicker to render it once and then compose the raster data.

- Click the DQS indicator to open the DQS menu and select a level to override the automatic application of DQS:

Image DQS (green) This level of DQS renders the product once.

Sheet DQS (yellow) This level creates and renders a Print Layout as a collection of Sheet Layouts.

DQS not possible (white) DQS is enabled but not beneficial.

No DQS (red bar) DQS is switched off although it is available.

Automatic The system has determined that DQS should be enabled.

NOTE: The printer may also have a DQS option.

Sheet Layout Templates

Sheet layout templates help you apply a standard sheet layout to several sheets in the same job or to the sheets of different jobs. A template consists of empty frames that are used as placeholders for arranging products on the sheet.

A template applies the following settings to the current sheet:

- The width and height of the Sheet
- The frames on the sheet and their properties; embedded designs, associated products, Fitting Options, orientation and mirroring, location and size, Content ID and Station number
- Frame groups and their properties; Grids. CAD layout groups. regular frame groups
- The special mark(s) that holds the non-product CAD-lines
- Manually added Image and Sheet marks
- Altered Sheet and Image-mark sets. These are mark sets that have any of the following alterations; forced activation state, removed marks, modified marks
- The bleed mask of front and back, if present
- Products that are associated with the frames on that sheet, and their associations; the design, if present, manually drawn paths and their operation assignments, such as ink-free zones, manually placed Product marks, all image operations, all Guidelines.

Related topics:

- Working with Frames on page 284
- Naming frames (content IDs) on page 292
- Layout Panel on page 276
- Placing Products Interactively on page 279

▷ Create a template from an existing sheet with placed products

You can create a sheet layout template by saving a sheet that you prepared for a particular job. This will probably be a layout with placed products. Saving as a template removes the products and creates a layout with just the frames.

1. Go to the sheet that you want to save as a template and select the Sheet Size.

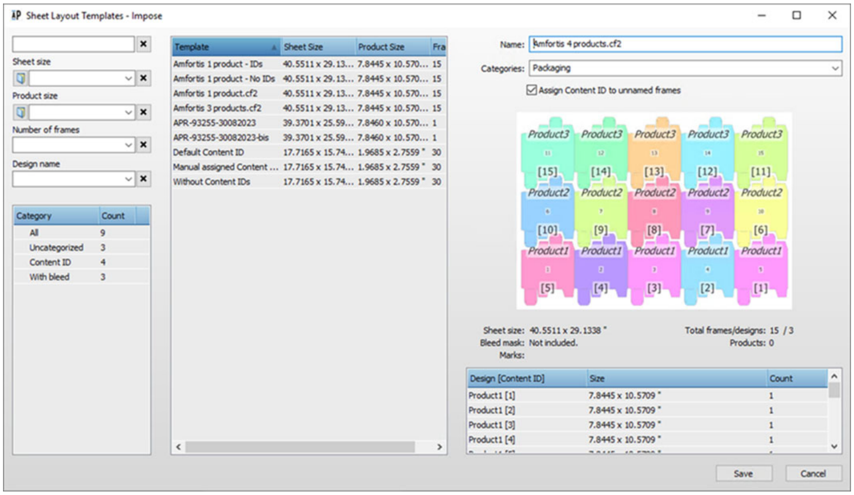
   Make sure all the settings for the individual frames are fine-tuned.

2 Choose Sheet > Save Sheet Layout Template.

3 In the dialog box, enter the following information:

- Name: type a descriptive name for the template
- Categories: assign a category or enter a new category
- Assign Content IDs: Select this check box to name the frames on your template. If the frames of your layout contain products, each frame is assigned a unique content ID but frames that contain the same product are assigned the same ID.

NOTE: If the layout contains a combination of named and unnamed frames, the IDs of the named frames are used for the named frames and the unnamed frames are not assigned an ID.

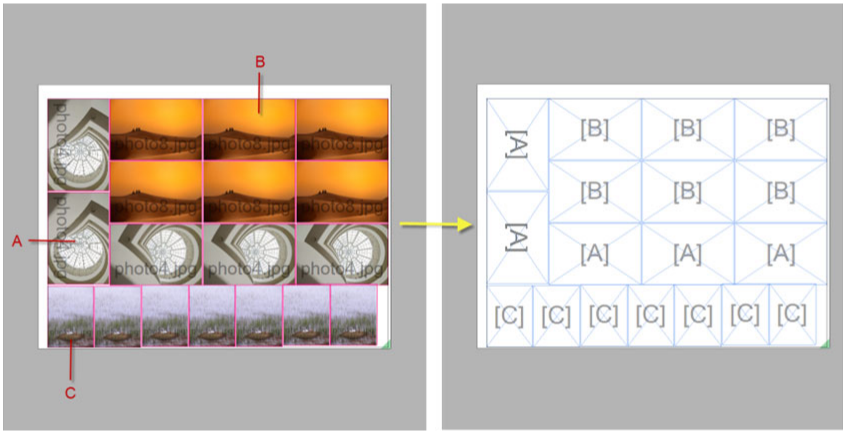


4 Click **Save**.

The dialog box closes and you can continue working in the Layout Editor. If you want to check that your template has been saved, follow the procedure to apply a template and you will see your new template in the list of templates. If you want to check that your template has the desired frames and content IDs, apply the template to a new layout sheet.

NOTE: Your sheet must have at least one product or frame, otherwise the template is not saved and will not appear in the list of templates.

Figure 8.15: A sheet with placed products saved as a template with content IDs

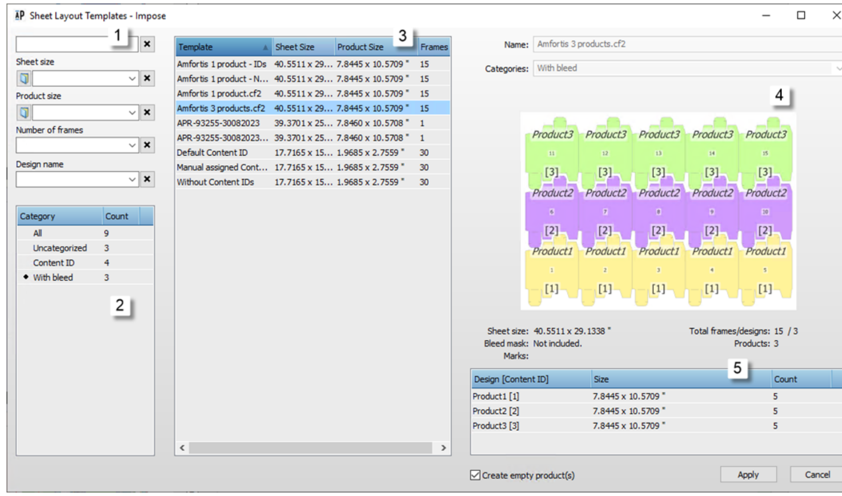


▷ Apply a Sheet Layout Template

CAUTION: Applying a sheet layout template erases all the placed products and frames from the current sheet. In other words, the template is applied to the sheet, not to its content.

1 On the current sheet or a new sheet, choose Sheet > Apply Sheet Layout Template.

Figure 8.16: Sheet Layout Template



1 Filter Panel
2 Category Filter
3 Template List
4 Attribute Panel
5 Design List

The **Filter Panel** shows the attributes that you can use to filter the list of templates. You can search for the Name, Sheet size, Product size, Number of Frames, and Design name.

The **Category Filter** is a list that shows all categories from the templates that match the filter, sorted by ascending alphabetical order.

The **Template list** shows the templates that match all filters.

The **Attribute** panel shows the attributes of the selected template:

- When you're saving a sheet, the Attribute panel shows the attributes of the sheet being saved, as it will be saved as a Sheet Layout Template.

- When you're managing Sheet Layout Templates or applying a Sheet Layout Template, the Attribute panel shows the attributes of the template that is selected in the Template list.

The **Design list** of shows a list of combinations of designs and content IDs, together with the size and count of each combination.

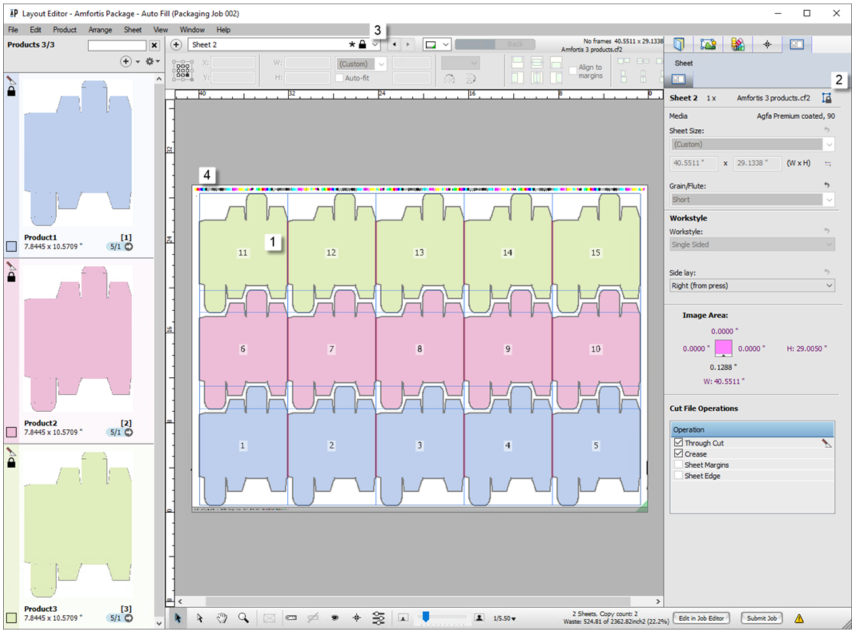
Create empty product(s) check box allows to place products immediately on the Sheet Layout, when you import new products via the **Add Artwork** context menu option (for the Empty products).

NOTE: As the Product Marks and Ink-Free zones (User paths) are defined on the Products, you need to enable the **Create empty product(s)** in order to have the marks and zones applied.

2 Select the template you want to use and click **Apply** or double-click it.

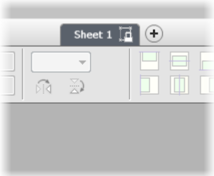
3 The sheet now has the size as specified in the template and all the frames are empty, except for product marks that you may have added.

Figure 8.17: Applied Sheet Layout Template



1 Empty frames with Content IDs
2 Lock icon in sheet tab
3 Button to unlock/lock a sheet in the Product Inspector
4 Image marks

4 The lock icon next to the Sheet tab label indicates that the sheet is *locked* which means that you cannot change the layout without unlocking it.



5 Now you can start placing products on the layout and submit your job.

6 If you want the same layout for another sheet in the same job or another job, you can apply the template again.

▷ Create a sheet layout template from scratch

You can create a sheet layout template from a sheet with empty frames. This involves drawing and naming frames, and setting their Fitting Options.

1 Go the sheet that you want to save or add a new sheet and select the Sheet Size.

2 Draw your frames on the sheet with the Frame tool.

3 Depending on the automation effects that you want to achieve with the template, you can fine-tune the individual frames on the layout, for example:

- Name the frames, assign the content IDs of your choice to the frames. You do this interactively by entering IDs for each frame in the Product Inspector. If you want the same product to be used in different frames, enter the same ID for these frames.

- Fitting options: Activate the Auto-fit option and set the fitting settings to control how products will fit in the frame. For example, if you want to place a single product in frames with different sizes and orientation, choose the settings to fit the product in the frames.

4 When you have finished your layout, choose Sheet > Save Sheet Layout Template.

5 In the dialog box, enter the following information:

- Save as: type a descriptive name for the template

- Assign Content IDs: This option is grayed out because there are no filled frames on the sheet.

6 Click **Save**.

The dialog box closes and you can continue working in the Layout Editor. If you want to check that your template has been saved, follow the procedure to apply a template and you will see your new template in the list of templates. If you want to check that your template has the desired frames and content IDs, apply the template to a new layout sheet.

NOTE: If the layout contains a combination of named and unnamed frames, the IDs of the named frames are used for the named frames and the unnamed frames are not assigned an ID.

▷ Edit/Rename a sheet layout template

1 Apply the template to a sheet.

2 Edit the sheet and save it with a different name or the same name.

Saving with the same name overwrites the existing template.

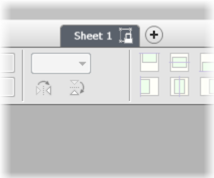
▷ Delete a sheet layout template

1 In the Layout Editor, choose Sheet > Apply Sheet Layout Template.

2 Select the template you want to delete in the list of templates, and press the Delete key.

▷ Locking/Unlocking a Sheet

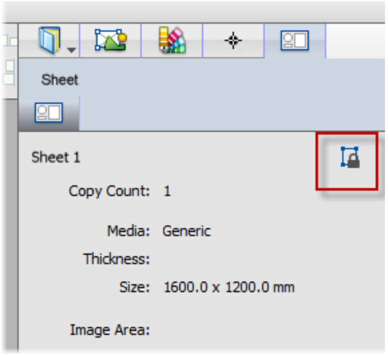
When a sheet is locked, you cannot modify the number of frames on the sheet, the position of frames, or the size of the frames. It is possible to change the Fitting Options and the Content IDs.



Sheets created from a template are locked by default as indicated by the lock icon in the Sheet tab label.

1 On the sheet that you want to lock/unlock, go to the Sheet Inspector.

2 Click the lock icon the lock/unlock the sheet.



Importing/exporting templates

Templates can be imported and exported through the resources in the System Overview.

Related topics:

- Resources on page 364

QuickProof Products and Sheets

NOTE: This option requires a special license.

With the QuickProof feature you can send a product or a sheet immediately to a proofer from within the Layout Editor. The system creates a job in the background to print to the proofer and this job is deleted automatically after the job has been printed successfully.

A product *proof* includes all the product settings as set in the Layout Editor and Product Editor: bleed, scaling, mirroring, canvas extensions, etc. However, if a product has been tiled, you can only proof the master product, not the individual tiles. If you want to proof tiles, place them on a layout sheet first.

A *layout sheet proof* takes into account how the product is placed on the sheet and as such, the proof of a placed product can be different than the proof of the original product as a result of fitting and resizing for example.

▷ Proof a product

- In the Product panel (list of products) of the Layout Editor, context-click the product you want to proof, and choose **Proof Product**.

  OR

  Choose **File > Proof Product**.

  The QuickProof dialog box is displayed. Select the appropriate check boxes, Proofer, Image and Output and click the **Proof** button.

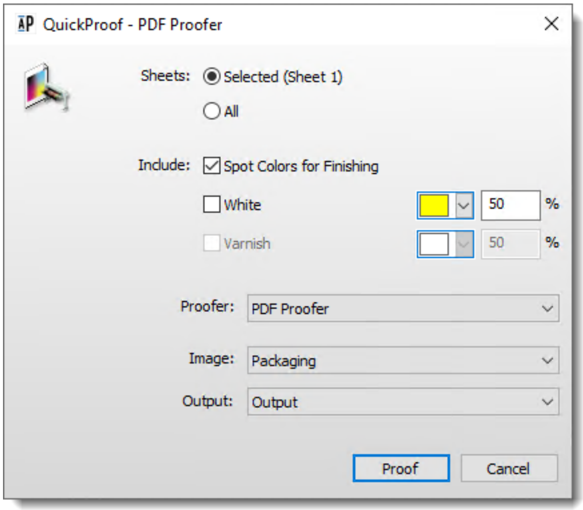
▷ Proof a layout sheet

- In the Sheets panel (list of layout sheets) of the Layout Editor, context-click the sheet you want to proof, and choose **Proof Sheet**.

  OR

  Choose **File > Proof Sheet**.

  The QuickProof dialog box is displayed. Select the appropriate check boxes, Proofer, Image and Output and click the **Proof** button.



QuickProof Dialog Box

These setting are remembered for the job.

Products Select the product/sheet or all items to be proofed.

Include

- Spot Colors for Finishing: Select the check box to print each finishing operation with a 1-point solid line in the color that is associated with the color of the finishing operation in the selected cutter. When no cutter is selected, or when the finishing operation is not available in that cutter, the finishing operation is not printed. The finishing operations are printed on top of everything else, in the order as defined by the finishing operations.
- White/Varnish: Select the check box to print these special inks using the specified color and opacity. These special colors are always printed on top of the other content.

Proofer Choose a proofer from the drop-down list. You can only print the proof on a proofer.

Image Select the parameter set to be used. Use a line appearance set to output the CAD operations.

Output Select the parameter set to be used.

Resources

Resources are the settings used in the background to process jobs.

In the Layout Editor, you can open some of the Asecuri resources by choosing Window > Resources and selecting a resource, or via the inspectors.

See the following sections:

- for task processor resources:
  - “Paper Stock” on page 674
  - “Mark Engraver” on page 612
  - “Color Books” on page 589
- for system resources:
  - “Sheet Sizes” on page 418
  - “Sheet Layout Templates” on page 354

Administrator access level only! All Asecuri resources can be opened in System Overview, either as system resources or task processor resources.

Layout Editor Menus

Main Menus

The following menus are available on the top menu bar in the Layout Editor window.

File Menu

Menu Item	Description
Add Products	Opens a file browser to select and upload content files.
Add Products from CAD	Opens a file browser to select a CAD file; the products in the CAD file are added to the Products list.
Add Products from Frames	When one or more frames are selected on the sheet, creates products with the dimensions of the selected frames and adds them to the Products list.
Place CAD Layout	Opens a file browser to select a CAD file that you can place with its empty products on the sheet.
Restore Deleted Products	Restores deleted products.
Get Info	Displays the Info dialog box with information about the original product file organized in the General, Dimensions and Resources tabs.
Show Preflight Report	Opens a PDF with a preflight report for the selected product, if available.
Export Original File/ Normalized PDF	Exports the original file or a normalized PDF to a location of your choice.
Proof Products	Sends selected products to a proofer. See “QuickProof Products and Sheets” on page 362.
Proof Sheet	Sends the selected sheet to a proofer. See “QuickProof Products and Sheets” on page 362.
Save as Template	Saves the current job as a Wide Format Ticket template.
Open in Production Dashboard/ ProductionCenter	Opens your standard browser with the job in Production Dashboard/ Production Center.
Submit	Opens the Submit Job dialog box. See “Applying Changes and Submitting a Job” on page 351.

Edit Menu

Menu Item	Description
Undo/Redo	Undoes/Redoes the last operation.
Cut, Copy, Paste	Cuts, Copies, Pastes the current selection.
Delete Product	Deletes the selected product from the Products list.
Delete Frame	Deletes the current frame.
Remove Product(s)	Deletes the product(s).

Menu Item	Description
Duplicate Product	Makes a copy of the product in the Product panel.
Duplicate Frame on Sheet	Opens the Duplicate dialog box for duplicating the selected frame or frames on the sheet. See “Duplicating Products” on page 298.
Select All	Selects all products in the Product panel, or all products on a selected layout.
Select None	Deselects all products in the Product panel, or all products on a selected layout.
Select All Odd-Numbered/Even-Numbered Products	Selects all products in the Product panel, or all products on a selected layout.
Edit Sheet	With a sheet selected on a print layout in Print Layout mode, switches to the selected sheet in Sheet Layout mode.

Product Menu

Menu Item	Description
Add Product from Artwork	Creates product by assigning artwork to a frame.
Assign Artwork	Assigns an artwork file to one or more existing products.
Front	• From Available: Selects a previously uploaded page from the sub-menu; list of all artwork that is available in the Page Store. • Open: Browses the file system and loads the artwork from a file. • Blank: Selects to have a blank side. • Mirror: Mirrors the current artwork. Disabled when there is no current artwork. • Swap with back: Swaps the assignment with that of the back, whatever the assignments are. • None: Selects to have no artwork on that side. • Get Info: Shows the Get Info window for the assigned artwork. • Show Preflight Report: Creates and opens the Preflight Report for the document that is assigned to the current side. • Check Out and Edit Document: Edits the document in the selected editor.

Menu Item	Description
Back	• From Available: Selects a previously uploaded page from the sub-menu; list of all artwork that is available in the Page Store. • Open: Browses the file system and loads the artwork from a file. • Same as front: Uses the artwork assigned to the front. Disabled when the front has no artwork. • Mirror of front: Uses the artwork assigned to the front. Disabled when the front has no artwork. • Blank: Selects to have a blank side. • Mirror: Mirrors the current artwork. Disabled when there is no current artwork. • Swap with front: Swaps the assignment with that of the front, whatever the assignments are. • None: Selects to have no artwork on that side. • Get Info: Shows the Get Info window for the assigned artwork. • Show Preflight Report: Creates and opens the Preflight Report for the document that is assigned to the current side. • Check Out and Edit Document: Edits the document in the selected editor.
Design	• From Product: Lists the sub-menu with the other products. • Open: Browses the file system and loads a design from a CAD file. • From Front: The artwork assigned to the front, disabled when the front has no artwork. • From Back: The artwork assigned to the back, disabled when the back has no artwork. • Mirror: Mirrors the current design. • None: Sets the design to a rectangle with the size specified by the Product size, disabled when the Product size is From design.
Turn Over	Swaps the front and back artwork and mirror the design.
Mirror Product	Mirrors the front and back artwork and mirrors the design. This is useful for printing single-sided work on the back-side of transparent media.
Convert to Double-sided Product(s)	Combines two single-sided products into one double-sided products. (Double-sided printing is only available for offset-printing or for wide format printing when the license is available.)
Convert to Single-sided Product(s)	Splits a double-sided product in two single-sided products. (Double-sided printing is only available for offset-printing or for wide format printing when the license is available.)
Open in Product Editor	Opens the selected product in the Product Editor. See “Product Editor” on page 373.
Edit with Preview	Opens the selected product in Preview. See “Previewing Job Results” on page 77.
Check Out and Edit Document With	Opens products and documents in Acrobat or any other PDF Viewer/Editor application such as the Amfortis Editor, from where they can be checked in after editing.

Arrange Menu

Menu Item	Description
Auto-Layout Product	Opens the Auto-Layout dialog box. See “Placing Products with Auto-Layout” on page 304.
Auto Fill Products	Opens the Auto-Fill dialog box. See “Placing Products with Auto-Fill” on page 308.
Create Grid	Opens the Create Grid dialog box. See “Create Grid” on page 301.
Step and Repeat	Opens the Step and Repeat dialog box, if one or more placed products are selected. See “Step & Repeat” on page 299.
Group/Ungroup	Groups/ungroups the products selected on a layout.
Fitting	Options for fitting the product and frame, and to open the Fitting Options dialog box. See “Inspecting Frames” on page 286.
Size Frame to Sheet	Fills the sheet with the selected product frame which can be empty or filled.
Size Sheet to Frame	Sizes the sheet to the selected product frame which can be empty or filled.
Revert Frame	Reverts a filled frame to the size of the original product.
Scale for Bleed	Scales the product outside the frame to allow for the specified bleed content.
Revert Product Size	Reverts the size of the original product back to the size it initially had when you added it to the Product panel.

Sheet Menu

Menu Item	Description
New Empty Sheet	Creates a new, empty sheet for the job.
Duplicate Sheet	Creates a new sheet and duplicates the content.
Delete Current Sheet	Deletes the current sheet.
Delete Sheets	Opens a dialog box where you can choose to delete empty sheets or all sheets.
Delete Empty Sheets	Deletes the empty sheets.
Rearrange Frames	Rearranges the selected frames to their automatic placement.
Rearrange All Frames in Job	Rearranges all the frames to their automatic placement on all the sheets.
Reapply All Mark Sets in Job	Removes all marks and reapplies the marks set rules.
Apply Sheet Layout Template	Opens a dialog box with the saved sheet layout templates which can be applied to the current sheet.
Save Sheet Layout Template	Opens a dialog box to save the current sheet as a sheet layout template.
Assign Content IDs	Assigns content IDs to the selected frames or all frames if none are selected. The frame must contain a product.

Menu Item	Description
Clear Content IDs	Clears the content IDs of the selected frames or all frames if none are selected.
Station Numbers	Opens the Station Numbers dialog with settings for the numbering sequence. See “Place Station Numbers” on page 313.
Fix Bleed Overlaps	Opens the Fix Bleed Overlaps dialog. See “Fix Bleed Overlaps” on page 310.
Revert to Default Bleed Overlap Handling	Removes a side’s custom bleed mask, i.e., the bleed mask that was created by fixing the overlaps manually and reverts to the default bleed overlap handling. This option is disabled, if the side has no custom bleed mask.
Lock/Unlock Sheet	Locks/unlocks the sheet to disable/enable editing.

Print Layout Menu

Menu Item	Description
New Empty Print Layout	Creates a new, empty print layout for the job.
Duplicate Print Layout	Creates a new Print Layout and duplicates the content.
Delete Current Print Layout	Deletes the current Print Layout.
Delete Print Layouts	Opens a dialog box where you can choose to delete empty Print Layouts or all layouts.
Rearrange Sheets	Rearranges the selected sheets to their automatic placement.
Rearrange All Sheets in Job	Rearranges all the sheets to their automatic placement on all the Print Layouts.
Remake All Print Layouts	Repositions all sheets in accordance with modified sheet layout settings.

View Menu

Menu Item	Description
Sheets / Print Layouts	Switches to Sheets or Print Layouts view.
Zoom In/Out	Increases/decreases the zoom factor for viewing the layout.
Zoom to Fit	Fits the layout to the area between the Product panel and the inspectors.
Zoom to Width	Sets the zoom level so that the entire width is visible in the current view.
Zoom to Height	Sets the zoom level so that the entire height is visible in the current view.
Zoom to Max	Selects the maximum zoom level.
Expand/Collapse Tiles	Reveals/hides the tiles of a selected tiled product.

Menu Item	Description
Snap	Toggles the Snap menu item: • When Snap is off, the Layout Editor disables snapping in all operations. • When Snap is on, the Layout Editor snaps to the items selected in the Snap To sub-menu.
Snap To	• Frames: When moving a frame towards another frame, snaps when the edges of the two frames touch or align, or when they are separated by the distance specified in Finishing Margins > Minimum distance between frames. • Guides: Snaps to guides. • Gripper: Enabled only for offset presses. • Sheet Margin: i.e., the distance set in Finishing Margins > Minimum distance between products and sheet edges. • Sheet Edge: • All: Enables all targets. • None: Disables all targets. • Honor ʹMinimum Distance Between Framesʹ: The frame snaps when two opposing edges are at the distance that is specified as Finishing Margins > Minimum distance between frames.
Guides	• Lock Guides: Locks the guides. • Remove Guide(s): Removes selected guides. • Remove All Guides: Removes all guides. • Create Guides: Opens Create Guides dialog to create multiple guides at specified locations. • Create Guides From Frames: Creates guides that run along the edges of one or more selected frames or from the frames in a frame group.
Show / Hide Rulers	Shows or hides rulers.
Print Layout Editor Orientation	• Leading edge as on printer: Shows the Print Layout with the leading edge at the top or bottom, depending on the orientation of the printer. • Leading edge always on bottom of window: Shows the Print Layout with the leading edge at the bottom, regardless of the orientation of the printer. • Leading edge always on top of window: Shows the Print Layout with the leading edge at the top, regardless of the orientation of the printer.
Sheet Layout Editor Orientation	• Follow Print Layout Editor orientation: Shows the Sheet Layout in the same orientation as the Print Layout Editor. • Leading edge always on bottom/top of window: Shows the Sheet Layout with the leading edge at the bottom, regardless of the orientation of the printer or that of the Print Layout Editor.

Window Menu

Menu Item	Description
System Overview	Opens or switches to the System Overview window.
Jobs	Opens or switches to the last Jobs window.
Hot Tickets	Opens or switches to the Hot Tickets window.
Resources	• "Paper Stock" on page 674 • "Mark Engraver" on page 612 • "Sheet Sizes" on page 418 • "Color Books" on page 589 • "Sheet Layout Templates" on page 354
Go to ProductionCenter	Opens the ProductionCenter application in your internet browser.
Go to PrintSphere	Opens the PrintSphere file-sharing application in your default internet browser, for example, to manage PrintSphere users.
Go to SphereCenter	Opens the SphereCenter application in your default internet browser, for example, to set up a PrintSphere subscription.
Show Snag List	Shows/hides the Snag List.
Show View Options	Shows/hides the View Options palette.
Show Presets	Shows/hides the Presets.
Panels	• Show/Hide Inspector: shows/hides the panel on the right with inspectors. • Show/Hide Sheet Panel/ Product List: shows/hides the panel on the left with products.
Inspector	• "Job Set-Up Inspector" on page 323 • "Frame/Product Inspector" on page 340 (Frame/Product Inspector) • "Colors Inspector" on page 344 • "Mark Sets Inspector (Sheet Layout mode only)" on page 346 • "Sheet Inspector" on page 347 (Layout Inspector)

Context Menus

The following menus are available by context-clicking in the various panels or objects in the Layout Editor.

Sheet Layout Mode - Product in the Product Panel

See "Managing/Editing Products" on page 267.

Sheet Layout Mode - Product on a Sheet

See "Inspecting Frames" on page 286.

Print Layout Mode - Sheet in the Sheets Panel

Context Menu Item	Description
Delete Sheet	Deletes the selected sheet from the Sheets panel and removes it from the Print Layout.
Duplicate Sheet	Creates a copy of the sheet in the Sheets panel and creates a new Print Layout that contains the new sheet.
Edit Sheet	Opens the selected sheet in Sheet Layout mode.
Locate Sheet on Print Layout	Highlights the sheet on the current Print Layout.
Proof Sheet	Sends the selected sheet(s) to a proofer. See “QuickProof Products and Sheets” on page 362.

Print Layout Mode - Sheet on a Print Layout

Context Menu Item	Description
Delete Sheet	Deletes the selected sheet from the Print Layout.
Duplicate Sheet on Print Layout	Creates one or more copies of the sheet and places them on the current Print Layout or creates new Print Layouts if sufficient space is not available.
Edit Sheet	Opens the selected sheet in Sheet Layout mode.
Rearrange Sheet	Rearranges the selected sheets to their automatic placement.
Locate Sheet in Sheet List	Locates the selected sheet on the Print Layout.

CHAPTER 9

Product Editor

This section describes the Product Editor, a dedicated workspace for editing the products you upload in the Layout Editor. The Product Editor includes comprehensive features for tiling and contour paths.

- Overview 374
- Product Inspector 379
- Mark Sets Inspector and Mark Inspector 388

Overview

The Product Editor is a module of the Layout Editor that opens when you open a product that has been added to the list of products in the Product panel.

- To open the Product Editor from the Layout Editor window:

  Double-click a product or one of the tiles of a tiled image in the Product panel

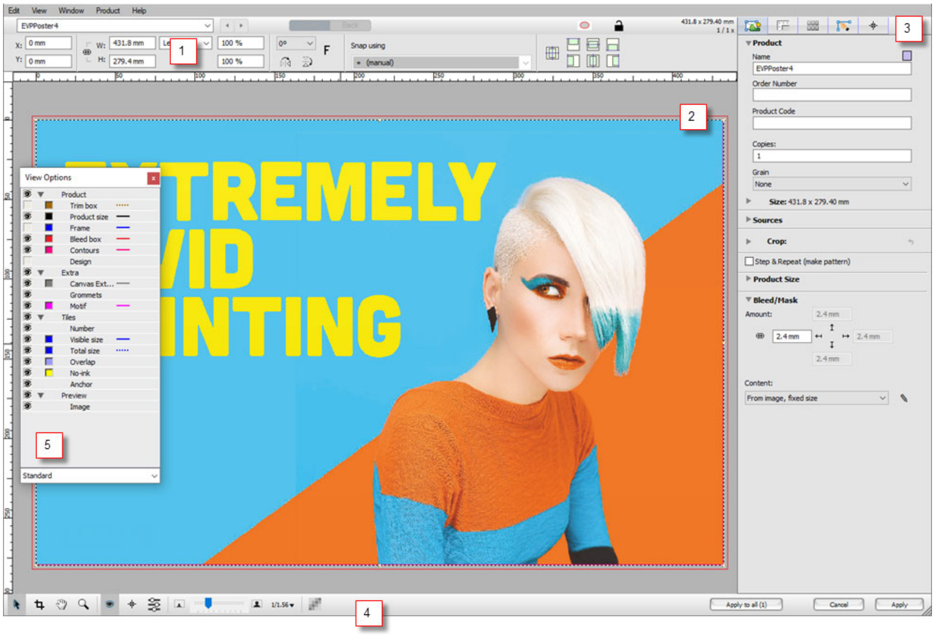
  OR

  Context-click a product in the Product panel and choose **Open in Product Editor**

  OR

  When a product is selected in the Product panel, click the **Edit product** button in the Frame/Product inspector.

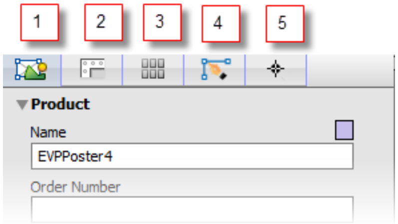
Figure 9.18: A product open in the Product Editor



1 Positioning tools and snapping drop-down
2 Product pane
3 Inspectors
4 Editing toolbar
5 View Options palette

Inspectors

The panel on the right consists of a number of tabs, which are referred to as inspectors, where the actual editing is performed.



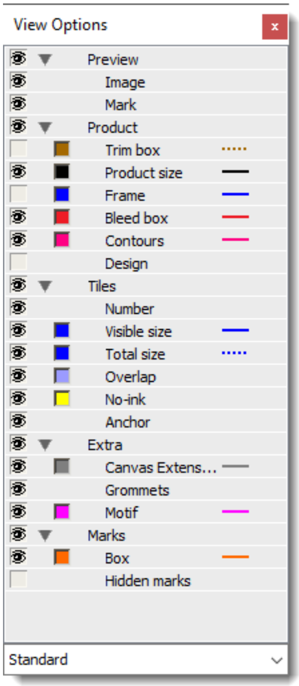
1 Product Inspector for basic edits to the product (size, bleed, etc.)
2 Mark Sets Inspector and Mark Inspector
3 Tiling Inspector to tile a large image into smaller tiles
4 Paths Inspector where you can edit existing contour paths or create new ones
5 Mark Sets Inspector and Mark Inspector

The following sections discuss each inspector separately and how the various settings affect the image being edited. Note, however, that changes you make in one inspector may also affect what you specified in another inspector and vice versa. For example, you can specify bleed in the Image inspector, create canvas extensions and grommets in the second inspector, and then tile the resulting product into smaller tiles in the Tiling inspector. The tiling is applied to the entire product including the extensions, while the bleed you specified in the Image inspector is applied to the individual tiles created in the Tiling inspector.

View Options Palette

Open the View Options palette to choose the various boxes and non-printed information that you want to see while working in the Product Editor.

NOTE: Hiding content or marks with the View Options palette does not mean they will not be printed.



- Click the View Options button in the toolbar to Show/Hide the View Options palette.

The following components can be shown/hidden:

- Preview
  - Image: the actual content of the image you are editing
  - Mark: the cutting marks selected for finishing, or other marks
- Product
  - Trim box: the original trim box of the image
  - Product Size: the box indicating the size of the product to be printed
  - Frame: the box around the image that includes canvas extensions but not the bleed

- Bleed box: the box around the image that includes the bleed area, and the canvas extensions if applicable
- Contours: the path around an image for finishing operations, for example for cutting
- Design: an outline based on a CAD file for example.

- Extra
  - Canvas Extensions: the box around the canvas extensions
  - Grommets: the marks representing the grommets to be printed as content with the image
  - Motif: the cells that contain the motif of a step & repeat pattern
- Tiles
  - Number: the sequence number of the tiles
  - Visible size: the box indicating the visible size of the tiles
  - Total size: the box indicating the visible size plus overlapping edges and bleed
  - Overlap: the overlapping edges of tiles as required for the tiling arrangement
  - No-ink: the no-ink zone on the tile overlap
  - Anchor: the black arrow icon indicating the anchor corner that depends on the montage sequence
- Extra
  - Canvas Extensions: the outlines of flaps in case of canvas extensions
  - Grommets: the grommets when applied
  - Motif: the border of the motif (non-clipped) in a Step and Repeat pattern
- Marks
  - Box: the bounding box of the marks

- Hidden marks: marks that will not be printed due to conflicts; displayed in a red, hatched box.

In the View Options drop-down list you can select, create, rename or delete preference sets for the View Options.

Related topics:

- Place Station Numbers on page 313

Toolbars

The toolbar in the bottom left corner basically has the same tools as in the Layout Editor, except for specific tools (Crop, Split, Paths) which are available in the Product Editor when the various inspectors are selected.

Related topics:

- Layout Toolbar on page 320

When using the Tiling inspector you will also see a positioning toolbar at the top of the product editing panel which is activated when you select a tile.

Applying Changes

When you've finished editing a product you must click the **Apply** button in the bottom right corner to save your edits. So although you can see the changes you make as you work on the product, they are only final when you save them with the Apply button. You can click the **Cancel** button if you do not want to save your edits and keep the product as it was. Click the **Apply to all** button if you want to apply the edits to all the products in the job and overrule any previous edits made to these products.

NOTE: Saved edits are also applied to products already placed on sheets.

Product Inspector

The product is initially the same size as the original image. The product inspector is where you can crop the original image, change the product size and specify how the image fits in the product, and specify the bleed.

- Click the tab to display the Product inspector where you can expand and collapse the various panels.

Product

Name The name set by the Layout Editor when you create a product from a file or duplicate a product. You can also set a different color to represent the product in various views by clicking the color patch.

Order Number Field to specify an order number of your choice.

Product Code Field to specify a product code of your choice.

Copies Enter the total number of copies of the selected image that you want to print, i.e. the number of copies on all the layouts multiplied by the run length.

> **NOTE:** This is not the number of images on the current sheet.

Grain/Flute Select grain/flute direction from the drop-down list for the media you will be printing on:

- None: No specific requirements regarding the substrate grain/flute
- Horizontal: the product grain/flute must run horizontally through the product
- Vertical: the product grain/flute must run vertically through the product

Size

At the top you see the Product Size and this is followed by a table with details of how this size is calculated, starting from the size of the image (Artwork Size) and after the cropping and scaling specified in the panels below is applied. A black asterisk is displayed when the size is different from the native size of the image, i.e. with scaling, fitting, image operations, etc. applied. The asterisk is blue if fitting is applied.

Sources

This panel specifies the files used for the design and the artwork of the product. These file names may include the page number if the source file has several pages. Clicking the drop-downs reveals a menu for selecting a different design or artwork.

Design The first drop-down list in this panel specifies the file used for the design of the product; this can be a PDF file or a CAD file and is followed by an asterisk if the design has been changed.

Artwork The F and the B drop-downs specify the artwork file used for the front and the back of the product, respectively. A warning icon is displayed if the artwork cannot be aligned with the design automatically.

Crop

You can crop the image by specifying a single value for all four sides with the link icon closed, or by entering values for each side with the link icon open. These cropping values are applied to the original image dimensions, so before other modification such as fitting and bleed are applied. If you scale the image, you can select the **Show scaled crop values** check box and then enter values that relate to the scaled size.

NOTE: You can also use the Cropping tool to crop your image: see “Cropping an image” on page 387.

Step & Repeat (make pattern) Select this check box to step and repeat an image and create a pattern that can subsequently be placed on the layout sheet. See “Step & Repeat Patterns” on page 384.

Product Size

Size Here you can specify the size that you want for the finished product. When you open an image in the Product Editor the first time, the product size is equal to the image size. The product size is the same as the frame in the Layout Editor. Leave the link icon closed if you want to keep the aspect ratio of the original image. You can change the orientation of the product by clicking the swap dimensions button to the right of the size fields.

- Use image size: The product size is identical to the image size and this size can be scaled by entering a percentage.
- Standard size from the list: Choose a size from the drop-down list and the scaling factors for the length and height are displayed to the left of the dimensions. You can edit the dimensions.

- Custom: Lets you specify the length and width in your preferred size units.

Fitting Options

If you chose a size in the list or defined a specific product size you can also set the fitting options. Otherwise the image fits in the product box.

- Orientation: Selecting the *Rotate for better fit* check box rotates the image so the long edge of the product size aligns with the long side of the image.
- Scaling: Select how you want to scale the image to fit in the product:
  - None: no scaling is applied to fit the image to the product; it takes up as much space as required to accommodate its original size
  - Fill with image: scales the image so it fills the product and crops the image if necessary.
  - Fit image: scales the image so it fits completely in the product which is not necessarily filled.
  - Fit image to width: scales the image so its width fits that of the product.
  - Fit image to height: scales the image so its height fits that of the product.

Maintain proportions

Keeps the width and height scale factors the same when scaling. This means that some parts of the image may be clipped.

Alignment

Choose a position (top left, top center, top right, etc.) for the cropped, scaled or rotated image inside the product size.

Total frame size

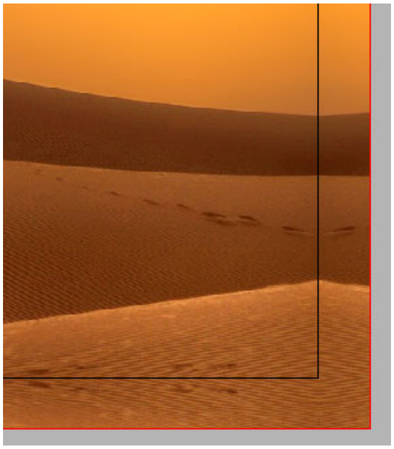
The product size + canvas extensions

When you apply your changes, the image appears in the images list of the Layout Editor with the new product size. If you edit the image again, you can start from the original image size. Any changes you make do not affect images which are already placed on sheets.

Bleed/Mask

Bleed can be taken from the image file or created by the system. Specifying bleed does not affect the product size or crop.

Figure 9.19: Mirrored image content added as bleed (between black and red boxes)



Bleed types From the drop-list you can specify when bleed is created by the system or taken from the bleed area available in the image file. These options are mainly relevant for images which have a bleed area present in the image file. Only the first and the last options are relevant if the image has no bleed area.

- None: Sets the maximum bleed to 0 even if bleed is provided in the image file. The bleed box coincides with the canvas extension box or the product size.
- From image, fixed size: The system uses the bleed in the image file for the maximum bleed you specified or only what is available if the bleed in the image is less than the specified bleed.
- From image, disable if none: The system uses the bleed in the image file for the maximum bleed or less if the bleed in this file is less. No bleed is created if the image file has no bleed.
- From image, create if needed: The system uses the bleed in the image file if it is equal or greater than the specified maximum bleed; if the image bleed is less than the specified bleed, the system creates the bleed and does not use the image bleed.
- Always create bleed: The system creates the maximum bleed, effectively replacing any bleed in the image file.

Maximum bleed Specify the size of the bleed area you want around the image or canvas extension. Bleed is created around the canvas extension if this is present, not around the image. Enter one value for all sides or open the link icon to enter values for bleed along the four sides as desired. Press Enter to apply the values.

Bleed Generator

By default, the system mirrors the content along the edges of the image to create the specified bleed if no bleed area is provided in the image file. You can fine-tune or change this behavior by clicking the pencil icon next to the bleed types to open the Bleed Generator dialog box.

Method This is how the system will create the bleed content from the image content:

- Mirror edge content: The bleed area is filled by mirroring the content within the bleed range along the edges of the product box.
- Scale entire content: The entire image is scaled proportionally to fill the bleed area.

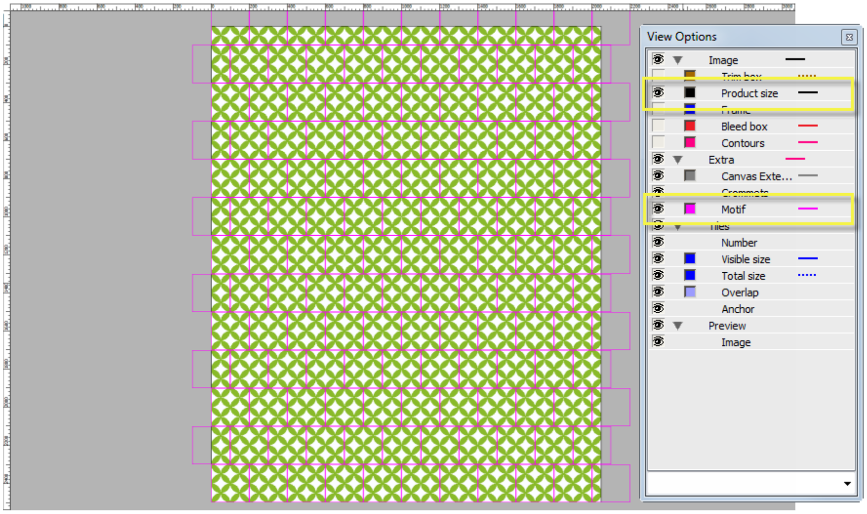
Inset The bleed content is created, starting from the specified inset inside the product box and on top of the existing content. This is useful if the image content does not extend to the product box.

Preserve existing bleed Select the Options check box to preserve the bleed content in the image file underneath the bleed created by the system.

Step & Repeat Patterns

Select the *Step & Repeat (make patterns)* check box at the top of the Image Inspector to step and repeat an image (i.e. the *motif*) and create a seamless pattern that can subsequently be placed on the layout sheet. This feature offers advanced options to vary the pattern which are not possible when using Step & Repeat to repeat an image directly on a sheet in the Layout Editor. Applications include wallpaper, curtains, flooring, etc.

Figure 9.20: Horizontal and vertical cells of a step & repeat pattern



Product Size

Size Here you can choose how you want the size of the finished product to be determined:

- Manual: Select this option to enter the product size; the initial size is the image size.
- From Pattern (default): The dimension boxes are disabled and the product size accommodates the pattern you create, including its gaps, scaling, etc.
- Minimal Repeat: The number of repeats and corresponding product size are calculated for making a minimum repeating pattern.

Cogwheel Open the cogwheel to match the product size with the size of the media. Choosing this option steps and repeats the motif so a pattern is created that fits the media size. This also enables the dimension boxes and sets them to Manual. You have two options:

- From Media: Copies the dimensions of the currently selected media into the dimension boxes and creates a pattern that covers the entire media using the image as motif.

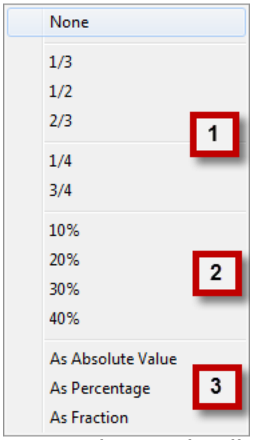
- From Media with Margins: Does the same as From Media but uses the dimensions of the media minus the finishing margins.

Horizontally and Vertically

In the Horizontally and Vertically panels you can fine-tune the horizontal rows and vertical columns of the pattern grid.

Repeat Enter the number of times you want to repeat the motif horizontally/vertically – if the Auto check box is not selected. If the check box is selected, the number of repeats is calculated for you, for example if you are using one of the From Media options.

Brick/Drop Brick sets an offset to shift the cells of alternating rows to the *right*, and Drop sets an offset to move alternating columns *down*. You can specify this offset in several ways: as a fraction of the motif, as a percentage of the motif, or as an absolute value in mm or inches. Click the drop-down list to display preset fractions and percentages, and options that allow you to enter your own absolute value, percentage or fraction.



1 Preset fractions for offsetting motifs in rows/columns
2 Preset percentages
3 Options to set your own fraction or percentage

Mirror Steps You can choose to mirror alternate stepped motifs horizontally, vertically or both. This is possible for rows as well as columns, or both.

Fitting Here you select how the generated pattern must be fitted on the specified product size:

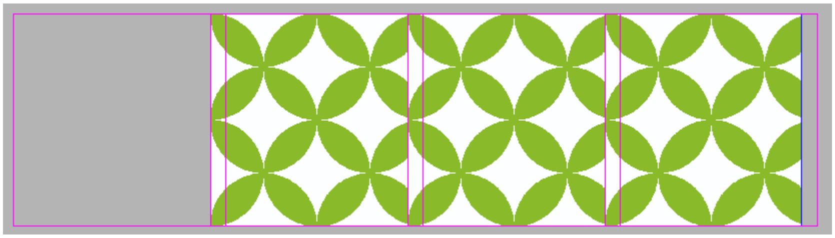
- Omit partial: The content of the last partial cells of the rows/columns is deleted from the pattern design.
- Clip partial: The content of the last cells of the rows/columns is clipped to coincide with the pattern size. This is the default if you specify the product size with From Media.
- Fit scale: Select this option to scale the repeated motif so it fits in all the cells.
- Fit gaps: Select this option to add gaps so the entire repeated motif fits in all the cells.

Scale Set a percentage if you want to scale the cells and the motif horizontally/vertically.

Gap/overlap A positive value creates a gap between the cells and a negative value makes them overlap. Click the drop-down list to display preset fractions and percentages, and options that allow you to enter your own absolute value, percentage or fraction (same as Brick/Drop). Select the *Between images only* check box if don't want a gap/overlap at the beginning and end of the rows/columns.

Overlap Order Two buttons let you control how the repeated motifs overlap each other. The default order is that the motifs on the right/top overlap the adjacent motifs on the left/bottom.

Figure 9.21: Motifs on the right overlapping adjacent motifs (default)



Global

Settings in the Global panel apply to the whole pattern.

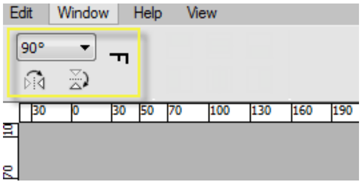
First Cell Here you can rotate (90°, 180°, 270°) and/or mirror the image to modify the initial motif. The F symbol indicates the combined effect of the rotation and mirroring.

Skip Steps Enter a value (n) to leave every n+1 cell empty (no motif).

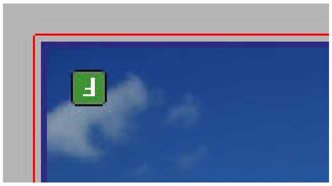
Offset Enter a value to shift the entire pattern horizontally or vertically. Click the drop-down list to display preset fractions and percentages, and options that allow you to enter your own absolute value, percentage or fraction (same as Brick/Drop).

Rotate and Mirror (Positioning Tools)

Use the Rotate drop-down list (0, 90°, 180° or 270°) to rotate and the Vertical or Horizontal Mirror buttons to mirror the image and its product box. The **F** symbol next to the buttons indicates the combined effect of the rotation and mirroring.



You only see the effect of rotating and mirroring when you place the image on a sheet in the Layout Editor where you can also perform the same rotating and mirroring actions. See "Positioning and resizing products with the positioning toolbar" on page 282. The fact that you have rotated or mirrored the image is indicated with a green **F** icon in the top left corner of the image.



▷ Cropping an image

You can crop an image by entering values in the Crop panel of the inspector or interactively on the image using the Crop tool.

1 Open the image you want to crop and click the Crop Image tool in the bottom toolbar.

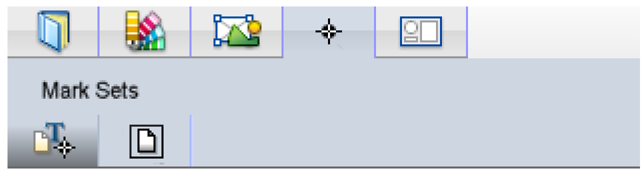
A crop box appears on the image which you can resize to define the crop. You will also see a Crop and Revert button in the toolbar.

2 When you've finished cropping the image, click Crop to save your changes and crop the image. Us the Revert button to go back to the previous status.

Mark Sets Inspector and Mark Inspector

- Click the tab to display a combined tab with the Mark Sets Inspector and the Mark Inspector.

You then see two tabs.



The first tab is the Mark Sets Inspector that you can use to apply sets of product marks to all the products in the job (first section) or to apply sets of Press Sheet Marks to all the press sheets in the job (second section). Select the check marks to add marks. Click the cogwheels to switch off the Mark Sets or remove manual marks.

The second tab shows the details of a selected mark or a mark you just placed using the Marks palette. You can edit the settings for the selected mark.

Related topics:

- Mark Engraver on page 612
- Place Station Numbers on page 313

CHAPTER 10

Monitoring and Configuring Your System

This section describes how you can monitor and configure the Asecuri System from the System Overview window.

- System Overview Window 390
- Hardware Pane 391
  - Hardware System Scalability 391
  - Activity Monitoring 392
- Task Processor Pane 393
  - Managing your Task Processors 393
  - Monitoring your Task Processors 396
  - Grouping Task Processors for Load Balancing 404
- Resources Pane 405
  - Asecuri System Configuration 405
  - Job Housekeeping 408
  - Logging 411
  - Templates 414
  - Working with Template Categories 414
  - Working with Ticket Templates 415
  - Page Sizes 417
  - Products 418
  - Sheet Sizes 418
  - Imposition 419
  - Users 423
  - Accounts 427
  - Disk Storage 428
  - Configuring Your Task Processors 434
  - Managing Parameter Sets 435
  - Managing Resources 437

System Overview Window

The System Overview is one of the three main windows of the Asecuri Client. It provides an overview of the overall configuration of your Asecuri System and the Hardware System(s) running the system.

The System Overview is divided into 3 panes:

- Hardware Pane
- Task Processor Pane
- Resources Pane

Use this window primarily for:

- Configuring the Task Processors
- Creating and editing Parameter Sets for the Task Processors.
- Monitoring Task Processor activities

NOTE: Task Processor configuration is for service engineers only. However, the Press can be configured by an administrator.

Hardware Pane

This pane displays the Asecuri System icon and one or more Hardware System icons.

- The Asecuri System stands for the entire software system running on one or more Hardware Systems. When you click the Asecuri System icon, you will see all of the Task Processors available for the entire Asecuri System. In the Resources pane, you will see icons for Asecuri System Configuration, Job Housekeeping, Logging, Templates, Accounts, etc.

- Next to the System icon, Asecuri displays the Hardware System(s) running the Asecuri software. There is always at least one Hardware System icon which corresponds to the main Windows 2003/2008 server on which the Asecuri System was installed. If, during installation, the Asecuri System processes were distributed over additional “satellite” hardware systems, you will see the corresponding Hardware System icons (see “Hardware System Scalability” on page 391).

Hardware System Scalability

To provide faster and more efficient use of tasks and resources, your Asecuri System processes may be distributed over 2 or more physical hardware systems. In this case, you will see additional “satellite” Hardware System icons in the Hardware pane, each one corresponding to a physical system. One of the Hardware Systems is highlighted in bold: This is the main Hardware System, which is running the “core” Asecuri System software.

If you select one of these icons, you will see the Task Processors that are available on the selected Hardware System. All the other Task Processors will appear faded out. By selecting each of the Hardware Systems in turn, you can see which Task Processors are installed on which systems.

Similarly, if you select a Task Processor, you will see to which Hardware System it belongs: The other Hardware Systems will appear faded out.

You may also see that some Task Processors (such as Normalize and Render) are duplicated on two or more Hardware Systems. This can reduce the processing burden on a single Hardware System, and greatly increase the speed with which jobs are handled by the Asecuri System.

For information on setting up Satellite servers, refer to the Asecuri Installation Guide.

Activity Monitoring

Your Asecuri System can run certain maintenance tasks, such as Job Housekeeping, in the background. These tasks may slow down the processing of jobs. This kind of activity is indicated with a green border around the main or satellite icons in the hardware pane and implies that processing speed may be affected.

- Double-click a hardware icon to open the Activity Monitor dialog and display a list of current tasks and components.

Task Processor Pane

This pane displays all of the available Task Processors for the selected hardware system. You can also check the Task Processors' activity by double-clicking their icon.

The Task Processors are divided into four categories:

- Input Task Processors
- Processing Task Processors
- Output Task Processors
- Print Task Processors

Managing your Task Processors

This section explains how you can manage your Task Processors from the System Overview window. You can start, stop and restart any Task Processor. Stopping a Task Processor (if you are not planning to use it) will improve system performance, since Asecuri will then require fewer system resources. Output Task Processors need to be restarted if you change the configuration of the associated output device.

Additionally, Task Processors associated with physical output devices can be put online and offline. You can also create a PostScript Printer Description file (PPD) containing all job-related information specific for your output environment.

TIP: In Asecuri, you can create PPD files for different PS Printer Drivers for Macintosh as well as PC. You can further specify some content-related options.

See also "Monitoring your Task Processors" on page 396.

▷ To start a Task Processor

1 In the System Overview, locate the inactive Task Processor.

When a Task Processor is inactive, the icon will have static horizontal stripes running through it.

2 Context-click the Task Processor, and select Start from the context menu.

▷ To stop a Task Processor

1. In the System Overview, locate the active Task Processor.
2. Context-click the Task Processor, and select Stop from the context menu.

   The Task Processor will stop after a few moments. When the Task Processor has stopped, the icon will have static horizontal stripes running through it.

   You can re-activate it by context-clicking it and selecting Start from the context menu.

▷ To restart a Task Processor

1. In the System Overview, locate the active Task Processor.
2. Context-click the Task Processor, and select Restart from the context menu.

   While the Task Processor is restarting, the icon will have moving horizontal stripes running through it.

▷ To put an Output Task Processor offline

1. In the System Overview, locate the active Output Task Processor.

2. Context-click the Task Processor, and select Put Offline from the context menu.

   The Task Processor is colored blue to indicate that it is offline.

▷ To put an Output Task Processor online

1. In the System Overview, locate the offline Output Task Processor.

   Offline Task Processors are colored blue.

2 Context-click the Task Processor, and select Put Online from the context menu.

The Task Processor comes back online, and the blue shading is removed from the icon.

▷ To create a PPD file for an Output Device

1 In the System Overview Window, select the output device for which you want to create a PPD file.

2 Choose File > Export Output Device PPD. You can also directly context-click on the Output Device and select Export Output Device PPD from the context menu.

The PPD User Options dialog box appears.

3 Specify the necessary Format and Content options as specified in “PPD User Options” on page 402.

4 Click OK to create the PPD file.

▷ To print an exposure test page for platesetters

When you first start to use your platesetters, you should submit an Exposure Test job to check the output and to select the engine’s best exposure settings. You should continue periodically to submit Exposure Test jobs to make sure that the engine is still producing good quality output.

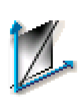
NOTE: This option is currently supported only for the Galileo and XCalibur platesetters.

---

1 Select the System Overview.

2 Select your platesetter.

3 Double-click the Linearization Curves icon in the Resources pane.



The Linearization Curves overview appears. In the upper pane, you see all of the available Linearization Curves for the selected platesetter.

4 Click the Exposure... button (only available for Galileo and XCalibur platesetters).

The Exposure Parameters dialog box is displayed. The name of the selected engine is displayed in the title bar of the dialog box.

You will see a list of resolutions at which you can print an exposure test. For each resolution, you will see default frequency and exposure settings. If you wish, you can change these default settings.

5 To change the frequency and exposure settings:

- Select a resolution, and click the Edit button:

  The Resolution Test Settings dialog box is displayed.

- Click the Frequency list, and select one of the available frequencies.

- Enter an Exposure setting.

- Click OK to return to the Exposure Test dialog box.

6 Use the check boxes in the Print column to select one or more of the available resolution settings.

7 Click the Print button.

The Exposure Test dialog box is closed, and test pages are printed out on the engine at the selected resolutions. The print date is automatically added to the test pages.

In the Job List, all exposure tests are grouped under the same order number called “Exposure Test”. The job name of the test file to be printed is called “<device name> Exposure Test”.

Monitoring your Task Processors

The current status of a Task Processor is indicated by the appearance of the Task Processor icon. The icon may be adapted with a series of different colors and overlays which indicate the hardware or component status of the Task Processor.

Output Task Processor Hardware Status

The hardware status is the status reported by the physical output engine.

When a physical output device is not idle (i.e. able to communicate and process jobs), it will be in one of the following states:


Paused: The output engine is able to communicate, but cannot process any tasks. A user interaction has taken place on the device itself to trigger this status.


Disconnected: The output engine’s cable has been unplugged.


Warning: The hardware engine requires attention (e.g. ink low), but can still receive tasks.


This platesetter is managed by the PlateMaker Client. The yellow ‘sun’ patch indicates that the device is in attended state (i.e. A user is logged in to the PlateMaker Client).


This platesetter is managed by the PlateMaker Client. The gray ‘moon’ patch indicates that the device is in unattended state (i.e. no one is logged in to the PlateMaker Client).


Error: The hardware engine requires attention - it cannot continue to receive and process tasks until the problem has been resolved (e.g. no ink).

In each of the above cases, the relevant status icon will appear as an overlay on the Output Task Processor.

NOTE: The hardware status is not the same as the component status. For example, the component status may be online and ready while the physical hardware engine is actually disconnected or paused.

Task Processor Component (Software) Status

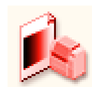
This reflects the status of the connection between the Asecuri System and the Asecuri Task Processor component. As such this is a software setting which has no relation to the actual physical status of the associated output device.

NOTE: The component status is not the same as the hardware status. For example, the component status may be online and ready while the physical hardware engine is actually disconnected or paused.

The Task Processor component status is indicated visually as described below.

The Task Processor is ready, and is currently idle.

The Task Processor turns green when it is processing a task. For example, the Avantra Task Processor is busy processing a separation.



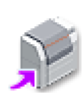
The Task Processor turns red if a processing error occurs. In this case an error notification is sent to the Message Board, explaining the nature of the error.

The Task Processor turns blue if it is offline.

When the Task Processor has been stopped (inactive), the icon will have horizontal stripes running through it. You can re-activate it by context-clicking on the icon and selecting Start from the context menu.

The Task Processor is starting up (moving horizontal stripes).

The Task Processor is locked, because you do not have a license to use it.



A purple arrow is attached to the Task Processor icon if:
- You have a remote license. This means that this Task Processor is not licensed to execute tasks: These tasks are processed remotely on another Asecuri System. However, you can use this Task Processor to specify the settings in the Production Plan.
- A remote proofer is installed (as specified in the installer). The remote proofer is combined with the Remote Proofer Controller Task Processor.

These status indicators can also be seen in the Output Device List, in the Job and Hot Ticket Managers.

Activity Window

The Activity window consists of two panes and a toolbar:

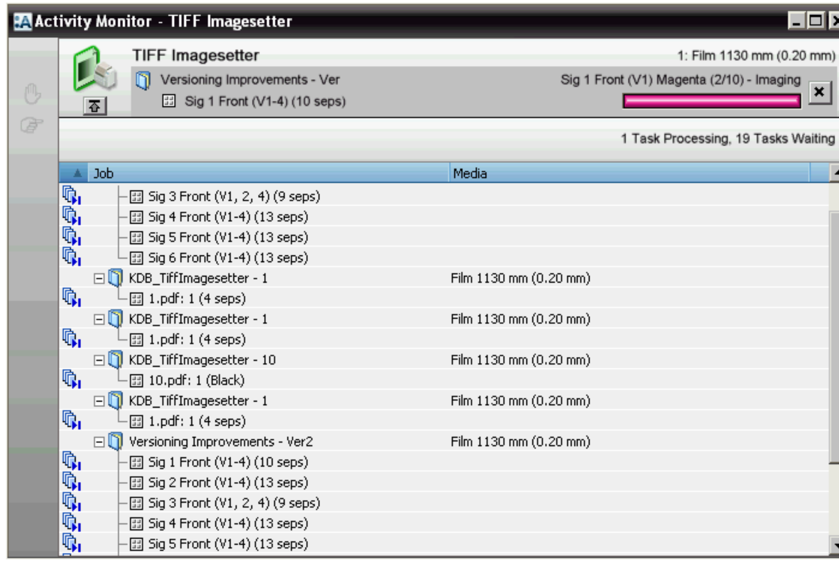
- In the upper pane, you can see the selected Task Processor icon, and a brief summary of the Task Processor's activity. This indicates how many tasks are being processed or are waiting to be processed, and the number of errors. The status of the Task Processor is indicated by the color of the icon. For more information on icon color codings, see “Task Processor Component (Software) Status” on page 397.

You can see which tasks are currently being processed by the selected Task Processor. The progress of the activity is shown by a progress indicator. If more Task Processors of the same type are installed on the Asecuri System (e.g., two Normalizers or two Renderers), then you will see the activity for all Task Processors of this type.

NOTE: If you are viewing the activity of an output Task Processor with ganging enabled (such as a Sherpa proofer), you will also see a Flush button. If you click this button, Asecuri will stop collecting input (ganging) and start printing the available pages (see “To flush job results” on page 402). Asecuri will also indicate which type of media is currently loaded.

- In the lower pane, you can see the tasks that are waiting to be processed. This information is displayed in three columns:
  - Status icon: Indicates the current status of the task (waiting for media, waiting for a soft proof, etc.). For a description of all these icons, see “Job Status Icons” on page 119.
  - Job: Lists the jobs, and the individual tasks within each job.
  - Destination/Media: Indicates to which output device the job will be sent. If you are monitoring the activity of an output device, this column will display the type and size of the media that is being used.

  By default, the tasks are sorted according to status. You can sort the list according to job name or job status, in ascending or descending order, by clicking the appropriate column title. You can also re-order the tasks by dragging and dropping.
- On the left side of the window, you can see the Activity Toolbar.



Activity Toolbar

The Activity toolbar includes the following buttons that allow you to manage the activity of the selected Task Processor:

 Continue processing a selected result that is on hold.

 Put the selected activity on hold.

NOTE: The buttons you actually see depend on the current status of the task you are viewing.

▷ To check Task Processor activity

1. In the System Overview, locate the active Task Processor. It has changed color or is surrounded by a colored glow.
2. Double-click the Task Processor icon.

   The Task Processor's Activity window appears, where you can monitor the activity of Task Processors. The Activity window shows:

   - The jobs that are currently being processed
   - The jobs that are waiting to be processed

- Any errors that have occurred

To abort a task

1. In the System Overview, locate an active Task Processor.

   An active Task Processor will have changed color, or is surrounded by a colored glow.

2. Double-click the Task Processor icon.

   The Task Processor's Activity window appears.

   In the middle pane, you can see which jobs are currently being processed. The progress of the activity is shown by a progress indicator.

3. To abort the current task, click the Abort button to the right of the progress bar:

   The selected task is immediately aborted.

To hold a task

1. In the System Overview, locate the Task Processor which has scheduled the task you want to put on hold.

2. Double-click the Task Processor icon.

   The Task Processor's Activity window appears.

3. Select the task you want to hold.

4. Click the Hold button.

   The selected task is put on hold. You will see the following status icon next to the task name:

To resume a task that is on hold

1. In the System Overview, locate the Task Processor with a task on hold.

2. Double-click the Task Processor icon.

   The Task Processor's Activity window appears. Any tasks on hold will have the following status icon next to the task name:

3 Select the task on hold.

4 Click the Continue button.

The selected task resumes processing.

▷ To flush job results

1 In the System Overview, locate an active output Task Processor.

NOTE: This must be a Proofer device.

An active output Task Processor will have changed color, or is surrounded by a colored glow.

2 Double-click the Task Processor icon.

The Task Processor's Activity window appears. If you are viewing the activity of an output Task Processor with ganging enabled (such as a Sherpa proofer), you will see a Flush button.

3 Click Flush.

The selected Task Processor stops its current activity, and is forced to immediately output it's collected results.

PPD User Options

This dialog box contains the different user options for PPD Format and Content.

PPD Printer Name

Here, you can change the name of the printer in the PPD file.

PPD Format

In the Format tab, you can specify the PS Printer Driver for which you want to create the PPD file.

Create Windows PPD Files

- Adobe PS Printer Driver (PS)
- Microsoft Driver NT (NT)

- Microsoft Driver 2000 (20)
- Microsoft Driver XP (XP)
- Microsoft Driver 2003 (23)

Create Mac PPD Files

- Apple LaserWriter/Adobe PS Printer 8.3.X (83)
- Apple LaserWriter 8.4/Adobe PS Printer 8.5 (85)
- Apple LaserWriter/Adobe PS Printer 8.6 (86)
- OSX (10)

Append driver identification to file names Select this check box to add the 2-digit printer driver ID (PS, NT, etc.) to the end of the PPD files names.

Keep filename short Select this check box to ensure that the name of the printer does not exceed the maximum number of characters allowed by Windows.

Use Japanese character encoding Select this check box to enable Japanese character encoding.

PPD Content

In the Content tab, you can specify some content-related options for the PPD file by selecting the required check boxes.

Halftones Select this check box to include halftone information in the PPD.

Page Sizes Select the type of page size you want to use:

- Standard page sizes
- Output sizes defined for device
- Both

NOTE: Due to a limitation of the PPD file size, only 58 screens will be visible in front end applications.

Parameter Sets <output device> Flow If you would like to use any of the default parameter sets of the output components specified in the Hot Ticket Production Plan, select the associated check box. By default, all the check boxes are selected (e.g. - for a TIFF Imagesetter flow - Normalize, Run List, Impose. Trap, Separate, Render, etc.).

NOTE: This option is only available when creating a PPD for a Hot Ticket.

Grouping Task Processors for Load Balancing

If you have several task processors of the same type, you can group these task processors and subsequently use this group in your production plans. Asecuri automatically chooses the task processor which is available and the most suitable for the job, effectively balancing the load applied to these task processors.

▷ To group Task Processors

You need at least 2 identical task processors to create a group.

1 In the System Overview, context-click one of the identical task processors and choose New Group.

   The Edit User Group is displayed.

2 Enter a Group Name. You can change this name later if you want.

3 Select the check boxes for the additional Task Processors that you want to add to the group.

4 Click OK.

   The new Task Processor group is displayed with the group icon.

   You can now use this group in your production plans.

▷ To delete/edit a Task Processor group

1 In the System Overview, context-click the Task Processor group you want to delete or edit.

   The Edit User Group is displayed.

2 Choose Delete Group to ungroup the Task Processors and delete the group

   OR

3 Choose Edit group to add or remove Task Processors in the group.

4 Click OK.

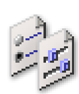
Resources Pane

The Resources pane displays the resources that are available for the currently selected System or Task Processor:

- If the Asecuri System is selected in the Hardware pane, in the Resources pane you will see the Configuration, Job Housekeeping, Logging, and Templates icons. If you have additional options installed, you may also see the Accounts, JDF Server, and JDF Stripping icons.
- If a Hardware or “Satellite” System is selected in the Hardware pane, you will see the Disk Storage icon in the Resources pane.
- If a Task Processor is selected, you will see the available Resources for the selected Task Processor in the Resources pane. These will always include a Parameter Sets icon, which allows you to create predefined Task Processor settings.

NOTE: Most of these resources are intended for administrators, and are hidden to operators.

Asecuri System Configuration



If you select the Asecuri System in the Hardware pane, you will see the Configuration icon in the Resources pane.

By double-clicking the Configuration icon, you can access the Asecuri System settings. These settings allow you to specify an e-mail address to which all system-related messages will be sent.

Administrator access level only!

System Configuration Settings

Double-click the Configuration icon when the Asecuri System is selected to access the Asecuri System configuration settings.

Administrator access level only!

Administrator

This tab allows you to specify an e-mail address to which all system-related notifications will be sent (e.g. “insufficient disk space”).

E-mail messages to Select this check box to enable the e-mail service, and enter an e-mail address in the box on the right.

Announcement to users Enter text that you want to display as a service message each time a user logs on to the ProductionCenter application. You can specify a message for internal users and another for web users.

Mail Server

Sender Name: Specifies the name associated with your e-mail address. When you send messages, this name appears in the From box of your outgoing messages.

Email address: Specifies the e-mail address that people should use when sending mail to you at this account. The e-mail address must be in the format name@company: For example, johndoe@ECO3.com.

Mail Server Outgoing mail (SMTP) server: Specifies your SMTP server for outgoing messages. You can get this information from your internet service provider or LAN administrator.

Requires secure connection: Specifies whether to use the SSL (Secure Sockets Layer) security protocol when connecting to this server. The administrator or internet service provider for the server will indicate if the SSL requirement exists.

Override default SMTP port: Allows you to specify an SMTP port that will be used instead of the default SMTP port.

Requires authentication: Specifies whether to require authentication when connecting to this server. Select this check box, enter the e-mail address and the password in the boxes on the right.

Test This button sends an e-mail using the **Sender** address to test the Mail Server configuration.

Database Maintenance

This tab allows you to control how Asecuri maintains its own database.

Backup You can instruct Asecuri to write backups of its system database to a backup disk or shared volume. This allows you to restore the database in case the main system fails. The Backup tab controls whether Asecuri backs up the system database, and how and when it does it.

Make Full Backup when Job Housekeeping runs: Backs up and optimizes the databases. Full backups are a costly operation, and you should therefore limit the frequency (the default is once a day) and run it when production activity is minimal (default at 04:00). The minimum period for a full backup is once per day.

The Schedule group shows the dates of the last full and incremental backups.

Backup Now: Press this button to perform a full database backup using the saved configuration (i.e. the configuration stored on the server). You can do this at any time, regardless of automatic backup schedules. This button is disabled when there is no backup destination, or when Asecuri is currently backing up the database.

Include all System and Task Processor resources: Backs up system process resources (in the event of a system crash).

Backup to: Asecuri writes a copy of the backup data to the location (local disk or shared volume) you define or to the PrintSphere cloud server. If it cannot write to that location, Asecuri notifies you and disables the schedules.

Scratch disk: This is a local disk that Asecuri uses during the backup process. You can select any disk that is local to the core server, and that is not being used as a backup destination.

Previous backup sets: You can keep a number of full backup sets instead of keeping only the latest. This allows you to roll back the state of the system beyond the most recent backup. If you choose to keep only the last one, Asecuri deletes the previous backup set (or sets) after successfully doing a full backup. If you choose to keep the last ‘n’ sets, Asecuri leaves the most recent backups and purges the older one(s). Any changes to this option come into effect the next time a full backup is made.

- Delete: Deletes the previous backup set after successfully writing the new one. Note that this deletes all previous backup sets (in case you switched from ‘Keep last’ to ‘Delete’).
- Keep last: Keeps the specified number of previous backup sets. Note that the total number of backup sets is number specified plus one (the current one). Make sure you have sufficient disk storage!

Security

This tab allows you to protect PDF files with a password and/or with a certificate that uses private/public key encryption method.

Protected PDFs

Document Open Password: Specify the password that is required to open the PDF files.

Change Permissions Password: Specify the password that is required to print and/or change permissions of the PDF files.

Certificate security

Digital ID file (.pfx, .p12): Locate the digital-ID file with extensions of .pxf or .p12 files. The file must be accessible by the Apogee Server and all of its Satellites.

NOTE: Never distribute this file, as it contains the private key.

Password: Specify the password that is used to create the digital-ID.

Exporting files

If you want to encrypt files when you export them, you must preserve the Certificate from the input files. The exported files can then re-use that Certificate.

Preserve input certificate and export encrypted files: Select this check box to preserve certificate of the input file and export encrypted files.

ProductionCenter

ProductionCenter URL

The URL of the printer's ProductionCenter portal.

All Printer Company users can see all jobs

Select this check box to allow users with the View Only role to see jobs in the WebApproval service.

Cogwheel menu

Compare Configuration

Compares the System settings against the default values.

Restore Defaults

Restores all settings to their factory defaults.

Job Housekeeping

If you select the Asecuri System in the Hardware pane, you will see the Job Housekeeping icon in the Resources pane.

Administrator access level only!

By double-clicking the Job Housekeeping icon, you can access the housekeeping options for archiving and deleting jobs. These tasks are performed on a daily or weekly basis, and cannot be switched off. You can specify, however, the exact time at which the archiving is carried out.

Whether a job will be archived or not, can be set in the Archive after finish option in the Options tab of the Ticket Editor. During the archiving, Asecuri examines each job and archives the eligible ones.

NOTE: Preferably, you should schedule housekeeping activities at night, so that they do not interfere with your processing tasks.

Job Housekeeping Settings

Double-click the Job Housekeeping icon to access the Housekeeping settings for a selected System.

Administrator access level only!

Run Job List maintenance

Choose when Asecuri runs the maintenance tasks by selecting the appropriate options from the lists:

Every: Specify how frequently Job List maintenance should be performed. This may be every day, or on a specific day of the week.

at: Specify the time of day when the Job List maintenance can start. You can either enter a time, or use the up and down arrows to select one.

Do Maintenance Now... Click this button to run all job maintenance tasks without waiting for the scheduled time. Note, however, that deleted jobs will only be cleaned up if you have set the ‘Keep deleted jobs...’ option to 0.

1- Archive jobs

Save job archive as Specify the directory in which job archives and dumps are saved. You need to specify the exact path name and use variables to guarantee a unique file name. You can also use the browse button next to the field to browse for the required location. This location must be a shared disk accessible by both Asecuri Client and Server. For more information on variables, refer to System Variables.

Include Job Log: Check this option to also archive the Job Log (selected by default).

Create archive folder

Apogee system creates the archive directory on the occasion of following events:

When creating the job: Creates an archive folder, when you create a new job or duplicate from an existing one.

When archiving the job: Creates an archive folder, if that job has no current archive folder.

Pre-process archive folder with

Select to run a pre-process script only after creating an archive folder for a new job. You must provide the full path name to the script.

Options

Specify any optional extra arguments that should be passed to the script.

Post-process archive with

Select to run a custom external script after the archive has been written. You must provide the full path name to the script.

Options

Specify any optional extra arguments that should be passed to the script.

2 - Delete jobs

When you run the Job List maintenance, Asecuri automatically deletes all finished jobs that are marked for deletion, and that have exceeded their "keep" period, as specified in the Options tab of the Job Ticket (see "When Job is Finished" on page 209). However, although it deletes all of the job's documents, processing results, and processing parameters, it does not delete the job description and log entry. The job is only completely removed using the options in "Clean up deleted jobs".

3 - Clean up deleted jobs

Keep deleted jobs for at least

Specify how long you want to keep deleted jobs by typing a number in the field and selecting the time unit (hours, days, weeks) in the list next to it.

If you do not want to keep deleted jobs, enter 0.

4 - Maintain Databases

This task runs the Database Maintenance, as configured in the DatabaseMaintenance tab of the System Configuration.

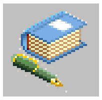
Cogwheel menu

Compare Configuration

Compares the Job Housekeeping settings against the default values.

Restore Defaults Restores all settings to their factory defaults.

Logging



If you select the Asecuri System in the Hardware pane, you will see the Logging icon in the Resources pane.

By double-clicking the Logging icon, you can access the settings related to the Logging activity of Asecuri. These allow you to control different aspects of the logging such as the logging schedule, export directory for log files or the items to be logged.

Administrator access level only!

Logging Settings

Select the Asecuri System, and double-click the Logging icon to access the Logging settings.

Administrator access level only!

System Log

This tab allows you to specify which events should be logged and when they should be removed from the system.

Events to log Select the appropriate check box to include the required events in the log:

User interactions (start, stop, restart, put online, put offline): This includes Task Processor statuses such as start, shutdown, hold or resume.

Errors & warnings: This includes the error status of Task Processors, device statuses such as error, online and offline and non-informative notifications with their reply.

Informative messages: Important job-related actions such as job editing.

Major Task Processor events (start, stop): This includes statuses such as boot or shutdown of Task Processors.

Housekeeping tasks: This refers to cleanup tasks such as archiving or deleting.

Log Clean up

Choose a schedule for cleaning up the system log:

Every: Specify how frequently the clean up should be performed. This may be every day, or a specific day of the week.

at: Specify the time at which the cleanup can start. You can either type the time or use the up and down arrows to choose it.

Clean Up Now: Click this button the cleanup the System Log immediately, without waiting for the scheduled time. This opens the Clean System Log dialog box. Here you can have all the events instantly removed regardless of their age, or have them first exported and removed afterwards.

Keep log of system events for at least: Specify the period during which a System event is kept in the log. Once it has exceeded this limit, Asecuri will remove the event during the daily cleanup. The minimum period is 1 day.

Specify the period by typing the number in the field and selecting the time unit (days, weeks) in the field next to it. You can use the up and down arrows to select the time unit.

Export events before deletion: Select this check box if you want Asecuri to export a copy of the events. This way, you can guarantee that no events will be lost or will appear twice. If you do not select this check box, Asecuri will keep all the events, until you clean it manually or switch the option back on.

Export to: Enter the path and filename to be used for exporting the System log. Asecuri exports the log after discarding the system events. You can also use the Browse button next to the field to locate the required directory.

There are three possibilities when exporting:

- If the log file already exists, Asecuri will try to append the events to the file.
- If it cannot append the events, it will create a new file with a sequence number.
- If there is no existing file, Asecuri will create a completely new file.

Job Log

This tab allows you to specify which job events should be logged and when they should be removed from the system.

Events to log

Select the appropriate check box to include the required events in the log:

Media usage: Events related to the use of resources such as film and plate or proofing media.

Used resources: Events related to Resource selection such as screen types, profiles, calibration and linearization curves. Events related to Task Processor parameter sets.

Color Management: Events related to input document color management, press and proofing output color management and spot colors.

Proofing actions: Events related to the proofing result such as waiting, continue, reject.

User interactions: Job related events such as resume, rush, edit. Task Processor related events such as hold, resume, rush. Result related events such as remake.

Errors & warnings: Non-informative notifications and their replies.

Informative messages: Important job-related actions such as job editing.

Parameter updates by Task Processor: when a Task Processor changes the job settings.

Task Life cycle events (created, started, finished): When a job is created, has started or is finished.

Export job log

Export the job log when a job finishes: Select this check box if you want Asecuri to export the job log. This will happen shortly after the job has finished and not during the daily cleanup.

If you remake a job after it has finished, Asecuri will append the new events to the existing exported log. If the log has been removed, it will create a new one.

Export as: Enter the path and filename to be used for exporting the Job log. You can also use the Browse button next to the field to locate the required directory.

There are three possibilities when exporting:

- If the log file already exists, Asecuri will try to append the events to the file.
- If it cannot append the events, it will create a new file with a sequence number.
- If there is no existing file, Asecuri will create a completely new file.

Reporting

This tab allows you to specify the retention period in weeks, months or years.

Keep Reporting History for Enter the reporting history period in weeks, months or years.

Cogwheel menu

Compare Configuration Compares the Logging settings against the default values.

Restore Defaults Restores all settings to their factory defaults.

Templates

Administrator access level only!

If you select the Asecuri System in the Hardware pane, you will see the Templates icon in the Resources pane.

By double-clicking the Templates icon, you can access the Templates dialog box, which allows you to create, edit and manage the different types of templates (Job Tickets, Hot Tickets, Layout Tickets and Layout Hot Tickets). From here, you can edit an existing template and save it with a different name. This is very useful when you regularly need to create tickets for similar jobs. You can start from an existing template and make any necessary changes without having to create a completely new ticket from scratch. You can also create new templates from the Ticket Editor using the File > Save as Template command.

For more information on creating Tickets, see “Creating and Editing Tickets” on page 199. You can save the Ticket Templates in Template Folders. In this way, you can for instance group Ticket Templates that you use for a specific customer or print job.

Related topics:

- Checking Hot Ticket and Ticket Template Consistency on page 192

Working with Template Categories

Template Categories are folders in which you can save your newly created Ticket Templates. You can group your Ticket Templates in different Template categories for specific types of jobs.

Administrator access level only!

▷ To manage your template categories

1. In the System Overview, select the Asecuri System icon in the Hardware pane.
2. Double-click the Ticket Templates Resources icon in the Resources pane.

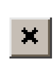
   The Templates dialog box appears.
3. Select either the Job Tickets tab or the Hot Tickets tab depending on for which type of Ticket Template you want to create or edit a Template Category.
4. In the Category list, do one of the following:
   - Click the New button to create a new Template category, type the name of the new category and click OK.

   - Select a Template category and click the Edit button to edit it. Rename the Template category and click OK.

   - Select the Template category that you want to delete and press Delete or click the Delete button. Click 'Yes' to confirm the deletion.

5. Close the Ticket Templates dialog box.

Related topics:

• Working with Ticket Templates on page 415

Working with Ticket Templates

In the Ticket Templates Resources category, you can edit, delete or set a Ticket Template as default.

Administrator access level only!

▷ To manage your Ticket Templates

1. In the System Overview, select the Asecuri System icon in the Hardware pane.
2. Double-click the Templates Resources icon in the Resources pane.

   The Templates dialog box appears.
3. Select either the Job Tickets tab or the Hot Tickets tab depending on which type of Ticket Template you want to edit.
4. To select the Ticket Template that you want to edit, delete or set as default, do one of the following:
   - Select the Ticket Template category in the Category list and select the Ticket Template that you want to edit.
   - Select All in the Category list to view all of the Ticket Templates and select the Ticket Template that you want to edit.
5. Do one of the following:
   - Click the Edit button to edit the Template in the Ticket Editor. Choose File > Save as Template and specify in which folder you want to save the Template. You can also save it under a new name. Click Save to save it.

     
   - Click the Default button to set the Template as default. It will appear in bold in the Ticket Template list.

     
   - Delete the Template by pressing Delete or clicking the Delete button. Confirm the deletion.

     
6. Close the Ticket Template dialog box.

▷ To export a Ticket Template

You may want to export a template for use by another Asecuri System, or in order to have a temporary backup file.

NOTE: You can only import/export all ticket templates for a specific category.

---

1. In the Templates dialog box, select a template from the list and click the Export button.

2. Locate the folder to which you want to export the template, and click OK.

   The template is exported as a MIME format file (*.mime).

▷ To import a Ticket Template

1. In the Templates dialog box, click the Import button.

2. Locate the folder which contains the template you want to import.

   This will be a template that was previously exported. This file will be in MIME format (*.mime).

3. Click Open.

   The imported template is displayed in the list.

Related topics:

- Checking Hot Ticket and Ticket Template Consistency on page 192

Page Sizes

Administrator access level only!

If you select the Asecuri System in the Hardware pane, you will see the Page Sizes icon in the Resources pane. By double-clicking this icon, you can access the Page Sizes settings. This allows you to specify page size resources for use in Multi-part jobs (as a property of a part).

Page Sizes Settings

Administrator access level only!

Name

The name with which this particular page size is known. If you leave it empty, the page size is shown using the dimensions (w x h).

Page Size

The width and height of the page (cannot be blank or 0).

You can specify units by entering them explicitly. Asecuri defaults to the standard units (mm) if you do not provide them.

You can create, edit or delete Page Sizes using the supplied buttons.

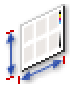
Products

The Products resource displays an overview of the Product presets which are available in the Product Inspector in the Products tab of the Job Ticket Editor.

Administrator access level only!

Refer to “Product Inspector” on page 379 for a description of the settings and Working with Apogee Impose on page 369.

Sheet Sizes



The Sheet Sizes resource allows you to specify Press Sheet sizes for use with Apogee Impose, as a property of a Press Sheet.

Administrator access level only!

If you select the Asecuri System in the Hardware pane, you will see the Sheet Sizes icon in the Resources pane. By double-clicking this icon, you can access the Sheet Sizes settings.

Sheet Sizes Settings

Name

The name with which this particular sheet size is known. If you leave it empty, the sheet size has no name so you must name it.

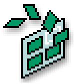
Sheet Size

The width and height of the page. For web production, leave the height blank or zero and these sizes will be picked up for web presses.

You can specify units by entering them explicitly. Asecuri defaults to the standard units (mm) if you do not provide them.

You can create, edit or delete Sheet Sizes in the usual way.

Imposition



Administrator access level only!

If you select the Asecuri System in the Hardware pane, you will see the Imposition icon in the Resources pane. By double-clicking the Imposition icon, you can access the Imposition settings. This allows you to specify some general and "split for proof" settings.

Imposition Settings

Administrator access level only!

General

This tab allows you to enable the clipping and define the Sheet Prefixes.

Clipping

Clip marks outside of the press sheet: Select this check box to clip marks when they run out of the press sheet.

Outer Margin: You can add a margin on the outside of the press sheet. Outer margin must be greater than or equal to zero.

Sheet Prefixes

The sheet prefixes are used to distinguish between press and fold sheets of different parts. You can control the grouping and numbering of the sheets with the Sheet prefix. This is a string of one or more characters to provide:

- a simple mechanism to group and number sheets, regardless of part and production set: All sheets with the same prefix are grouped and numbered independently of other groups. The sheet containing the lowest signature index is given the number 1, and the others are numbered consecutively in order of signature. index. The gaps in the index numbering are ignored.
- a mechanism to uniquely identify a sheet: The prefix, in combination with the sheet number is a unique identification of a sheet. The prefix and the number are simply concatenated, if you want to have a dash or another separator (except spaces), you need to make it part of the prefix string.

Default prefix: When you create production sets from the parts, the prefix is set according to the part type. In case a production set contains pages from multiple parts, the lowest page number determines the part type to use.

Part Type	Prefix
Cover	(empty)
Cover (perfect bound)	C
Plain	(empty)
Insert	I

When you create a new part manually, the prefix from the production set previously holding the sheets is copied (i.e., after filling in the sheets/sides). The prefix is left unchanged when you remove the sheets from a production set.

You can configure the prefixes for every part type in the Sheet Prefix configuration with the following parameters:

- Cover
- Cover (perfect bound)
- Plain
- Insert

Split for proof

Split for Proof disassembles the main imposition layout and reassembles it so the product can be proofed on a small (e.g. an A3) laser printer, maintaining the reader order of pages and the layout of the marks of the main imposition scheme. Split for Proof re-arranges the product as a set of 2-up saddle-stitch sheets. This arrangement allows for easy gathering and folding, with no cutting needed. Alternatively, you can have a 1-up arrangement. The following proofing modes are available:

- 1-up: Creates a proofing result for each page that is part of the main imposition.
- 2-up: Creates a proofing result for reader-spread that is part of the main imposition.
- Product proof: Creates a proofing result for each product that is placed on a sheet.

NOTE: Product proof mode is only available for Layout Editor based jobs, Plate Assembler jobs are not included.

Limit number of sheets for folding

You can limit the number of sheets that you need to fold together. The bigger the stack, the harder it is to fold. This option limits the number of sheets in a stack to the specified amount, making the folding easier. Note that this modifies the page arrangement: You need to stack and fold the correct number of sheets, otherwise the pages will not be in the correct reader order.

NOTE: This option is only applicable when you use 2-up Split for Proof.

Limit mark-zone around pages

You can limit the page area to be proofed to the page itself and a zone that contains the marks (except for the spine in case of 2-up). The area is thus the pages trim box expanded with the specified amount. If you switch it off, the boundaries of the page area are determined only by the output size.

This option is especially useful for preventing pages from being scaled down too much when using an imposition with large sheet or plate margins.

Emulate asymmetrical Folding Schemes and Web Production Schemes

You can add filler pages to the Soft for proof result to obtain the same page distribution as the Folding Schemes and Web Production Schemes produce.

Template Manager

Template path

Defines the location containing the Imposition templates.

Marks path Defines the location of the folder containing the Imposition marks.

Extra PJTF Marks path Defines the location of a folder containing extra PJTF files.

Marks Select which marks to print, and how to print them.

Print crop marks for bleed bounds: Print crop marks at the bounds of the bleed area.

Print side center marks: Print center marks for each side.

Print punch mark: Print a punch mark.

Crop and Fold Marks Print fold marks with white knockout: Print fold marks with a white knock-out. This makes the marks more visible when the underlying content is dark.

Print crop marks with white knockout: Print crop with a white knock-out.

Move crop marks when shingling: Move the crop marks together with the pages when using shingling. When you deselect it, the crop marks keep their original position, as if no shingling was applied.

NOTE: This option also affects the moving of crop marks for bleed bounds.

These options determine in which layer Asecuri prints crop and fold marks.

- On top: The crop and fold marks appear on top of everything, including pages and those marks that are set to “Bring to front”.
- On top of pages, below “Bring to front” marks: The crop and fold marks appear on top of everything, excluding those marks that are set to “Bring to front”. The crop and fold marks appear on top of the pages (most likely the bleed area), but they can be covered by important marks such as a color bar. In order to be effective, you should set only important marks to “Bring to front”.
- Below pages: Crop and fold marks appear below pages and marks. Select this option if you want pages and their bleed area to cover the crop and fold marks.

Text mark font Set the default font for text marks.

Default line width Set the default line width for marks.

Clip marks outside sheet Sets the distance outside the press sheet to clip marks.

Replace $SIDE by

Defines how Asecuri replaces the $SIDE variable, found as marks on imposition templates

A, B, C, D: Select this option for the traditional imposition replacement (A, B, and so on). This system assigns a unique identifier to each side, even on multi-web presses.

Front & Back: Select this option for the Asecuri convention: Front for front sides, Back for back sides.

Cogwheel menu

Compare Configuration

Compares the Imposition settings against the default values.

Restore Defaults

Restores all settings to their factory defaults.

Users

Administrator access level only!

The Users resource is where users are granted rights to Asecuri. When a user logs on, the roles assigned to the user in this resource are automatically activated.

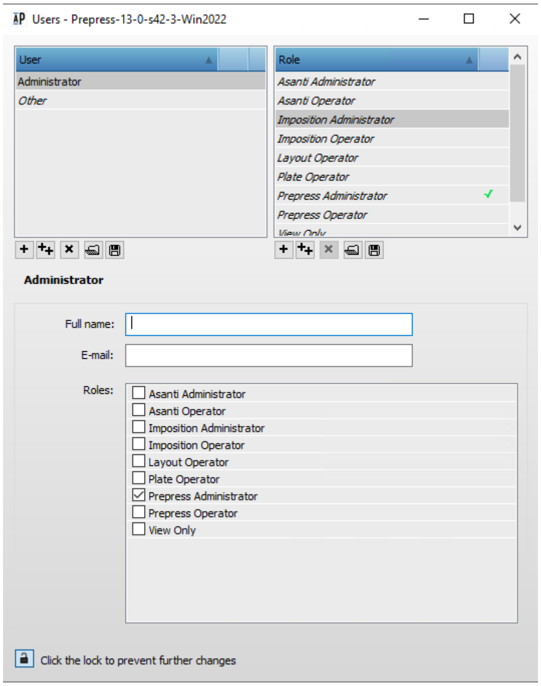
Select the Asecuri System in the Hardware pane to see the Users icon in the Resources pane. Double-click the Users icon to open the resource where you can create users and set their roles with detailed privileges.

User Settings

User list

Administrators can add and delete users in this list. Select a user in the list to see personal details and the assigned roles in the details pane under this list. One or more roles can be assigned and these are also indicated with a green check mark in the Role list. Assigning more than one role to a user allows further flexibility for user management. The names of the users in the Users column corresponds with the login names for your organization.

Figure 10.22: User details



NOTE: A role indicated in red in the details pane means that the role was deleted while it was still assigned to a user.

Role list

Each role is a collection of privileges which are displayed in the Privileges tab. Several default roles are provided and these appear in the list in italics. These default roles each have a set of predefined privileges which are relevant for these specific roles. If necessary, these roles can be duplicated and the privileges fine-tuned, or new roles can be created from scratch.

The default roles are the following:

Asanti/Prepress Operator You have access to the main job commands (except Edit Imposition) and to selected Task Processor resources.

Asanti/Prepress Administrator In addition to most job commands, you also have access to administration and system privileges; you can create and edit Task Processor Parameter Sets and ticket templates, and view and manage resources.

Imposition Operator You can only edit imposition jobs.

Imposition Administrator In addition to the Imposition Operator privileges, you can access the Imposition Task Processor Parameter Sets and manage its resources.

Layout Operator You can only access Layout jobs, you cannot perform any commands related to Commercial jobs.

Plate Operator You can perform certain platemaking commands such as making and remaking output. Only the Jobs window is visible.

View Only A user with this role can only view the selected windows of the Asecuri client and is not able to perform commands.

Clicking a role in the Role list highlights the users with this role in the User list with a green check mark.

Privileges tab

Selecting a role in the Role list displays a breakdown of privileges in the Privileges tab. Privileges are grouped in the following categories:

Job Operations Commands you can perform on tickets.

Prepress Administration Commands for managing Task Processors and licensing

System Resources Commands for managing system resources.

Task Processor Resources A list of all the Task Processors.

Client Display Options Use these options to show/hide specified windows or resources in the Asecuri client.

Expand a category to display the privileges.

Edit Filter button Opens the Job Filter where you can fine-tune the privileges even further by specifying a filter to show/hide certain jobs in the Job List for the selected role. For example: user John has the role of Prepress Operator Plant A and can only see jobs whose Job Name contains 'Plant A'. User Bill has the role of Prepress Operator Plant B and can only see jobs whose Job Name contains 'Plant B'. See "Filtering the Job List" on page 114. This filter is set for a role so it can be re-used for all users with this role.

Delete Filter button To delete a filter you may have set on a role.

Figure 10.23: Privileges for a typical Administrator role

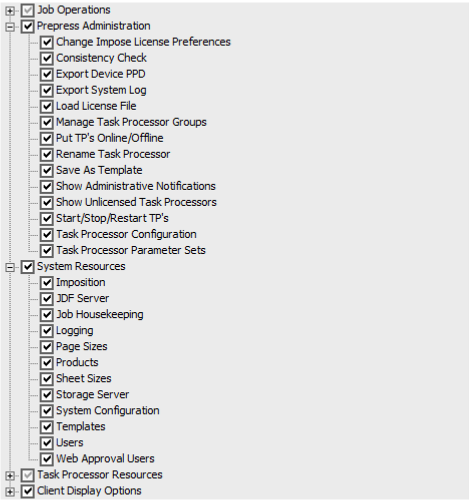
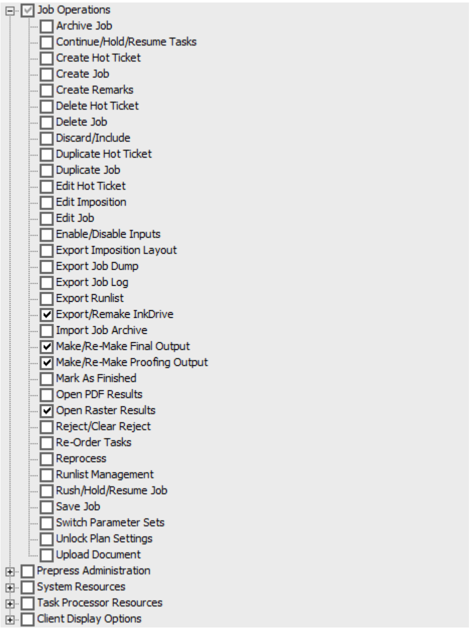


Figure 10.24: Privileges for a typical Operator role

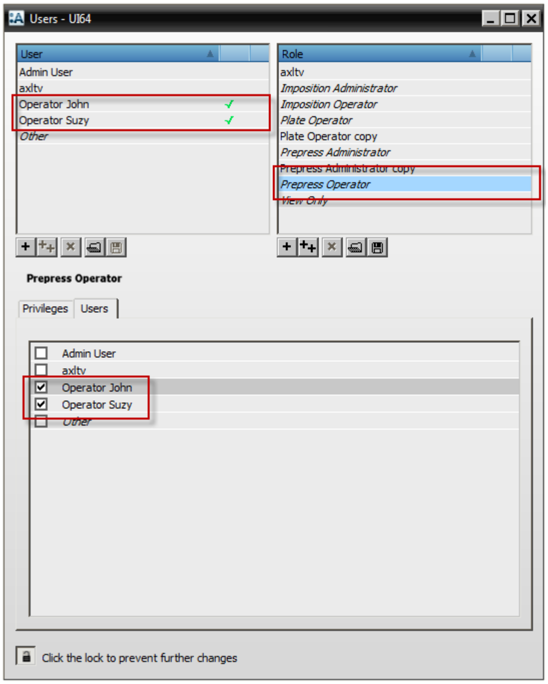


The listed privileges refer to the ability to perform tasks or access resources in Asecuri. Privileges can be selected individually within a category or at the category level. If all the privileges are selected within a category, the check mark is black, otherwise it's gray.

User tab

This tab is also used in combination with the Role list. Select a role in the Role list to see which users have been assigned this role.

Figure 10.25: Users displayed in the User list and User tab for a selected role



Accounts

If you select the Asecuri System in the Hardware pane, you will see the Accounts icon in the Resources pane. This resource provides an overview of the companies and user accounts which are specified in the WebApproval and PrintSphere applications.

Asecuri needs a license to enable WebApproval and PrintSphere. Without these licenses, none of the dedicated resources, channels and actions are available.

Administrator access level only!

Double-click the icon to access the Accounts Overview.

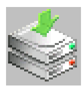
Company A list of all the companies with accounts. The list contains one printer company (default name: The Printer Company) and all your customers, i.e. print buyer companies.

Users The details of all the users with user accounts in the selected company.

Related topics:

- Web Proof on page 219
- Customer on page 203

Disk Storage



The Disk Storage icon is displayed in the Resources pane when you select a Hardware or “Satellite” System in the Hardware pane. You can double-click this icon to display the Disk Storage settings. This dialog box lists all of the available disks or partitions on the selected Hardware System.

Administrator access level only!

Each Hardware System has a Disk Storage resource, comprising two parts:

- Storage Sets: To configure the Storage Sets
- Disk Monitor: To monitor disk usage

What are Storage Sets?

A storage set is a collection of one or more disks or shared volumes that are kept synchronized. When the Asecuri System writes a file to a storage set, the file is copied to all disks or volumes which belong to that set. This provides system *redundancy*: If any disk or volume in a set fails, the Asecuri System notifies you and disables the failed disk/volume. This disk/volume will not be used again until you enable it. When you do this, the disk is again synchronized with the other disks/volumes in the set. Whenever Asecuri needs a file, it searches through every enabled disk in the set until one returns the required file. Normally, the first disk will return the file, so there is very little impact on performance.

If you add a disk or volume to a storage set, it is immediately synchronized with the other disks/volumes in the set.

Each storage set you define can handle only one of the following data types:

- Temporary data
- System files and resources
- PDF and Postscript files
- Raster files

You can define multiple storage sets to handle the same type of data. This increases the total disk capacity, and allows Asecuri to alternately write data to each of the storage sets in turn (for example, writing C, M, Y, K separations to different sets).

Disk Storage Settings

The Disk Storage dialog box comprises two tabs which allow you to configure storage sets and monitor disk usage.

Administrator access level only!

Storage Sets

This tab shows all storage sets, the disks or volumes in each set, and the kind of files it can receive. You can add, edit and delete storage sets using the buttons below the list (see “To create a new storage set” on page 432).

Storage Set The name of the disk or volume which contains the storage set.

Sys A check mark in this column indicates that the corresponding disk or volume is used to store system data only.

Temp A check mark in this column indicates that the corresponding disk or volume is used to store temporary or scratch data only.

PDF A check mark in this column indicates that the corresponding disk or volume is used to store PDF data only.

Raster A check mark in this column indicates that the corresponding disk or volume is used to store raster data only.

New button Click this button to create a new Storage Set, as described in “To create a new storage set” on page 432.

Edit button Click this button to access the Storage Set Editor, where you can view or modify the setup of the selected storage set.

Delete button Click this button to delete the selected Storage Set. Note that you cannot delete a Storage Set unless there is an alternative Storage Set available to take over the storage of each type of data held in the Storage Set.

Disk Monitor

This tab monitors the disk usage for all local disks and shared volumes.

Disk or Shared Volume Lists the disks or shared volumes you are using.

Capacity Displays the formatted capacity of the disk.

Sys A check mark in this column indicates that the corresponding disk or volume is used to store system data.

Temp A check mark in this column indicates that the corresponding disk or volume is used to store temporary or scratch data.

PDF A check mark in this column indicates that the corresponding disk or volume is used to store PDF data.

Raster A check mark in this column indicates that the corresponding disk or volume is used to store raster data.

SQL Indicates on which disk the database is installed.

Amount Used Indicates the amount of disk space (capacity) used by Asecuri. For each disk, a bar displays the used amount in a solid color. For disks that are used for other purposes, the color is slightly faded out.

The bar of the largest disk fills the column width. The other bars are scaled proportionally.

The color of the bar changes when the used amount exceeds a certain limit:

- Green: There is sufficient storage space left.
- Orange: The warning level has been reached.
- Red: The critical level has been exceeded.

NOTE: The warning and critical levels are shown on the bar by two small markers. The first marker is the warning level: the second marker is the critical level.

Free The Free column shows the free disk capacity in absolute numbers and percentages.

Status Indicates the status of the disk or shared volume.

Edit button Click this button to access the Watermarks Editor, where you can specify free disk space warning and critical levels.

Enable button Select a Disk or Shared Volume, and click the Enable button to allow this disk or volume to be used by Asecuri.

Watermarks Editor

The Watermarks editor allows you to specify free disk space warning and critical levels for the selected Disk or Shared Volume.

Administrator access level only!

Notify when free space is less than This is the warning level of the free disk space. The warning level is indicated by the first of the two small marks on the Amount Used bar.

Specify the warning level below which Asecuri will notify the user and/or administrator.

Do not use when free space is less than This is the critical level of the free disk space. The critical level is indicated by the second of the two small marks on the Amount Used bar (see above).

Specify the critical level below which the Hardware System becomes unusable. In that case, Asecuri will notify the user and/or administrator.

NOTE: When the free disk space is not sufficient to write the data (especially raster files), Asecuri will store the data on another Hardware System. The performance may suffer, but the processing will at least continue. Asecuri will notify the user in the event of a switch of Hardware System.

Storage Set Editor

This dialog box allows you to view or modify the setup of the selected storage set. You can add and edit storage sets using the buttons below the list (see “To create a new storage set” on page 432).

Administrator access level only!

Files to store

Select the necessary check boxes to indicate which data can be stored on the disk.

Asecuri Prepress system data and resources This data is essential to keep Asecuri active. The data also includes resources such as fonts, halftone screens or calibration curves.

Asecuri Prepress temporary data Various system components and Task Processors need this data to be able to write during their processing tasks.

PDF and Postscript files These are the files generated by the Normalizer and stored in the Page Store.

Raster files These are the high-resolution raster files that need to be sent to the output devices. Generally, you store these files on any Hardware System that hosts the Render Task Processor.

CAUTION: Once Asecuri has some data stored on the disk, you can no longer clear the check box corresponding to this data type. The check box will be activated only when there is no longer any Asecuri data left on the disk.
If you clear the check box while Asecuri is writing to the disk, you will get a warning dialog box telling you that the check box has been selected again.

▷ To create a new storage set

1 From the Disk Storage dialog box, select the Storage Sets tab

Administrator access level only!

2 Double-click a storage set entry, or select it and click the Edit button.

This opens the Storage Set Editor.

You will also see a set of check boxes at the top of the dialog box, and a set of buttons at the bottom of the dialog box.

3 Click the New button.

A Select Disk dialog box is displayed.

4 Select a local disk or enter a UNC shared volume name, and click OK.

The dialog box is closed. The new storage set appears in the list.

▷ To edit a storage set

1 From the Disk Storage dialog box, select the Storage Sets tab

Administrator access level only!

2 Double-click a storage set entry, or select it and click the Edit button.

This opens the Storage Set Editor.

You will also see a set of check boxes at the top of the dialog box, and a set of buttons at the bottom of the dialog box.

3 Select the local disk or shared volume, and click the Edit button.

A Select Disk dialog box is displayed.

4 Select a different local disk or enter a UNC shared volume name, and click OK.

The dialog box is closed. The updated storage set appears in the list.

5 Select the file types you want to store on the storage set by clicking the appropriate check boxes.

6 Click Enable, and then click OK.

The Storage Set Editor is closed. Your new settings are displayed in the Disk Storage dialog box.

▷ To delete a storage set

1 From the Disk Storage dialog box, select the Storage Sets tab

Administrator access level only!

2 Double-click a storage set entry, or select it and click the Edit button.

This opens the Storage Set Editor.

You will also see a set of check boxes at the top of the dialog box, and a set of buttons at the bottom of the dialog box.

3 Check that an alternate storage set is available to take over storage of the data from the set you are going to delete.

4 Select a storage set, and click the Delete button.

A confirmation dialog box is displayed.

5 Click OK to confirm deletion.

NOTE: You cannot delete a storage set unless there is an alternate storage set available to take over the storage of each type of data.

Configuring Your Task Processors

By double-clicking the configuration icon in the Resources pane for each selected Task Processor, you can access and edit the Configuration settings. For most Task Processors, this is only possible at service level.

Service access level only!

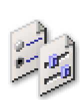
▷ To work with Configurations

1 From the Asecuri Navigation Bar, select System Overview.

2 Select the Task Processor for which you want to access the Configuration.

The Resources associated with the Task Processor appear in the Resources pane.

3 Double-click the Configuration icon in the Resources pane.



The Configuration dialog box appears.

4 Select the settings of your choice and/or enter any required information.

5 Click OK to close the Configuration dialog box.

The settings are immediately active.

Managing Parameter Sets

Parameter Sets are predefined Task Processor settings that you can use when creating a Production Plan in the Ticket Editor. You can access and manage your Parameter Sets from the System Overview by selecting a Task Processor, and then double-clicking the Parameter Sets icon in the Resources pane.

You can also create or edit Parameter Sets from the Settings pane in the Plan tab. For more information, see “Settings Pane (Ticket Editor)” on page 231.

▷ To create, duplicate, edit, delete, import or export Parameter Sets

Administrator access level only!

1 From the System Overview, select the Task Processor whose Parameter Sets you want to work with.

   The Resources associated with the Task Processor appear in the Resources pane.

2 Double-click the Parameter Sets icon in the Resources pane.

   The Parameter Sets dialog box appears.

   At the top of this dialog box, you will see one or more icons. These icons represent the operations of the selected Task Processor. For most Task Processors, there is a single operation. However, some Task Processors (such as Render or any Output Task Processor) have two or more operations. Each operation has its own individual Parameter Set(s).

   Below this, you will see a list of available Parameter Sets for the selected Task Processor operation. Here, you will see at least an “initial” Parameter Set, as well as any additional Parameter Sets that may have been created.

   You will also see a set of icons at the bottom of the dialog box.

   You can use these icons to create, duplicate, edit, set as default, delete, import or export Parameter Sets for the selected Task Processor.

To create a new Parameter Set

1 In the Parameter Sets dialog box, select one of the Task Processor operation icons.

   If there is only one operation, then this is selected by default.

2 Click the New button.

A new untitled dialog box is displayed

3 Enter a unique name for the new Parameter Set, and select your settings.

For detailed information about these settings, refer to the description of the selected Task Processor.

4 Click OK to save your settings.

The dialog box is closed. The new Parameter Set appears in the list.

To duplicate a Parameter Set

1 In the Parameter Sets dialog box, select a Parameter Set and click the Duplicate button:

A copy of the Parameter Set is added to the list. The new Parameter Set takes the name of the original Parameter Set, appended with the word **copy**.

To edit a Parameter Set

1 In the Parameter Sets dialog box, select a Parameter Set and double-click it or click the Edit button:

2 Make any changes you require, and click OK to save your settings.

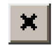
To set a default Parameter Set

1 In the Parameter Sets dialog box, select a Parameter Set from the list and click the Default button:

The default Parameter Set is highlighted in bold.

To delete a Parameter Set

1 In the Parameter Sets dialog box, select a Parameter Set from the list and Press Delete or click the Delete button:



2 Click Yes to confirm the deletion.

NOTE: For every Task Processor, there are predefined initial settings. You cannot delete these.

To import a Parameter Set

1 In the Parameter Sets dialog box, click the Import button.

2 Locate the folder which contains the Parameter Set you want to import.

This will be a Parameter Set that was previously exported. This file will be in MIME format (*.mime).

3 Click Open.

The imported Parameter Set is displayed in the list.

To export a Parameter Set

You may want to export a Parameter Set for use by another Asecuri System, or in order to have a temporary backup file.

1 In the Parameter Sets dialog box, select a Parameter Set from the list and click the Export button.

2 Locate the folder to which you want to export the Parameter Set, and click OK.

The Parameter Set is exported as a MIME format file (*.mime).

Managing Resources

For each Task Processor displayed in the System Overview window, you can access the associated Resource categories by selecting the Task Processor icon. Any Resource categories associated with the selected Task Processor are then displayed in the Resources Pane. For information on individual Resources, see “Task Processor Resources” on page 571.

To create, duplicate, edit, delete, import or export Resources

You can manage your Resources in a number of ways. These procedures are similar for most Resource categories.

1 From the System Overview window, select (single-click) the Task Processor whose Resources you want to work with.

  The Resource categories associated with the Task Processor appear in the Resources pane.

2 Double-click the Resource category of your choice.

  The Resources that are available in this category are displayed in a new Resource category dialog box.

  You will also see a set of icons at the bottom of the dialog box.

  You can use these icons to create, duplicate, edit, set as default, delete, import or export Resources within the selected Resource category.

NOTE: The icons and actions that are available vary from resource to resource.

To create a new Resource

1 In the selected Resource category dialog box, click the New button:

  A new untitled Resource dialog box is displayed

2 Enter a name for the new Resource, and specify the Resource settings.

3 Click OK to save your settings.

  The Resource dialog box is closed. The new resource appears in the list of Resources in the Resource category dialog box.

To duplicate a Resource

1 In the selected Resource category dialog box, click the Duplicate button:

A copy of the Resource is added to the list. The new Resource takes the name of the original Resource, appended with the word **copy**.

▷ To edit a Resource

1 In the selected Resource category dialog box, select a Resource from the list and click the Edit button:

2 Make any changes you require, and click OK to save your settings.

The Resource dialog box is closed.

▷ To set a default Resource

1 In the selected Resource category dialog box, select a Resource from the list and click the Default button:

The default Resource is highlighted in bold.

▷ To delete a Resource

1 In the selected Resource category dialog box, select a Resource from the list and Press Delete or click the Delete button:

Click Yes to confirm the deletion.

NOTE: You cannot delete the standard system resources.

▷ To import a new Resource to a Resource category

1 In the selected Resource category dialog box, click the Import from file button:

An Open file dialog box is displayed. In the files of type list, the relevant file suffix for the type of file you want to import is selected (e.g. *.mime for color books).

2 Browse to the location of the Resource you want to import, select the Resource file, and click Open.

The Resource is imported, and is displayed in the list of Resources.

If the imported Resource is a “dedicated” Resource (such as a Press Profile), you will see the following icon next to the Resource in the list:

NOTE: Dedicated Resources are linked uniquely to a specific device: They are not shared between other devices of the same type. Some Resources are always shared between similar Task Processors, and others are always dedicated.

▷ To export a Resource

You may want to export a Resource for use by another Asecuri System, or in order to have a temporary backup file.

1 In the selected Resource category dialog box, select a Resource from the list and click the Export button.

2 Locate the folder to which you want to export the Resource, and click OK.

The Resource is exported as a MIME format file (*.mime).

CHAPTER 11

Input Task Processors

Input Task Processors act as input channels through which you input your documents for processing by Asecuri.

When you add an Input Task Processor to your Production Plan, a Keep Results action is automatically attached to the Task Processor. For more information, see “Keep Result” on page 227.

- Hot Folder 442
- Open Connect 447

NOTE: Unlike the Processing, Output, and Print Task Processors, no resources are associated with the Input Task Processors.

Hot Folder

The Hot Folder Task Processor is an input channel where you can drop the file that you want to process. You can input any of the following file types:

- Documents:
  - PostScript
  - PDF
- Images:
  - See “File Types” on page 274

Once the processing starts, the input file is deleted from the Hot Folder.

Each Hot Folder is associated with a unique hot folder root. During installation, you will have to specify the location of the hot folder root on the Hardware System.

NOTE: When you are creating your Production Plan, a Keep Results action is automatically added to the Input Task Processor. For more information, see “Keep Result” on page 227.

Hot Folder Settings

You can access these settings:

- When creating Parameter Sets (see “Managing Parameter Sets” on page 435). Here, you will see a ‘Lock in Production Plan’ check box (selected by default). If this check box is selected, the settings will be initially locked in the Settings pane. If this check box is deselected, the settings can be edited in the Settings pane.
- In the Settings pane, in the Plan tab of the Job Manager and the Ticket Editor. The settings may be initially locked, as indicated by the Lock icon. If you edit the job, you can unlock them as described in “Settings Pane (Ticket Editor)” on page 231.

Name

The name of the Parameter Set as it will appear in the Production Plan. When you create a Parameter Set, you should specify a Parameter Set name. You can always change this name later by editing the job, choosing the Parameter Set from the Task Processor in the Plan tab, and unlocking the settings in the Settings pane.

Hot Folder

Click the Browse button to locate the Hot Folder in which you want to input your document. You can also use variables in this field to automatically create subfolders inside the HotFolderRoot (e.g., referring to the name and order number of the job).

By default, the following string is already included in this field.

\\$SYSTEMCOMPUTER\HotFolderRoot\$ORDER\

NOTE: Each Hot Folder must have a unique name. The name should use ASCII characters, with a minimum of one and a maximum of 31 characters.

Variable button

Click the Variable button to insert variables. A drop-down list appears listing the variables that you can insert. For more information on variables, refer to System Variables.

Data Format

Defines the expected format of the input files, and allows the Task Processor to correctly process it. The valid data formats are:

- PostScript, PDF or bitmap images
- DCS PostScript
- GRS (Page Description Language (PDL) format)
- PPML-VDX (variable data format)

- PDF-VT (variable and transactional printing format)
- XPS

Polling time

This option defines a polling time for this type of input channel.

Grouping

This option defines how single input files will be treated.

Always create new job Asecuri treats every input file as a single job.

Add to existing job if found Input files with a specific filename are grouped into a single job. You can set up a filename template to specify what parts of the filename are taken into account, as described below.

Close job's document input when nothing received for <n> seconds This option tells Asecuri to automatically close document input for the resulting job after a specified period of time during which no documents were received. This allows the job to finish when all processing is completed.

NOTE: You can also close the document input manually.

Flats/Pages

If a Hot Ticket has no Imposition Task Processor, then to support duplex proofing and proper InkDrive generation, Asecuri needs to be told the type of input it is receiving.

Input represents This section determines whether the input represents pages or flats. The choice not only sets the display mode of the Results tab and defines the terminology of message and log events, but it also influences the other format-dependent options.

Pages: 'Asecuri treats every page in the input file as a page in the publication. This usually means they need to be imposed before printing.

When you select ‘Pages’, nothing extra is done, and the remainder of the section is disabled.

Flats: 'Asecuri treats every page in the input file as a flat (single side of a sheet). Usually, they need no further imposition.

Workstyle: These options are only enabled if you select Flats. You can then choose the orientation of the two sides of the sheet.

- Sheetwise: A sheet has different content on front and back sides. The sheets are turned, keeping the gripper edge at the same side.
- Work And Turn: Both sides have the same content. The sheets are turned, keeping the gripper edge at the same side.
- Work And Tumble: Both sides have the same content. Sheets are turned in such a way that the gripper edge is on the opposite side.
- Perfecting: A sheet has different content on front and back sides. Sheets are turned in such a way that the gripper edge is on the opposite side.
- Single Sided: There is only one side per sheet.
- From filename: Extracts the workstyle from the filename (or directory structure). The filename template must contain <WORKSTYLE>.

Sides: These options are only enabled if you select Flats. You can then choose:

- Alternate Front/Back: Every new input file is assigned the 'next flat': 1F, 1B, 2F, 2B, etc. The filename template cannot contain <SIGNATURE> or <SIDE>.
- From filename: Extracts the flat identifier from the filename (or directory structure). The filename template must contain both <SIGNATURE> and <SIDE>.

Filename Conventions

Filename template

This option allows you to retrieve the job name, order number and imposition details from the filename of the document. To do this, you need to use the relevant variables, variable separators and wild cards to compose the filename template.

The first set of variables retrieves the order number <ORDER> and job name <JOB>, respectively. If you omit the order number or job name from the file name template, Asecuri will use the Hot Ticket name or document file name, respectively. The default file name template is <JOB>.

The second set of variables retrieves the imposition work style <WORKSTYLE> and signature information <SIGNATURE> and <SIDE>.

Filename conventions for <WORKSTYLE>

This field is only displayed when you select ‘From filename’ for Workstyle. Here, you can define which strings should be recognized as the Workstyle type. Asecuri tries to match the position of <WORKSTYLE> in the filename template with any of the specified strings, and identifies the input as the associated workstyle when it matches a string.

Filename conventions for <SIDE>

This field is only displayed when you select ‘From filename’ for Side. Here, you define which strings in the filename define the side (front or back). You can enter multiple strings, separated by commas, for each side. Asecuri tries to match the position of <SIDE> in the filename template with any of the specified strings, and identifies the input as font or back when it matches a string. If there is no match, Asecuri treats the input as a front.

NOTE: These fields are completely ignored if the filename template does not contain <SIDE>.

Created Job

Job's Hot Folder

Here you can specify a different location for the hot folder when the job is created than the default `$ORDER_$JOB`. See for an explanation of the variables you can use to specify this folder. Select the Enable Job's Hot Folder to enable this input channel for the job.

Backup

Select this check box to have a backup file of every incoming file copied to the specified folder. The directory structure in hot folder is replicated to this backup folder. If a file with the same name already exists, a suffix is added. The user must manage this backup folder.

PDF Certify Check

Verify Certification

If you select this check box, you can choose a Preflight profile against which you can certify the incoming PDF. Asecuri flags all failed PDF files with a notification, and you will see the failed certification icon in the Run List.

NOTE: Postscript files always fail certification.

This option is only enabled for Postscript, PDF or bitmap.

Web

This panel is for creating so-called WebApproval jobs that allow remote users to upload files and/or approve the pages of the job.

Web Enabled

Select this check box so users can work remotely using the WebApproval service.

Open Connect

The Open Connect Task Processor is a specific type of Hot Folder input channel which you can use to input raster data (TIFF) and DCS files. Open Connect recognizes different workflows, and the different file conventions of TIFF and Raster files that are input, and processes them accordingly.

Depending on the workflow, an input file might be a single separation, it might contain all separations, or it could be a composite file. It might represent a page (to be imposed), or a single side of a flat. The type of file may be indicated in the filename. Open Connect can interpret information contained in the filename in order to determine how the file should be processed. Once this processing starts, the input file is deleted from the Hot Folder.

Each Hot Folder is associated with a unique Hot Folder root. During installation, you need to specify the location of the Hot Folder root on the Hardware System.

NOTE: When you are creating your Production Plan, a Keep Results action is automatically added to the Input Task Processor. For more information, see “Keep Result” on page 227.

Open Connect Settings

You can access these settings:

- When creating Parameter Sets (see “Managing Parameter Sets” on page 435). Here, you will see a ‘Lock in Production Plan’ check box (selected by default). If this check box is selected, the settings will be initially locked in the Settings pane. If this check box is deselected, the settings can be edited in the Settings pane.
- In the Settings pane, in the Plan tab of the Job Manager and the Ticket Editor. The settings may be initially locked, as indicated by the Lock icon. If you edit the job, you can unlock them as described in “Settings Pane (Ticket Editor)” on page 231.

Most Open Connect settings describe the structure and the meaning of the input files. Consequently, a single instance of an Open Connect Hot Folder in a plan can accept files from a single workflow only.

Name

The name of the Parameter Set as it will appear in the Production Plan. When you create a Parameter Set, you should specify a Parameter Set name. You can always change this name later by editing the job, choosing the Parameter Set from the Task Processor in the Plan tab, and unlocking the settings in the Settings pane.

Hot Folder

This option is identical to that of the Hot Folder Task Processor: It allows you to enter or select a Hot Folder name.

Data Format

Defines the expected format of the input files, and allows the Task Processor to correctly process it. Note that the available formats depend on the license. Formats that require an extra license are shown in italics:

- TIFF: 1-bit or 8-bit TIFF; RGB, CMYK or Grey color space; Pre-separated or composite 1 -bit, 8-bit DCS DCS-1 (multiple file) and DCS-2 (single/multiple file) (1-bit).
- Barco TIFF: Barco TIFF (1-bit)
- Harlequin TIFF: Harlequin TIFF (1-bit)
- PrintDrive Backup Data: PrintDrive Backup Data raster files with software compression (1-bit).
- Agfa PDFRIP TIFF: TIFF files created by the PDF RIP
- Plate Assembler TIFF: TIFF files as input for a Plate Assembler job (1-bit).

Polling time

Defines a polling time for this input channel.

Combining Files

Deliver combined files after receiving nothing for <n> seconds

Defines the amount of time (in seconds) that Asecuri will wait for the next file, after receiving a file. After this period has expired, Asecuri treats the group of previously received files as complete, and delivers them as a group. This feature is used to group separations into pages (or flats), and to group pages (or flats) into a job.

Automatically close job's document input after last page If you select this option, Asecuri closes document input for the receiving job. This allows the job to finish properly.

Tag Input

By default Asecuri uses and interprets the file tags (this option is deselected). However, if you select the Tag Input check box, you can 'tag' the input by telling the system how the input should be treated. Basically, these Tag settings are a limited set of the Image settings from an Output Task Processor.

Reading Right/Wrong

Polarity Positive/Negative

Rotate 0, 90, 180, 270

Flats/Pages

This section determines whether the input represents pages or flats. The choice not only sets the display mode of the Results tab and defines the terminology of message and log events, but it also influences the other format-dependent options.

Input represents Pages: Each input file (or set of files) is a single page. The Production Plan can have a Run List and an Imposition Task Processor to assemble the pages into flats. The pages can be placed in the Run List manually or automatically.

Flats: Each input file (or set of files) is a side of a flat. The Production Plan should not have a Run List or Imposition Task Processor, although it is not forbidden. The results tab displays flats. Note that you cannot select the pages on the flats.

Workstyle: These options are only enabled if you select Flats. You can then choose the orientation of the two sides of the sheet.

- Sheetwise: A sheet has different content on front and back sides. The sheets are turned, keeping the gripper edge at the same side.
- Work And Turn: Both sides have the same content. The sheets are turned, keeping the gripper edge at the same side.
- Work And Tumble: Both sides have the same content. Sheets are turned in such a way that the gripper edge is on the opposite side.
- Perfecting: A sheet has different content on front and back sides. Sheets are turned in such a way that the gripper edge is on the opposite side.
- Single Sided: There is only one side per sheet.

- From filename: Extracts the workstyle from the filename (or directory structure). The filename template must contain <WORKSTYLE>.

Filename Conventions

Use Script Select this check box to execute scripts (e.g. for file renaming). The text field indicates the location of the selected script. Use the Browse button to select your script.

Filename template Describes the folder structure and the file name conventions that are expected. The list offers a number of presets which may vary, depending on the selected format. For example:

- <JOB>
- <JOB>\<DOCPAGE>\<SEPARATION>
- <JOB>\<SIGNATURE>\<SIDE>\<SEPARATION>
- <JOB>\<SIGNATURE>\<WEB>\<SIDE>\<SEPARATION>
- <JOB>\<WORKSTYLE>\<SIGNATURE>\<WEB>\<SIDE>\<SEPARATION>
- <JOB>\<PRODUCTNAME>\<CUT>\<SEPARATION>

Filename convention strings **Filename conventions for <SIDE>**: These fields define which strings in the filename define the side (front or back). You can enter multiple strings, separated by commas, for each side. Asecuri tries to match the position of <SIDE> in the filename template with any of the specified strings, and identifies the input as front or back when it matches a string. If there is no match, Asecuri treats the input as a front.

NOTE: These fields are completely ignored if the filename template does not contain <SIDE>.

Filename conventions for <SEPARATION>: These fields define which strings should be recognized as process colors. Asecuri tries to match the position of <SEPARATION> in the filename template with any of the specified strings, and identifies the input as the associated process color when it matches a string. If there is no match, Asecuri assumes it is a spot color.

NOTE: All string matches, for both <SIDE> and <SEPARATION>, are case insensitive.

Filename conventions for <CUT>: These fields define which strings should be recognized as contour files and masks. Asecuri tries to match the position of <CUT> in the filename template with any of the specified strings, and identifies the input as the associated when it matches a string. When it matches any of the contour strings, the file is used as a contour; when it matches any of the mask strings, the file is used as a mask.

Recombine mode

This option is only displayed when you select the Harlequin TIFF Data Format (see above).

1-C, 1-M, 1-Y, 1-K... Recombine mode is ON (check box selected). Each TIFF file is named according to the following file naming convention:

(page_number)(job_name)(color).tif'

For example, '2MyJobM00.tif' means the Magenta Separation of Page 2 of "MyJob".

1-C, 2-M, 3-Y, 4-K... Recombine mode is OFF (check box selected). Each TIFF file is named according to the following file naming convention:

(separation_number)(job_name)(color).tif'

For example, '2MyJobM00.tif' means the second sequential separation of "MyJob" whose color is Magenta.

When the **Force recombine** option is selected (default) recombination of files will take place and rely on the dragging order.

Separations (combining and delivering)

This section is only required for input formats that deliver separations as separate files. It describes when Asecuri considers all separations of a page or flat to be available at the input, and consequently, when it can deliver this page or flat to the resulting job (where it appears in the Page Store).

This is important especially when the page or flat has to be proofed; it is not important when they only have to be printed on an imagesetter or platesetter: the different separations can be printed independently.

NOTE: This is independent of the 'Collect for output' action.

The client will correctly show all separations of a page or flat, regardless of the order of input. However, a proof cannot be made until all separations are present. Also, when the Open Connect has to deliver PDF, it needs to know the separations for each page or flat.

Open Connect will combine and deliver separations after the specified combining time has elapsed, or when receiving:

First separation of next flat/page

The current page is considered to be complete when an input file is found that contains a separation for a different page or flat (as indicated by its file name). This option is displayed when you select the TIFF Data Format (see above).

<n> separations of the same flat/page

The current page is considered to be complete when the specified number of separations are available. This option is displayed when you select the TIFF Data Format (see above).

CHAPTER 12

Processing Task Processors

Processing Task Processors execute tasks on incoming documents, such as imposition, preflight, normalization, rendering, separation and trapping.

- Apogee Preflight 454
- Digital Film Proof 460
- Impose 462
- Normalize 468
- PDF Render 479
- Raster Impose 507
- Raster Normalize 508
- Run List 509
  - Using a Run List in a Hot Ticket 509
- TIFF Render 520

NOTE: A number of System Resources are associated with some of these Task Processors. For more information, see "Task Processor Resources" on page 571.

Apogee Preflight

Apogee Preflight is a proprietary preflighting engine developed by ECO3 Graphics. The Apogee Preflight Task Processor checks incoming PDFs against criteria called Action Lists and notifies the users in the event of issues. A series of action lists are provided by default and some action lists can be duplicated and customized. Extensive messaging and reporting are also provided as part of Apogee Preflight.

Associated Resources

When you select the Apogee Preflight Task Processor in the System Overview, the following associated resource categories are displayed in the Resources pane:

- Apogee Preflight Action Lists
- Fonts
- Content Profiles
- Profiles
- Profiles
- Input Color Conversions
- Output Color Conversions
- Ink Sets
-

Apogee Preflight Settings

When you input PDF files, they are saved in the Page Store. To be sure that the PDFs do not generate errors when they are output, you can run an optional Apogee Preflight check.

You can access these settings:

- When creating Parameter Sets (see “Managing Parameter Sets” on page 435). Here, you will see a ‘Lock in Production Plan’ check box (selected by default). If this check box is selected, the settings will be initially locked in the Settings pane. If this check box is deselected, the settings can be edited in the Settings pane.

- In the Settings pane, in the Plan tab of the Job Manager and the Ticket Editor. The settings may be initially locked, as indicated by the Lock icon. If you edit the job, you can unlock them as described in “Settings Pane (Ticket Editor)” on page 231.

Name

The name of the Parameter Set as it will appear in the Production Plan. When you create a Parameter Set, you should specify a Parameter Set name. You can always change this name later by editing the job, choosing the Parameter Set from the Task Processor in the Plan tab, and unlocking the settings in the Settings pane.

Action Lists

The preflight process allows you to automatically edit the PDF, flag issues or perform color management tagging based on a set of rules, called Action Lists.

Category In this list you can select the action lists by category. The column on the right indicates how many action lists are selected out of the total number of available action list.

Job Type The Job Type list is used in combination with Category and State lists to filter action lists displayed in the Action List pane. You have 3 options:

- Any: displays all actions of the selected category for all job types

- Wide Format Jobs: displays actions of the selected category only for the Wide Format Jobs.

- Other Jobs: displays actions of the selected category for other job types

State The State list is used in combination with Category and Job Type lists to filter action lists displayed in the Action List pane. You have 3 options:

- Any: displays all actions of the selected category

- On: displays the active actions in the selected category and job type

- Off: displays actions which are not active in the selected category and job type.

Action List

The Action List pane displays the action lists as selected in the Category, Job Type, and State lists. Each action list name has a short description to clarify the checking criteria. To activate or deactivate specific preflight checks, select or clear one or more of the available Action List check boxes.

You can filter the list of action lists by typing keywords in the Search box at the top of the list.

The categories and action lists are managed in the Apogee Preflight Action Lists resource. For more information, see “Apogee Preflight Action Lists Overview” on page 573.

Job Profile

Select one of the built-in profiles from the drop-down list. Job profiles provide information about the job and these criteria are used to fine-tune the preflight check. A short description of what the profile does is displayed when you choose a profile in the list. For example, choose ‘Soft Proof on Content’ and you will see the short description ‘Optimizes the PDF document for content printing’.

Clicking Manage Profiles at the end of the list opens the Apogee Preflight Profiles resource where you can see more information about the different job profiles.

Errors and Notifications

Here you can choose to trigger notifications if an Apogee Preflight warning or error is generated and/or a fix is applied by Apogee Preflight.

When Preflight has warnings

Select this option to receive a notification when a warning is generated.

When Preflight applies fixes

Select this option to receive a notification when a fix is applied.

When Preflight has errors

You have two options in the drop-down list:

- Warn (processing continues)
- Fail result (processing stops)

Report to WebApproval

Select this option to have a Preflight Report sent to the Customer via Remarks in the WebApproval application.

Refuse document placement when Preflight has errors

If you want jobs with errors and/or warnings to be refused, select one of the options in the drop-down list.

Automatically reject pages with Preflight errors

Select this option if you want a page with errors to be rejected automatically.

Conditional Decision Settings

This dialog box allows you to configure the Conditional settings.

You can access these settings:

- When creating Parameter Sets (see “Managing Parameter Sets” on page 435). Here, you will see a ‘Lock in Production Plan’ check box (selected by default). If this check box is selected, the settings will be initially locked in the Settings pane. If this check box is deselected, the settings can be edited in the Settings pane.
- In the Settings pane, in the Plan tab of the Job Manager and the Ticket Editor. The settings may be initially locked, as indicated by the Lock icon. If you edit the job, you can unlock them as described in “Settings Pane (Ticket Editor)” on page 231.

Name

The name of the Parameter Set as it will appear in the Production Plan. When you create a Parameter Set, you should specify a Parameter Set name. You can always change this name later by editing the job, choosing the Parameter Set from the Task Processor in the Plan tab, and unlocking the settings in the Settings pane.

Test

Pattern Match

The Conditional Task Processor will process PDF files based on the result of the specified patterns.

Preflight Action

The Conditional Task Processor will process PDF files based on the result of the specified Enfocus PitStop Preflight Action.

Preflight Profile

The Conditional Task Processor will process PDF files based on the result of the specified Enfocus PitStop Preflight Profile.

Direct

You have two options:

Entire document The condition is applicable for all the pages of the document. If one of the pages does not match the condition, the complete document will fail.

Individual pages The condition is applied on a page-by-page basis. Only the pages of the document that do not match the condition will fail, the other pages of the document will pass. This setting will process slower.

Send to top when

The content of this field depends on your Test selection (see above). You may have selected Pattern Match, Preflight Actions or Preflight Profiles. This option determines how the Conditional Task Processor combines the outcome of the individual tests. You have the following options:

- All tests pass
- All tests fail
- At least one test passes
- At least one test fails

Pattern match

Pass when If you have selected Pattern match, you have two options:

- At least one pattern matches: The documents or pages are sent to the upper flow when at least one pattern matches.
- All patterns match: The documents or pages are sent to the upper flow when all patterns match.

Match This field defines the text to match, expressed in the form of a variable or a combination of fixed text and one or more variables. The default value is $DOCUMENTBASENAME.

Patterns The field is a multi-line text field where you enter the patterns to match, one pattern per line. You can use the usual text-editing methods to enter and edit the patterns.

Try This text field allows you to test the patterns against any arbitrary string you type in.

Preflight Action

Pass when If you have selected Preflight Action, you have three options:

- No actions fail: The documents or pages are sent to the upper flow when the test condition succeeds.
- Any action fails: The document or pages are sent to the upper flow when at least one of the selected actions fails the condition.
- All actions fail: The document or pages are sent to the upper flow only when all the selected actions fail the condition.

Actions Select the actions you want to test.

Preflight Profiles

Pass when If you have selected a Preflight Profile from the drop-down list, you have four options:

- has no errors
- has no errors or warnings
- has errors
- has errors or warnings

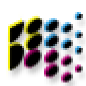
Digital Film Proof

The Digital Film Proof Task Processor prepares 'Digital Film' (raster data) for proofing. This Task Processor accepts raster data, performs screening and Dot for Dot proofing, and outputs the results to a proofer.

Digital Film Proof can be installed on a separate hardware system, and can be used to take over the screening role of the Render Task Processor, thereby balancing the workload.

No resources are associated with a Digital Film Proof Task Processor.

Digital Film Proof Screen Proofer Settings



This dialog box allows you to configure the Digital Film Proof settings.

You can access these settings:

- When creating Parameter Sets (see “Managing Parameter Sets” on page 435). Here, you will see a ‘Lock in Production Plan’ check box (selected by default). If this check box is selected, the settings will be initially locked in the Settings pane. If this check box is deselected, the settings can be edited in the Settings pane.

- In the Settings pane, in the Plan tab of the Job Manager and the Ticket Editor. The settings may be initially locked, as indicated by the Lock icon. If you edit the job, you can unlock them as described in “Settings Pane (Ticket Editor)” on page 231.

Name

The name of the Parameter Set as it will appear in the Production Plan. When you create a Parameter Set, you should specify a Parameter Set name. You can always change this name later by editing the job, choosing the Parameter Set from the Task Processor in the Plan tab, and unlocking the settings in the Settings pane.

Dot for Dot

The Digital Film Proof Task Processor may have an additional option: “Dot for Dot” proofing (requires a license). Select this check box if you want to produce better quality proofs.

Dot for Dot proofing simulates the dots on the proof as they would appear on the press. Consequently, you can only use Dot for Dot when the Digital Film Proofer shares the Render Task Processor with a high resolution CTF/CTP output devices (i.e. when it receives high-resolution raster data).

Digital Overlay

Select this check box to print the separations separately (instead of printing the composite color results), or to make arbitrary combinations. Deselect Digital Overlay to print all separations combined on a single sheet (this is the default setting).

All separately Prints all plates on different sheets.

Process colors separately, all spot colors combined Prints all process colors on separate sheets, and combines all spot colors on an extra sheet.

Process colors combined, all spot colors separately Combines all process colors on an extra sheet, prints all spot colors on separate sheets.

Print in color Print each sheet using the corresponding color. Deselect to print all in Black.

NOTE: Combined spot colors are always printed in color.

Clip to Press Sheet

Select this check box to remove plate and press borders from the Main flow for the Proofing flow.

NOTE: This option is only available when the Digital Film Proof used high-resolution data from the Main flow.

Impose

The Impose Task Processors allow you to predefine the final layout of the job. Asecuri offers you a series of ready-made imposition templates, or you can design your own template.

There are two types of Impose Task Processors:

- Impose
- Raster Impose

The Impose Task Processor is used for PDF job assembly. The Raster Impose is used for raster job assembly.

Associated Resources

- Mark Engraver
- Marks
- Sheet Layout Templates

Impose Settings

This dialog box allows you to specify how imposition will be applied in the currently selected Parameter Set. This is also where you can select the Apogee Impose module to perform your imposition.

You can access these settings:

- When creating Parameter Sets (see “Managing Parameter Sets” on page 435). Here, you will see a ‘Lock in Production Plan’ check box (selected by default). If this check box is selected, the settings will be initially locked in the Settings pane. If this check box is deselected, the settings can be edited in the Settings pane.
- In the Settings pane, in the Plan tab of the Job Manager and the Ticket Editor. The settings may be initially locked, as indicated by the Lock icon. If you edit

the job, you can unlock them as described in “Settings Pane (Ticket Editor)” on page 231.

Name

The name of the Parameter Set as it will appear in the Production Plan. When you create a Parameter Set, you should specify a Parameter Set name. You can always change this name later by editing the job, choosing the Parameter Set from the Task Processor in the Plan tab, and unlocking the settings in the Settings pane.

Imposition Selection

Undefined: Allows you to defer the selection of an imposition layout, and still submit a job.

From input: Select this option if you want to import an entire JDF file, more precisely the pages and the imposition data. The rest of the imposition settings are not required and are therefore not displayed. This mode is only available when you process JFD files as input (i.e. when you have a JDF Input Task Processor). This option should be disabled when you do not have a JDF Input Task Processor. With From input, Asecuri uses the layout information (including marks) from the incoming JDF file.

From file: Select this option if you want to import only the imposition data from an external Asecuri layout file (PJTF, JT, or JDF). This selection will activate a File Selection pane and a Sheet Adjustment pane. In the File Selection pane, you locate the file that you want to import with the Browse button. In the Sheet Adjustment pane, only the Press sheet scaling option is activated. See “Sheet Adjustment” below for more information on this option.

From template: Select this option if you have installed Imposition Template Manager with Asecuri. In this case, the Signature Selection panel is enabled, and your imposition settings will be taken from the selected imposition template.

Apogee Impose: Select this option if you want to use the integrated Apogee Impose module to create the imposition for a job. See “Working with Apogee Impose” on page 369 for more information. For Hot Tickets, the **Run Auto Impose** check box can be selected to ensure jobs created from the Hot Ticket are imposed using the Auto Impose settings.

Create backgrounds only This check box is only visible if you have a DQS license. It is hidden if you have no license. This option is used in parallel with your PrintDrive mode of operation: It should be checked when you select DQS PrintDrive mode, or cleared when you select Normal PrintDrive mode.

Border

If you have a JDF Stripping license, Asecuri allows you to select an imposition border, which can place various marks around each page, section or sheet. Borders are only supported for JDF input.

NOTE: This panel is displayed only when you choose 'From input' as your Imposition selection.

File Selection

Locate the PJTF, JT or JDF file that you want to import with the Browse button. Asecuri will use the selected file to do the imposition. The Results tab shows the flat mockup. Asecuri only uses the layout description and marks from a JDF file. If the file contains placed pages, they will be ignored (if you need the content from a JDF file, you should use the dedicated JDF input Task Processor).

This allows you to make Press sheet scaling and bottling adjustments (horizontal and/or vertical scaling percentages), in order to scale your output if your press sheet is too large or too small.

NOTE: This panel is displayed only when you choose 'From file' as your Imposition selection.

Signature Selection

This panel is displayed only when you choose 'From template' as your Imposition selection. The imposition settings will be taken from the selected imposition template. These settings are referred to as "signatures". You can select signatures automatically or manually:

Automatically from <template> Select this button if you want to select a template from the Available signatures panel, select a template and choose Auto Select. Asecuri will automatically select the signatures from that template to cover the number of pages. The selected template is displayed in bold in the Available Signatures column.

NOTE: If you change the number of pages, the imposition Task Processor will have to rebuild the list of selected signatures. The list remains empty as long as the number of pages is unknown.

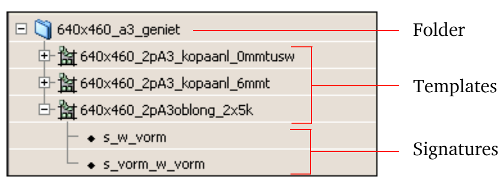
Manually Select this button if you want to select the signature manually. You can select the required signature in the Available Signatures column and drag and drop it in the Selected Signatures column. You can also use the Add button.

Binding Style Select the appropriate binding style from the drop-down list. The list of Available Signatures will be filtered accordingly.

Refresh All If you change the templates in the imposition template folders, the list of Available Signatures is not dynamically updated. You therefore need to click the Refresh All button to update the list for the selected Binding style.

NOTE: Since a refresh may take some time, Asecuri displays the animated “chasing arrows” busy indicator next to the button.

Available Signatures Displays a hierarchical list of template folders, filtered according to the selected binding style. Each folder may contain one or more subfolders containing at least one template with the selected binding style. You can expand these folders to select templates and signatures contained within these templates.



You can drag and drop the required signatures from the Available Signatures column to the Selected Signatures column if you selected the Manual option. You can also select the signatures and click the Add button.

When you select a signature in either the Available Signatures or Selected Signatures columns, information about the Press Sheet and signature size is displayed below the list of signatures.

Selected Signatures Displays (in the table on the right) the signatures you have selected.

Multiple sections: The Pages column on the right displays multiple page counts for signatures that have multiple sections. When you add such a signature, the different sections are added consecutively to the Selected Signatures table. You can change the order of each section separately, and can see at a glance which book signatures are part of a multiple-section signature: these rows have a section number. When you select one of these rows, Asecuri displays a “linked” icon for the other sections from that same signature:

Indicates that this section is part of a multiple-section signature.

You can click the Section column to select all linked sections.

First Page: By default, Asecuri places the job pages consecutively onto the signatures, in the order as they appear in the signature list. The first page of each signature is therefore automatically determined by the number of pages that were placed on to the signatures that precede it.

However, for Perfect Bound templates you can override the first page of any signature by double-clicking the value in the '1st' column, and entering a new value (you can also context-click). The number of the first page must be equal to or higher than the first page of the Run List. There is no upper limit for a first page; Asecuri simply indicates the number of missing pages if you specify a value that is too high for the current Run List setup.

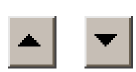
Manually adjusted first pages are displayed in bold: They are fixed, and do not change if you edit the signatures.

NOTE: The Run List must be big enough to accommodate all positions in the signature list.

You can reset a manually adjusted first page by editing it and leaving the number empty, or by context-clicking it and selecting Reset First Page from the context menu.

Rearranging Selected Signatures

You can use the Up and Down buttons below the Selected Signatures table to rearrange the signatures. You can also drag and drop them.



Deleting Selected Signatures

Select one or more signatures, and click the Remove button to delete them.

Shingling

In the Shingling (Creep) panel, enter your inner and outer offsets. If you enter a positive number in the Inner and Outer fields, the image area moves toward the binding edge of the page. If you enter a negative number in these fields, the image area moves away from the binding edge of the page.

Page Position Adjustment

These settings allow you to adjust pages that are positioned inconsistently or incorrectly. You can apply horizontal and vertical offsets for odd and even pages.

- If you enter a positive number in the Horizontal field, the image area moves right on the page. If you enter a positive number in the Vertical field, the image area moves up on the page.

- If you enter a negative number in these fields, the image area moves left horizontally and down vertically on the page.

Sheet Adjustment

Press Sheet Scaling These settings allow you to scale your output if your press sheet is too large or too small. You can enter a horizontal and/or vertical scaling percentage.

Bleed Margin Default You can specify a bleed margin (the amount that an image or color extends to the trimmed edge of the printed page). You should use this when you have created templates with “default” bleed margins.

NOTE: The units of measurement displayed in this window are determined in your Preferences (see “General” on page 71).

In Asecuri Imposition, the default bleed amount is 0.125 inch (3.175 mm), and is applied to all four sides of the pages. You can adjust the bleed amount to be smaller than the amount set in the source file. The new bleed amount applies only to the imposed job on which you are currently working.

The original bleed amount must be set in the source file. The bleed margins that you set are the final margins that will be printed around the trim size of the page.

NOTE: You can make single page adjustments by modifying the individual page in the Run List.

Normalize

The Normalize Task Processor converts PostScript or EPS files to standardized or “normalized” PDF files. This process generates a PDF file that is suitable for reliable high-end prepress production.

In order to make sure the normalized PDF is valid, you can preflight it. For more information on preflighting, see “Raster Impose” on page 507.

Associated Resources

When you select the Normalize Task Processor in the System Overview, the following associated resource categories are displayed in the Resources pane:

- Fonts
- Content Profiles

Normalize Settings

These settings allow you to specify how the Normalize Task Processor processes all incoming data, and customize the way in which the Normalize Task Processor produces PDF files in the selected flow. The Normalizer settings are grouped into five tabs.

You can access these settings:

- When creating Parameter Sets (see “Managing Parameter Sets” on page 435). Here, you will see a ‘Lock in Production Plan’ check box (selected by default). If this check box is selected, the settings will be initially locked in the Settings pane. If this check box is deselected, the settings can be edited in the Settings pane.
- In the Settings pane, in the Plan tab of the Job Manager and the Ticket Editor. The settings may be initially locked, as indicated by the Lock icon. If you edit the job, you can unlock them as described in “Settings Pane (Ticket Editor)” on page 231.

Name

The name of the Parameter Set as it will appear in the Production Plan. When you create a Parameter Set, you should specify a Parameter Set name. You can always change this name later by editing the job, choosing the Parameter Set from the Task Processor in the Plan tab, and unlocking the settings in the Settings pane.

GRS

Esko workflow has a secure format called GRS (Page Description Language), which is presently only compatible with the Security design program One and Fortuna.

Adjusted for workflow To replace the Flexrip-plate workflow, choose one of the following workflows:

- Automatic
- Plate
- Proof
- Depth

Show warnings Select this check box to show warnings generated by the PDF conversion.

Show fix messages Select this check box to show fix messages generated by the PDF conversion.

Add the press profile as output intent You can select this check box to specify the target device for printing the GRS document

PDF Generation

The PDF Generation Settings only affect incoming PostScript.

General Compatibility: You can choose between Acrobat 4.0 (PDF 1.3), Acrobat 5.0 (PDF 1.4), Acrobat 6.0 (PDF 1.5), Acrobat 7.0 (PDF 1.6), and Acrobat 8.0 (PDF 1.7). Acrobat 4.0 is selected by default.

Binding style: The binding option affects how the pages are arranged side by side so that it will match the reading direction (left to right or right to left) of text in the document. You can choose either Left or Right. Right Edge binding is useful for viewing Arabic or Hebrew text or vertical Japanese text. By default, the binding is set to Left Edge.

Resolution: Enter the resolution at which you want to generate PDF files. The default setting is 1200 dpi, which is suitable for most jobs.

NOTE: This is the internal Normalize resolution, and is not related to the output resolution of your device.

Use output resolution: Select this check box if you want to use the resolution of the output device. In this case, the Resolution field is disabled.

Pages

Default page size: Specify the width and height that the Normalize Task Processor should use by default when no page size is specified in the incoming job. These values are used only when the document has no page size setting, or when the page size exceeds the allowed size.

Bleed amount : This is the amount that an image or color extends to the trimmed edge of the printed page.

NOTE: You cannot specify a bleed amount that is greater than the bleed specified in the incoming PostScript files.

Search for 'BoundingBox': Select this check box to search the incoming document for a specific page size.

Fallback: Specify the default page size (width and height) if no Bounding Box information can be extracted from the document.

Images

The Images Settings only affect incoming PostScript.

Image Downsampling

If you want to generate smaller PDF file sizes, you can set the Normalize Task Processor to downsample any images it encounters.

NOTE: Excessive downsampling reduces quality.

A separate check box is provided for Monochrome images, Grayscale images, and Color images. To enable downsampling for a particular image type, select the corresponding Downsampling check box, and choose one of the downsampling methods from the list:

Average downsampling: This is the fastest downsampling method.

Subsampling: This is the intermediate downsampling method that produces good results.

Bicubic downsampling: This is the slowest downsampling method, which produces the best quality.

For each of the selected downsampling methods, enter your required target image resolution (dpi) in the ‘to’ box provided.

For each of the three image types, you can also specify image downsampling thresholds. By default, these values are set 150% of your selected target image resolution. For example, if you set your compression options to downsample color images to 300 dpi, then by default this downsampling will be applied to all color images that are 450 dpi or higher.

In the ‘above’ box, you can change this default for images above the dpi threshold to any value you require.

Image Compression

The goal of image compression is to reduce the size of the PDF in order to improve performance.

To enable image compression for a particular image type, select the corresponding check box, and choose one of the image quality options from the list.

CCITT Groups 3 and 4 compression: These are lossless compression methods which are good for most monochrome images.

ZIP compression : This is also a lossless compression method.

JPEG compression: These options compress images with a minimum amount of information (quality) loss. JPEG compression produces smaller files than ZIP compression.

Run Length: This is also a lossless compression method for images with large areas of solid black or white.

These options activate automatic image compression. The greater the compression the smaller the resulting file size. The image compression uses the best compression algorithm according to the specific image type. Although some of the original image quality is lost, even the lower image quality options will produce reasonable image quality.

Select the 'Compress text and line art' check box if you also want to compress the rest of the data in your input documents.

Application Settings

The Application Settings only affect incoming PostScript. These settings are typically used with documents from high-end documentation and graphics applications, such as Adobe Illustrator and Adobe PageMaker. For more information, see the documentation that came with the application.

General

Preserve UCR and Black generation: Retains UCR (Under Color Removal) and Black Generation settings if they exist in the PostScript file. Black Generation calculates the amount of black to be used when trying to reproduce a particular color. Under Color Removal (UCR) reduces the amount of cyan, magenta, and yellow components to compensate for the amount of black that was added by the black generation. Because it uses less ink, UCR is generally used for newsprint and uncoated stock.

Preserve Halftone information: Retains any halftone information in files.

For more in-depth information, see “Understanding Normalize Settings” on page 477.

CAUTION: If you select this option, the halftone information cannot later be replaced by settings in the JTE.

Transfer functions in composite PostScript: The following options are only applicable for composite PostScript. For pre-separated PostScript, the value is always ‘Apply’:

- Preserve: Retains the transfer functions traditionally used to compensate for dot gain or dot loss (that may occur when an image is transferred to film). This option is especially recommended for pre-separated files when using spot colors.
- Remove: Removes transfer functions.
- Apply: Applies a transfer function.

CAUTION: If you select ‘Preserve’, no transfer resource from the Render Task Processor can be used. However, Halftone-linked Transfer Resources can be concatenated in the Render Task Processor using a special boot resource.

PostScript Color Management

PostScript Color Management allows you to define the behavior of PostScript, EPS or PDF images and objects which may or may not have a Color Space Array (CSA) embedded.

See also PostScript Color Management in “PDF Render - Render Settings” on page 498.

TIP: What is CSA? A Color Space Array (CSA), is the PostScript profile for a color. The CSA has the information to translate the color data from the origin space to the XYZ space. It is either inserted into the PostScript print stream when the image is printed or is resident in an EPS image. No other graphic format supports CSA. Colors referred to as CSA are known as device-independent, or CIEBased colors.

Honor application PostScript color management: Select this option if you want to use the Color Management settings of your application. This option disables the Color Management settings.

Apply fixed PostScript color management: In this section you can overwrite application profiles, CIE based color spaces and render intents.

- Attach Profiles: Select the appropriate check box for each object. You can choose between:
  - Images/objects
  - Line Art objects

  Once you have selected the check box, the corresponding drop-down list will be activated. Here, you can select the Profile you want to attach from the drop-down lists. You can choose from the following Profiles:

Objects	Profiles for Images/objects	Profiles for Line Art
RGB objects	• DeviceRGB • DefaultRGB	• DeviceRGB • DefaultRGB
CMYK objects	• DeviceCMYK • DefaultCMYK	• DeviceCMYK • DefaultCMYK
Gray objects	• DeviceGray • DefaultGray	• DeviceGray • DefaultGray

- Color Spaces: You have three options:
  - Treat CIEBasedA objects as gray objects
  - Treat CIEBasedDEFG objects as CMYK objects
  - Treat CIEBasedDEF objects as RGB objects

  A CSA is embedded in an image when you select “PS Colormanagement” while saving an EPS file in PhotoShop. There are three possibilities:
  - A Gray CSA results in a CIEBasedA entry.

- A CMYK CSA results in a CIEBasedDEFG entry in the PS file.
- An RGB CSA results in a CIEBasedRGB entry for a monitor profile. It results in a CIEBasedDEF entry for a scanner profile or an extended monitor profile (feature of Colortune 4.0).

You are advised to use a CSA in RGB images, but not to use CSAs in CMYK or Gray images.

- Rendering Intent: You can overwrite render intents, and specify exactly how they should be overwritten. For more information on render intents, refer to “Rendering Intent” on page 534.
  - Overrule rendering intent for RGB images with:

    Choose one of the following: Perceptual, Relative Colorimetric, Saturation or Absolute Colorimetric.
  - Overrule rendering intent for CMYK images with:

    Choose one of the following: Perceptual, Relative Colorimetric, Saturation or Absolute Colorimetric.
  - Overrule rendering intent for LAB images with:

    Choose one of the following: Perceptual, Relative Colorimetric, Saturation or Absolute Colorimetric.

Overprint

Honor application overprint: Select this option if you want to use the Overprint Settings of your application. This option disables the Force Knockout and Force Overprint settings.

Apply fixed overprint: Select this option if you want to overwrite the Overprint Settings of your application. This option enables the Force Knockout and Force Overwrite settings.

- Force Knockout: This option detects all “White objects” set to overprint, and changes them to knockout. Alternatively, you can change all overprint objects to knockout.
- Force Overprint: Choose your black overprint options by selecting the available check boxes. You can overprint any combination of black objects (lines, fills, and text). In the case of overprinting text, a point size limit can be set, above which no overprinting of the characters is forced. Setting this value high will cause all black text to be overprinted.

Advanced

Disable PSE: Select this check box if you want the application to process the files with PSE disabled.

PDF Processing

The PDF Processing Settings affect both incoming PostScript and PDF.

File Format

Select this option if you want to create PDF files in ASCII text format. This is useful if you want to send a file via email, although it increases file size.

Fonts

You can configure the Normalize Task Processor to produce PDFs, even if documents are input with missing fonts, and the font is not available as an Asecuri font resource. The Normalizer will then substitute any missing fonts with the substitution font that you specify.

Missing fonts: There are a number of ways you can deal with missing fonts:

- Notify: The Normalizer stops processing the document, and places a 'User Interaction' notification on it.
- Ignore (only for PDF input): The Normalizer continues processing the document, but places a 'Warning' notification on it.
- Substitute with: The Normalizer continues processing the document, but replaces the missing font with the selected substitution font, and places a 'Warning' notification on the document.

NOTE: If you input a document that uses font substitution, you cannot correct the font afterwards.

Subset all embedded fonts below: Select this check box to embed only a subset of the fonts, and specify a threshold percentage. If the threshold is 90, for example, and less than 90% of the characters are used, the Normalize Task Processor embeds only those characters. By default, this option is disabled.

NOTE: If you select this option, Asecuri will create smaller PDF files. However, you will also limit the amount of editing that will be possible later, since not all the relevant font information will be available.

PANTONE conversion

Convert all PANTONE color names to: This option allows you to change the name extension (such as CVC or CVU) according to the medium type:

- Coated
- Uncoated

- Matte: Only for use with Pantone 2000 colors. If you choose Matte, the suffix will be changed to 'M'.
- ‘CV’
- Follow paper type

NOTE: These settings are not available for multi-part jobs and PDF Render.

Use Pantone 2000 color names: This option allows you to convert the old Pantone name extensions to the Pantone 2000 extensions.

Recognize ‘PANTONE nnn’ as PANTONE color name: Asecuri will interpret any color name beginning with a “P” as a Pantone color name.

NOTE: To use PDF to its full advantage, a composite workflow is required, allowing last minute decision making as to where and how the PDF should be processed. However, some users need support for legacy workflows, where files come in pre-separated (e.g. DCS files such as CopyDot and HexaChrome, or other pre-separated PostScript files). For this reason, the Normalizer always converts (re-combines) incoming pre-separated PostScript to composite.

Page Thumbnails

Page Thumbnails are low-resolution images that Asecuri uses to show thumbnails of a page in the Results tab. These thumbnails are not those that are embedded in the PDF file (and that you can see in a PDF viewer such as Acrobat): They are TIFF images that are stored inside Asecuri. You should use the Export Task Processor to produce PDF files with embedded thumbnails.

Create thumbnails: Only when there are no document thumbnails present: The Normalizer uses the document's thumbnails as page thumbnails if they are present. It builds thumbnails for those pages that have no thumbnail. Note that the page thumbnails may not be built if there are problems generating a proper PDF file (from a PostScript file). This is the default setting.

Create thumbnails: Never, but use the document's thumbnails if present: The Normalizer uses the document's thumbnails as page thumbnails. Documents that have no thumbnails will have no page thumbnails, and are displayed with a generic icon in the Results tab. You should select this option if you want maximum performance and do not require thumbnails in the Results tab. This is also useful for fast processing of large documents, where page thumbnails are not important (e.g. a text-only book). For optimal performance, you can also enable the HotFolder's thumbnail extraction.

Create thumbnails: Always, ignoring the document's thumbnails: The Normalizer always builds page thumbnails for every file it successfully delivers, even if the incoming file already contains thumbnails. The thumbnails may not be generated if there are problems generating a proper PDF file (from a PostScript file). Since this will slow down the Normalizer, you should use this option only if you know that the embedded thumbnails of the received PDF files are of bad quality.

Low Resolution Previews

These are preview thumbnails used for viewing page content in Apogee Impose. They have a higher resolution than the page thumbnails displayed in the Results tab.

Create Low Resolution Previews: Select this option to create page preview thumbnails for Apogee Impose. See “Page Previews” on page 454 for more information.

For more in-depth information, see “Understanding Normalize Settings” on page 477.

Understanding Normalize Settings

This part contains more in-depth information on a number of settings of the Normalize Task Processor.

Conversion Limitation from Separations into Composite

This feature has the following limitations:

- Recombine only works when pre-separated PostScript is sent to the Normalize Task Processor.
- Ensure that CCITT Group 4 is chosen for Monochrome in the Image Handling options (for CopyDot support).
- This option will only work with fully DSC-compliant PostScript.
- Since the decision to separate was already made in the authoring application, it is not possible to change the spot color behavior of the resulting PDFs. You will only be able to choose “keep as spot” or “map to other spot”.
- Adobe Acrobat or Acrobat Reader will not correctly view the resulting PDF. Since recombine is a process where separations are placed in one file using the overprint mode, only the last separation in the file (usually black) will be viewed. To obtain a correct preview of CMYK files in Acrobat 5.0.5 or higher, you have to enable overprint preview in the View menu of Acrobat.
- You cannot change the overprint behavior, or perform Trapping (in the Render Task Processor) on these recombined separations.

Transfer Functions

Dot gain occurs when the ink dots that make up a printed image are larger (for example, due to spreading on paper) than in the halftone screen. Dot loss occurs when the dots print smaller.

For example, a file that is intended for output on a particular imagesetter may contain transfer functions that compensate for the dot gain associated with that printer. Transfer functions are specific to an output device, and are typically loaded and managed on the Render Task Processor. If however, the input file contains transfer curves, you may want to preserve this information.

Halftone Information

Halftone information consists of dots that control how much ink is deposited by halftone devices at a specific location on the paper. Varying the dot size and density creates the illusion of variations of gray or continuous color. For a CMYK image, four halftone screens are used: one for each ink used in the printing process. In traditional print production, a halftone is produced by placing a halftone screen between a piece of film and the image and then exposing the film. Electronic equivalents, such as in Adobe Photoshop, let users specify the halftone screen attributes before producing the film or paper output. As with transfer functions, halftone information is intended for use with a particular output device.

PDF Render

PDF Render accepts only PDF data and allows you to perform color management before outputting the re-screened raster data to an imagesetter, platesetter or proofer.

PDF Render performs trapping, separation, rendering and screening of the data. Each of these processes have their individual settings. You can view these settings either when creating Parameter Sets, or from the Settings pane in the Plan tab of the Job Manager and the Ticket Editor.

- In the Trapping process, overlaps between adjacent colors are created to account for press misregistration, paper stretch or other variables.
- In the Separation process, a composite job is separated into different colors. On a press, each separated color has its own printing plate, each one printed in a different angle, producing the final printed color image. In traditional prepress, color images are separated into four layers corresponding to the four process colors (CMYK) used in process printing: cyan, magenta, yellow and black. For more information on these settings, see “PDF Render - Separation Settings” on page 490.
- In the Rendering process, you can specify your settings for Color Management and Overprint.
- In the Screening process, continuous tone files are converted into halftone dots. This means that the image is converted into a number of dots in the predefined separation colors. You can enhance the quality of the image by adjusting the dpi (dots per inch) and the lpi (lines per inch), also called ‘line frequency’. Every line consists of a number of dots. For more information on these settings, see “PDF Render - Screen Settings” on page 502.

Associated Resources

When you select the PDF Render Task Processor in the System Overview, the following associated resource categories are displayed in the Resources pane:

- Fonts
- Content Profiles
- Profiles

- Input Color Conversions
- Output Color Conversions

PDF Render - Trap Settings

You can access these settings:

- When creating Parameter Sets (see “Managing Parameter Sets” on page 435). Here, you will see a ‘Lock in Production Plan’ check box (selected by default). If this check box is selected, the settings will be initially locked in the Settings pane. If this check box is deselected, the settings can be edited in the Settings pane.
- In the Settings pane, in the Plan tab of the Job Manager and the Ticket Editor. The settings may be initially locked, as indicated by the Lock icon. If you edit the job, you can unlock them as described in “Settings Pane (Ticket Editor)” on page 231.

Name

The name of the Parameter Set as it will appear in the Production Plan. When you create a Parameter Set, you should specify a Parameter Set name. You can always change this name later by editing the job, choosing the Parameter Set from the Task Processor in the Plan tab, and unlocking the settings in the Settings pane.

Honor application trap zone and ink settings

Disables full-page Trapping. When selected, this option overrides the Global Trap options, described below. Asecuri will then implement any Trapping and Ink settings which have been made in the original application (if the application allows it). If there are no application Trapping settings, then the job will be processed without trapping.

Apply application trap zones

The Trapping settings of the original application will be applied. You can still specify the Ink settings in the Asecuri Trapping settings.

You can still select Apply Additional Global Trap Zone, if there are no global trap zones defined in the PS or PDF file.

NOTE: Application Trap Zones will always overrule the Asecuri Trapping settings if both options are selected.

Apply additional global trap zones

Enables full-page Trapping. The Trapping settings of the original application will be ignored. The Global Trap settings will be used instead.

Trap Width

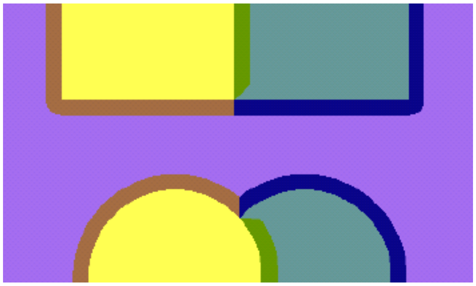
Normal: Determines the width to be applied to the trapping elements. For quality offset printing, this value should normally be equivalent to a width of 0.5 - to - 2 lines. For a 150 lpi job, this would be a value between 0.24 pts and 0.96 pts (0.084 mm and 0.336 mm). The higher the quality of the printed output, the smaller the trap should be.

Black: Determines the width to be applied to black trapping elements.

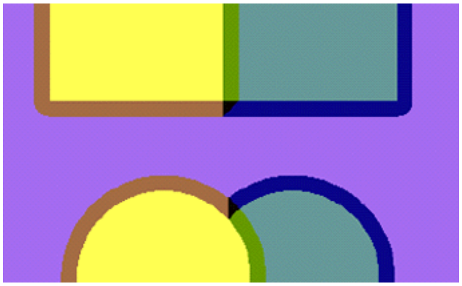
Trap Appearance

Trap style: The Trap Style option specifies how the traps are created in a point where three or more images with trapped colors, intersect each other. You have the following options:

- Split: This option will avoid the dark areas. This style is recommended for offset printing.

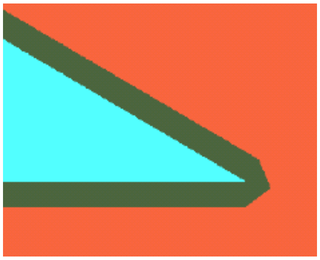


- Overlap: This option will leave the object shapes more intact. This style is recommended for packaging.

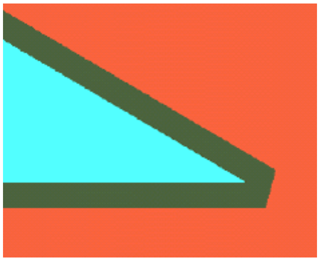


Trap corner shape: The Trap Corner Shape setting provides three options for the outside spread style of the trap corner:

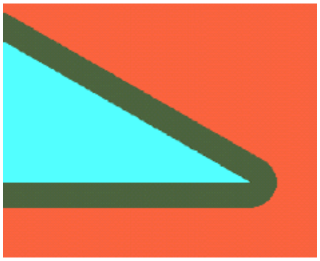
- Triangle



- Square



- Round



Trap Images

Image boundaries: This value specifies the position, relative to the image border, where a trap will be placed:

- Center: Places the trap half on the image and half on the object when both have to be trapped to each other. This option applies to image-to-object trapping and image-to-image trapping. Image-to-image trapping, however, only supports the boundaries “Center” and “Normal”.

- Normal: Applies the general trapping rules, and places the trap in accordance with the neutral densities of the image pixels. This option should be rarely used, since the color information in the image might be different for each single pixel, which may produce a “jagged” result.

- Spread: Places the trap on the vector information only. This option is useful for images that are placed on a dark background, such as a black keyline. If text is placed on the image, then this option helps to preserve the integrity of the text.

- Choke: Places the trap on the image only. This option is useful for images that are placed on a light background.

1-bit images: This option should be checked when you want to trap 1-bit TIFFs (with transparent background). The trap will be created between the image and the background, according to the standard trap rules. When an Image mask abuts an image, a trap will be created according to the Inks setting.

You can clear this option if you want to improve trapping performance. In particular, you should not use this option when working with copy-dot files or very complex image masks.

Within images: This option enables the creation of traps within images. In most cases, you should avoid trapping within images. It may be only really necessary when dealing with screen dumps or very high contrast artwork which is created without anti-aliasing in an image processing system. However, if you use this option, it should only be applied to the specific area (defined by trap zones) which contains the image, and not to the document as a whole.

NOTE: For standard operations, you are advised not to use this option.

Image to image: This trapping option is useful when one of the abutting images has a dominant color that is mostly absent from the other image, or simply when you want to produce traps consistently along all image edges.

The Image to Image traps are placed to the Center. If Spread or Choke is selected or if Image Boundaries are off, Center will be applied.

Only if Trap Image Boundaries is set to Normal, will the Image to Image traps also be set to Normal.

Thresholds

Sliding traps color limit: Slides a trap gently from the lighter area to the darker area whenever the difference in "darkness" between the two areas is less than a specified percentage (0-100%). When the Sliding Trap Color Limit is set to 100%, no sliding to center will occur, and the general trapping rules will be applied.

Relative color step limit: Traps are used in areas of varied color whenever the relative percentage of difference between two adjoining colors exceeds a predefined limit. The Relative color step limit option allows you to specify this percentage of difference. The lower the value, the more traps will be created. The default relative color step limit is 200%.

Trap color density reduction: Allows you to reduce the darkness of a trap. This value is specified as a percentage (0-100%). This produces a trap that is "lighter" than would normally be used. The higher the color density reduction you specify, the lighter the trap. At 100%, the trap will have the same neutral density as the darkest color.

For more in-depth information, see "Understanding Trap Settings" on page 487.

Black Trapping

Allows you to define which color has to be handled as black. There are two editable parameters:

Color tint value at least: Trapping can be configured to handle other dark or almost-black colors in the same way that it handles 100% black colors.

Color density at least: Any ink at or higher than the specified color density threshold value will be treated as black.

For more in-depth information, see "Understanding Trap Settings" on page 487.

Inks

Click the Inks button to access the Ink Settings for the PDF Render Task Processors. In the Inks dialog box, you can view or edit the order in which all process and spot colors will be trapped. You can also view or edit the density and colorant type of each color.

Trapping Order

This table shows the order in which the colors will be trapped. You can use the Up and Down arrows to change the trapping order. The table also shows the corresponding density and the colorant type.

Determine trap order automatically You can choose to have Asecuri manage the trapping order by selecting this check box. Asecuri will order the colors as follows:

- Based on the colorant type: Transparent, Normal, Opaque, Opaque Ignore
- Based on neutral densities: Lower values are selected first.
- Equal colorant types and neutral densities will be ordered alphabetically.

Chosen Ink Name

Density You can either specify the density manually, or have it automatically retrieved according to look-up rules. For this, you need to select the Automatic check box. If the density cannot be retrieved from the application or the books, AND you have selected the "Use application values, calculate if not supplied" Ink Densities lookup option, it will be calculated according to the CMYK values of the spot color.

NOTE: If the CMYK values cannot be retrieved, you will receive a warning.

Colorant type You can also select the type of ink you would like to use from this list. Your options are:

Normal: Normal is the default for all colors. Normal trapping rules will be applied.

Transparent: If you are using varnish inks, this option ensures that these inks will never be trapped. Underlying colors will however be trapped.

Opaque: If you are using heavy, non-transparent inks, this option will prevent the trapping of underlying colors, but will allow trapping along the ink's edges.

Opaque Ignore: If you are using heavy, non-transparent inks, this option will prevent the trapping of underlying colors and along the ink's edges. This option is required when using inks which react unpredictably with other inks (e.g. metallic inks).

Definition This field displays how the color was found.

If the color is...	You will see the message...
Entered manually	<no message>
Found in the specified book	<color book name> book
Supplied by the application	Application
Found in the specified ink set (from the Press Task Processor) - only for process colors	<ink set name> ink set

Occurs in

The table shows on which pages the selected color is used (Run List position, document name and page number).

Ink Densities

Specify how and from where Asecuri will retrieve its color definitions. You have three search options:

Search books

Asecuri searches the specified books. The job will fail if the color is not found in any of the selected books.

Use application values

Asecuri will use the application color values.

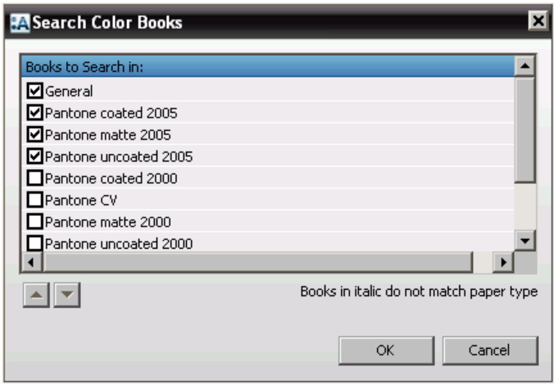
Use application values, calculate if not supplied

Asecuri uses the application values. If the application does not supply the values. Asecuri will calculate them.

NOTE: When this option is selected, the application might find a color in a different color space. In this case, there is a color space conflict.

Books

Double-clicking the Books button displays the book selection window. The table shows all of the available books that can be searched. You can select or clear the check box next to the book's name to either include the book in or exclude it from the search. You can also change the search order by using the up and down arrows or by dragging and dropping.



NOTE: The books are shared between the Trap and Separation settings. If you enable a book in the Separation settings, it will also be enabled in the Trap settings, and vice versa.

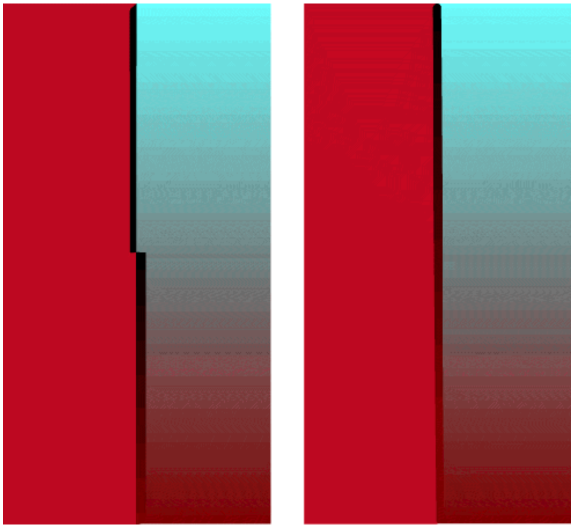
Understanding Trap Settings

This section provides more detailed information on the following options introduced in PDF Render - Trap Settings.

- Using a Sliding Traps Color Limit
- Using a Relative Color Step Limit
- Using Trap Color Density Reduction
- How Black Trapping Works

Using a Sliding Traps Color Limit

As a general rule in trapping, a trap in the “lighter” color should always spread into the “darker” color. However, if the color in one of the lighter area changes gradually (e.g., a blend or a vignette), then the trap will “jump” into the darker area, creating a visible jagged edge as illustrated below left.



Jagged Trap (100%) and Slanting Trap (70%)

You can fix this type of problem by specifying a Sliding Traps Color Limit. This allows a trap to slide gently from the lighter area to the darker area whenever the difference in “darkness” between the two areas is less than a specified percentage (0-100%).

In the example (above right), if you set the Sliding Trap Color Limit to 70%, the trap line will start to gradually slide into the darker area whenever the difference is less than 70%. This gives a gradual and barely perceptible slant of the trap line into the darker area, and avoids the abrupt and jagged jump.

Using a Relative Color Step Limit

Suppose you had 2 adjoining colors - Color A and Color B - with the following CMYK attributes:

CMYK	COLOR A	COLOR B	ABS DIFF	REL DIFF
Cyan	35%	5%	30%	30/5 = 600%
Magenta	5%	40%	35%	35/5 = 700%
Yellow	16%	20%	4%	4/16 = 25%
Black	8%	5%	3%	3/5 = 60%

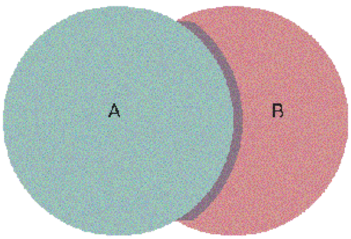
The relative difference is equal to the absolute difference divided by the smallest component of the two colors.

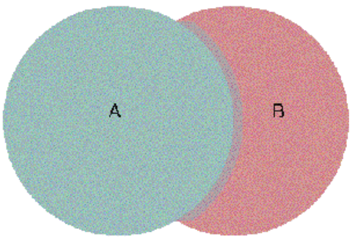
If you specify a Relative Color Step Limit of 10%, then a trap will be needed between these 2 colors. This is because there is a relative difference of more than 10% in at least 2 of the component colors (Cyan and Magenta) and this in opposite directions.

NOTE: You need also an absolute difference of at least 5%.

Using Trap Color Density Reduction

When a trap is created between 2 colors, the trap will adopt the highest color value for each of the CMYK elements available in the 2 adjoining colors. The resulting color is always darker than the two original colors, which produces a dark gray to black trap. However, you can reduce the darkness of the trap by setting a Trap Color Density Reduction value.





Normal Trap Density (left) and 100% Trap Color Density Reduction (right)

How Black Trapping Works

There are three Black Trapping rules that are applied whenever black is involved:

- The Black Trapping sets a percentage of deviation from the normal trap whenever black is involved in the creation of a trap. This is because registration problems are more visible whenever black (or a very dark color) is involved. Traditionally, therefore, the width of a trap to a black area is made wider than a standard trap. A good default setting to use here is 200%.

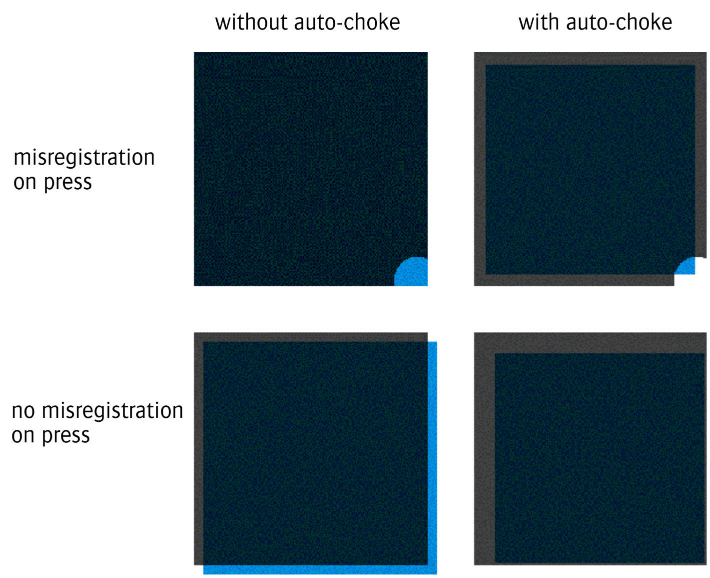
- Auto-choke is always active. In cases involving a rich black (solid black with one or more support colors) that shares a common edge with white, a reverse trap will be created.

- Always spread under black.

However, when is black really black? To define which color has to be handled as black, you must specify minimum values for Color Tint and Color Density. Both of these values are required for a color to be considered as black.

Color Tint Setting a minimum color tint value is useful in specific situations. For example, if you are printing on newspaper quality or with polyester or other so-called lower quality plates, you may not use the full range of color tints (0-100%). Instead, you may limit color tints digitally between 4-96%. In this case, there will be no 100% black in the digital document. However, if you set the Color Tint Value to 96%, the Trapping module will treat black at 96% as it would treat black at 100%.

Color Density Setting a minimum color density is useful when you have dark spot colors that you want to be handled the same as black.



How Black Trapping Works

Basic Trapping Terms

Spread A spread traps a light colored foreground object to a dark background. The darker of two adjacent colors defines the visible edge of the object. Therefore, spreading the lighter color slightly into the darker color maintains the visual edge.

Choke A choke traps a light colored background to a dark foreground object.

PDF Render - Separation Settings

This dialog box allows you to view or edit the Separate settings of the Render Task Processor. This process separates composite jobs into different colors. Each separated color has its own printing plate. Each plate is printed at a different angle, to produce the final printed color image.

You can access these settings:

- When creating Parameter Sets (see “Managing Parameter Sets” on page 435). Here, you will see a ‘Lock in Production Plan’ check box (selected by default). If this check box is selected, the settings will be initially locked in the Settings pane. If this check box is deselected, the settings can be edited in the Settings pane.

- In the Settings pane, in the Plan tab of the Job Manager and the Ticket Editor. The settings may be initially locked, as indicated by the Lock icon. If you edit the job, you can unlock them as described in “Settings Pane (Ticket Editor)” on page 231.

Name

The name of the Parameter Set as it will appear in the Production Plan. When you create a Parameter Set, you should specify a Parameter Set name. You can always change this name later by editing the job, choosing the Parameter Set from the Task Processor in the Plan tab, and unlocking the settings in the Settings pane.

Color Policy

In this section, you can specify which colors are to be printed and which colors are to be converted.

Application decides

If you select the Application decides check box, the application specifies whether to keep or convert a color. Asecuri displays the colors according to the specifications of the application. The other options are disabled except for Color Definitions. In this case, you can make no changes to the separation output and order in the Image settings (see “TIFF Platesetter” on page 537).

CAUTION: This option is only available for Hot Tickets.

Colors are only displayed from pages in the Run List. If you remove a page from the Run List, its colors will no longer be displayed.

If you clear the Application decides check box, Asecuri keeps the current settings. You can then change these settings as required. If you reselect the check box, Asecuri restores the application settings completely: All previous settings are lost, as well as any manually-added colors. In this case, Asecuri will ask for a confirmation.

Keep

This column lists the process colors and the colors that will be kept as spot colors. The names of the process colors are the generic color labels as defined in the color space associated with the selected ink set in the Press Task Processor. The process colors are listed first, followed by the spot colors, sorted alphabetically.

CAUTION: This option cannot be used with composite PostScript documents.

You can add, edit and delete colors. For more information, see “To add or edit a spot color” on page 497 or “To delete a spot color” on page 498.

NOTE: The ink names specified by the ink set are not displayed.

Convert to Process

This column lists the colors that are to be printed as process colors. The CMYK values are displayed next to the color. The colors are sorted alphabetically.

You can use the Right/Left arrows to move colors from one column to the other if necessary.

NOTE: The process colors are not shown if there is no Press Task Processor in the Production Plan (in this case, the CMYK colors are displayed in the Separation settings). The table is updated as soon as you insert the Press Task Processor. The process colors are also not shown when you are editing a Parameter Set, as they cannot be part of a Parameter Set.

A small icon appears before each color:

 The color definition was found in the Asecuri Color Books.

 The Emulate Overprint option is always on.

 The Emulate Overprint option is always off.

 The Emulate Overprint option is selected automatically.

 The color contains version-specific content.

 The color does not contain version-specific content.

 The color was found in the job.

 The color was manually entered.

 The color was manually entered and was found in the job.

 The color is directly linked to the selected color

 The color is indirectly linked to the selected color.

 The color was found in the border or the imposition template.

 The color was manually entered, with marks.

 Mapped color name as defined by the Pantone mapping settings.

 Special color: varnish.

 Special color: die line.

 Special color: other.

NOTE: All colors that are linked to have the same color policy (process colors are always in the Keep list). However, the colors that link to them may be in either the Keep or Convert lists.

Colors not yet listed above

In this drop-down list, you can specify how Asecuri handles spot colors that are not specified in either of the two lists. You have three options:

Keep: Asecuri will use them as separation colors. The job outputs additional plates for the spot colors.

Convert to Process: Asecuri will convert them to the process colors.

Notify: Asecuri sends a message to the Message Board and holds the job processing if a new spot color is found. Asecuri automatically puts the newly found spot colors in the Convert to Process table and marks them as Policy undecided by a red in-job indicator and by putting the text in red and italics.

You can then either keep the color in the Convert to Process table or move it to the Keep table.

- To keep it in the Convert to Process, context-click the color and select Convert.
- To move it to the Keep table, use the arrows between the two tables. When you move the color to the Keep table, Asecuri automatically accepts the color. You can also context-click the color, and select Keep.

CAUTION: You cannot submit a job as long as there are non-accepted colors.

You can map a color to another by dragging it unto a specific color (or context-clicking). Practically, this means that if you map red to green, red will be replaced with green. However, you can only have one mapping level. For more information, refer to “Understanding Separation Settings” on page 496.

Emulate Overprint policy Always on. Always off. Automatic. Emulate Overprint emulates the overprint behavior of colors whose color policy has been changed, for example when spot colors are printed with process colors. Changing the policy may require reprocessing.

Map spot colors from marks/templates to content spot colors Controls the automatic mapping of the generic spot colors names used for marks and in templates to actual spot colors. This is selected by default but can be disabled if required, for example for some security printing applications.

<Color>

This section displays information about the color that is selected in the Color Policy section. The name of this section is the name of the selected color.

Press color values These fields display the CMYK values for the selected color in the Press color space. The CMYK displayed and the Definition specifies how the value was found.

If the color is...	CMYK displayed	Definition
Entered manually	User CMYK	
Found in book	Calculated CMYK if profile selected, empty if no profile	Lab<Lab values> from “<book name>” book
Found in book with exception defined	Exception CMYK if profile selected, empty if no profile	Output profile exception for “<output profile>” in “<book name>” book
Supplied by application	Application CMYK	Application
Not found	Empty	<Not Found>

Emulate Overprint Always on. Always off. Automatic. Emulate Overprint emulates the overprint behavior of colors whose color policy has been changed, for example when spot colors are printed with process colors. You will see the Emulate Overprint icon next to the separation name. Based on the input file and the required color behavior, Asecuri will select Emulate Overprint by default. Manual override of the setting is not always allowed.

Versioning The **Has version-specific content** check box is selected to indicate that the color is version-specific. This is indicated with the “v” icon next to the color in the Color Policy. Works with the R4V action list.

Occurs in

The table shows on which pages the selected color is used (Run List position, document name and page number). When the color is part of a Null device object, the table also shows the linked colors.

Color Definitions

This section specifies how and from where Asecuri will retrieve its color definitions. You have three search options:

Search books only

Asecuri searches the specified books. The job will fail if the color is not found in the any of the selected books.

Search books first, use application values if not found

Same as above, but now Asecuri will also use the application values if the color is not found in the books.

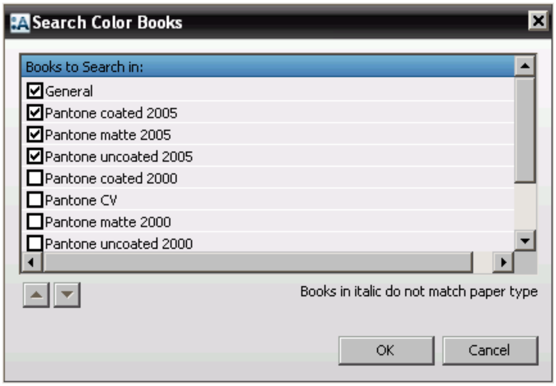
Use application values when supplied, else search books

Asecuri uses the application values, unless the application does not supply the values. Asecuri will then search the books.

NOTE: When this option is selected, the application might find a color in a different color space. In this case, there is a color space conflict.

Books

Clicking the Books button displays the book selection window. The table shows all of the available books that can be searched.



You can select or clear the check box next to the book's name to either include the book in or exclude it from the search. You can also change the search order by using the up and down arrows or by dragging and dropping.

NOTE: The books are shared between the Trap and Separation settings. If you enable a book in the Separation settings, it will also be enabled in the Trap settings, and vice versa.

PANTONE Mapping

Map all PANTONE color names to

This option allows you to change the name extension (such as CVC or CVU) according to the medium type:

- Coated
- Uncoated
- Matte: Only for use with Pantone 2000 colors. If you choose Matte, the suffix will be changed to 'M'.
- ‘CV’
- Follow paper type

Use Pantone 2000 color names

This option allows you to convert the old Pantone name extensions to the Pantone 2000 extensions.

Recognize ‘PANTONE nnn’ as PANTONE color name

Asecuri will interpret any color name beginning with a “P” as a Pantone color name.

Understanding Separation Settings

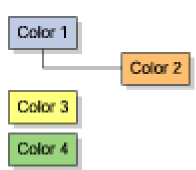
This section provides you with in-depth information on the Separation settings.

Mapping colors

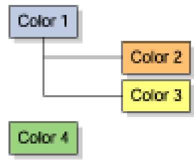
You can map a color to another by dragging it to the color. You can only do this up to one mapping level. Mapped colors appear indented below the color they are mapped to.

NOTE: Mapping colors with a pre-separated document is only possible if you have a Normalizer in the flow.

If you have a list of four colors and you drag color 2 to color 1 the result would be as follows:



If you drag color 3 to color 1 or color 2, the result would be:



CAUTION: When you move a color to the other table, you will also move any colors that are mapped and linked to that specific color.

CMYK Conflict

If you select Use application values, Asecuri might detect different CMYK values for the same color. In that case, a message will be sent to the Message Board.

The conflicting color is shown in red italics with a red in-job indicator. The conflicting CMYK values are displayed in the Occurs in window in the Definition column. You can only resolve the conflict by clearing the Automatic check box, and entering the desired CMYK values.

A color policy conflict is displayed in red: A CMYK conflict is displayed in blue.

▷ To add or edit a spot color

1 Do one of the following to add or edit a spot color.

- Click the Add button underneath the column to add a spot color.

- Select the spot color and click the Edit button to edit it.

The Add or Edit Color window appears.

2 Click the Browse button to look for the spot color.

The Select Ink window appears.

3 Select the Ink Book in the left column, then the Color of your choice in the right column and click OK.

4 Click OK in the Add Color window.

The newly added spot color appears in the list or the spot color has been edited.

▷ To delete a spot color

1 Select the spot color that you want to delete.

2 Click the Delete button underneath the column.

3 The spot color has been deleted.

NOTE: Make sure you delete the right spot color as there is no confirmation window.

PDF Render - Render Settings

This dialog box allows you to view or edit the Render settings of the PDF Render Task Processor. These settings define how color management is applied to the incoming data.

The settings you see in this dialog depend on the Color Management mode you select at the top of the dialog. In the Mode drop-down list, you choose one of the following modes:

- Document Based
- Honor application (7.x compatible)
- Custom (7.x compatible)

Document-Based Color Management settings

This mode uses input and output conversion presets for color management.

Input Conversion This drop-down list displays all the available input conversion presets. You can click the gray arrow to open the editor to consult or edit the settings. See “Input Color Conversions Overview” on page 609 for more information.

Output Conversion This drop-down list displays all the available output conversion presets. You can click the gray arrow to open the editor to consult or edit the settings. See “Output Color Conversions Overview” on page 666 for more information.

Honor Application (7.x compatible) Color Management settings

In this mode, color management is based on settings in the incoming document and all other presets are disabled. This mode also ignores *Document Output Intent* and conversions depend directly on input profiles and press output profiles.

Click the grey arrow to open the editor to consult or edit the settings.

The following settings can also be applied in this mode:

- Generic Settings

They are explained below.

Custom (7.x compatible) Color Management settings - RGB, Gray, CMYK tabs

In this mode, all color management settings in the incoming document are *not* honored and you can apply certain ICC Profiles to color spaces. Conversions depend directly on input profiles and press output profiles as explained here.

You can attach Profiles for the following objects:

- Images
- Line Art

For each of these objects, you have a tab corresponding to the Color Space (RGB, Gray, CMYK, Spot, Document). Once you have selected one of these tabs, you can then choose to attach either a Profile or a Link to the Color Space. The corresponding drop-down list is then activated, and you can select the profile or link you want to attach from the list.

The following settings can also be applied in this mode:

- Generic Settings

They are explained below.

Images and Line Art settings

You can set either a device link profile or a profile for tagged and untagged objects. If there is an output intent in the PDF document (tagged), you can choose to use the document profile as tagged profile.

Untagged (No Profile attached): Provides the following options:

- Use Default Profile
- Use Device Link Profile
- Simple Convert.

Tagged (Profile attached): Provides the following options:

- Use Tagged Profile
- Treat as Untagged

Default ICC Profile: Lists all Content Profiles, according to the selected color space.

Rendering intent: You can overwrite render intents, and specify exactly how they should be overwritten. For more information on render intents, refer to “Rendering Intent” on page 534. Choose one of the following: From Input, Same as Document, Perceptual, Relative Colorimetric or Saturation.

Black Point Compensation: This option may be available depending on source profile, destination profile and rendering intent.

Device Link Profile: The profiles shown in the list should include all the available device link profiles of which the source color space corresponds to the color space of the tab, and the destination color space is the same as that of the destination profile.

Profile Link Exceptions: Lists all Profile Link Exceptions. This option is only available in the CMYK tab.

Custom (7.x compatible) Color Management settings - Spot tab

Conversion from Application Values

Color Space of Application Values: Provides the following options:

- Don’t convert
- Treat as CMYK input: The line-art settings from the CMYK tab will be applied to the spot colors.

Conversion from Books

Accurate spot color mixing: You can choose off, or maximum 2, 3, or 4 colors.

Use Document Profile's Paper White: If this option is selected, the paper white of the document profile is used in the color calculation. If this option is not selected, the paper white of the color book is used in the calculation of the spot colors.

NOTE: A spectral press profile is required for this option.

Custom (7.x compatible) Color Management settings - Document tab

Document Profile

The Document Profile is the ICC profile specified in the document.

Untagged (No Profile attached): Provides the following options:

- Use Destination Profile
- Generic CMYK
- All CMYK Content Profiles

Tagged (Profile attached): Provides the following options:

- Use Tagged Profile
- Treat as Untagged

Document Rendering Intent

Rendering Intent: Choose one of the following: Perceptual, Relative Colorimetric or Saturation.

Generic Settings

Advanced CMM

Recent developments in the Color Management engine offer 'Advanced CMM', which provides a better way of bringing (smarter) colors into gamut. However, this comes at a small cost: it is a little slower.

Advanced Overprint Handling

Preserves the Adobe overprint behavior during CMYK to CMYK conversions

Overprint Settings

Honor application settings

If the Honor Application Settings check box is selected, all overprint settings will be taken from the information in the incoming document. In this case, the Force Knockout and Overprint settings are not displayed. If this check box is cleared, the Task Processor settings are displayed and enabled, and will overrule all overprint settings in the incoming document.

Force Overprint

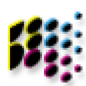
This section is only displayed when the Overprint Honor application settings check box is deselected. Here, you can choose your black overprint options by selecting the available check boxes.

You can overprint any combination of black objects (lines, fills, and text). In the case of overprinting text, a point size limit can be set, above which no overprinting of the characters is forced. Setting this value high will cause all black text to be overprinted.

Missing Fonts

Select the ‘Substitute missing fonts with’ check box if you want Asecuri to replace them with one of the available fonts in the associated drop-down list.

PDF Render - Screen Settings



This dialog box allows you to view or edit the Screen settings of the PDF Render Task Processor. The Screening process converts continuous tone images into halftone dots.

You can access these settings:

- When creating Parameter Sets (see “Managing Parameter Sets” on page 435). Here, you will see a ‘Lock in Production Plan’ check box (selected by default). If this check box is selected, the settings will be initially locked in the Settings pane. If this check box is deselected, the settings can be edited in the Settings pane.

- In the Settings pane, in the Plan tab of the Job Manager and the Ticket Editor. The settings may be initially locked, as indicated by the Lock icon. If you edit the job, you can unlock them as described in “Settings Pane (Ticket Editor)” on page 231.

Select automatically from press

Select this check box to use an appropriate Parameter Set which is linked to the selected press using keywords. See “Parameter Set Lookup” on page 557. The settings are locked.

Name

The name of the Parameter Set as it will appear in the Production Plan. When you create a Parameter Set, you should specify a Parameter Set name. You can always change this name later by editing the job, choosing the Parameter Set from the Task Processor in the Plan tab, and unlocking the settings in the Settings pane.

Single or Separate Settings

You can use a single group of settings for all content (both objects and images), or you can separately specify the settings for objects and images.

Use separate settings for objects and images When this check box is selected, Objects and Images tabs are displayed, and you can define separate screen settings (Screen Type, Frequency, and Dot Shape) for objects and for images.

Use single settings for all content When this check box is selected, a single Screen tab is displayed, and you can use a single group of settings (Screen Type, Frequency, and Dot Shape) for all content (objects and images).

Seamless Printing

When this check box is selected, the Seamless settings tab is displayed. This allows you to specify your options for seamless printing. Seamless printing is used in packaging jobs for printing a repetitive design, as in wallpaper or gift wrapping paper. These are usually printed in flexo.

NOTE: The Seamless Printing option is only available if you have a license. It is hidden if you do not have one.

Seamless

Join Select the edges that will be joined together on the sleeve.

Horizontal edges: The horizontal edges of the page will be prepared for seamless joining. The rendered image can be imaged directly on the sleeve.

Vertical edges: The vertical edges of the page will be prepared for seamless joining. The rendered image will have to be rotated 90 degrees before imaging on the sleeve.

Screen The Screen list box contains a filtered list of halftone screens (references) that can be selected by the job's current screen settings. The entries appear in the same way as they appear in the Used Screen column of the Ruling Maps overview. You should select the screen to be used to render the content that runs across the seam.

The list does not include references to Adobe Accurate or Rational Tangent screens as these are not supported. Hence, you might encounter a situation in which the list is empty. In that case, the JTE will post an error notification, and you will not be able to submit the job.

NOTE: You should always check the Seamless tab when you change a screen selection in any of the other tabs; the changes might invalidate the selected screen reference.

The simplest case is if you have selected a single fixed screen for all content. In this case, the list contains that single screen (reference) only. If you have two fixed screens, one for objects and another for images, the list contains these two screens. If you have selected a ruling map, the list contains all screens that can be selected by that ruling map using the output device's resolution.

Screen

If the Fixed Screen option is selected, the Task Processor settings are enabled, and will overrule all screen settings in the incoming document.

Screen Type Choose one of the available screening settings:

Apogee Balanced Screening (ABS): A PostScript-based conventional, halftone screening system that uses supercell techniques and pre-calculated, balanced screen sets to deliver high quality color reproduction. ABS-screened halftones feature clear-centered rosettes for smooth tonal gradations and tints, and flawless skin tones free of moiré patterns.

Adobe Accurate: This screening method provides a close approximation to the standard screen angles for color separations (0, 15, 45 and 75 degrees) and frequencies.

Agfa Performa Screen: Agfa Performa Screen (APS) is a screening method with a dedicated developed set of halftone tiles for digital inkjet presses using FM technology.

Rational Tangent: This is standard PostScript screening technology implemented by Adobe. Standard screening is the oldest of the four screening methods and produces a lower output quality than either **Apogee** Balanced Screening or Adobe Accurate Screening.

Frequency Choose one of the available line frequencies (lines-per-inch) from the Frequency box.

Dot shape Choose either an Elliptical or Round dot shape.

Honor Application

If the Honor Application check box is selected, all screen settings will be taken from the information in the incoming document. In this case, the Screen Type, Frequency, and Dot shape options will be different, and you will be able to select a Ruling Map. The Ruling Map is used to map screen settings in the incoming document to predefined screen settings in Asecuri. For more information on Ruling Maps, see “Ruling Maps” on page 600.

If this check box is cleared, the standard Screen Type, Frequency, and Dot shape options will overrule all screen settings in the incoming document.

Screen Type: Choose one of the available screen settings (Ruling Map, Adobe Accurate, Rational Tangent) from the Screen Type box drop-down list.

When you select Ruling Map, you can specify which Ruling Map to be used in the drop-down list next to the Screen Type drop-down list.

Frequency This is linked to the selected Screen Type.

NOTE: If a Ruling Map is selected and the frequency is not found, frequency 0 will be used. If this frequency is not available, the job will fail.

Dot shape Choose one of the following:

- Application
- Ruling Map
- Elliptical
- Round

NOTE: The available screening settings will change in accordance with the selected output device.

Separation Angles

In the Separation Angles panel, you will see a list of the process and spot color plates in your job. You will also see a list of angles adjacent to the plates. The default angles are as follows:

- Cyan: 15°
- Magenta: 75°
- Yellow: 0°
- Black: 45°

Depending on the selected screen parameters, your angle settings will either be honored, or will be redirected to the closest available angle.

NOTE: The Black plate angle (45°) is also used for any spot color plates.

Tagged Screening

Elements which are tagged will follow the Honor Application settings.

Raster Impose

The Raster Impose task processor is an Impose task processor which is used for raster job assembly. For more information, see “Impose” on page 462.

Raster Normalize

The Raster Normalize Task Processor converts raster data to TIFF format, and is specifically designed for Production Plans which include the Open Connect input Task Processor.

NOTE: Open Connect requires a Raster Normalize Task Processor.

No settings or resources are associated with Raster Normalize.

Run List

The Run List Task Processor determines which pages of a job are going to be processed. If you insert a Run List in your Production Plan, a list of placeholders will appear next to the Page Store in the Pages tab. Every Job Ticket needs a Run List whereas a Hot Ticket can contain one, but it is not necessary (see “Using a Run List in a Hot Ticket” on page 509).

You have to drag the pages you want to process to the placeholders of your choice. You can select one or several pages, either keeping or modifying their original order. You can select the document itself and drag it to a placeholder of your choice. The pages will then be inserted into the subsequent placeholders, preserving the original order.

Not all of the placeholders need to contain PDF-pages. A placeholder can be empty, or can contain a blank page.

CAUTION: When you drag a document to the Run List, you have to make sure that there are enough placeholders available. For instance, if a document contains 28 pages, the Run List has to contain 28 placeholders. You can modify the number of available placeholders in the Run List Settings.

No resources are associated with a Run List.

Using a Run List in a Hot Ticket

You do not need a Run List in a Hot Ticket unless:

- You want to be able to change pages in the jobs that are created.
- You want to use imposition.

Additionally, in a Hot Ticket a Run List does not have manual or automatic page placement options: Instead, the pages are always placed automatically.

The number of pages in the Run List will vary depending on whether or not you specified an expected number of pages, and whether or not there is an Impose Task Processor in the Production Plan.

The different possibilities are as follows:

- No Impose Task Processor in Production Plan + unspecified number of pages in the Run List: No options are required - the number of pages of the incoming document will be automatically used.
- No Impose Task Processor in Production Plan + specified number of pages in the Run List: The job will fail if the actual number of pages in the document does not match the specified number of pages in the Run List.
- Impose Task Processor in Production Plan + unspecified number of pages in the Run List: If there is an Impose Task Processor in the Plan, you cannot specify a number of pages: The page count is taken automatically from the Impose Task Processor. No options are required here. However, you can choose to accept documents with a different number of pages. You can also automatically center all pages, as described in “Run List Settings” on page 510.

Run List Settings

The Run List consists of basic settings and automatic page placement rules.

You can access these settings:

- When creating Parameter Sets (see “Managing Parameter Sets” on page 435). Here, you will see a ‘Lock in Production Plan’ check box (selected by default). If this check box is selected, the settings will be initially locked in the Settings pane. If this check box is deselected, the settings can be edited in the Settings pane.
- In the Settings pane, in the Plan tab of the Job Manager and the Ticket Editor. The settings may be initially locked, as indicated by the Lock icon. If you edit the job, you can unlock them as described in “Settings Pane (Ticket Editor)” on page 231.

When you create a Parameter Set, you should specify a Parameter Set name. You can always change this name later by editing the job, choosing the Parameter Set from the Task Processor in the Plan tab, and unlocking the settings in the Settings pane.

Basic Settings

You can specify the number of available placeholders, the page number of the first page, and the page placement options.

Number of pages The number of pages determines the size of the Run List (i.e., the number of pages in the job). More precisely, this is the number of available placeholders for the pages that you want to process.

First page starts at The page number of the first page in the Run List. In most cases, this is '1'.

You could for instance change the page number of the first page when you only have to print a subset of a magazine or a book.

NOTE: This option only affects the page numbers in the Run List and the page placement rules. It does not affect how the pages are handled by the Imposition Task Processor. The first page position is always treated as page 1 in the imposition engine, no matter what the number is.

Multi-part jobs do not support this option. In multi-part jobs, the Run List always starts at 1, and is read-only.

Place pages in run list There are two ways to place the document's pages in the Run List:

Manually: You can place the pages in the Run List by drag & drop.

Automatically by file name: You can have Asecuri place the page automatically using document naming conventions. Once you select this option, the Automatic Page Placement pane appears. For more information see "Automatic Page Placement" below.

Automatically by page label: Asecuri places the page automatically according to the page labels.

Automatically appending all pages: All the pages are placed automatically and placeholders are appended to accommodate all the pages.

NOTE: Automatic page placement will not work for pages coming from the Public Page Store.

NOTE: A document cannot be placed in the Run List if the Run List position is already occupied by a document with a different name.

Page adjustments The following options are only available in jobs or Hot Tickets which include an Imposition Task Processor in the Production Plan.

Center pages: Ensures that by default, each page has a page adjustment set to center the page. You can edit the settings, but clearing returns it to the default centering action.

Scale pages to fit: Scales the page proportionally in order to fit either the width or the height, depending on which dimension needs the least amount of zoom factor. This adds also a check box with **Retain original aspect ratio** to every placeholder in the Run List.

If you select one of these options or both of them, the job/Hot Ticket will automatically add Page Imposition Adjustments (PIA) to every Run List page of each job it creates. These automatic imposition adjustments are limited to page centering and scaled to fit only, and cannot be distinguished from manual adjustments. If you wish, you can edit or remove them.

These options are hidden in normal jobs (though you can still use the Page Imposition Adjustment commands), and in jobs with no imposition (since centering and scale pages only makes sense with imposition).

NOTE: You should use the center option in the output device Image operation to center a page on the output size.

Revisions

These options determine how Asecuri will deal with documents that are input with the same name as documents that are already in the Page Store. These are often newer versions (revisions) of the same document.

When the run list already contains a previous revision

Update the run list: Replaces the previous version in the Run List by the newer one, and starts reprocessing. This option is available for both automatic and manual page placement. The Page Store and Run List display a revision number after each document. The initial document has no revision number. Later revisions are numbered in order of arrival (or creation), starting with [1].

Update the run list only when pages are not approved in WebApproval: Does the same as the previous option if the pages have not yet been approved in the WebApproval application. Pages are not replaced if they have already been approved.

Do not update the run list: The previous version in the Run List is not automatically replaced: However, you can replace it manually.

Notify: The previous version in the Run List is not automatically replaced: Instead Asecuri sends a notification allowing you to decide what to do. All processing on results that use pages from the previous revision of the document are put on hold until you respond to the notification.

When the run list does not contain a previous revision

Do not notify: Asecuri does nothing.

Notify: Asecuri sends a notification informing you that a new revision has arrived.

When you receive a new revision notification, you can choose to update the Run List to use the new document(s), ignore it and keep the previous one(s), or open the job for editing. This last option allows you to inspect the document and selectively replace pages. For more information, refer to “Message Board” on page 62.

Automatic Page Placement

NOTE: These settings are only displayed when you choose to place pages in the Run List automatically. They do not apply to Hot Tickets (since the Run List is configured to match the number of pages and their order from the incoming document).

Automatic Page Placement Rules

This is where you can specify page placement rules. These rules are displayed in the Automatic Page Placement table in the order that they are executed. You can change the order of the rules by the using the up and down arrows, or by dragging a rule up and down.

Asecuri starts with the top rule. if no match is found, it proceeds with the following rule until a match is found. If Asecuri:

- finds a match, it places the pages in the required placeholders.
- does not find a match, it sends a message to the Message Board.

In the Ignore Case check box, you specify whether the rules distinguish between lower case and upper case. If it is checked, no difference will be made between lower case and upper case.

NOTE: These rules only apply for automatic page placement. You are always notified if a document cannot be placed by any of the rules.

If a new document would occupy a run list position already occupied by a document with a different name

Update the run list: Replaces the previous version in the Run List by the newer one, and starts reprocessing. This option is available for both automatic and manual page placement. The Page Store and Run List display a revision number after each document. The initial document has no revision number. Later revisions are numbered in order of arrival (or creation), starting with [1].

Update the run list only when pages are not approved in WebApproval: Does the same as the previous option if the pages have not yet been approved in the WebApproval application. Pages are not replaced if they have already been approved.

Do not update the run list: The previous version in the Run List is not automatically replaced: However, you can replace it manually.

Notify: The previous version in the Run List is not automatically replaced: Instead Asecuri sends a notification allowing you to decide what to do. All processing on results that use pages from the previous revision of the document are put on hold until you respond to the notification.

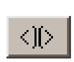
▷ To create rules

1. Do one of the following:
   - In the Ticket Editor, select the Run List in your Production Plan.
   - In the System Overview, access the Parameter Sets dialog box for the Run List Task Processor and create or edit the Parameter Set in which you want to create placement rules.
2. Select Automatically in the pages placement section of the Run List pane.

   The Automatic Page Placement pane appears.
3. Click the New button to create a new placement rule.

   The Placement Rule window appears.
4. Click the Variable button to insert variables.

   A drop-down list appears listing the variables that you can insert.

   For more information the use of variables, see “Defining the Page Placement Rules” on page 516.
5. Insert the required variables.
6. Click OK to save the placement rule.

   The placement rule appears in the Automatic Page Placement table.
7. In the Parameter Set: Click OK to save the Parameter Set.

8 Close the Parameter Sets dialog box.

To delete rules

1 Do one of the following:

- In the Ticket Editor, select the Run List in your Production Plan.
- In the System Overview, access the Parameter Sets dialog box for the Run List Task Processor and select the Parameter Set in which you want to delete placement rules and click the Edit button.

2 Select the placement rule that you want to delete in the Automatic Page Placement table and click the Delete button:

The placement rule is deleted.

3 In the Parameter Set: Click OK to save the Parameter Set.

4 Close the Parameter Sets dialog box.

To edit rules

1 Do one of the following:

- In the Ticket Editor, select the Run List in your Production Plan.
- In the System Overview, access the Parameter Sets dialog box for the Run List Task Processor and select the Parameter Set in which you want to edit a placement rule and click the Edit button

2 Select the placement rule that you want to edit and click the Edit button.

The Placement Rule dialog box appears.

3 Make the required changes and click OK to save the placement rule.

For more information on the use of variables, see “Defining the Page Placement Rules” on page 516.

4 In the Parameter Set, click OK to save the Parameter Set.

5 Close the Parameter Sets dialog box.

Defining the Page Placement Rules

Page placement rules can be defined using wildcards, page number and document page placeholders, multiple positions, and variables.

Wildcards

A wildcard is a kind of 'joker' card, which you can insert in the document name when defining the placement rule. It ignores the part of the document name where you have inserted the wildcard.

There are two types of wildcards:

Wildcard	Meaning
?	Matches any single character,
*	Matches any string of one or more characters or no character at all.

If you precede the wildcards by a "\", the characters have their literal meaning.

The following examples will clarify the use of wildcards:

Rule	Matches	No match
A?B	ACB AAB ABB	AB ABC
AB?	ABC ABL	AB ABCD
AB*	AB ABC ABCCCCC ABCDFHG23	AAB CAB
*AB	AB CAB DGH235AAB	ABC

Rule	Matches	No match
A*B	AB AFB AAAAghB AGHTD4516B	ABC CAB
AB*	AB*	AB ABC
ECO3-H?-*N	ECO3-H1-aa2N ECO3-H6-OO5N ECO3-H0-002aN	ECO3-H-Nb2 ECO3-H555-1N

Page Number Placeholders

Every placement rule has to contain a placeholder reference. There are the following types of placeholder references:

- <RLPAGE>: This matches a string of digits of any size.
- <RLPAGE@m>: This matches a string of digits of any size, offset from the first page by <m> page positions (you must replace ‘m’ by an offset number).
- <RLPAGE:n>: This matches a string of exactly n digits.
- <RLPAGE:n@m>: This matches a string of exactly n digits, offset from the first page by <m> page positions (you must replace ‘m’ by an offset number).

Placeholder references are placed between the angular brackets - < and >.

NOTE: The <RLPAGE@m> offsets specify an offset that it added to the page number; the combined sum gives the final Run List position. This allows you to divide the Run List into different sections each using a different starting position. It is not possible to read an offset from the file name.

The following examples clarify the use of these placeholder references:

Rule	Matches	Placeholder	No match
ABC -<RLPAGE>	ABC-1 ABC-01 ABC-12345	1 1 12345	ABC-P1 ABC-0,1
ABC-<RLPAGE:3>	ABC-001 ABC-123	1 123	ABC-01 ABC-P1
A??C-<RLPAGE:2>	ABCC-02 A2DC-25	2 25	ABC-1 ABBCD-P02

Multiple Positions

In some rare cases, a page needs to be placed in several positions in the Run List. To do this, you need to specify two or more <RLPAGE> placeholders in the rule. However, make sure that the filename matches all placeholders, and that the number of pages in the document is less than the gap between two successive run list positions (e.g. a 10-page document cannot be positioned on position 1 and 5).

For example:

Rule	Matches	Matches
<RLPAGE:2><RLPAGE:2>	6401	1 and 64
	0203	2 and 3
	1513	13 and 15

Variables

A placement rule can also include one more variable. These variables refer to certain job attributes such as job name or customer name.

Variable	Refers to... in the Administration Tab
$JOB	The Job name field
$CUSTOMER	The Customer name field
$ORDER	The Order number field
$OPERATOR	The Operator field

Variables can have a width modifier, through which the variable is replaced with the exact given amount of characters. If the document name does not correspond to the amount of characters, there are two possibilities:

- If the content is longer than the specified amount, Asecuri truncates it.
- If the content is shorter, Asecuri pads the document name with "?".

See "General Examples" below for examples of the width modifier.

NOTE: The variable content cannot contain wildcards, placeholders or other variables, except for the "?" for padding the document name.

General examples

For a job that has the following attributes:

- Job name: AB1234

- Order number: 0106G
- Customer: ECO3

Rule	Document name	Position
$ORDER-P<RLPAGE:2>	0106G-P01	1
$CUSTOMER*ORDER-?*-<RLPAGE:3>	ECO30106G-A3-004	4
$CUSTOMER??-<RLPAGE:3>??	ECO35A-102AB	102
$CUSTOMER:3-<RLPAGE:3>	ECO-023	23
$CUSTOMER:6-<RLPAGE:3>	ECO3BE-023	23

TIFF Render

The TIFF Render Task Processor prepares TIFF or Digital Film for imaging on an imagesetter or platesetter. TIFF Render provides the equivalent functionality of the PDF/PS input flow in the Render Task Processor. TIFF Render accepts 1-bit or 8-bit raster data (TIFF or Digital Film) and outputs the re- screened raster data on an imagesetter, platesetter or proofer.

TIFF Render performs preparation, separation, and screening of the raster data. Each of these processes have their individual settings. You can view these settings either when creating Parameter Sets, or from the Settings pane in the Plan tab of the Job Manager and the Ticket Editor.

- In the Prepare process, the job's resolution can be adapted in accordance with the output device, and the 8-bit raster data can be resampled using one of the supplied color management profiles (CieLab, Generic, CMYK, etc.). For more information on these settings, see “TIFF Render Prepare Settings” on page 521.

- In the Separation process, a composite job is separated into different colors. On a press, each separated color has its own printing plate, each one printed in a different angle, producing the final printed color image. In traditional prepress, color images are separated into four layers corresponding to the four process colors (CMYK) used in process printing: cyan, magenta, yellow and black. For more information on these settings, see “PDF Render - Separation Settings” on page 490.

- In the Screening process, continuous tone files are converted into halftone dots. This means that the image is converted into a number of dots in the predefined separation colors. You can enhance the quality of the image by adjusting the dpi (dots per inch) and the lpi (lines per inch), also called ‘line frequency’. Every line consists of a number of dots. For more information on these settings, see “PDF Render - Screen Settings” on page 502.

Associated Resources

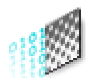
When you select the TIFF Render Task Processor in the System Overview, the following associated resource categories are displayed in the Resources pane:

- Content Profiles

What is the difference between Render and TIFF Render Task Processors?

Whereas the Render Task Processor accepts PostScript or PDF input data (i.e., pre-rendered job data), the TIFF Render Task Processor accepts only raster input data. (i.e., rendered job data). For more information, see “PDF Render” on page 479.

TIFF Render Prepare Settings



You can access these settings:

- When creating Parameter Sets (see “Managing Parameter Sets” on page 435). Here, you will see a ‘Lock in Production Plan’ check box (selected by default). If this check box is selected, the settings will be initially locked in the Settings pane. If this check box is deselected, the settings can be edited in the Settings pane.
- In the Settings pane, in the Plan tab of the Job Manager and the Ticket Editor. The settings may be initially locked, as indicated by the Lock icon. If you edit the job, you can unlock them as described in “Settings Pane (Ticket Editor)” on page 231.

When you create a Parameter Set, you should specify a Parameter Set name. You can always change this name later by editing the job, choosing the Parameter Set from the Task Processor in the Plan tab, and unlocking the settings in the Settings pane.

These settings handle both 1-bit and 8-bit data. The settings for these data formats should be adapted according to the output device you are using.

1-bit

1-bit settings only apply when re-sampling is to be used. If the TIFF Render Task Processor is used to drive a proofer only, these settings are ignored.

NOTE: Color management is not applied to 1-bit data.

Notify when resampling

Select this check box if you want Asecuri to send you a notification whenever it needs to resample the data (i.e. when the input and output resolutions do not match). The notification allows you to resample the data, or to edit the job. You can also provide new input using the matching resolution.

For 1-bit to 1-bit resampling, only 2540 to 2400 or 120 to 1200 is supported. A notification is displayed if this option is enabled. 3 to 8, 8 to 3 and 8 to 8 resampling is performed silently for any resolution.

8-bit

8-bit input is always resampled to match the resolution of the output device. However, here you can specify the resampling algorithm.

Resample Select one of the supplied resampling algorithms.

RGB, CMYK, Gray From input, with fallback: Takes the color profile from the input data if it has one. If not, it assumes the specified one.

Overrule with / Use: Uses the specified profile, regardless of the input.

Rendering intent From input, with fallback: Takes the Rendering Intent from the input data if it has one. If not, it assumes the specified one (default setting):

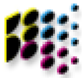
- Absolute Colorimetric
- Relative Colorimetric
- Perceptual
- Saturation

Overrule with / Use: Uses the specified Rendering Intent, regardless of the input.

TIFF Render Separation Settings

The TIFF Render Separation settings are identical to the Render Separation settings. See “PDF Render - Separation Settings” on page 490.

TIFF Render Screen Settings



The TIFF Render Screen Proofer settings are identical to the Render Screen settings. See “PDF Render - Screen Settings” on page 502.

CHAPTER 13

Output Task Processors

The Output Task Processors represent your output devices: imagesetters, platesetters and proofers. Asecuri provides Task Processors for physical ECO3 output devices, as well as for Generic devices. You can also export your output to file in PDF or PostScript format.

- Proofers 526
- TIFF Platesetter 537
- Export 546

NOTE: A number of System Resources are associated with each Task Processor. For more information, see "Task Processor Resources" on page 571.

Proofers

Asecuri provides a Task Processor for each supported proofer. The settings for each of those are grouped in two sets: Image Settings and Output Settings. They can be accessed by double-clicking the Parameter Sets icon for the selected Task Processor in the Resources pane of the System Overview window.

The ECO3 Proofer Devices

The following proofer devices are supported by Asecuri:

Proofer Device
4D GrandSherpa 50
4D GrandSherpa 64
4D GrandSherpaMatic
4D Sherpa2
4DA GrandSherpa 50
4DA GrandSherpa 64
4DA GrandSherpaMatic
4DA Sherpa2
6D GrandSherpa 50
6D GrandSherpa 64
6D Sherpa 24 = Epson 7000
6D Sherpa 24M = Epson 7600 (6 Colors Dye inks)
6D Sherpa 43
6D Sherpa 44M = Epson 9600 (6 Colors Dye inks)
6D Sherpa 54
6D Sherpa 62
6D SherpaMatic
6DA Sherpa 43
6DA Sherpa 54
6DA Sherpa 62
6DA SherpaMatic
7DA GrandSherpa 50
7DA GrandSherpa 64
7DA GrandSherpaMatic
7P Sherpa 24M = Epson 7600 (7 Colors Pigment inks)

Proofer Device
7P Sherpa 44M = Epson 9600 (7 Colors Pigment inks)
4P Epson 4400 (not for contract proofing)
4P Epson 7400 (not for contract proofing)
4P Epson 9400 (not for contract proofing)
4P Epson T3000
4P Epson T3200
4P Epson T3405
4P Epson T5000
4P Epson T5200
4P Epson T7000
4P Epson T7200
5P Epson T7700
6D Epson 10000
7P Epson 4000
8P Epson 4800
8P Epson 4880
8P Epson 7800
8P Epson 7880
8P Epson 7890
8P Epson 9800
8P Epson 9880
8P Epson 9890
8P Epson 11880
8P Epson P6000
8P Epson P8000
9P Epson P10000
9P Epson P20000
10P Epson 4900
10P Epson 7900
10P Epson 9900
10P Epson P5000
10P Epson P5000-Violet
10P Epson P7000
10P Epson P7000-Violet
10P Epson P9000
10P Epson P9000-Violet
11P Epson P7500
11P Epson P9500

Proofer Device
4D HP 750
4D HP 1050
4D HP 2500
4D HP 3500
4D HP 5500_42
4D HP 5500_60
6D HP 30
6D HP 130
10P HPZ3100
10P HPZ3200

ECO3's *QMS* provides a quality tool for ensuring identical tonal behavior over time and between multiple proofers. QMS is a client application that directly connects to Apogee. User-friendly wizards can be used to calibrate and create optimized profiles, as well as check existing calibrations. The QMS database tracks all measurements over time, making it easy to verify past achievements.

Associated Resources

When you select a proofer Task Processor in the System Overview, the following associated resource categories are displayed in the Resources pane:

- Media, About Task Processor Resources, Marks, Profiles, Color Books

Proofer Image Settings

You can access these settings:

- When creating Parameter Sets (see "Managing Parameter Sets" on page 435). Here, you will see a 'Lock in Production Plan' check box (selected by default). If this check box is selected, the settings will be initially locked in the Settings pane. If this check box is deselected, the settings can be edited in the Settings pane.
- In the Settings pane, in the Plan tab of the Job Manager and the Ticket Editor. The settings may be initially locked, as indicated by the Lock icon. If you edit the job, you can unlock them as described in "Settings Pane (Ticket Editor)" on page 231.

When you create a Parameter Set, you should specify a Parameter Set name. You can always change this name later by editing the job, choosing the Parameter Set from the Task Processor in the Plan tab, and unlocking the settings in the Settings pane.

Separation Output and Order

Specify which separations should be output, and in which order. The initial sort order places the process colors on top, in the same order as specified by the job's color space. Spot colors come after the process colors, sorted alphabetically. You can reorder the separation order with the Up and Down arrows or by dragging and dropping.

These check boxes are only accessible when the 'Application Decides' check box is deselected in the Separation settings (Hot Tickets only). If 'Application Decides' is selected, you can make no changes to the separation output and order: This is then controlled by the settings of the input document (as generated by a front end application, such as Quark).

NOTE: Process colors are not listed if there is no Press Task Processor in the Production Plan or if you are editing a Parameter Set.

Copies Specify the number of copies to be printed. This option is not available for the Generic TIFF/PS/PDF Proofers.

Collated This option is not available for the Generic TIFF/PS/PDF Proofers.

Image

The Image pane is similar to the one in the Image Settings of the imagesetter and the platesetter.

Reading You need to set the Reading yourself because Asecuri does not know what media is used for the print job. The preview icon on the right dynamically reflects the chosen state.

Reading: Determines the mirror setting of the image to be output:

- Right Reading
- Wrong Reading

Orientation You can select one of the four standard orientations (0, 90, 180, 270). You can also select the Optimized option to have Asecuri select a specific orientation to avoid as much medium waste as possible. If you selected the "Select Automatically" check box, the Orientation is automatically set to "From Output Size", and you will need to specify horizontal and vertical positioning.

Border Select the required predefined border from the drop-down list as defined in the Border Resource category.

You can enter text as a comment in the Slug Lines section. If the selected border contains the comment marks, the text will be printed. If not, it will be ignored.

Output Size Select the appropriate output size from the drop-down list. This can be a fixed size (A4, Letter, etc.) or the size can be set to depend on the input, part or media (Manual from input, Manual from part, Manual from media). For example, *Output from part* is useful for WebApproval jobs.

Select Automatically: Select this check box to have Asecuri automatically select the output size. In this case, the Orientation is automatically set to “From Output Size”, and you will need to specify horizontal and vertical positioning.

Fallback Here, you can select a fallback output size (Width and Height) in case the input has no output size specified.

Position Image within Output Size Horizontal: Choose Center, or specify an offset in mms.

Vertical: Choose Center, or specify an offset in mms.

Position Output on Device Center output size horizontal on device: Select this check box for horizontal centering.

Apply Ganging: Select this check box if you want to apply ganging. This check box is only enabled when Manual is selected for Position.

Across Jobs: When switched off, Asecuri starts a new row before and after a job, even if it wastes media. This option is only activated when Apply Ganging is selected.

Margins The Left and Right margins specify how much extra white space Asecuri should add to the device margins. Preferably, this should be 0. If you have selected the For Press option from the Position drop-down list, this is 0 and cannot be changed.

The margins before job and after job specifies an extra amount of media between two adjacent jobs.

Scale content From the drop-down list, you can activate scaling to scale the page content. This does not scale the border, but marks that are relative to the sheet are repositioned and not scaled.

You can select different scaling modes from the drop-down list.

Off: If you do not want apply scaling, select Off from the drop-down list. The settings will be greyed out.

Size to fit: This option proportionally scales the images up or down to fit the media size.

Enlarge to fit: This option proportionally scales the image up to fit the media size. When the image is larger than the media size, it will not scale up.

Shrink to fit: This option proportionally scales the image down to fit the media size. When the image is smaller than the media size, it will not scale down.

NOTE: The automatic scaling options are only available when an output size or the <manual from media> option is selected. It is not available when the <manual from input> option is selected.

Manual: This option enables the Width and Height scale fields.

You can specify the scaling percentages for width and height scaling.

- For pages, Width and Height have their starting point in the lower left corner. Width goes along the bottom edge and Height along the left edge.
- For imposed flats, Width is along the gripper edge and Height along the side edge.

Constrain proportions: Select the Constrain Proportions option if you want to keep both values equal. Selecting this option will copy the horizontal scale value into the vertical scale field.

Clip

This option specifies what will happen if the image is bigger than the output size.

Clip image: Any areas of the image that fall outside the output size are clipped.

Notify: The job will fail with a user interaction notification. The notification specifies the image and output sizes, and provides a 'Clip and Continue' option.

Base imaging on

This option specifies how the image is clipped but does not influence the output result.

Trimbox: The image is clipped to the Trimbox size.

All content (page, content, marks, border, ...): The image is clipped to the Mediabox size.

Rule-up

You can have a proofer print a rule-up. These are lines that correspond with the expected page positions on the template and the actual crop box from the pages.

Pages You can print a rule-up for:

- Artbox
- Trimbox
- Bleedbox
- Mediabox

Imposition You can print a rule-up for:

- Press Sheet
- Expected Page Size

Output You can print a rule-up for:

- Output Size

Die/CAD

- Design lines: Select the check mark to choose a Line Appearance Set from the list or click the arrow to open the Line Appearance editor.

For each of the above, you can select the color from the drop-down list (Red, Green, Blue, etc.), and a point size for the lines (0,25 pts, 0.50 pts, 0.75 pts or1.00 pts). You can also specify whether you want a dashed or a solid line.

NOTE: You can only print a rule-up if you use an Impose Task Processor in your Production Plan.

Slug Lines

In this pane you can enter up to four comments that can be part of a border. These comments are held in the variables $COMMENT1, $COMMENT2, $COMMENT3 and $COMMENT4.

Each comment can contain one or more variables such as $DATE or $COMPANY. The comment variables themselves, however, cannot be part of the comment.

For example: Comment 1: Printed by PrintRite on $DATE for $COMPANY.

Proofer Output Settings

You can access these settings:

- When creating Parameter Sets (see "Managing Parameter Sets" on page 435). Here, you will see a 'Lock in Production Plan' check box (selected by default). If this check box is selected, the settings will be initially locked in the Settings pane. If this check box is deselected, the settings can be edited in the Settings pane.

- In the Settings pane, in the Plan tab of the Job Manager and the Ticket Editor. The settings may be initially locked, as indicated by the Lock icon. If you edit the job, you can unlock them as described in "Settings Pane (Ticket Editor)" on page 231.

When you create a Parameter Set, you should specify a Parameter Set name. You can always change this name later by editing the job, choosing the Parameter Set from the Task Processor in the Plan tab, and unlocking the settings in the Settings pane.

Media

In this pane, you can select a specific medium, medium type or tray from the drop-down list.

Media Select Media, if you want to select a specific medium. In the second drop-down list, you can further specify the medium type and its size.

The second drop-down list displays all of the compatible media for the output device that you want to use, regardless of the size of the currently active tray.

Media Type Select Media Type, if you want to select specific media type. You can do this in the second drop-down list. Asecuri is then free to image on any loaded media of the selected type, whatever size it has.

This option is especially useful when several devices are grouped. Asecuri can choose the most suitable device to minimize media waste.

Tray You can choose either of the following:

- Manual sheet

- Roll

Image Quality

Quality Map Choose the quality map to be used for printing. The available quality maps depend on the selected device.

Ink Table Choose the ink table to be used for printing. The available ink tables depend on the selected device. Select the Auto-select from map check box, if you want Asecuri to select an ink table for you according to the job settings. In this case, the Ink Table selection list is disabled.

Proofer Profile The Proofer Profile drop-down list shows all of the available profiles for the selected device. Select the Auto-select from map check box, if you want Asecuri to select a proofer profile for you according to the job settings. In this case, the Proofer Profile selection list is disabled.

Rendering Intent There are 4 different Rendering Intents available, although not all profiles contain Look Up tables (LUTs) for each of the 4. Usually there are only 3 represented. In this case often a duplicate of one Look Up table is used for missing Render Intent LUT. The Rendering Intent defines the way the source colors are mapped to the destination space.

The following rendering intent options are available:

Relative Colorimetric: A colorimetric conversion, tries to maintain the exact relationship (Smallest Delta E), between in-gamut colors, while out of gamut colors will be clipped. With Relative Colorimetric RI the white point from source color space is mapped to the white point of destination, this means that white stays white. No ink will be placed in white areas.

Absolute Colorimetric: Absolute Colorimetric rendering intent is similar to Relative except that here the white point of the 2 profiles is preserved. White of source color space is simulated with CMYK values from the destination color space. The consequence is that every white object/area is covered with certain ink amounts.

Perceptual: Perceptual aims to preserve the visual relationship between colors so it is perceived as natural to the human eye. The relationship between out of gamut colors is maintained. This can result in inaccuracies for in gamut colors as well.

Saturation: Saturation tries to produce vivid colors in an image at the expense of color accuracy

NOTE: The result of choosing a rendering intent depends on the graphical content of documents and on the profiles used to specify color spaces. Some profiles produce identical results for different rendering intents. Differences between rendering intents are apparent only when you print a document or convert it to a different working space.

Advanced CMM Recent developments in the Color Management engine offer 'Smart CMM', which provides better blending of converted spot colors. However, this comes at a small cost: it is a little slower.

Process Colors Don't color manage: Select this option to disable color management.

Color manage from Press to Proofer profile: Select this option to color manage from Press to Proofer profiles.

Color manage using Device Link Profile: Select this option to color manage using a Device Link Profile.

NOTE: Asecuri dynamically creates a Device Link Profile when an optimized proofer profile is used with Advanced CMM enabled.

- Device Link: Select a Device Link Profile.
- Exception: You can choose here whether or not you want Asecuri to take into account any color exceptions. For more information see "Profiles" on page 681.
  - None: Asecuri will not take into account any color exceptions.
  - Default Exception Dictionary: Asecuri will take into account color exceptions from the default color exception dictionary.

Auto-select Select an Auto-select check box if you want Asecuri to automatically make selections for you according to the job settings.

Apply black point compensation Select this check box to compensate the loss of range on the dark tones. Use when the proofer's gamut in the dark tones is smaller than that of the press. It is disabled, if the option **Don't color manage** is selected for Process Colors.

Spot Colors Accurate spot color mixing: In this enhanced mode, spot color visualization is superior to the standard color-managed mode. You can choose from the following:

- Off

- Max. 2 colors
- Max. 3 colors

deltaE calculation Select the method to calculate the deltaE:

- deltaE*ab: Use the ΔE_{ab} method, the first internationally endorsed color difference formula as published by the CIE Committee. This is the default value for reasons of compatibility.
- deltaE*00: Use the ΔE_{00} method, a revision of the ΔE_{94} formula. ΔE_{00} is the industry standard formula to be used.
- default: Use the default method.

White point Use Press Paper White: Pantone\spot color inks are transparent and appear differently when printed on different substrates. Normally, you should select this option when creating a proof which will be used by the printer to print a spot color on the Press (when the simulated spot color on proof needs to resemble the final printed result). In this case, the paper white from the press profile is used in the color calculation.

If this option is not selected, the measured paper white of the color book is used in the calculation of the spot colors. The option should therefore be deselected when the simulated spot colors on the proof are compared to the color book reference prints (with a measurement device, for example).

NOTE: A spectral press profile is required for this option.

Simulate Paper Stock You can simulate two aspects of the Paper Stock used for the job:

- ☐ White Point: Select to simulate the color of the paper stock on the proof.
- ☐ Texture: Select this check box to apply the texture (fiber and grain of the paper) specified in the Paper Stock resource. If no texture is selected for the Paper Stock, it will not be simulated.

Dot for dot Defines how to proof the screening dots from the main result. You can also enable Close Loop Control or let the system select a CLC profile automatically (Auto-select).

NOTE: The Dot for dot option requires Digital Film Proof in the flow.

TIFF Platesetter

The TIFF Platesetter emulates a third-party physical platesetter, in TIFF format.

There are two groups of settings:

- TIFF Platesetter Image Settings
- TIFF Platesetter Output Settings

NOTE: When you are creating your Production Plan, a Collect for Output action is automatically added to the Output Task Processor. For more information, see “Collect for Output” on page 224.

Associated Resources

When you select the TIFF Platesetter Task Processor in the System Overview, the following associated resource categories are displayed in the Resources pane:

- Media
- Halftone Screens
- Output Sizes
- Borders
- Marks

TIFF Platesetter Image Settings

You can access these settings:

- When creating Parameter Sets (see “Managing Parameter Sets” on page 435). Here, you will see a ‘Lock in Production Plan’ check box (selected by default). If this check box is selected, the settings will be initially locked in the Settings pane. If this check box is deselected, the settings can be edited in the Settings pane.

- In the Settings pane, in the Plan tab of the Job Manager and the Ticket Editor. The settings may be initially locked, as indicated by the Lock icon. If you edit the job, you can unlock them as described in “Settings Pane (Ticket Editor)” on page 231.

Select automatically from press

Select this check box to use an appropriate Parameter Set which is linked to the selected press using keywords. See “Parameter Set Lookup” on page 557. The settings are locked.

Name

The name of the Parameter Set as it will appear in the Production Plan. When you create a Parameter Set, you should specify a Parameter Set name. You can always change this name later by editing the job, choosing the Parameter Set from the Task Processor in the Plan tab, and unlocking the settings in the Settings pane.

Separation Output and Order

Specify which separations should be output, and in which order. The initial sort order places the process colors on top, in the same order as specified by the job’s color space. Spot colors come after the process colors, sorted alphabetically. You can reorder the separation order with the Up and Down arrows or by dragging and dropping.

These check boxes are only accessible when the ‘Application Decides’ check box is deselected in the Separation settings (Hot Tickets only). If ‘Application Decides’ is selected, you can make no changes to the separation output and order: This is then controlled by the settings of the input document (as generated by a front end application, such as Quark).

NOTE: Process colors are not listed if there is no Press Task Processor in the Production Plan or if you are editing a Parameter Set.

Do not output empty separations Select this check box, if you do not want Asecuri to output empty separations (i.e., separations which do not contain any information: there can always be separations with only imposition marks). This option is not available for proofer devices or M-Press.

Copies Specify the number of copies to be printed.

Collated This option is not available for digital printers.

Image

Reading and Polarity You need to set the Reading and the Polarity yourself because Asecuri does not know what media is used for the print job. The preview icon on the right dynamically reflects the chosen state.

Reading: Determines the mirror setting of the image to be output:

- Right Reading
- Wrong Reading

Polarity: Select the required polarity:

- Positive
- Negative

NOTE: The Polarity options are only available for imagesetters.

Orientation You can select one of the four standard orientations (0, 90, 180, 270). You can also select the Optimized option to have Asecuri select a specific orientation to avoid as much medium waste as possible. If you selected the “Select Automatically” check box, the Orientation is automatically set to “From Output Size”, and you will need to specify horizontal and vertical positioning.

Border You can select a predefined border from the drop-down list as defined in the Border Resource category for the imagesetter or platesetter. Select None if you do not want to have a border at all.

You can enter text as a comment in the Slug Lines section. If the selected border contains the comment marks, the text will be printed. If not, it will be ignored.

Output Size You can select a predefined output size. You either do this manually or have Asecuri do it for you according to the page or sheet size and the border.

If you choose to do it manually, select one of the available output sizes, or select <Manual from input> or <Manual from media> from the drop-down list.

Manual from input: The output size is calculated from the page/sheet size and selected border in the pages of the incoming documents. The resulting Output Size is not displayed in the list.

Manual from media: The output size is calculated from the media size. This is only relevant if a specific media is selected.

Select Automatically Select this check box to activate automatic selection. Asecuri will then take the orientation from the predefined Output Size - you cannot change this.

Fallback Here, you can select a fallback output size in case the input has no output size specified.

Position This field is enabled only if you choose the Select Automatically check box. In the Position drop-down list, you can select how Asecuri positions the image on the medium. You have two options:

- For Press: Select this option when you are printing imposed sheets that have to be positioned on a plate. The image to be printed is positioned on the press, taking into account punch calibration and press attributes.
- Manual: Select this option for manual positioning.

Position Image within Output Size Horizontal: Choose Center, or specify an offset in mm or inches.

Vertical: Choose Center, or specify an offset in mm or inches.

Horizontal positioning and mirroring: Center Press Sheet Anchor: Select to center a press sheet to the center of the plate relative to an anchor (for web printing and partial webs, which are smaller than the full width of the press). See “Web Production Schemes” on page 1150.

Mirror position for back of sheet: Select to place the back of an off-center press sheet in a mirrored position on the back of the sheet.

Position Output on Device Horizontal: Select Center to center the output horizontally

Vertical: Select Center to center the output vertically.

NOTE: Some marks are ignored when ganging is used. The device is designed in such a way that two rows are always separated by a small space.

Apply Ganging: Select Apply Ganging if you want Asecuri to position as many pages as possible on the medium. Asecuri tiles successive pages across the width of the medium, starting in the lower left corner, on to the left side of the next row when the current row is filled. Asecuri images each page immediately next to the other. The amount of space between the adjacent border depends on the selected border and the ‘Feed between row and pages’ value (Task Processor Configuration settings).

This check box is enabled when <Manual from Input> or Manual Position is selected.

Across Jobs: When switched off, Asecuri starts a new row before and after a job, even if it wastes media. This option is only activated when Apply Ganging is selected.

NOTE: The Ganging options are only available for imagesetters.

Margins The Left and Right margins specify how much extra white space Asecuri should add to the device margins. Preferably, this should be 0. If you have selected the For Press option from the Position drop-down list, this is 0 and cannot be changed.

The margins before job and after job specifies an extra amount of media between two adjacent jobs.

Scale content Use scaling to scale the page content. This does not scale the border, but marks that are relative to the sheet are repositioned and not scaled.

From the drop-down list, you can turn scaling off, or you can do the scaling manually by selecting Manual. This activates the following settings:

Width and Height You can specify the scaling percentages for width and height scaling.

- For pages, Width and Height have their starting point in the lower left corner. Width goes along the bottom edge and Height along the left edge.
- For imposed flats, Width is along the gripper edge and Height along the side edge.

Constrain proportions Select the Constrain Proportions option if you want to keep both values equal. Selecting this option will copy the horizontal scale value into the vertical scale field.

Clip This option specifies what will happen if the image is bigger than the output size.

Clip image: Any areas of the image that fall outside the output size are clipped.

Notify: The job will fail with a user interaction notification. The notification specifies the image and output sizes, and provides a 'Clip and Continue' option.

Base imaging on This option specifies how the image is clipped but does not influence the output result.

Trimbox: The image is clipped to the Trimbox size.

All content: The image is clipped to the Mediabox size.

Slug Lines

In this pane you can enter up to four comments that can be part of a border. These comments are held in the variables $COMMENT1, $COMMENT2, $COMMENT3 and $COMMENT4.

Each comment can contain one or more variables such as $DATE or $COMPANY. The comment variables themselves, however, cannot be part of the comment.

For example: Comment 1: Printed by PrintRite on $DATE for $COMPANY.

TIFF Platesetter Output Settings

The Output Settings group all of the output settings for the TIFF/PS Imagesetter Task Processor.

You can access these settings:

- When creating Parameter Sets (see “Managing Parameter Sets” on page 435). Here, you will see a ‘Lock in Production Plan’ check box (selected by default). If this check box is selected, the settings will be initially locked in the Settings pane. If this check box is deselected, the settings can be edited in the Settings pane.

- In the Settings pane, in the Plan tab of the Job Manager and the Ticket Editor. The settings may be initially locked, as indicated by the Lock icon. If you edit the job, you can unlock them as described in “Settings Pane (Ticket Editor)” on page 231.

When you create a Parameter Set, you should specify a Parameter Set name. You can always change this name later by editing the job, choosing the Parameter Set from the Task Processor in the Plan tab, and unlocking the settings in the Settings pane.

Media

In this pane, you can select a specific medium or a medium type from the drop-down list.

Media Select Media, if you want to select a specific medium. In the second drop-down list, you can further specify the medium type and its size.

The second drop-down list displays all of the compatible media for the output device that you want to use, regardless of the size of the currently active tray.

Media Type Select Media Type, if you want to select specific media type. You can do this in the second drop-down list. Asecuri is then free to image on any loaded media of the selected type, whatever size it has.

This option is especially useful when several devices are grouped. Asecuri can choose the most suitable device to minimize media waste.

Imaging

Resolution Specify the Resolution in dpi for Width and Height.

Compression type Select the compression type from the drop-down list:

- No Compression
- LZW Compression
- CCITT mod. Huffman REL
- CCITT Group 3 Fax Encoding
- CCITT Group 4 Fax Encoding
- Macintosh Packbits RLE
- ZIP/Flate Compression

Emulating Select the type of device that you want to emulate (TIFF Imagesetter only):

- Drum Device: In an internal drum recorder, the film is mounted to the inside surface of a cylindrical drum. While the drum and film remain stationary, the laser (or optics transmitting the laser beam) spin around the axis of the drum to image the film. In an external drum recorder, film is mounted on the outside surface of a cylindrical drum. A laser is mounted so that its beam aims at the film wrapped around the drum. In this type of recorder, the laser remains stationary while the drum spins around its axis, exposing the film to the laser beam.
- Capstan Device: A capstan device feeds media from a roll installed in a supply cassette, past the laser, and into a takeup cassette or online processor. To feed the media, a set of rubber rollers pulls the media out of the supply

cassette and another set of rubber rollers pushes the media into the takeup cassette.

Encoding type Select your data encoding format (PS Imagesetter only):

- Binary
- ASCII Hex
- ASCII-85

PostScript header Optionally select a PostScript header, if this resource is available (PS Imagesetter only).

Create Choose one of the options from the list. The variables in the File name field are dynamically updated in accordance with your selection:

- Custom
- Single file for all sheets
- Single file per sheet
- Single file per side
- Single file per separation

NOTE: The Create setting determines the grouping of the output (group by page, job, etc.). This is also the case if Spooler is selected in the Configuration settings.

Save files in Choose either of the options. The variables in the File name field are dynamically updated in accordance with your selection:

- Directory hierarchy: Files are stored in sub-directories, in a hierarchical directory structure (see example below).
- Same directory: All files are stored in the same directory, using extended file names for identification.

File name This field is enabled if you select 'Custom' from the Create list. You can then set up a custom folder structure in which to store your output files. For example, you could enter the following variable string:

$ORDER\$JOB\$PAGE\$SEPARATION

Export directory Specify the directory in which you want to store the output data. You can use the Browse button to locate the directory.

File extension Specify a file extension for the separations.

Options Truncate file names exceeding 31 characters: If the filename is longer than the specified amount, Asecuri truncates it. Select this check box to prevent file names from becoming too long.

Replace existing files: If a file with the same name already exists in the specified export directory, then the file is automatically replaced by the newly exported file.

Leave existing files, add sequence number to new file names: If a file with the same name already exists in the specified export directory, then a revision number is added to the name of the newly exported file.

Post-process files with script Select this check box if you want to process the files with a certain script file. You can specify the script in the field next to the check box. You can use the Browse button to locate the required script file.

Script options Here, you can specify command options.

Disable output This option disables any output possibility. The Generic Imagesetter will then act as a Null device suitable for training or testing purposes.

Image Quality

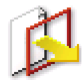
Bits per pixel 1: Detailed 1-bit high resolution data (each raster point is represented by a single display pixel).

8: 8-bit contone data.

Linearization Select the Linearization Curve to be applied from the drop-down list.

Select the Auto-select from map check box, if you want Asecuri to select it for you according to the job settings.

Export



The Export Task Processor exports the latest processed results from the Production Plan to a specific directory, in either PDF or PostScript format. This allows you to process the PDF/PS documents on a remote system.

Associated Resources

When you select the Export Task Processor in the System Overview, the following associated resource categories are displayed in the Resources pane:

Export Settings

You can access these settings:

- When creating Parameter Sets (see “Managing Parameter Sets” on page 435). Here, you will see a ‘Lock in Production Plan’ check box (selected by default). If this check box is selected, the settings will be initially locked in the Settings pane. If this check box is deselected, the settings can be edited in the Settings pane.
- In the Settings pane, in the Plan tab of the Job Manager and the Ticket Editor. The settings may be initially locked, as indicated by the Lock icon. If you edit the job, you can unlock them as described in “Settings Pane (Ticket Editor)” on page 231.

The Export settings are divided into two tabs, one dealing with export format options, and the other dealing with the destination options.

Name

The name of the Parameter Set as it will appear in the Production Plan. When you create a Parameter Set, you should specify a Parameter Set name. You can always change this name later by editing the job, choosing the Parameter Set from the Task Processor in the Plan tab, and unlocking the settings in the Settings pane.

Export

You can specify the format in which you want to export the results. There are two options:

- PS - PostScript format
- PDF format

Save result as PS

Content

Insert PostScript header: If you select this check box, the associated list box is enabled, where you can select the PostScript header that you want to insert in your exported file.

- Collate
- DuplexFlipLongEdge
- DuplexFlipShortEdge
- Manual Feed
- Select Tray

Checksum:

- None
- Create
- Compare against

Images

If you have enabled Alternate Images in your Normalizer configuration (Service access level is required to do this), then a set of alternate low resolution images will be created. You can configure the Export Task Processor to remove either the high or low resolution images from your files by choosing one of the following:

High resolution only: Select this option if you are going to print the output. You should also always select this option when certification is used (see below).

Low resolution only (for display): Select this option if you are not going to print the output.

NOTE: PostScript files cannot contain both resolutions.

Content Trimbox:

- □ Preserve original trimbox
- □ Expand to include image's border

Save result as PDF

Content Trimbox: Allows you to control the trimbox:

- Preserve original trimbox: The exported PDF file has the same trimbox as the original PDF. In other words, the existing trimbox remains unchanged.
- Expand to include borders: The trim box of the exported PDF file is changed to include a border added by Asecuri. If there is no border, the trim box remains unchanged.

Images If you have enabled Alternate Images in your Normalizer configuration (Service access level is required to do this), then a set of alternate low resolution images will be created in your PDF files. You can specify which versions of the images you want to include in the exported PDF by choosing one of the following:

NOTE: This only applies to PDFs which contain images.

Include as is: The exported PDF will contain whatever images are present in the document that was input of the Export Task Processor. Although this requires no processing, the disadvantage is that you cannot be sure about the image content of the exported PDF. You should therefore not select this unless you are sure about the input to the Export Task Processor.

Include high and low resolution: The exported PDF will contain a high resolution and a low resolution version of each image.

NOTE: The exported PDF will contain exactly one alternate image, regardless of the number of alternate images in the incoming PDF.

- Optimize for display: Select this check box to control which version to use as the main image. When you view a file in Acrobat, you will see the main images. When the PDF is created with viewing in mind, the low resolution image is the main image, and the high resolution image is the alternate image. The images can be tagged so that when printing the file, the high resolution image is used. However, some application may not honor this tag; they simply assume the main image is the one you need. In that case, you must make the high resolution version the main one.

Optimize for display	Main image	Alternate image
Selected	low resolution	high resolution
Deselected	high resolution	low resolution

- Create low resolution images: Allows you to choose how to include the low resolution images:
  - Always: Asecuri will generate a low resolution version at the specified target resolution by down-sampling the high resolution image. This ensures that the low resolution version is synchronized with the high resolution version. The drawback is that creating low resolution images takes some time.
  - Only if not present: Asecuri will simply use the low resolution image if it is present. If it is not present, Asecuri creates one at the specified target resolution.
  - Only if different resolution: Asecuri will only use low resolution images if they match the specified target resolution.
- Target: Specify the desired target resolution, in pixels per mm.

Include high resolution only: Asecuri keeps the high-resolution images in the exported files and discards the low-resolution images. Use this when sending files to be printed, especially when you require certification.

NOTE: ‘High resolution’ simply refers to the image version with the highest resolution, even if this highest resolution is only 12 dpi. To ensure the PDF is press-ready, you should therefore use a Preflight action to check the resolution.

Include low resolution only (display): Asecuri keeps the lowest resolution images in the exported files and discards the high-resolution images. Use this when you want to export small files (e.g. for mailing them to the client for inspection). To ensure you really send low resolution images, select “Always” create low resolution images.

- Create low resolution images: Allows you to choose how to include the low resolution images:
  - Always: Asecuri will generate a low resolution version at the specified target resolution by down-sampling the high resolution image. This ensures that the low resolution version is synchronized with the high resolution version. The drawback is that creating low resolution images takes some time.

- Only if not present: Asecuri will simply use the low resolution image if it is present. If it is not present, Asecuri creates one at the specified target resolution.
- Only if different resolution: Asecuri will only use low resolution images if they match the specified target resolution.

- Target: Specify the desired target resolution, in pixels per mm.

Thumbnails Specify whether or not to include thumbnails:

Include thumbnails: When you choose to include them, you have the same "Create" options as with images. Note that the default thumbnail resolution is 12 dpi.

Exclude thumbnails: Makes a PDF without thumbnails, removing existing thumbnails.

Thumbnails as is: Keeps the existing thumbnails, if any.

Preflight/Certify Choose one of the following options:

OFF: No options are visible in this pane if you select this option.

Certify with Enfocus Preflight/Run Enfocus Preflight: You can choose to combine the export with a preflight check. Click the associated profile list and choose one of the available preflight profiles from the Preflight Profiles resource category.

When certification fails: You need to specify how Export should proceed if certification fails:

- Notify: The export is halted, and a notification message is generated.
- Continue and put in sub-directory: The export continues, and the results are written to the folder of your choice.

Save Preflight report next to PDF file: Select this option to save the preflight report when a PDF file is written. This happens when the certification succeeds, or when the certification fails with the 'Continue' option selected. The report file is saved in the same directory as the PDF file.

Only for warnings and errors: Saves the preflight report only when there were warnings or errors. When there are no warnings or errors, no report is written.

Save Apogee Preflight report: Choose one of the following options:

- Only for fixes, warnings and errors

- Ignore out-of-date reports

Protection **Require a password to open the PDF file**: You can prevent the reader from opening the PDF file. To open such a protected document, the reader must provide the password that is specified in the **Open Document Password** field.

Prevent editing and printing of the PDF file: You can prevent the printing and/or editing of the PDF file. In order to print and/or edit the document, the reader first needs to change the permissions after opening the document. Changing the permissions requires the password specified in the **Change Permissions Password** field. Even in a restricted document, you can grant permission for the reader to:

- Allow high-resolution printing
- Allow all editing

Destination

Output via You can select the required output channel from the drop-down list.

- File
- FTP
- LPR (PostScript output only)
- AppleTalk (PostScript output only)
- TCP/IP (PostScript output only)
- Windows Spooler (PostScript output only)

File

Create Select how you want Export to create files:

- Custom
- Single file per job
- Single file per signature
- Single file per web
- Single file per side
- Single file per page

- Single file per Run List page
- Single file per book signature

Save files in Select a folder structure in which you can store your output files.

Directory hierarchy: The files will be saved in the specified subdirectory hierarchy (e.g. $ORDER\$JOB\$DOCPAGE).

Same directory: The files will be all be saved at the same directory hierarchy (e.g. $ORDER_$JOB_$DOCPAGE).

The variables will be separated by a slash if you select Directory hierarchy. This means that a directory will be made according to the file name. The variables will be separated by an underscore if you select Same directory.

The folder structure corresponds to the following variable string:

$ORDER\$JOB\...

...followed by variables corresponding to your selected “Create” criteria.

For example, if you chose to create a “Single file per signature” and save files in a Directory hierarchy, a directory would be automatically created based on the following variables: $ORDER\$JOB\$SIGNATURE.

Export directory You can specify to which directory you want to export your results. Again, you can use variables to create it automatically, or you can also use the Browse button to locate the directory.

File extension Specify the format of the result that you want to export.

Options Truncate file names exceeding 31 characters: If the filename is longer than the specified amount, Asecuri truncates it. Select this check box to prevent file names from becoming too long.

Replace existing files: If a file with the same name already exists in the specified export directory, then the file is automatically replaced by the newly exported file.

Leave existing files, add sequence number to new file names: If a file with the same name already exists in the specified export directory, then a revision number is added to the name of the newly exported file.

Create APOXML file The ApoXML section allows you to export an ApoXML file for each exported file. The ApoXML file can contain system- and user-specified variables for the exported result. You must select an XSLT to control the output of the file.

Post-process files with script Select this check box if you want to process the files with a certain script file. You can specify the script in the field next to the check box. You can use the Browse button to locate the required script file.

Script options Here, you can specify command options.

FTP

FTP output is similar to file output. However, here you also need to specify the FTP server (Host and Port), and the Username and Password with which Asecuri can log into that server. Leave Username and Password empty to use anonymous FTP. In this case, the system administrator's e-mail address will be used as password.

You can also select whether to use Passive FTP mode or not. If you are behind a firewall, you may need to use a proxy. You can use the core server's proxy configuration (which may require no proxy server), or you can specify one yourself. Leave the User name and Password empty if you do not need to authenticate.

NOTE: The Base directory is relative to the login home directory.

LPR (PostScript output only)

The LPR options are applicable when you choose to print results using the LPR protocol. The LPR output requires the Host and Queue name you want to connect to.

AppleTalk (PostScript output only)

The AppleTalk options are applicable when you choose to print results using the AppleTalk protocol. AppleTalk output requires the Zone and Printer name you want to connect to.

TCP/IP (PostScript output only)

The TCP/IP options are applicable when you choose to print results using the TCP/IP protocol. TCP/IP output requires the Host and Port name you want to connect to.

Windows Spooler (PostScript output only)

The Windows Spooler options are applicable when you choose to print results using the Windows Spooler. Windows Spooler output requires the name of the printer you want to connect to.

CHAPTER 14

Print Task Processors

Print Task Processors represent the printing devices on which you will print the output generated by Asecuri. Each printing device that you define at installation will be represented by a unique Print Task Processor.

The settings and resources for installed Print Task Processors can be derived from the following task processors:

- “Generic Press” on page 556 for commercial presses

Generic Press

The Generic Press Task Processor has no attributes except its name. It has no type (sheet/web), no setback (Distance plate to sheet edge), no plate size, no clamp margins and no InkDrive settings.

There is therefore no need to install multiple instances, and no need for load balancing since the processing of a Generic Press is limited to writing the InkDrive file.

Associated Resources

When you select the Generic Press Task Processor in the System Overview, the following associated resource categories are displayed in the Resources pane:

- Borders, Marks, Profiles, Color Books, Paper Stock, Calibration Curves, , WebGrowth Profiles, Ink Sets, Ink Sets.

Generic Press Print Settings

You can access these settings:

- When creating Parameter Sets (see ““Managing Parameter Sets” on page 435). Here, you will see a ‘Lock in Production Plan’ check box (selected by default). If this check box is selected, the settings will be initially locked in the Settings pane. If this check box is deselected, the settings can be edited in the Settings pane.

- In the Settings pane, in the Plan tab of the Job Manager and the Ticket Editor. The settings may be initially locked, as indicated by the Lock icon. If you edit the job, you can unlock them as described in “Settings Pane (Ticket Editor)” on page 231.

When you create a Parameter Set, you should specify a Parameter Set name. You can always change this name later by editing the job, choosing the Parameter Set from the Task Processor in the Plan tab, and unlocking the settings in the Settings pane.

Parameter Set Lookup

Enter keywords, separated with a comma, so the appropriate Image and Output parameter sets, and the Render-Screen parameter set can be selected automatically from the press. Use the same keywords in the name of the appropriate parameter sets for these resources. Select the check box to also use the name of the press as a keyword. The lookup is activated by selecting the **Select automatically from press** check box for these resources in the panel under the plan.

Printing Tab

Paper Type Select the appropriate paper type from the drop-down list. The list contains all of the paper stocks in the Paper Resource category that are compatible with the selected press.

Ink Set Select the ink set from the drop-down list. The list contains all of the ink sets currently available in the Ink Sets Resource category.

Border Select the border from the drop-down list. The list contains all the borders currently available in the Borders Resource category.

Color Profile Select the appropriate ICC Profile from the drop-down list. The list contains all of the ICC Profiles currently available in the ICC Profiles Resource category.

When receiving PDF files, you can have Asecuri honor the application's supplied color profile by selecting 'Use PDF Output Intent'. In this case, you should provide a fallback in case the input has no output intent.

Auto-select from map: Select this check box to have Asecuri automatically select the Color Profile.

Fallback This option is only enabled when 'Use PDF Output Intent' has been selected in the Color Profile list. Here, you can select a fallback color profile in case the input has no output intent.

Calibration Select the Calibration Curve from the drop-down list. The list contains all of the curves currently available in the Calibration Curves Resource category.

Select None if you do not use calibration.

Auto-select from map: Select this check box to have Asecuri automatically select a Calibration Curve.

Simulate Select the Simulation Curve from the drop-down list. The list contains all of the curves currently available in the Simulation Curves Resource category.

Select None if you do not use simulation.

Web Growth

You can select a WebGrowth profile, or select None to have no WebGrowth compensation applied. WebGrowth compensation is performed on the fly while outputting the raster data, so the raster files themselves are not affected (and WebGrowth compensation is therefore not visible in Raster Preview). For more information, see “WebGrowth Profiles” on page 687.

Defined by Layout-editor: Select this check box to use an on-the-fly calculated WebGrowth profile, based on distortion values that are specified in the Layout Editor.

NOTE: Layout-Editor based distortion requires a special license. When using this option, WebGrowth profile becomes read-only and set to *Calculated*.

Don’t apply outside Press sheet: Select this check box to keep the area that is outside of the press sheet as it is. This option is read-only, when using Layout Editor-based distortion.

InkDrive

Create InkDrive File: Select the check box if you want to create an InkDrive file. The InkDrive file is especially useful for the Press operator. It contains low-resolution images to inform the operator how much ink he can use for the print job.

Density Curve: Applies the selected Density Compensation Curve to the CIP3/4 preview and Ink key report. In some cases, e.g., when using pre-compensated screens or ink-saving techniques, the densities that are found in the image preview or the Ink key report do not really convey the effects of those screens or ink-saving techniques. In these cases, you can select an extra Density Compensation Curve from the drop-down box.

After Rendering: Creates and saves the InkDrive files immediately after rendering, i.e. before the raster files are imaged.

After Rendering is not available for DQS-jobs.

After Imaging: Saves the InkDrive files immediately after imaging. This is the default option.

NOTE: The InkDrive files are always created by the Render Task Processor, regardless of the selected option.

Ink Saving

Two options are available:

Apply InkTune Integrated: Select the check box and choose an InkTune set from the drop-down list or click the arrow to go to the resource. The list contains all the InkTune sets currently available in the InkTune Sets Resource category. These parameters allow you to apply ink saving techniques based on Grey Component Removal (GCR)to replace process color inks by black.

Apply SolidTune: This option applies ink saving to screened data. Choose a SolidTune set from the drop-down list or click the arrow to go to the resource.

Disable on marks: This option disables the colorbars on SolidTune.

NOTE: Service intervention is required to modify the PDF Render configuration for the initial rendering.

Type Tab

A press can either be web-fed or sheet-fed. Each type has its own characteristics.

Press Name The actual name of the press; the lay and gripper settings for sheet-fed and the cut-off length for web printing (see below) must be the same for sets with the same Press Name.

Type Specify the type of press from the drop-down list:

Sheet Offset: A sheet-fed press aligns the press sheet against the leading edge of the plate, taking into account the non-printable area. Asecuri uses the total setback distance together with punch calibration in order to position the press sheet image on film or plate. The other distances are not used for processing, but can be used for validation.

Web Offset: A web press has several ways to position the press sheet on the plate:

- Center between clamps: The press sheet is vertically centered in the exposed plate area (i.e., the part of the plate that is not tucked away in the clamps).
- Center on plate: The press sheet is vertically centered on the plate, ignoring the clamp areas.
- Align to leading edge: Same as with a sheet-fed press. Since there is no sheet edge, Asecuri can use the lead edge clamp size as “total setback”.

Default Press Sheet Layout The layout that will be used by default for imposition. Select an available resource from the drop-down list. See “Press Sheet Layout Rules Overview” on page 671.

Distance plate to sheet edge This can be specified as a value, or it can be read from the signature definition in an imposition template:

From signature info: Reads the Setback value from the signature definition in an imposition template. This option is only available when the Production Plan contains an Impose Task Processor, and if it uses templates.

Custom: Allows you to specify a custom Setback value, in mm.

Default workstyle The workstyle that will be used by default for imposition in the Apogee Impose module. See “Working with Apogee Impose” on page 369.

Sheet Lay (sheet-fed) The press sheet lay can be:

- Left (Drive side)
- Right (Operator side)

Gripper Width (sheet-fed) Set the required width for the gripper.

Sheet height (web) The height of the press sheet as defined by web cut-off.

Pin area (web) When you set a pin area, Apogee Impose adds an extra margin across the bottom of each section. Regardless of whether the page's trim margins are large enough, this raises the pages by the specified height.

Slow Down Wheels Select one of the resources from the drop-down list.

Plate/Press Media

Plate Default plate size: The dimensions of the plate that you can mount on this press (width and height). The plate’s dimensions directly determine the media size selection in a CTP production plan. However, you could leave it blank to allow the user to select a plate manually (in the platesetter’s output parameters).

Clamp margins: Defines how much of the plate is “lost” in the clamps (Leading edge and Trailing edge). The clamp margins are used to calculate the press sheet position for a web press.

Press Media Default press media size: The dimensions of the press media (width and height).

Horizontal Position: Position of the press media (left, center, right or distance from left edge).

Clip Press Border Marks Select this check box to clip press border marks.

Margins: You can add margins on the outside the press border. By default, the value is set to 3 mm.

InkDrive Tab

You can ask Asecuri to create CIP3/4 information when printing to a specific press. The format and contents of the CIP3/4 file depends on the given press (vendor/type). This section allows you to tell Asecuri how to create the file and where to put it.

NOTE: This tab only appears when you have the InkDrive option installed.

InkDrive Format

There are three modes for creating InkDrive data. The chosen mode determines the availability of the different InkDrive options:

InkDrive mode	File	Image	Contents
CIP3/PPF	X	X	X
CIP4/PPF	-	X	X
CIP4/PNG	-	X	-

You can select the mode from the InkDrive Format drop-down list. Only one mode is available for presses that do not support JMF messaging. Presses that support JMF can have the two other modes.

NOTE: A press that has no JDF/JMF integration can only generate file-based PPF InkDrive data. In this case, the CIP4 Image Format is disabled. Also note that a press that is integrated via JDF/JMF cannot use the 'old' CIP3/PPF InkDrive method.

Use v3.0 standard: You can optionally select the v3.0 PPF standard (v2.1 PPF is used by default).

The InkDrive tab comprises three sub-tabs: File, Image and Contents.

File

This tab describes the file format and contents of the exported CIP3/4 file, and where to save it. The first section defines what a PPF file should contain. The second section controls where the files are written to, and what the file names are.

Create: Specify the file creation. Select the required option from the drop-down list.

Options when you select Press Type **Sheet Offset**:

- Custom. When you select Custom, this field becomes editable, and you can enter your own construction.
- Single file for all sheets: All separations of a job are saved in one PPF file.
- Single file per sheet: Each PPF file contains all separations of both the front and back of a press sheet.
- Single file per side: Each PPF file contains all separations of a single side of a press sheet.
- Single file per side per version: Each PPF file contains all separations of a single side and version of a press sheet.
- Single file per separation: Each PPF file contains a single separation.

NOTE: This is the only available option, when the press is controlled by JMF.

Options when you select Press Type **Web Offset**:

- Custom. When you select Custom, this field becomes editable, and you can enter your own construction.
- Single file per signature: All separations of all webs of a single signature are saved in one PPF file.
- Single file per web: Each PPF file contains all separations of both the front and back sides from a single web of a signature.
- Single file per web side: Each PPF file contains all separations of a single side from a single web of a signature.
- Single file per web side per version: Each PPF file contains all separations of a single side from a single web of a signature for a single version.
- Single file per separation: Each PPF file contains a single separation.

NOTE: This is the only available option, when the press is controlled by JMF.

Save files in directory hierarchy: Select this check box if you want the InkDrive files to be saved according to the file name hierarchy.

Save files in same directory: Select this check box if you want all of the InkDrive files to be saved in the same directory, regardless of the file name.

File Name: This field displays the file name under which the InkDrive files will be saved. The file name may use the following variables: $ORDER, $JOB, $SIGNATURE, $WEB, $SIDE, $SEPARATION.

The variables will be separated by a slash if you select Save files in directory hierarchy. This means that a directory will be made according to the file name.

The variables will be separated by an underscore if you select Save files in same directory.

Export Directory: Specify the directory where the InkDrive file will be located. Use the Browse button to locate the directory.

For example:

\\$COMPUTER\GenericPressRoot\$PRESS\

Extension: Specify the file extension to be used for the InkDrive files. By default, this is 'ppf'.

Truncate file names exceeding 31 characters: If the filename is longer than the specified amount, Asecuri truncates it. Select this check box to prevent file names from becoming too long.

Replace existing file: If a file with the same name already exists in the specified directory, then the file is automatically replaced by the new file.

Leave existing file, add sequence number to new file names: If a file with the same name already exists in the specified directory, then a revision number is added to the name of the new file.

Post-process files with script: Select this check box if you want to run an external script after the InkDrive file was written.

Script options: You can specify script options, which will be passed to the script as space separated arguments.

Image This tab describes how the preview image should be generated. The first section describes the generation of the preview image. The second one describes how the consuming application expects its orientation in the CIP3/4 file. You can select from eight possible combinations: 4 rotations (0, 90, 180, 270) and the two readings: right or wrong.

Resolution (dpi): Select the required resolution from the drop-down list.

Encoding: Select the appropriate encoding option from the drop-down list.

- None (Binary)
- ASCII Hex

Compression: Select the appropriate compression option from the drop-down list.

- None
- Run Length

Linearisation: Applies the linearisation curve to the image using the CTP/CTF engine. This is checked by default, following the pattern of earlier iterations.

Define CIP3Matrix from scan direction CTP/CTF: Gets the rotation and reading from the CTP/CTF device. This disables the **Rotation** and **Reading** options.

Orientation: Select the required orientation options.

- Rotation: 0, 90, 180 and 270
- Reading: Right or Wrong

Contents

Versioning: You can select the behaviour when generating a separate InkDrive file for each version and including information for other than per separation.

- Only include data for the new plates to be made for a version: Excludes data for the plates that have been made for other versions, but will be reused to print this version.
- Include data for all the plates used by a version (new and reused): Includes the data for the complete set of plates needed to print a version.

Include: Selects the data to include in the CIP3 file.

- Plate size: Select this check box if you want Asecuri to retrieve the Press plate size from the Job Ticket.
  - Default plate size: The dimensions of the plate that you can mount on this press (width and height). The plate's dimensions directly determine the media size selection in a CTP production plan.
  - From Job Ticket if available: This option is automatically selected when you select "Include Plate size".

    Transverse: Flips the retrieved Press plate size.

- Press sheet size: elect this check box if you want Asecuri to retrieve the Press sheet size from the Job Ticket.
    - Default press sheet size: The dimensions of the press sheet that you can mount on this press (width and height).
    - From Job Ticket if available: This option is automatically selected when you select “Include Press sheet size”.

      Transverse: Flips the retrieved Press sheet size.
    - Press media position: Position of the press media (left, center, right or distance from left edge).
- Additional Imposition information: includes additional Imposition information in the CIP3 file.
- Additional Media information: includes additional Media information in the CIP3 file.

Override : Selects the specific CIP3 tags to override.

- CIP3AdmJobCode: Overrides the value of $ORDER.
- CIP3AdmJobName: Overrides the value of $JOB.
- CIP3AdmSheetName: Overrides the value of $SHEET_$SIDE. Empty if there is no imposition.
- CIP3AdmSeparationNames: Overrides the value of $SEPARATION.
- Promote CIP3AdmSeparationNames and CIP3AdminInkColors to sheet level if applicable: This option is selected by default to optimize and override the CIP3AdmSeparationNames and CIP3AdminInkColors tags on the sheet level, unless there is a difference in color between the front and back sides.

Set CIP3 sheet sides: Allows you to control the Front/Back tagging.

- according to imposition used: Follow the job’s imposition settings.
- to all fronts: Force all sides to be marked as Front.
- to all backs: Force all sides to be marked as Back.

PDF The Ink Keys report is a simple PDF file containing a preview with Ink Keys settings. To create such a file, select PDF Ink-Keys as InkDrive Format in the InkDrive tab of the Press.

NOTE: In the Printing tab, Create InkDrive file check box must be selected.

The PDF tab controls the page size and the orientation of the contents.

Width: The width of the page.

Height: The height of the page.

Orientation : Select the orientation of the page; Best Fit, Portrait, or Landscape.

Ink Keys

The Ink Keys options allow you to convert the densities to Ink Key values, if you select PDF Ink-Keys or REC Ink-Keys as InkDrive Format in the InkDrive tab of the Press.

- Ink Keys Curve: Select the Ink keys curve to convert the densities to Ink Keys values.
- Precision: Select the precision for rounding. You can see this as tick marks on the vertical axis.
- Round to: Select how you want to round the Ink Keys values. This rounds the value to possible tick marks as established by the Precision option.
    - Nearest value: Round to the nearest value.
    - Lower value: Round to the nearest lower value.
    - Higher value: Round to the nearest higher value.
- Round to higher value around 0%: Select to round values between 0 and the first tick.

JDF/JMF Integration

Asecuri can act as a JDF controller with respect to a press. You will only see this tab if you have installed the JDF controller license.

To obtain the list of presses, controlled by the press controller, you need to query the press controller. The press controller will then return a list of devices it controls. You can then select the proper press from the 'JDF DeviceID' drop down.

JDF 'DeviceID'

Depending on the press vendor, the press controller (and its URL) either controls a single press, or it controls multiple presses. In the latter case, Asecuri needs a 'Device ID' to identify a unique press.

Press supports JMF Select this option if you want to control the Press via JDF/JMF.

Press URL Enter the URL of the press controller. If you do not specify the protocol, Asecuri defaults to http://. You can also use the file:// protocol, specifying a directory, if the press controller requires it. In this case, Asecuri will write the JDF commands as files to the specified location.

Finishing

The Generic Press Task Processor can optionally create a JDF file which contains instructions for finishing (post-press) equipment. The Finishing tab defines how Asecuri creates the JDF file, and where it needs to put it.

Create JDF for finishing equipment Select this check box to create a JDF which contains information for finishing equipment.

Create JDF Select to create JDF for finishing equipment:

- After impose
- After imaging

Cut Blocks Select to create cut-blocks type depending on the product type in the job:

- Per Page
- Per Foldsheet
- Per Foldsheet (trim)
- Automatic

NOTE: To cut different sheets differently, you need to group them in production sets and adjust the cutting per set. Apogee Prepress determines the job type by checking the type of the first product in the Product list and cuts all sheets of the job according to that type. As such, a job that mixes different product types must be set-up very carefully. You cannot have different types of cutting on the same sheet.

JDF version Select the JDF version.

Include preview Apogee Prepress can create a preview of the side(s) of the sheet to be cut. This allows to check whether the currently loaded cutting instructions correspond with the stack of sheets that is on the table. The preview files are created in the same directory as the cut file itself and with the same name, but the extension is different.

- Front: Creates an image preview of the front side.
- Back: Creates an image preview of the back side.

Create Specify the file creation. Select the required option from the drop-down list.

- Custom: When you select Custom, this field becomes editable you can enter you own construction.
- Single File for All Sheets: All separations of a job are saved in one PPF file.
- Single File per Sheet: Each PPF file contains all separations of both the front and back of a press sheet.

Save files in Directory hierarchy: Select this check box if you want the InkDrive files to be saved according to the file name hierarchy.

Same directory: Select this check box if you want all of the InkDrive files to be saved in the same directory, regardless of the file name.

File Name This field displays the file name under which the InkDrive files will be saved. The file name may use the following variables: $ORDER, $JOB, $SIGNATURE, $WEB, $SIDE, $SEPARATION.

The variables will be separated by a slash if you select Save files in directory hierarchy. This means that a directory will be made according to the file name.

The variables will be separated by an underscore if you select Save files in same directory.

Export directory Specify the directory where the InkDrive file will be located. Use the Browse button to locate the directory.

For example:

\\$COMPUTER\PressRoot\$PRESS\

Extension Specify the file extension to be used for the InkDrive files. By default, this is 'ppf'.

Options Truncate file names exceeding 31 characters: If the filename is longer than the specified amount, Asecuri truncates it. Select this check box to prevent file names from becoming too long.

Replace existing file: If a file with the same name already exists in the specified directory, then the file is automatically replaced by the new file.

Leave existing file, add sequence number to new file name: If a file with the same name already exists in the specified directory, then a revision number is added to the name of the new file.

Post-process files with script

Select this check box if you want to run an external script after the InkDrive file was written.

Script options: You can specify script options, which will be passed to the script as space separated arguments.

PressTune Tab

Create PressTune files

Select the check box to create PressTune files which are used for the PressTune print optimization solution. You can use variables to specify the file names and location.

PressTune Project

The folder where the PressTune project files will be saved.

File Name

The file name of the PressTune project file. The file name may use the following variables: $ORDER, $JOB, $SIGNATURE, $WEB, $SIDE, $SEPARATION. An extension must not be used.

Template

The template of the PressTune project file.

Target

The target of the PressTune project file.

Export directory

Specify the directory where the PressTune files will be located. Use the Browse button to locate the directory.

For example:

\\$COMPUTER\PressTuneRoot\$PRESS\

Replace existing file

If a file with the same name already exists in the specified directory, then the file is automatically replaced by the new file.

Leave existing file, add sequence number to new file name

If a file with the same name already exists in the specified directory, then a revision number is added to the name of the new file.

Post-process file with script: Select this check box if you want to run an external script after the PressTune file was written.

Script options: You can specify script options, which will be passed to the script as space separated arguments.

CHAPTER 15

Task Processor Resources

This section provides information on the Asecuri Resources that are available for each Task Processor. Resources are collections of objects such as fonts, preflight profiles, or calibration curves that are required by the Task Processors.

- About Task Processor Resources 572
- Apogee Preflight Action Lists 573
- Borders 577
  - Borders and Output Sizes 582
  - Working with Borders and Border Marks 583
- Calibration Curves 586
- Color Books 589
- Content Profiles 596
- Device Screens 597
- Fonts 598
- Halftone Screens 600
- Ink Sets 607
- Input Color Conversions 609
- Mark Engraver 612
  - Mark Sets Overview 613
  - Mark Types 619
  - Mark Attributes 620
  - Mark Position 650
  - Mark Conflicts 653
  - Mark Repeat 654
  - Mark Special 655
  - Mark Pens 655
  - Mark Layers 656
  - About Colors and Depth for Printing Marks 657
- Marks 660
- Media 662
- Output Color Conversions 666
- Output Sizes 669
- Paper Stock 674
- Preflight Action Lists 678
- Profiles 681
- Quality 684
- Sheet Layout Templates 685
  - Sheet Layout Templates Overview 686
- WebGrowth Profiles 687

About Task Processor Resources

Most Resources can be configured and customized in the System Overview, and you can create, edit, and delete Resources in the available Resource categories. The Resource pane displays the resource categories that are available for the currently selected item in the System Overview. The displayed resources will therefore vary in accordance with the selected item. The first icon in the list is the Parameter Sets icon, which allows you to create and manage Parameter Sets for the Task Processor (see "Managing Parameter Sets" on page 435).

Administrator access level only!

Apogee Impose Resources

Many of the Apogee Impose resources can be accessed from within the Apogee Impose windows for viewing the details of the resource, managing and even creating new ones. This is mainly possible when creating your Product in the Product editor or when viewing the imposition with the Inspector.

For example, the Shingling rules can be opened by choosing Manage Shingling Rules in the Shingling drop-down list in the Product editor.

Apogee Preflight Action Lists

Action lists are useful for performing repetitious tasks either within a single PDF document or in multiple PDF documents.

An action list usually consists of several actions or checks and once you have created an action list, you can re-use it to perform these tasks in the predefined sequence.

Administrator access level only!

Associated Task Processors

The Apogee Preflight Action Lists Resource category is available for the following Task Processors:

- Apogee Preflight

Apogee Preflight Action Lists Overview

The Apogee Preflight Action Lists overview lists all available Apogee Preflight action lists.

A set of action lists is provided by default with your system. Additional actions list can be obtained and imported. Some action lists, e.g. Hairline in the Standard category, can be duplicated and customized.

In the Production Plan, the available action lists are filtered depending on their position in the plan.

Category In this list you can select the action lists by category. For example:

- Color Management
- Standard

Type The Job Type list is used in combination with Category to filter Apogee Preflight Actions displayed in the Action List pane. You have 3 options:

- Any: displays all actions of the selected category for all job types
- Wide Format Jobs: displays actions of the selected category only for the Wide Format Jobs.
- Other Jobs: displays actions of the selected category for other jobs.

Apogee Preflight Action Lists The Action Lists pane displays the action lists as selected in the Category list. Select an action list to see its settings in the pane below.

Name The name of the action list as it appears in this resource and the Apogee Preflight task processor.

Description A short description of what the action list does.

Tabs Depending on the type of action list, you will see Settings and/or Info tabs that define the behavior of the action list:

- Settings: in this tab you set the criteria and options for the preflight checks
- Info: an explanation of what the action list does
- Availability: Make Action List available for either Wide Format Jobs, or other jobs.

NOTE: You can filter the list of action lists by typing keywords in the Search box at the top of the list.

▷ To create a new Action List

Editable action lists can be customized or duplicated to create a new action list.

NOTE: An action list can be customized if it has a Settings tab and in this case the Duplicate option is available when clicking the cogwheel.

---

1. Unlock the Apogee Preflight Action Lists resource.
2. In the Apogee Preflight Action List, choose the action list that you want to duplicate, e.g Hairline in the Standard category.

   Enter ‘hairline’ in the search box to locate this action list.
3. Click the cogwheel and choose Duplicate.

   A duplicate appears in the list with the same name and the **- copy** extension.
4. In the settings pane below, rename the action list and enter a Description.

5 Modify the Settings as required.

For example change the width.

NOTE: You cannot edit the Info tab.

6 Lock the resource.

The action list name is updated in the list. This new action list is now also visible in the Apogee Preflight task processor parameter settings.

▷ To edit an Action List

NOTE: An action list is editable if the Duplicate option is available when clicking the cogwheel.

1 Unlock the Apogee Preflight Action Lists resource.

2 In the Apogee Preflight Action List, choose the action list that you want to edit, e.g Hairline in the Standard category.

Enter ‘hairline’ in the search box to locate this action list.

3 In the settings pane below, modify the Settings as required.

For example change the width.

NOTE: You can’t edit the Info tab.

4 Lock the resource.

The action list is locked with the new settings.

▷ To import an Action List

1 In the Apogee Preflight Action Lists resource, click the cogwheel and choose Import.

2 Browse to the location where you saved your Action List files with extension .MIME, and click Open.

The imported action list is added to the list and the category is also added in Category list if this list does not yet exist.

▷ To export an Action List

1. In the Apogee Preflight Action Lists resource, click the cogwheel and choose Export.

2. Browse to the location where you want to save your Action List files with extension .MIME, and click Save.

   The exported action list is saved in the location specified.

Borders

The Borders Resource category allows you to predefine border marks for specific job requirements. A Border is extra information that you can add to film or plate. This extra information can contain the order number, the print date or time, slug lines, separation names, registration marks, crop marks, etc.

A border can contain either of the two following mark types:

- Text mark: Text marks are defined with variables in Asecuri. You can also choose a font type and point size for the variable.
- File mark: A file mark can be a special registration mark in the form of an EPS file or a PDF document.

You define the borders in the Resources of your output device. If you have several platesetters, filmsetters or proofing devices, the borders Resource is shared amongst the same type of output device.

When should you use Borders?

You should use borders when you have to work with a PDF document that lacks some essential information that should have been added in the source application (e.g. QuarkXpress, Imposition Template Manager). This can be registration marks or separation names, for example. Registration marks are needed to assemble the different colors correctly on top of each other. Separation names give information on the colors used.

NOTE: If you are using Apogee Impose, text marks and file marks can also be applied with the Mark Engraver. See “Mark Engraver” on page 612 for more information.

Associated Task Processors

The Border Resource category is available for:

- All Output Task Processors, except for Export and RPC.
- All Print Task Processors, except for Generic Press.

For information on creating, editing, importing, exporting and deleting borders, refer to “Managing Resources” on page 437.

Administrator access level only!

Borders Overview

The Borders overview lists the available borders. You can create, duplicate, edit, import and export borders.

Border Mark Editor

You can exactly define the Border Mark settings: the mark type and the exact location of the mark on the page or sheet.

Mark Type

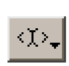
Select the Mark type (for output devices only):

- A Text Mark
- A File Mark (EPS/PDF Mark)

Text Mark

Text: In the Text field, you can specify which text is to be used as a mark. You have three options:

- Type some text in the Text field.
- Select a variable from the drop-down list. This list appears when you click the button next to the field.

- Use a combination of text and one or more variables.

Font: Select a font and a point size for the text mark.

Color: Click the variable button, and select one or more options to determine on which plate(s) the mark will be printed:

Click the associated variable button, and select one or more options to determine on which plate(s) the text mark will be printed:

- Registration (all plates). When this option is selected, you will see an asterisk (*).
- Process Colors (CMYK)
- Cyan
- Magenta
- Yellow
- Black

Rotate: Specify the rotation angle for the mark (0, 90, 180, or 270 degrees).

Stripping Text Mark

A stripping text mark serves as a placeholder for a StripMark. The main difference with the normal text mark is that the content of the stripping text mark is set by JDF. The JDF also specifies the stripping element to which the mark refers: The object whose edges are to be used as positioning references are set by JDF, but the offsets themselves are specified in the stripping text mark.

Crop Mark

Crop marks indicate where to crop the page or image. A crop mark sets crop marks around pages or around the image. They are dynamically imaged according to the specified properties.

Distance from image/page corner: Specifies the distance between the marks center and the images or pages corner.

Length of mark: Specifies the length of the mark.

Line width : Specify the width of the marks lines.

Print crop marks inside of imposition: Print crop marks that appear inside the imposed area (i.e. in between the pages). You should disable this option if you want the crop marks to appear only on the outside of the imposition (Imposition Borders only).

NOTE: Crop marks do not require the Position options.

Fold Mark

Fold marks indicate where to fold the sheet. A fold mark sets several marks to indicate where the sheet is to be folded. They are dynamically imaged according to the specified settings.

Distance from pages: Specifies the distance between the marks center and the page edges.

Length of mark: Specifies the length of the mark.

Line width : Specifies the width of the marks lines.

NOTE: Fold marks do not require the Position options.

Collation Mark

Signature/Section Collation marks offer a way to quickly inspect the correct collation order of folded sheets.

Mark: The mark is the actual marking on the spine or fold. It is printed in black, and may optionally contain an index number.

- Thickness: The thickness (or width) of the mark. Also sets the width of the step area. The default is 3mm.
- Length: The length of the mark. Also sets the step size with which the mark is offset. Note that there is no gap between two adjacent marks. The default is 11mm.

Step Area : The step area is the area in which the mark travels. The mark starts at the top (or bottom) of the step area, and advances one step with each section/signature.

- Offset from Edges: Insets the height of the step area in the available space. The default is 0.
- Step Area Length: Sets the length of the step area. When you enter a value, Asecuri calculates and displays the Number of steps.
- Number of Steps: Sets the number of steps in the step area. When you enter a value, Asecuri calculates and displays the Step Area Length.

Pattern : The pattern defines the position of the first mark, the direction in which the mark is stepped (normal or reverse), and what to do when arriving at the end of the step area (sawtooth or zigzag). Asecuri graphically represents the four possibilities. The default is to use normal direction with the sawtooth movement.

Index : Select whether to print the collation mark number (should correspond with the signature/section) inside the mark, and with which orientation (0, 90, 180 or 270). Asecuri graphically represents the five possibilities. The default is to print no index.

File Mark Use this option, if you want to use a specific EPS or PDF file as a mark.

File: Click the File list and select one of the available EPS or PDF files. The file is selected as the mark to be used.

Apply curves: Select the check boxes to apply the Linearization, Calibration or Simulation curves to the content of the file. By default, all curves are selected.

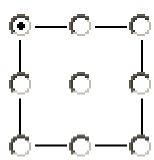
Rotate: Specify the rotation angle for the mark (0, 90, 180, or 270 degrees).

You can manage the Marks in the Marks Resource category. See “Marks” on page 660.

NOTE: The selected file is copied into a reserved directory on the server.

Position

Mark origin You can specify the exact position of the mark. This position is defined by a horizontal and a vertical distance from different parts of the sheet or plate.



Horizontal For the horizontal position, select:

- distance...
- to right or left of...
- Sheet Left Edge, Sheet Right Edge, Sheet Center, Output Size Left Edge, Output Size Right Edge, or Output Size Center.

Vertical For the vertical position, select:

- distance...
- below or above...
- Sheet Leading Edge, Sheet Trailing Edge, Sheet Center, Output Size Leading Edge, Output Size Trailing Edge, or Output Size Center.

Print on
- Front side

- Back side
- Both sides. If you select this option, the following check boxes are enabled:
  - Mirror Position on back
  - Mirror Content on back

Conflicts

Notify when Mark runs: You can set Asecuri to notify you, if the Mark or part of the mark area runs in or out the sheet or plate:

- Into the sheet: Notify when the whole or part of the mark's area overlaps with the sheet area.
- Out of the sheet: Notify when the whole or part of the mark's area does not overlap with the sheet area.
- Out of the Output Size: Notify when the whole or part of the mark's area does not overlap with the output size area (disabled for Imposition Borders).
- Into the Page Content (trim box): Notify when the whole or a part of the mark's area overlaps with the page's content area, as defined by the page's trimbox.

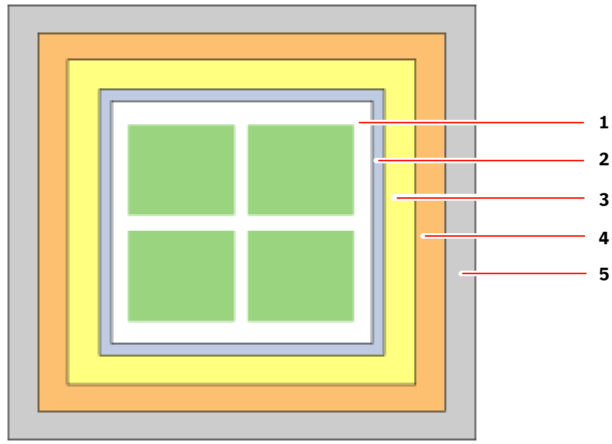
For each option, there is a check box. Asecuri will send a message to the Message Board according to the selected options.

NOTE: Notification is a warning only, processing will continue.

Do not print mark when it runs into the Page Content Select this option if you want Asecuri to remove a mark when it would otherwise run into a pages content area. The default setting is not to print marks that run into a Page Content.

Borders and Output Sizes

On a medium, you can distinguish different areas, including the borders and the output sizes. The following graphic clearly shows the different areas:



1 Press sheet
2 Border
3 Image size
4 Output size
5 Medium

Working with Borders and Border Marks

You first need to create a border. However, a newly created Border does not contain any border marks sets: You need to select the new border and add border marks to it.

▷ To create and manage border mark sets

1 In the System Overview Window, select the Output Task Processor for which you want to make changes in the Border Marks.

2 Double-click the Borders icon in the Resources pane.

The Borders window appears, containing a list of all the available Borders.

3 Select the Border for which you want to create, edit, duplicate or delete a Border Mark and click the Edit button.

The Border window appears, containing the available Border Marks for the selected Border.

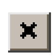
4 Do one of the following:

- Click the New button to create a new set of Border Marks. Enter any required information as described in “Border Mark Editor” on page 578 and click OK.

- Select the Border Marks set that you want to edit and click the Edit button. Enter any required information as described in “Border Mark Editor” on page 578 and click OK.

- Select the set of Border Marks that you want to duplicate and click the Duplicate button. A copy of the Border Mark Set will appear in the list.

- Select the set of Border Marks that you want to delete and press Delete or click the Delete button.



5 Click OK to close the Border window.

6 Close the Borders dialog box.

▷ To quickly copy borders from one Task Processor to another

1 In the System Overview Window, select the Output Task Processor from which you want to copy the Border.

2 Double-click the Borders icon in the Resources pane.

The Borders overview window appears, containing a list of all the available Borders.

3 Go back to the System Overview Window, and select the Output Task Processor to which you want to copy the Border.

4 Double-click the Borders icon in the Resources pane.

The Borders overview window appears.

5 Return to the first Borders overview window, select the border you want to copy, and drag and drop it in the second Border overview window.

The selected border is duplicated.

Calibration Curves

Every output device may have a certain discrepancy between the desired result and the actual result. This discrepancy is caused by dot gain. To compensate for this discrepancy, you need to calibrate your output device using the Curve Editor. Here, Asecuri calculates a dot gain compensation curve so that your output device produces the desired results. The resulting curve may be irregular to produce the desired dot gain.

In Asecuri, Calibration is only used for the press. For imagesetters and platesetters, Asecuri uses Linearization.

Administrator access level only!

Associated Task Processors

The Calibration Curves Resource category is available for the Press and Generic Press Task Processors.

Calibration Settings

You create calibration curves using the Calibration Curve Editor. For more information, see “Calibration and Linearization Settings” on page 696.

Screen (Workflow Polarity)

In the upper right corner, the Screen setting allows you to select the polarity of the workflow. You can choose between:

- Positive
- Negative

This option is repeated in the Calibration Map Settings, so that you have a complete overview of all the relevant settings when creating Auto-Select Maps for Calibration. For more information on Calibration Auto-Select Maps, see “Auto-Select Maps” on page 587.

Calibration Curves List

Here you can manage your Calibration Curves. You can sort the list by clicking in any of the five column headers.

Calibration Curve The name of the Calibration Curves.

Paper Type The selected printing stock.

Ink Set The ink set that was selected from the Ink Sets Resource category.

Screen The screen type, resolution, frequency and dot shape. For more information on screen types, see “PDF Render - Screen Settings” on page 502).

Modified Modification date and time of the Calibration Curves.

Auto-Select Maps

You can create Calibration Auto-Select Maps in the Calibration Curves Resource category. For more information on Auto-Select Maps see “” on page 691.

In order to do so, select the Calibration Curve and click Add Map. This will open the settings dialog box for Calibration maps. These settings are identical to the General Settings of a Calibration Curve. For more in-depth information on these settings, see “Calibration Print Settings” on page 696.

NOTE: You can also drag and drop a Calibration Curve to the Calibration Auto-Select Maps table.

Fallback Click the Fallback button to specify what Asecuri should do if the automatic selection of calibration curves does not find a match. You have the following options:

Use no calibration: The job will be processed without calibration.

Notify: Asecuri will put the job on hold and send a message to the Message Board.

▷ To manually create a new calibration curve

1 In the System Overview window, select the Print Task Processor for which you want to create a new Calibration Curve.

2 Double-click the Calibration Curves icon in the Resources pane.

The Calibration Curves dialog box appears, containing all of the available Calibration Curves for the selected Print Task Processor.

3 Click the New button.

A dialog box appears in which you can specify printing stock and halftone screen settings.

4 Specify the job details regarding printing stock, screen type and associated resolution, frequency, and dot shape. Screen polarity (Positive or Negative) cannot be selected: It is displayed for information purposes only.

For more information, see “Calibration Print Settings” on page 696.

NOTE: For CristalRaster screens, you have to specify the Dot Size instead of Frequency and Dot Shape.

---

5 Click OK to save your selection and close the dialog box.

6 Specify how you want to initialize the table (manually) as described in “Create Table” on page 698 and click Next.

7 Select the values for the Stimuli column as described in “Stimuli Selection” on page 698 and click Next.

8 Select the values for the Wanted column as described in “Wanted Selection” on page 699 and click Finish.

The Calibration Curve editor appears.

9 Make any required changes as described in “Curve Editor” on page 700, type the name of your Calibration Curve and click Save.

Your new Calibration Curve appears in the Calibration Curves List in the upper pane.

10 Close the dialog box.

Color Books

Asecuri contains a database of colors that are organized in books. As each ink produces a slightly different color depending on the stock it is printed on, each book represents the colors as they appear on a specific paper type.

Administrator access level only!

Associated Task Processors

The Color Books Resource category is available for all Press Task Processors and Proofers.

Color Books Overview

The Color Books overview consists of the books table and the colors table. You can create and partially edit color books, or individual colors within a specific book. You can also import color books, which can be useful if you want to have access to older Pantone colors.

You can click the International button to view translations of the color names in several languages.

NOTE: System Color Books are displayed in italics, and cannot be edited.

Color Books Editor

The Color Books Editor allows you to modify the attributes of the selected Color Book.

NOTE: You can only modify the dot gain values of the System Color Books. The names of the System Color Books are displayed in italics.

Book Settings

Book Name Enter a name for the selected Color Book.

Prefix Enter a prefix (for Spectral Color Book).

Suffix Enter a suffix (for Spectral Color Book).

Suitable for printing on:

Paper type Select one of the paper types that are available for the selected color book.

Dot gain

Specifies the dot gain values for the selected Color Book.

Value Default is 15.

Highest at Default is 50.

Starting at Default is 0.

Ending at Default is 100.

Special Colors button

Special colors are color names for unusual inks such as varnishes and die-cutting marks, glue zones, etc. These colors are organized in categories that determine their behavior.

Click the Special Colors button to open the Special Colors editor.

Category Following built-in categories are provided:

- Die line: Not mapped to color strip colors, never printed in the main flows.
- Varnish: Mapped to varnish in in inkset, for main input only and never printed in the proofing flows.
- White: Mapped to white ink in inkset. If white is not part of the inkset, the color is switched off.
- Primer: Mapped to primer ink in inkset. If primer is not part of the inkset, the color is switched off.

NOTE: Special Color categories are also used by Apogee Preflight action lists.

Colors Enter additional color names (for example in your language) or click the Colors button to choose colors that you want to add to this category.

International button

Click the International button to open the International Color Names editor where you can add translations for the four process color names and ensure the correct mapping of these color names when they appear in the different languages.

Color Accuracy

Select the *Show color accuracy (deltaE)* check box to expand the Color Accuracy panel.

Color Editor

The Color Editor allows you to modify the attributes of the selected color.

NOTE: You cannot modify colors that belong to one of the System Color Books. The names of the System Color Books are displayed in italics.

General

Color name This name should be unique within the Color Book.

Colorant type Select the ink type:

- Normal
- Opaque
- Opaque Ignore
- Transparent

Color definition Define the color by its Lab color values.

Db (Neutral Density) The initial value is calculated from the color definition. These values are used by trapping.

The Calculate button allows you to calculate the Neutral Density.

SID (Solid Ink Density) Specify the Solid Ink Density (SID).

Color Exceptions

You can specify the color values to be used in case the conversion from Lab color does not produce the expected results. In that case, Asecuri will use your values instead of calculating them from the Lab values.

This table lists all of the exceptions that are defined for the print or proofing device that you selected.

▷ To create or rename a color book

1 In the System Overview window, select the Press Task Processor for which you want to create a new Color Book.

2 Double-click the Color Book icon.

The Color Book overview appears, containing the available Color Books in the left column and its respective colors in the right column.

3 To create or rename a Color Book, do one of the following:

- Click on the New button underneath the left column to create a new Color Book.

- Click the Edit button to rename the Color Book.

The Color Book editor appears.

4 Type an unique name for the book in the Name field and select a paper type from the drop-down list.

5 Specify the dot gain values for the color book.

- Value: By default, this is set to 0.
- Highest at: By default, this is set to 50.
- Starting at: By default, this is set to 0.
- Ending at: By default, this is set to 100.

For more information on dot gain values, refer to “What is Calibration?” on page 694.

6 Click OK.

CAUTION: The newly created Color Book does not contain any colors yet. You need to create these in the right column. For more information, see To manage your colors in a selected color book on page 593.

7 Close the Color Books overview.

▷ To import a color book

1 In the System Overview window, select the Press Task Processor for which you want to import a Color Book.

2 Double-click the Color Book icon.

The Color Book overview appears, containing the available Color Books in the left column and its respective colors in the right column.

3 Click the Import button:

An Open file dialog box is displayed.

4 Browse to the location of the color book you want to import, select the color book file (*.MIME), and click Open.

The color book is imported, and is displayed in the list of color books.

▷ To manage your colors in a selected color book

1 In the System Overview window, select the Press Task Processor for which you want to create, edit or delete a color.

2 Double-click the Color Books icon.

The Color Books overview appears, containing the available Color Books in the left column and its respective colors in the right column.

3 Select the Color Book in which you want to create, edit or delete a color in the left column or create a new book by clicking the New button. In the newly created book, you can then create new colors as described below.

You need to specify the Paper Type for the new book.

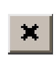
All of the book's colors appear in the right column.

4 Do one of the following:

- Click the New button underneath the right column to create a new color, define the color properties and click OK to save your settings.

- Click the Edit button to edit a color, define the color properties and click OK to save your changes.

- Select the color that you want to delete in the right column and press Delete or click the Delete button. Confirm the deletion.



5 Close the Color Books overview.

▷ To create or edit a color exception

1 In the System Overview window, select a Press Task Processor for which you want to create or edit a color exception.

2 Double-click the Color Books icon.

The Color Books overview appears, containing the available Color Books in the left column and its respective colors in the right column.

3 Select the Color Book in which you want to create or edit a color exception in the left column.

All of the book's colors appear in the right column.

4 Click the Edit button under the right column to edit a color.

5 Expand the Color Exceptions section.

6 Do one of the following to either create or edit the exception.

- Click the New button to create an exception.

- Click the Edit button to edit an exception.

The Color Exception editor appears.

7 Select the ICC Profile that you want to use for this exception.

8 Specify the CMYK values for Lab to Process Color conversion.

9 Click OK to save your changes.

10 Click OK to close the Color Editor window and save the color exception.

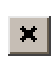
NOTE: When you create an exception, standard CMYK values are calculated for the selected profile.

▷ To delete a color exception

1 Edit a color.

2 Expand the Color Exceptions section.

3 Select the exception that you want to delete and click the Delete button.



4 Click Yes to confirm the deletion.

5 Click OK to close the Color Editor window and delete the color exception.

NOTE: If you click Cancel, all color exception changes are lost.

Content Profiles

The Content Profiles Resource category contains the Color Profiles (*.icm and *.icc files) that are available to the Normalize and Render Task Processors. These Profiles have no effect on the Profiles selected for the Press.

Administrator access level only!

Associated Task Processors

The Content Profiles Resources are available for the following Task Processors:

- All Render Task Processors
- Normalize
- Apogee Preflight

Content Profiles Overview

The Content Profiles overview lists the profile names and their color spaces.

Content Profile

The name of the Profile

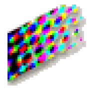
Color Space

The name of the color space to which the Profile belongs. This may be:

- CMYK
- Grayscale
- RGB

You can import, export or delete a Content Profile.

Device Screens



Allows you to select, rename or delete a device screen for your digital printer.

Administrator access level only!

Associated Task Processors

The Device Screens Resource is available for all commercial digital printers.

Fonts

The Fonts resource category contains the default fonts that were installed with the Asecuri software, together with any other fonts that have been imported.

Associated Task Processors

Asecuri is delivered with a font database comprising the most common PostScript fonts. There is one common font database for the following Task Processors:

- PDF Render
- Normalize

Font Overview

Displays a list of the currently installed fonts, and allows you to filter the list.

Display resources containing

Any text entered here will dynamically filter the list of fonts to display only the font names which contain this text.

Font

Displays the font name

Type

Displays the font type, which may be any of the following:

- PostScript
- True Type (*.ttf)
- Type 1 (*.pfb)
- PostScript (*.pfa)
- Open Type fonts (*.otf)

- CID

File Name

Displays the name of the font file. This is normally the same as the font name.

Except for the filtering feature, the general procedures for managing resources apply also to fonts. You can also import ttf, pfb, pfa, and otf fonts into the Asecuri font database

To filter the fonts list

1 Select a Task Processor that uses the Fonts Resource, by clicking it.

The resources associated with the Task Processor appear in the Resources pane.

2 Double-click the Fonts icon in the Resources pane

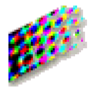
The Fonts dialog box appears containing the available fonts for your system.

3 If necessary, filter the Fonts List by font name or part of the font name. For example, type the word “Arial” in the text field at the top of the dialog box and press Enter.

The dialog box lists only the Fonts containing the word Arial.

4 Close the Fonts dialog box.

Halftone Screens



When an image is output to an imagesetter for printing processes or laser printed artwork, etc., the image is converted into a pattern of dots according to well defined Halftone Screen settings. Each Halftone Screen contains a pattern of dots of different sizes or shapes, simulating the effect of different tones and colors.

Ruling Maps

You can predefine screen settings and add them to a Ruling Map. A Ruling Map contains various rules that specify how the screen settings are to be applied. You can re-use a Ruling Map whenever necessary. When creating a job, you can select a specific Ruling Map for processing to avoid any problems due to mistakes.

In the Halftone Screens dialog box, you will see all the available Halftone screens in the upper panel, and all available Ruling Maps in the lower panel. You can use this dialog box to create your own Ruling Maps containing specific halftone screen settings.

NOTE: Any Halftone Screens displayed in italics are not yet licensed, and cannot be used. If you want to license these screens, you must follow the licensing procedure described in the Asecuri Licensing Guide.

Associated Task Processors

The Halftone Screens Resources are available for the following Task Processors:

- All imagesetters and platesetters

Administrator access level only!

Halftone Screens Editor

The Halftone Screens editor allows you to import, delete, and customize halftone screens, and create and use ruling maps.

Halftone Screens

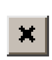
Screen Select either Positive or Negative screens.

Screen Type Select the screen type that you want to edit:

- ABS (Apogee Balanced Screening)
- Adobe Accurate
- CristalRaster Uncompensated
- Rational Tangent

Import: You can click the Import button to import another screen type to the list from file (in MIME format).

Delete: You can click the Delete button to remove the selected screen type from the list. This will also remove any resources related to the selected halftone screens.



Resolution The available resolutions are dependent on the selected Screen Type.

Duplicate: You can click the Duplicate button to create a custom resolution for the Adobe Accurate and Rational Tangent screen types.

Delete: You can click the Delete button to remove the selected resolution from the list. This will also remove any resources related to the selected resolution.

Frequency The available frequencies are dependent on the selected resolution.

Add: You can click the Add button to add a custom frequency for the Adobe Accurate and Rational Tangent screen types.

Delete: You can click the Delete button to remove the selected frequency from the list. This will also remove any resources related to the selected frequency.

Dot Shape

- Elliptical
- Round

Dot Size CristalRaster only.

Separation/Angle

- Cyan - 15
- Magenta - 75
- Yellow - 0
- Black - 45

NOTE: You can define custom angles (positive or negative) for Adobe Accurate and Rational Tangent screens.

Ruling Maps

Ruling Map Folder Name of the Ruling Map folder.

Resolution The available resolutions are dependent on the selected Screen Type.

Frequency/Used Screen Dependent on the selected resolution.

▷ To create a new ruling map folder

TIP: You can also create new folders automatically when adding halftone screens.

1 Open the Ruling Maps pane, and click the New button.

The Ruling Map Folder dialog box appears.

2 Type a name for your Ruling Map folder and click OK.

The new folder appears in the Ruling Map Folder list.

CAUTION: The folder you have just created is empty. This means that it does not contain any halftone screens yet. To add halftone screens to your Ruling Map folder, follow the procedure “To add halftone screens to a ruling map folder” on page 603.

▷ To add halftone screens to a ruling map folder

To add a halftone screen to a Ruling Map folder, you must first specify the screen type, resolution, frequency and dot shape, in that order.

NOTE: For CristalRaster screen types, you must specify the resolution and dot size.

1 Select the halftone screen you want to add by selecting a screen type, resolution, frequency and dot shape.

2 Once you have specified the dot shape or dot size (CristalRaster), open the Ruling Map list.

The Ruling Map dialog box appears.

TIP: You can also enter the name of a new Ruling Map folder: This will create the folder automatically.

3 Specify the Ruling Map folder by selecting it in the drop-down list and the frequency number (lpi value), if necessary.

4 Click Add Map to add the halftone screen to your Ruling Map.

5 Click OK.

The halftone screen is added to your Ruling Map folder.

6 Select the folder in the Ruling Map Folder list and then select the specified resolution.

You can now see the halftone screen in the Used Screen list.

NOTE: When adding CristalRaster screens to a Ruling Map folder, you have to type the frequency number that you want to associate with a certain dot size. You can, for instance, type 112 and link it to a dot size of 21 microns. When using the 112 value in your pre-press application, the CristalRaster dot size 21 is automatically selected.

▷ To change the halftone screen angle

1 Do one of the following:

- Select the screen type or
- Add a new screen type by clicking the Add button.

2 Select the resolution.

3 Select the frequency.

NOTE: This is not applicable to CristalRaster screens.

4 Select the dot shape (or dot size for CristalRaster screens).

5 To change a color separation angle, do one of the following:

- Double-click a color separation.
- Select a color separation and click the Edit button.

You can define custom angles (positive or negative) for Adobe Accurate and Rational Tangent screens.

6 For ABS screens, select one of the available color separation angles from the list. For Adobe Accurate or Rational Tangent screens, enter a custom color separation angle of your choice.

7 Click OK.

To specify the angle for spot colors

1 Do one of the following:

- Select the screen type or
- Add a new screen type by clicking the Add button.

2 Select the resolution.

3 Select the frequency.

NOTE: This is not applicable to CristalRaster screens.

4 To specify the angle for spot colors, do one of the following:

- For new spot colors click the New button.

- For existing spot colors select the spot color and click the Edit button.

The spot colors will be given sequence numbers according to the separation order. The spot color itself can be specified in the Separation Settings for the Render Task Processor (see “PDF Render - Separation Settings” on page 490).

NOTE: You can specify angles not only for spot colors, but also for process colors.

▷ To delete spot color angles that you have added

1. Select the spot color angle, and click the Delete button.

2. Click Yes to confirm the deletion.

   The spot color angle is deleted.

NOTE: You can only delete the spot color angles that you have added.

▷ To import custom dot shapes for your halftone screens

1. From the Halftone Screens dialog box, select the Adobe Accurate or Rational Tangent screen type.
2. Select a resolution, frequency and dot shape.
3. Click the Import button.

4. Locate the folder which contains your Dotshape packages.

   These dot shape packages are in MIME or PostScript file format (*.mime, *.ps)

5. Click Open.

   The custom dot shapes are displayed in the Dotshape list.

▷ To delete custom dot shapes

1 From the Halftone Screens dialog box, select a screen type, resolution, frequency and dot shape.

1 Select a custom dot shape, and click the Delete button.

2 Click Yes to confirm the deletion.

The dot shape is deleted.

NOTE: You can only delete custom dot shapes.

Ink Sets

Ink Sets contain the color specifications for the process colors. Asecuri ships with a number of installed ink sets such as Euro, Swop, Toyo, Dic and Iso. They all use the standard CMYK color space.

In the Ink Sets Resources you can select an existing Ink Set for your Press Task Processor or create a new one where you can manually specify which colors have to be used as separation colors.

Administrator access level only!

Associated Task Processors

The Ink Sets Resources are available for all Print (Press) Task Processors.

Printing Ink Sets Overview

Provides an overview of the available ink sets.

Ink Set

Lists the names of the ink sets that are available on the Press.

Process

Indicates which colors are available in the available ink sets.

Ink Set Editor

Allows you to edit an ink set.

Name

The name of the Ink Set should be unique. This field cannot be left empty.

Color Space

The name of the used color space. In the drop-down list you see all of the available color spaces.

Colors

In these fields you see the name of the inks used for that specific color model.

To edit an ink set

1 In the System Overview window, select the Press Task Processor for which you want to edit an ink set.

2 Double-click the Ink Sets icon in the Resources pane.

The Ink Sets overview appears, listing all of the available Ink Sets.

3 Select the Ink Set that you want to edit and click the Edit button.

The Ink Set editor appears.

4 Select the Color Book in the left column and the color in the right column.

5 Click OK.

The selected color will be used as a separation color.

6 Repeat the selection procedure for each separation color.

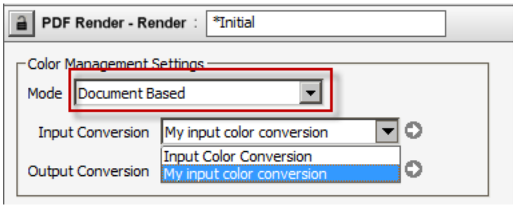
7 Click OK to save your settings and to close the Ink Set editor.

8 Close the Ink Set overview.

Input Color Conversions

Input Color Conversions are presets that convert the color values of the document elements to the document output intent. The actual input conversion is performed by the PDF Render task processor where you select the Input Conversion preset in the Render operation.

To select your input color conversion in the Render operation of PDF Render, you must choose Document Based mode in the color management settings.



Associated Task Processors

- Apogee Preflight
- PDF Render

Input Color Conversions Overview

Administrator access level only!

The Input Color Conversions overview lists all available input conversions.

Input Color Conversion list

Select a conversion in the list to see more information in the pane on the right.

Convert Objects to Document Intent

These setting define how color values in CMYK, RGB and Gray objects are converted to the Document Output Intent.

Apply Black Point Compensation

Asecuri uses a built-in algorithm to adjust for differences in the black points. Select the color space or spaces you want to apply this conversion to: RGB, CMYK, Gray.

Gray Conversion: Convert as pure K

Select this option to render a gray image in K only.

CMYK Profile Link Exception

Choose an exception from the drop-down list:

- None
- Keep 100% K
- Normal
- Preserve K
- Preserve Pure Colors
- other exceptions as listed in the Profile Link Exceptions resource

Defaults

If the input tagging sets the rendering intent to *From Input* but no color values are specified, a default rendering intent is applied.

Rendering Intent

Choose a default rendering intent from the drop-down list:

Relative Colorimetric: A colorimetric conversion, tries to maintain the exact relationship (Smallest Delta E), between in-gamut colors, while out of gamut colors will be clipped. With Relative Colorimetric RI the white point from source color space is mapped to the white point of destination, this means that white stays white. No ink will be placed in white areas.

Perceptual: Perceptual aims to preserve the visual relationship between colors so it is perceived as natural to the human eye. The relationship between out of gamut colors is maintained. This can result in inaccuracies for in gamut colors as well.

Saturation: Saturation tries to produce vivid colors in an image at the expense of color accuracy.

Absolute Colorimetric: Absolute Colorimetric rendering intent is similar to Relative Colorimetric, except that here the white point of the two profiles is preserved. White of source color space is simulated with CMYK values from the destination color space. The consequence is that every white object/area is covered with certain ink amounts.

NOTE: The result of choosing a rendering intent depends on the graphical content of documents and on the profiles used to specify color spaces. Some profiles produce identical results for different rendering intents. Differences between rendering intents are apparent only when you print a document or convert it to a different working space.

Mark Engraver

The Mark Engraver is an important resource of Apogee Impose which is used to organize marks in Mark Sets and add these Mark Sets to the Pages, Fold Sheets and Press Sheets of an imposition.

The marks are placed automatically using conditions, however, it is also possible to place the marks manually using the Marks palette in the Press Sheet View of Apogee Impose. Although the Mark Engraver is for administrators only, the settings of the different marks can be accessed by all users in the Press Sheet View.

Associated Task Processors

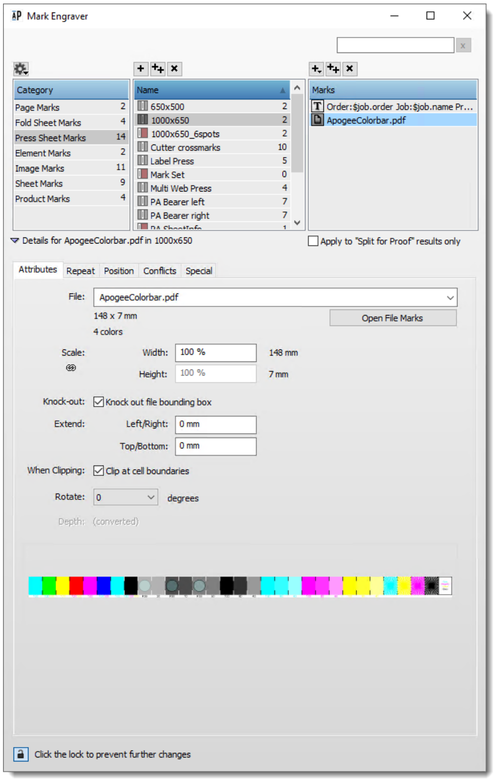
The Mark Engraver resource category is available for:

- Impose
- Raster Impose

Administrator access level only!

▷ Open the Mark Engraver

♦ In the Layout Editor, choose Window > Resources and select Mark Engraver, or go to System Overview.



At the top of the Mark Engraver you have an overview of marks in the different categories.

The section under the overview shows the conditions for the selected Mark Set or the details of the individual Marks within each Mark Set. This section can be opened by clicking the grey triangle.

By default, the conditions and details are locked. You can unlock the conditions and details for editing by clicking the Lock icon in the bottom left corner.

Mark Sets Overview

The left column of the overview section displays the three Mark Sets categories and the number of Mark Sets in each category. The Mark Sets consist of marks which are brought together and placed according to the specified positioning and conditions.

The Mark Sets are organized in the following categories:

- Page Marks: Crop, File, Text, Line, Rectangle, Page Fold Line, Circle
- Fold Sheet Marks (bound products): File, Text, Line, Rectangle, Registration, Cut Mark, Cross Mark, Collation Mark, Fold Line, Circle
- Press Sheet Marks: Cut-off, File, Text, Line, Rectangle, Registration, Slit, Color Bar, Cutter Registration, Density, Color Bar, Ink-Eater, Circle
- Element Marks (unbound folded and flat products): File, Text, Line, Rectangle, Cut, Fold Line, Registration, Circle
- Image Marks: Text, File, Crop, Grommet, Color Bar, Line, Rectangle, Circle
- Sheet Marks: Text, File, Cut, Registration, Fotoba, Cutter Registration, Grommet, Line, Rectangle, Circle
- Product Marks: Text, File, Station Number, Color Bar

The middle column lists all the Mark Sets for a particular category and the number of Marks in the selected Mark Set. The Name of the Mark Set is preceded by an icon that indicates the condition applied to the Mark Set.

The right column lists all the Marks of the selected Mark Set.

▷ To add/edit a Mark Set

1. Unlock the Mark Engraver and click a Category
2. Click the new button above the Name column.

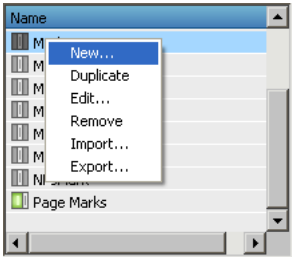
   OR

   Right-click in the middle column and choose New from the list.

   A new Mark Set name appears in the list with a default name and 0 Marks.

   OR

   Right-click an existing Mark Set and choose New or Edit from the list.



3 Set the conditions for this new Mark Set.

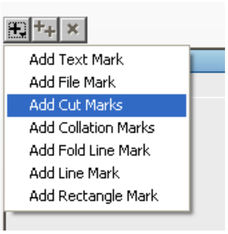
4 Lock the Mark Engraver.

▷ To add a Mark

1 Unlock the Mark Engraver and click a Mark Set name.

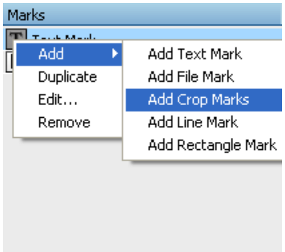
2 Click the new button above the Marks column.

A drop-down is displayed with a list of the different Mark types.



OR

Right-click in the Marks column.



3 Select the Mark type you require.

The Mark is added to your Mark Set with a default name.

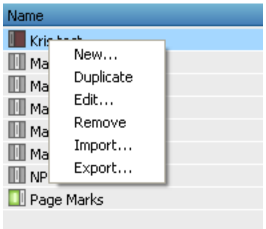
4 In the Details section, edit the settings for your new Mark.

5 Lock the Mark Engraver.

▷ To duplicate a Mark/Mark Set

1. Unlock the Mark Engraver and right-click a Mark/Mark Set name.

   A menu is displayed.



2. Select Duplicate to copy the Mark or Mark Set.

   The new Mark Set contains the same Marks as the original and has the same conditions. The Marks have the same details.

3. Edit the settings for the new Mark Set/Mark as required.

▷ To move/copy Marks between Sets

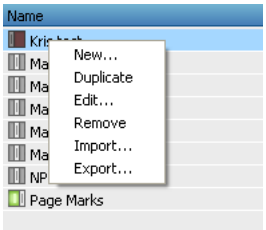
- Drag a Mark from one Mark Set to another or press the Ctrl key while dragging to duplicate the Mark.

NOTE: You cannot move between categories.

▷ To name/re-name a Mark/Mark Set

1. Unlock the Mark Engraver and context-click a Mark/Mark Set name.

   A menu is displayed.



2. Select Edit to rename the Mark or Mark Set.

Mark Set Conditions

The Conditions section of the Mark Engraver is the same for the four categories of Mark Sets. By default you see one line where you can enter criteria. Criteria lines can be added, edited or deleted. The printing of the marks can also be limited to proofs.

Examples of conditions:

Apply `When all criteria are met` with criterion `$product.name equals MyProduct`.

Apply `When some criteria are met` with criterion `$press_sheet.side.press.name equals Large Press`.

- Click a Mark Set category and then the Name of a Mark Set to display the Conditions section.

Apply to "Split for Proof" results only

Select this check box if you only want the mark set to appear on the proofs of a press sheet and not on the actual press sheet when it is printed. If you select this option, the proof-only marks do not appear in the Mark Sets inspector nor in Sheet View and no checks are performed for conflicts. Proofs always include the actual press sheet marks.

Apply

- Always: the Mark Set is always applied and does not take the criteria into account.
- Manually only: The Mark Set can only be placed manually.
- When all criteria are met: The Mark Set is only applied when all the criteria lines are true.
- When some criteria are met: The Mark Set is applied when at least one of the criteria lines is true.

The selected condition is indicated with an icon in the Mark Sets list.

	Mark Set is always applied
	Mark Set is only applied manually
	Mark set is applied when all/some criteria are met
	Mark set is applied partially (mark deleted manually for example)
	None of the marks of the mark set are applied (marks deleted manually for example).

Variable

This drop-down lists the variables you can use for your criteria.

Expressions

Depending on the variable you use for your criterion, you will see expressions that test against a string (e.g. the name of a Press or Product) or a number:

- equals (string or number)
- does not equal (string or number)
- less than (number)
- greater than (number)
- less than or equal to (number)
- greater than or equal to (number)
- is even (number)
- is odd (number)
- contains (string)
- does not contain (string)

Value

In this field you enter the value you want to apply for the variable:

- a string: e.g. your Product, your Press
- a number with/without unit: e.g. 1000 mm

▷ To create/edit a Mark Set condition

1 Click a Mark Set Category and then a Name to display the Conditions section.

2 Choose one of the options from the **Apply** drop-down list, e.g. **When all criteria are met**.

3 Click the **New** button next to the conditions line to create a new criteria line.

4 Choose a variable from the first drop-down list, e.g. $job.order, an expression from the middle list, and enter a value in the right field to complete the criterion.

Mark Types

The different Mark types are indicated with a specific icon:

Circle Mark: draws a circle with or without fill color

Collation Mark: stepped blocks with the signature number which are used to inspect the correct collation order of folded sheets

Cut Mark: a horizontal and a vertical line in the corners of a Fold Sheet to indicate the boundaries of the Fold Sheet and where it is to be cut

Cut-off Mark: lines at the cut-off between Web Production Schemes, on the left and right sides of the web

File Mark: places a specific EPS or PDF file as a mark

Fold Line: draws a set of vertical or horizontal lines that indicate where to fold the sheet or the page.

Line Mark: draws a line

Crop Mark: a horizontal and a vertical line to indicate where the page has to be cropped

Rectangular Mark: draws a rectangle with or without fill color

Registration Mark: draws a series of marks which are used to check that the registration of the different printing colors is correct

Text Mark: prints the job name, order number, color name, etc. on the Press Sheet

Slit Mark: draws a line to indicate where a press sheet is to be cut in ribbons for web printing

Color Bar Mark: generates a bar of color patches, using the colors that are present on the press sheet (offset and wide-format) or in the product.

Cross Mark: indicates the crosspoint of two gutters, or at the endpoint of a gutter.

Density Bar: draws bars of equal density across the full width of the press sheet or along the edges.

Ink-Eater Mark: places a background mark between the products or on the outside of the fold sheets.

Page Fold Line: draws a set of vertical or horizontal lines that indicate where to fold on a single page element.

These icons are also used in the Mark Sets Inspector in the Press Sheet View.

Each Mark type has its own settings which are displayed in the Details section of the Mark Engraver. The Details section has a number of tabs depending on the Mark type:

- “Mark Attributes” on page 620
- “Mark Position” on page 650
- “Mark Conflicts” on page 653
- “Mark Repeat” on page 654
- “Mark Special” on page 655

Mark Attributes

The Attributes are explained for each Mark type.

- “Circle Mark Details” on page 621
- “Collation Mark Details” on page 622
- “Color Bar Mark Details” on page 627
- “Crop Mark Details” on page 631
- “Cross Mark Details” on page 631
- “Cut Mark Details” on page 632
- “Cut-off Mark Details” on page 633

- “Cutter Registration Mark Details” on page 633
- “Density Bar Details” on page 635
- “File Mark Details” on page 637
- “Fold Line Mark Details” on page 638
- “Fotoba Mark Details” on page 639
- “Grommet Mark Details” on page 640
- “Ink-Eater Mark Details” on page 641
- “Line Mark Details” on page 644
- “Page Fold Line Mark Details” on page 645
- “Rectangle Mark Details” on page 645
- “Registration Mark Details” on page 646
- “Slit Mark Details” on page 647
- “Station Number Mark Details” on page 648
- “Text Mark Details” on page 648

Circle Mark Details

Mark Sets Categories: Pages, Fold Sheet, Press Sheet, Image, Sheet

The Circle Mark draws a rectangle with a border and fill color. This mark is always printed using knock-out.

Width Specifies the horizontal size of the mark. You can create oval shapes by unlocking the link and entering different values for Width and Height.

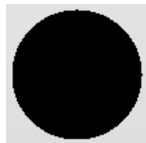
Height Specifies the vertical size of the mark.

Border pen Choose a pen to draw the lines; lines have different thicknesses.

NOTE: The border is created on the *inside* of the bounding box.

Fill with color

This option is selected by default.



Click the variable button, and select one or more options to determine on which plate(s) the mark will be printed:

See “About Colors and Depth for Printing Marks” on page 657 for more information on using colors to print marks.

Collation Mark Details

Mark Sets Category: Fold Sheet

A Collation Mark combines a signature mark and a version mark to check that folded sheets are collated in the correct order for each version.

Attributes tab

Step Area

The step area is the area in which the mark travels. The mark starts at the top (or bottom) of the step area, and advances one step with each section/signature.

- Position: You can choose to position the collation marks automatically, semi-automatically or manually.
  - Automatically by Assembly Style: Apogee determines the target and position of the step area, based on the assembly style; in nested styles,

Apogee Impose draws the mark on the closed-head, and in stacked styles it draws it in the outer spine.

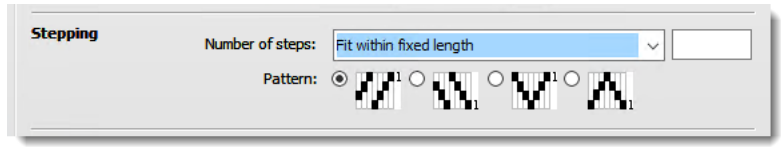
- Spine: The marks are placed on the outer spine.
- Closed Head: The marks are placed on the last but one fold.
- Open foot: The marks are placed on the margin opposite to the closed head, on every page of the fold sheet, on both front and back sides.
- Overfold: The marks are placed on the innermost overfold.
- Faces: The marks are drawn on the face margin of every page of the fold sheet.
- Manually: You can define the position of the marks in the Position tab. See "Mark Position" on page 650.

- Offset from edges: The distance of the step area from the page trim edges. The default value is 0 mm.
- Thickness: The thickness (width) of the step area. The default value is 3 mm.
- Rotate: If you select manual positioning of the step area, you can also choose to rotate the marks.
- Knock-out: Select to knock out the area under the mark. The knock-area is the bounding box of the mark.
- Extend: Extends the knock-out area of the mark by the specified values for the left and right edges and for the top and bottom edges; can be used for conflict checking.

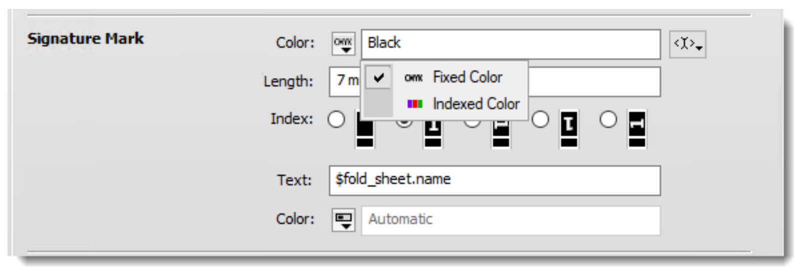
Stepping

- Number of Steps: Sets the number of steps in the step area:
  - Fit within available space: Asecuri calculates the number of steps possible in the available space.
  - Fit within fixed length: enter a length and Asecuri calculates the number of steps.
  - Fixed: set the number of steps you require.
- Pattern: The pattern defines the position of the first mark, the direction in which the mark is stepped (normal or reverse), and what to do when arriving at the end of the step area (sawtooth or zigzag). Asecuri graphically

represents the four possibilities. The default is to use normal direction with the sawtooth movement.



Signature Mark The signature mark is the marking on the spine or fold of the folded sheets that indicates the signature. It is printed in black and may optionally contain an index number.



- Color: The color of the stepped blocks of the mark; the text in the mark is always white and knocked out of the blocks.
  - Fixed Color: Specify any of the fixed color names. When Fixed Color is selected, you can choose the colors with the variable button

Color name	Description
*	All colors ('register')
!	The separation with the lowest L-value of all ('darkest')
Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, Black	Fixed process colors, regardless of the ink-set used.
C, M, Y, K	Short names for the fixed process colors.
Spot1, Spot2, ...	Spot color by order of separation.
White, Varnish, Primer	The special inks of ink-jet printers.

  - Indexed Color: The Color edit field becomes read-only when you use indexed colors, it shows the name of the selected Color palette, you can change the parameters of the indexed colors with the pen button.

See "About Colors and Depth for Printing Marks" on page 657 for more information on using colors to print marks.

- Length: The length of the mark. Also sets the step size with which the mark is offset. Note that there is no gap between two adjacent marks.

- Index: Indicates the orientation of the index number: not printed, at 0 degrees, 90 degrees, 180 degrees, 270 degrees.

- Text: Selects the text to print. You can combine the literal text with variables. The default value is $fold_sheet.name. This field is disabled when the Index is set to None.

- Color: Selects the color to print the index. The default value is Automatic. This field is disabled when the Index is set to None.

  - Automatic: Draws the text is with the same color as the shuttle's color.

  - Fixed Color: Specifies the color to draw with.

  - Indexed Color: Selects the color palette.

Script and Font

Two drop-down lists for the script and font to be used for the index number. The default script is Roman which uses the Helvetica font by default.

For Chinese or Japanese, choose these from the Script drop-down list and then select an appropriate font for these languages from the Font drop-down list. Choosing Chinese or Japanese changes the writing direction of the index number to vertical. This writing direction can be combined with the index number orientation option.

NOTE: This dialog box always shows an Arabic number 1 as an example. The actual rendering can only be seen in the Press Sheet view or Raster Preview.

Versioning tab

Versioning

- Draw versioning collation mark in versioning jobs: Select to draw the versioning collation mark in versioning jobs.

Reserve Zone in Step Area

- Number of version Steps: Specifies how many steps to reserve for the version shuttle. The default value for percentage of steps is 33%.

  - Fixed: Specifies the number of steps (n_V). The number of steps must be larger than 1 and not cause the number of signature steps (n_S).

  - Fixed with fixed length: Specifies the length of the zone (V). The zone length must be at least twice the size of the shuttle and not cause the number of signature steps to become less than 2.

- Percentage of total steps: Specifies the percentage of the total number of steps to use. The value must not cause the number of signature steps to become less than 2.

- Automatic: Allows Apogee divide the step area using the same ratio as the number of signatures versus number of product versions. The number of steps in each zone must be always > 1.

- Space between version and signature marks: Enter the distance that you want between the two marks. When it is set to 0, both marks are edge-to-edge.

Version Mark A colored mark placed next to the signature mark to indicate the version for a versioning job.

- Color: The color in which to draw the version shuttle rectangle.

  - Automatic: Selects the color that is guaranteed to be unique for every product version. In case there is no such color the shuttle is printed in black.

  - Fixed Color: Specifies a specific color.

  - Indexed Color: Selects the color palette.

- Length: The length of the space to be reserved for the version mark; the width is the same as the signature mark.

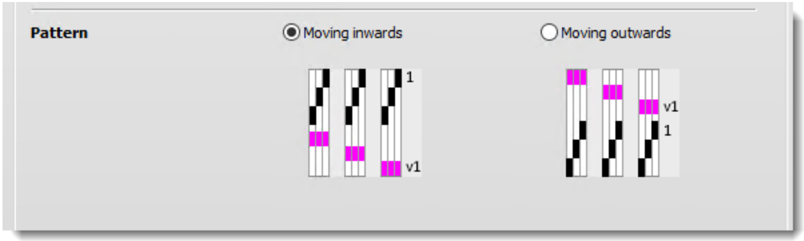
- Index: Specifies how the version number is printed:

  - Number only: print the version number without the 'v'

  - Short version name: print the version number with the 'v'

  - None: no version number will be printed

Pattern Select the pattern in which direction the two shuttles move. If there are more positions requires than available, Apogee follows the Pattern selected in the signature mark.

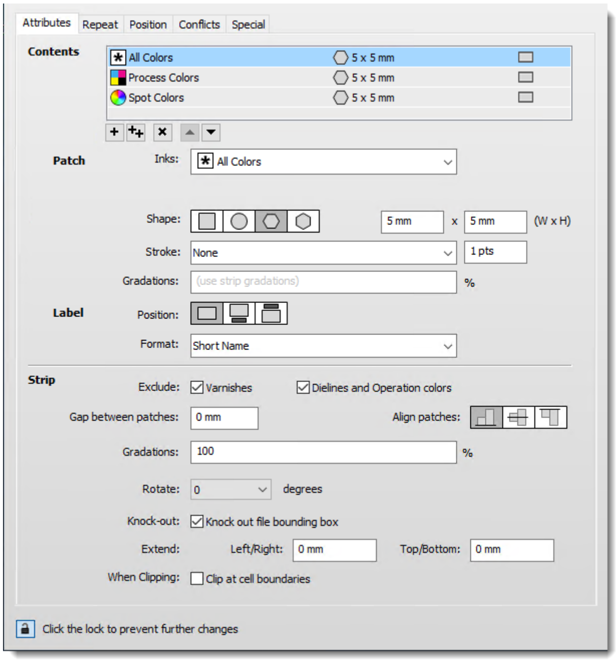


- Moving inwards: The first position of both shuttles are on the outside of the step area.
- Moving outwards: The first position of both shuttles are located where the two step areas meet.

Color Bar Mark Details

Mark Sets Categories: Press Sheet, Image, Product Marks

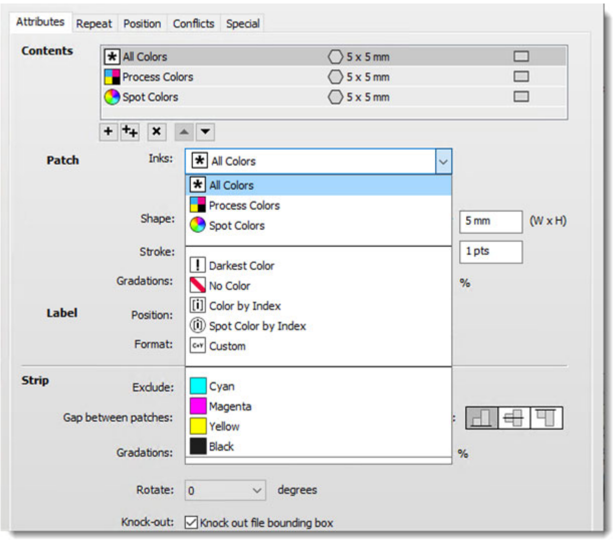
The Color Bar generates a bar of color patches using the colors that are present on the press sheet (offset and wide-format) or in the product.



Contents Each row shows the type of the element, the shape and stroke of the patch, the size, the local gradations and the presence and position of the label. You can add, duplicate, delete and change the order of elements in the list.

Patch

- Inks: Select the inks (colors) to add to the color bar. The drop-down lists the Inks' options.



Ink	Description
All colors	Generates patches for all colors in scope.
Process colors	Generates patches for all process colors in scope.
Spot colors	Generates patches for all spot colors in scope.
Darkest color	Generates a patch for the darkest color.
No color	Generate a patch that prints no color.
Color by index	Generates a patch that prints the specified i^{th} color, with i being integer numbers starting from 1.
Spot color by index	Generates a patch for the specified color specification, using the extended color specification syntax.
Custom	Generates a patch for the specified process color. The menu shows a list of the colors in the currently selected ink set. In the Mark Engraver, the lists shows the four standard process colors (CMYK).
Process color list	Generates a patch for the specified spot color.
Spot color list	The menu shows a list of the actual spot colors that are in scope. The circular icons show the actual color.

- Shape: Select the shape of the patch.
- Size: Specify the width and height of the patch. The shape always fills the specified size.
- Stroke: Specify how to stroke the patch.
  - Registration: Prints the stroke in all colors in the current scope, same as "*".
  - Darkest Color: Prints the stroke in the darkest color in the current scope, same as "!".
  - None: Do not stroke the patch.
- Width: The width of the stroke. It is disabled when the stroke is set to None.
- Gradations: Specify the gradations as a comma-separated list of densities (0–100). An empty entry signifies that the patch follows the gradations of the bar. In that case, the field shows the text in gray text.

Label

- Position: Select whether to have no label or a label below or above the patch.
- Format: Select how to format the label.
  - Short name: Print the short name of the color.
  - Full name: Print the full name of the color.

- Short name, Gradation: Print the short name of the color and the gradation (without %).

- Single line: Select to print the gradation on the same line as the color name (separated by a space) or below the name (centered). It is disabled when not printing the gradation.

Strip

- Exclude: Select the special colors that will not be included when using any of the following patch entries; All colors, Process colors, Spot colors. These colors will not be listed in the color selection menus, either.
  - Varnishes: Exclude all colors that are found in the Varnish category of the Special Colors.
  - Dielines/Operation Colors: Excludes all colors that are found in the Dielines category of the Special Colors or that are recognized as Operations.
- Gap between patches: The gap between two successive patches.

NOTE: The bounding box of the color bar is at the edges of the outer patches; it does not include 1/2 gap size.

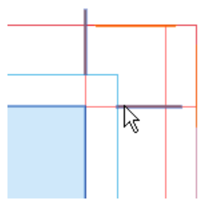
- Align patches: The vertical alignment of the patches when they have different heights. An empty value is interpreted and replaced by 100%.
- Gradations: Enter 1 or more comma-separated graduation values in range 1–100.
- Rotate: The rotation of the color bar.
- Knock-out: Select to knock out the area under the mark. The knock-area is the bounding box of the mark.
- Extend: Extends the knock-out area of the mark by the specified values for the left and right edges and for the top and bottom edges; can be used for conflict checking.
- When Clipping: Select to clip the mark (when it needs clipping) at the boundaries of each cell so that all patches are printed with the full size.

NOTE: The left and right edges of the bounding box of a color bar are always at the edges of a patch, i.e., it does not include the gap.

Crop Mark Details

Mark Sets Category: Pages, Image

A Crop Mark is a horizontal and a vertical line to indicate where the page has to be cropped.



Type A drop-down list with 2 options for what the crop mark indicates:

- Page Trim: the final size of the pages
- Page Bleed: perpendicular lines at the corner of the bleed zone of a page, indicating the bleed area

Distance from corner Specifies the distance between the center of the mark and the page corner; the page corner can be for the Page Trim or the Page Bleed.

Line length Specifies the length of the mark.

Pen Choose a pen to draw the lines; lines have different thicknesses.

Hiding Selected by default and hides the marks between adjacent pages.

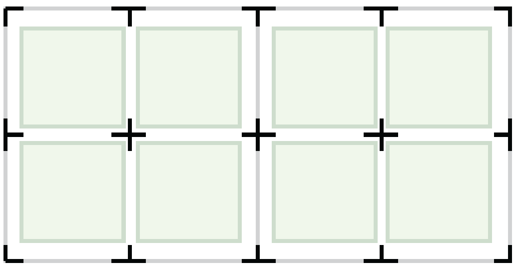
Shingling Specify whether shingling is to be applied or not.

NOTE: Crop marks only have the Layer settings to be defined in the Position tab.

Cross Mark Details

Mark Sets Category: Fold Sheet

A Cross mark indicates the crosspoint of two gutters, or at the endpoint of a gutter. They are commonly used in web production schemes to verify the correctness of cutting, slitting, and folding.



Length Specifies the length of the line in a full cross, e.g. the line segments of a cap are half the specified length.

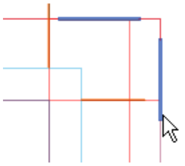
Pen Choose a pen to draw the cross lines.

Hiding Hides the marks on the outside of the fold sheet.

Cut Mark Details

Mark Sets Category: Fold Sheet, Sheet

A Cut Mark is a horizontal and a vertical line in the corners of a Fold Sheet to indicate the boundaries of the Fold Sheet and where it is to be cut.



Distance from corner Specifies the distance between the corner end of the mark and the Fold Sheet corner.

Line length Specifies the length of the mark.

Pen Choose a pen to draw the lines; lines have different thicknesses.

NOTE: There is no option to hide marks between adjacent Fold Sheets.

Cut-off Mark Details

Mark Sets Category: Press Sheet

A Cut-off Mark is a line that indicates where to cut between sheets in web printing. The line is drawn at the cut-off inside a single Web Production Scheme, but no marks are drawn when there is only one cut-off between schemes or when placed on a sheet-fed sheet. Cut-off marks are situated on the left- and right sides of the web and not at the edges of the ribbons.

Distance from sheet edges Specifies the distance from the left and right edges of the sheet.

Line length Specifies the length of the mark.

Pen Choose a pen to draw the lines; lines have different thicknesses.

Cutter Registration Mark Details

Mark Sets Category: Sheet

Cutter registration marks are reference dots which are drawn on a layout to enable cutting with X/Y cutting devices.

Type The following types of Cutter Registration marks are available:

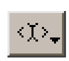
- Filled circle
- Reversed circle
- Filled rectangle
- Reversed rectangle

Diameter/Width, Height The diameter/width and height of the circle/rectangle.

Outer size The diameter of the reversed circle.

Distance from images The distance of the dots from the edge of the image or image block.

Color/Reverse Color The colors of the filled circle and reversed circle can be specified separately. Click the variable button, and select one or more colors to change the color:



See “About Colors and Depth for Printing Marks” on page 657 for more information on using colors to print marks.

Location

In the location panel, you specify where you want the dots to appear, and depending on the chosen location, the number of marks. The following options are available from the drop-down list:

Corners Dots are placed at the corners of the image block. 3, 4 or 5 dots can be placed to indicate the lay of the cut block.

Individual Images Dots are placed along a cut path that takes into account the nested arrangement of all the images. Here you can choose between Few and Many.

Top/Bottom Dots are placed along the top and bottom of the image block, and you can set the number of dots by specifying the distance between them.

Left/Right Dots are placed along the left and right side of the image block, and you can set the number of marks by specifying the distance between them.

All Sides Dots are placed along all sides of the image block, and you can set the number of marks by specifying the distance between them.

Max. distance between marks Set the distance between adjacent dots if you require more than the default number of dots.

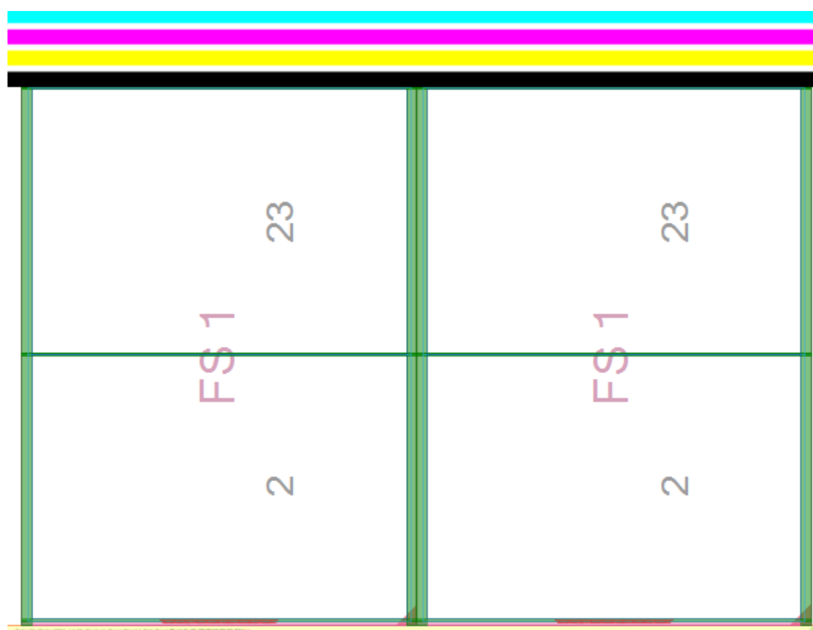
Shift top/left marks The offset applied to the dots on the top or left side.

Distance from The distance of the dots from the edges of the images or media.

Density Bar Details

Mark Sets Category: Press Sheet

The Density Bar mark draws bars of equal density across the full width of the press sheet or along the edges. A bar is drawn for each separation color. In the Conflicts tab, you can specify the action to be taken (fail the job, print mark, do not print the mark, notify) if the step area interferes with the content.



Type

Top bars Draws density bars at the top of the sheet and across the entire width of the press sheet or content block.

Edge bars: left or right Draws smaller density bars, similar to patches, on the right or left side of the press sheet. These bars are centered on the specified edge, i.e. half the width falls outside the press sheet and is not clipped.

Custom Lets you specify the location of the step area where the bars are drawn. Choosing this type enables extensive settings in the Position tab.

Step Area

This is the zone where the density bars are drawn on the press sheet – outside the content block (pages plus bleed) – so they do not interfere with the actual printed content. The available settings depend on the chosen type.

References Select the **Use press sheet margins as edge** check box if you want to bring the bars within the margins of the sheet. Otherwise the bars extend to the edges of the sheet.

Position Specifies where the bars will appear:

- At top of sheet: The top of the step area is at the top of the press sheet or against the margins, with the topmost bar against the top of the step area.
- Above content block: The bottom of the step area is against the top edge of the content block, with the bottommost bar against the bottom of the step area.
- At Gripper: The bottom of the step area is against the gripper.
- Center of press sheet: The vertical center of the step area is in the vertical center of the press sheet, with the bars centered vertically in the step area.

Height Specifies the total height of the step area:

- Available space: Uses the space between the edge of the press sheet and the topmost margin of the content block, minus the offsets specified in the Offset From settings.
- Fixed: You can enter a value for the height of the step area.

Width Specifies the total width of the step area:

- Across the press sheet: Prints the bars across the entire press sheet (with the margins), minus the offsets specified in the Offset From settings.
- Across content block: Keeps the bars within the width of the content block.

Offsets from Enter a distance that the step area must keep away from the content block or sheet edges

Bars

Here you specify the height of the bars and the spacing between them.

Height

- Fill step area: The height of the step area is divided by the number of colors, minus the space between the bars, to obtain the height of the individual bars.
- Fixed: You specify the height of the individual bars.

Between bars Specify the distance between the individual bars; the space can also be zero.

Colors

By default, each color in the job has its own bar. They appear in the same order as in the separation list of the Render task processor. You can control which colors are printed as follow:

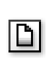
Include Choose which colors you want to print bars for:

- All colors: all kept and converted colors
- Process colors: all kept process colors
- Spot colors: all kept non-process colors

Except Enter the names of the colors (not case-sensitive) that you do not want to print as color bars; separate the names with a comma.

File Mark Details

Mark Sets Categories: Pages, Fold Sheet, Press Sheet, Image, Sheet, Product



Use a File Mark, if you want to place a specific EPS or PDF file as a mark.

File Click the File list and select one of the available EPS or PDF files. The file is selected as the mark to be used and you see the size and number of colors used for the mark.

NOTE: You can open the Marks Resource by clicking the Open File Marks button, for example, to import a new mark.

- Scale: Specifies the scaling percentage of the file. The default is 100% in both directions. The link button keeps both directions at the same scale.
- Knock-out: Select to knock out the area under the mark. The knock-area is the bounding box of the mark.
- Extend: Extends the knock-out area of the mark; can be used for conflict checking.

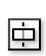
When clipping Only enabled if the selected file has an internal cell structure. Select if you only want the mark to be clipped at the cell boundaries of the mark (e.g. color bars); clear if it is alright to clip the mark anywhere.

Rotate Specify the rotation angle for the mark (0, 90, 180, or 270 degrees).

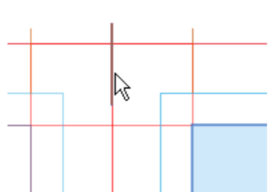
NOTE: The selected file is copied into a reserved directory on the server.

Fold Line Mark Details

Mark Sets Category: Pages Fold Sheet



A Fold Mark draws a set of vertical or horizontal lines that indicate where to fold the sheet, mainly for bound products. Fold marks are not drawn on spread-based covers or unbound flat elements. For unbound folded work, the outside fold lines are drawn but not the lines between pages.



Distance from page trim Specifies the distance from the nearest end of the mark to the page trim.

Line length Specifies the length of the mark.

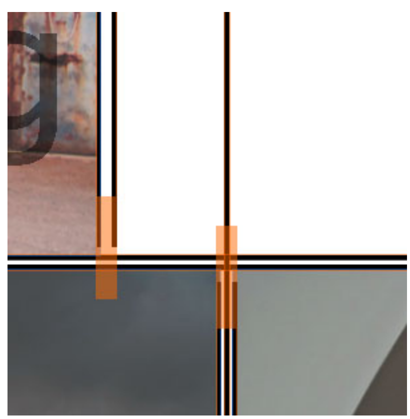
Pen Choose a pen to draw the lines; lines have different thicknesses.

NOTE: Fold marks only have the Layer settings to be defined in the Position tab.

Fotoba Mark Details

Mark Sets Category: Sheet

Fotoba marks consist of horizontal and vertical lines which are drawn on a layout to enable cutting with a Fotoba cutting device.



Horizontal/Vertical Cut Marks

Fotoba cut marks are drawn along the horizontal and vertical sides of the individual images on a layout. Horizontal lines are drawn by default and you can optionally specify vertical lines.

Type: Single mark, Double mark Draws single or a double lines to indicate cutting.

Line thickness The thickness of each line.

Inner white The distance between the lines of a double mark.

Side Mark

The side mark is a vertical line which is drawn in addition to the vertical cut mark.

Distance from image The distance from the image to the side mark.

Line thickness The thickness of the side mark line.

Color

The color of all the cutting lines. Click the variable button, and select one or more colors to change the color of the cutting lines:

See “About Colors and Depth for Printing Marks” on page 657 for more information on using colors to print marks.

Grommet Mark Details

Mark Sets Category: Image, Sheet

Grommet marks are sequential marks which are placed along the sides of an image or layout. These marks are printed on the layout and indicate where reinforced eyelets (grommets) can be produced. The marks are not part of the cut file.

Mark

First you specify the appearance of the marks.

Grommet type Three types of grommet marks are available:

- Circle
- Circle with cross
- Cross

Diameter The diameter of the circle.

Line thickness The thickness of all the lines.

Line length The length of the 2 lines of the cross.

Color The color of all the cutting lines. Click the variable button, and select one or more colors to change the color of the cutting lines:

See “About Colors and Depth for Printing Marks” on page 657 for more information on using colors to print marks.

Placement

In the placement panel, you specify where you want the grommet marks to appear.

Placement You can choose to place the grommet marks along all sides of the image or layout, left and right, or top and bottom.

Distance from edge The horizontal and vertical distances of the grommet from the edge of the image or sheet.

Max. distance between marks The maximum horizontal and vertical distances between adjacent marks.

Ink-Eater Mark Details

Mark Sets Category: Press Sheet

The Ink-Eater Mark places a background mark (one large mark or repeated) between the products or on the outside of the fold sheets. The ink-eater can use all of the available space of a press, within the printable area of the press.

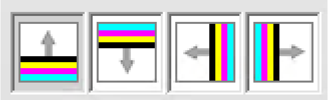
Target The Target section defines which area of the sheet you want to fill with the ink-eater.

- Area to fill: Select the area to fill.
  - Press sheet: The area defined by the left, right, top and gripper edges. You can reduce the area by specifying the values in the **Reduce by** attribute**.** Positive values reduce the area.
  - Product block: The area defined by the bounding box of the bleed paths from all products on the sheet. You can extend the area by specifying the values in the **Extend by** attribute.
- Reduce/Extend by: Extra space to add to the Product block or to subtract from the Press sheet. The default value is 0 for both cases.

Mask Products The Mask section defines how to protect the content: You can select whether to mask the contour or the bleed.

- By: Select the path to be used to mask the products:
  - Bleed: Use the product's bleed path.
  - Contour: Use the product's contour-defining path.
- Extend by: Extend the product mask by the specified amount.

Type The Type section defines the type of the mark. The manual types draw a bar for each included color and repeat these across the entire width or height of the sheet. You can select the orientation and direction and set the densities of each color.



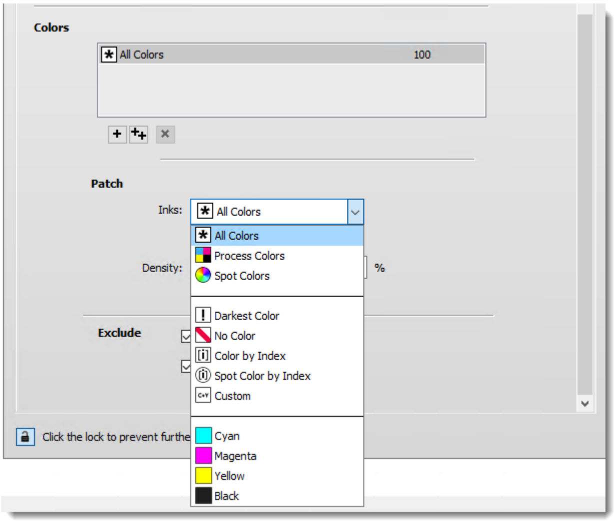
- Bars Up: Creates an ink-eater with bars across the width of the sheet, starting at the bottom of the ink-eater zone and repeating upwards to the top of the zone.
- Bars Down: Creates an ink-eater with bars across the width of the sheet, starting at the top of the ink-eater zone and repeating downwards to the bottom of the zone.
- Bars Left: Creates an ink-eater with bars across the height of the sheet, starting at the left of the ink-eater zone and repeating rightwards to the right of the zone.

- Bars Right: Creates an ink-eater with bars across the height of the sheet, starting at the right of the ink-eater zone and repeating leftwards to the left of the zone.

- Number of steps: Select whether to specify a fixed number of repetitions or to allow the ink-eater to calculate it.
  - Automatic: Select to allow the ink-eater to calculate the number of repetitions, given the Minimum size of a single bar.
  - Fixed: Select to allow the ink-eater calculate the size of the bars, given the Number of repetitions.
- Minimum size: The minimum size of a single bar.

Colors The Color section defines the colors to include. You can add, duplicate or remove the colors from the list.

Patch The color or color generator chosen for the selected entry in the Color list.



NOTE: The darkest color is set per side, not per zone.

- Density: The density to print the colors of the selected patch with.

NOTE: When using a mixed color entry, the density applies to all components, e.g. you can mix 60% Cyan, 40% Magenta and set the density to 40%. The end result will be a color of 24% Cyan and 16% Magenta.

Exclude Select if the special colors to be excluded by the color generators.

- Varnishes: Excludes all colors marked as varnish.
- Dielines and Operation colors: Excludes all colors marked as contours and other Operations.

Line Mark Details

Mark Sets Categories: Pages, Fold Sheet, Press Sheet, Image, Sheet

The Line Mark draws a line that can be used for various purposes in production.

Type You can choose to draw a line at a specific location and with a specified size (custom), or let the line resize automatically to match a chosen target (auto-sizing).

Auto-sizing line settings:

Target Choose the edge where you want to place the line (left, right, top, bottom) and the target box (page, fold sheet, spine, etc.). The available targets depend on the mark category. In the Offset field you can specify a distance from inside or outside the target box. The distance is from the center of the line to the target.

Length An auto-sizing line is delimited by the target box you chose to position the line, (from target), or from other available boxes depending on the mark category.

Extend Enter a negative or positive value to respectively shorten or extend the line in both directions.

Pen Choose a pen to draw the lines; lines have different thicknesses.

Custom line settings:

Length Specifies the length of the mark.

Pen Choose a pen to draw the lines; lines have different thicknesses.

Angle Specify the rotation angle for the mark (0, 90, 180, or 270 degrees).

Page Fold Line Mark Details

Mark Sets Category: Pages

A Page Fold Line Mark draws a set of vertical or horizontal lines that indicate where to fold on a single page element.

Distance from page trim Specifies the distance from the nearest end of the mark to the page trim.

By default, Apogee Impose only prints the fold marks on the outside of the page, but not on the inside. To draw them on the inside of the page, specify a negative value for Distance from page trim and allow the mark to overlap the page content.

Line length Specifies the length of the mark.

Pen Choose a pen to draw the lines; lines have different thicknesses.

Rectangle Mark Details

Mark Sets Categories: Pages, Fold Sheet, Press Sheet, Image, Sheet

The Rectangle Mark draws a rectangle with a border and fill color. This mark is always printed using knock-out.

Around Choose the reference for drawing the mark. Choose *Custom* to use all the options on the Position tab, or choose a target object (Image block, sheet, etc.) if you want to draw the mark around an object. The available objects depend on the mark category.

Expand If you choose a target object for the Around option, you can also set a distance from the object where the mark will be drawn. Enter a positive value to draw a mark which is larger than the object (e.g. a rectangle around an image block), or a negative value for a mark which is smaller than the object.

Width Specifies the horizontal size of the mark.

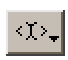
Height Specifies the vertical size of the mark.

Border pen Choose a pen to draw the lines; lines have different thicknesses.

NOTE: The border is created *inside* the mark.

Fill with color This option is selected by default.

Click the variable button, and select one or more options to determine on which plate(s) the mark will be printed:

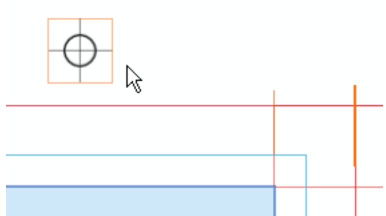


See “About Colors and Depth for Printing Marks” on page 657 for more information on using colors to print marks.

Registration Mark Details

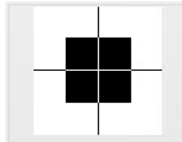
Mark Sets Category: Press Sheet, Fold Sheet, Sheet

A Registration Mark draws a series of marks which are used to check that the registration of the different printing colors is correct.



File Click the File list and select one of the available EPS or PDF files. The file is selected as the mark to be used and you see the size and number of colors used for the mark.

The preview pane shows the selected mark.



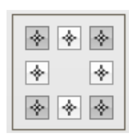
NOTE: You can open the Marks Resource by clicking the Open File Marks button, for example, to import a new mark.

Knock-out Select to knock out the area under the mark. The knock-area is the bounding box of the mark.

Extend Extends the knock-out area of the mark; can be used for conflict checking.

Rotate Specify the rotation angle for the mark (0, 90, 180, or 270 degrees).

Where Click in the diagram to specify where the mark is printed on the Press Sheet: in the four corners, the four center-side positions, or any other combination.



Offset from edges Distance between the center of the mark and the edges of the Press Sheet (including the lay).

Slit Mark Details

Mark Sets Category: Press Sheet

A Slit Mark is a line indicating where a sheet is to be cut in ribbons, as used in web printing. A line is drawn between two adjacent ribbons and not on the outer edges of the web. No marks are drawn when only one ribbon is present or if sheet-fed sheets are used. The position of the Slit Mark is defined in the Attributes tab and not in the Position tab.

Distance from sheet edges Specifies the distance from the sheet's leading and trailing edges.

Line length Specifies the length of the mark.

Pen Choose a pen to draw the line; lines have different thicknesses.

Station Number Mark Details

See Text Mark Details, except for the Text field which is a number that is generated automatically to indicate the position of the product on a sheet.

Text Mark Details

Mark Sets Categories: Pages, Fold Sheet, Press Sheet, Image, Sheet, Product

Text Marks are used to print text on a Press Sheet and identify Press Sheets by printing the job name, order number, color name, etc.

Text In the Text field, you can specify which text is to be used as a mark. You have three options:

- Type some text in the Text field.
- Select a variable from the drop-down list. This list appears when you click in the Text field the button next to the field.
- A combination of the two previous methods, e.g. some text followed by a variable

Font Select a font and a point size for the text mark.

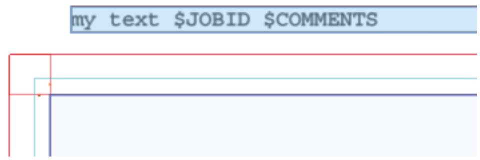
Length If you want you can change the calculated length of the text mark which is based on the amount of text, the point size and the variable. You can revert to the default, calculated length by clicking the revert arrow.

Script Select a Roman, Chinese, Hebrew or Japanese script for the text mark. Choosing Chinese or Japanese activates the Writing Direction option.

> **NOTE:** If you choose Chinese or Japanese, don’t forget to select a relevant font for these languages in the Font drop-down list.

Writing Direction Horizontal is selected by default for Roman script (e.g. European languages) and can’t be changed; choosing Chinese or Japanese script activates the following options:

Horizontal: Select this option to place the text characters horizontally; the text is left-aligned in the text box.

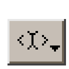


NOTE: The anchor point in the Mark Position tab is also used for aligning a Text mark. For example, placing a Text mark in the top right position means the text will grow from right to left and it is right-aligned in the text box.

Vertical: Select this option to place the characters underneath each other (certain Asian languages).

Use Arabic Numerals: Select this option to use Arabic numerals in vertical text.

Color Click the variable button, and select one or more options to determine which plate(s) will print the mark:



See "About Colors and Depth for Printing Marks" on page 657 for more information on using colors to print marks.

Readability Select the options to improve the readability:

- Underline text: Underlines the text.

- Outline text: The text is outlined with a 1-point line at 0% of the specified text color, printed in knock-out around the type.
- Knock-out text box: Knocks out the area under the text. The knock-out area is the bounding box of the mark.

Extend Extends the knock-out area of the mark; can be used for conflict checking.

Rotate Specify the rotation angle for the mark (0, 90, 180, or 270 degrees).

Mark Position

The Position tab in the Details pane contains settings that apply for all of the Mark types. These settings are explained in this section for all Mark types.

Mark

Anchor Point You can specify the exact position of the mark. This position is defined by a horizontal and a vertical distance from different parts of the sheet or plate.

Target

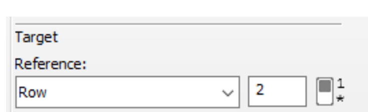
Reference Choose a reference for the anchor point from the drop-down list. This reference depends on the Mark type:

- Page Marks
  - Page Trim
- Fold Sheet Marks
  - Fold Sheet
  - Outer Overfold
  - Inner Overfold
  - Outer Spine
  - Inner Spine
  - Lowest Page
  - Highest Page

    - Top Page
    - Bottom Page
- Press Sheet Marks
    - Press sheet
    - Fold sheet blocks
    - Page trim block
- Press Sheet Marks (web-based sheets only)

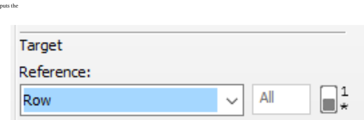
  For these web-based targets, you have further options to place the mark on the press sheet. A switch is provided that lets you specify all the items or just a specific one with an index number.

    - Ribbon: the vertical sections of a web-based sheet; only applicable for web production schemes with multiple ribbons
    - Slit: the line where the sheet is cut into ribbons; only applicable for web production schemes with multiple ribbons
    - Cut-off: where the web is cut horizontally
    - Horizontal fold: a fold across the web
    - Vertical fold: a fold along the web
    - Row: cells across the web



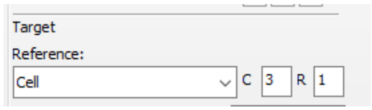
puts the mark in a specific row: row 2

puts the

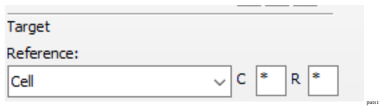


puts the mark in all rows

    - Column: cells along the web
    - Cell: a single page cell; here you have two input fields, C for Column and R for row, to specify a cell; enter an asterisk for all the cells in a row or column.



puts the mark in a specific cell: column 3 of row 1



puts the mark in all cells

- Image Marks
  - Image Frame
  - Image Trim box
  - Bleed
- Sheet Marks
  - Sheet
  - Image Block

Horizontal For the horizontal position, select:

- distance...
- to right or left of...
- Left Edge, Right Edge, or Center.

Vertical For the vertical position, select:

- distance...
- below or above...
- Top Edge, Bottom Edge, or Center.

Print on

- Front side
- Back side
- Both sides. If you select this option, the following check boxes are enabled:
  - Mirror position on back
  - Mirror content on back

Layer See “Mark Layers” on page 656 for information on how layers are used to arrange content:

- Top Marks
- Page Content
- Bottom Marks

Mark Conflicts

Conflicts may arise if a mark overlaps another mark, a mark runs into the page content or bleed zone, or a mark falls *outside the area of interest* or box. The areas of interest are the Pages, Gutters, Gripper, Press Sheet, etc. for each respective Mark type. For example, press sheet marks must fall inside the Press Sheet.

Clipped

These are the possible actions if a mark falls outside the box or area where it is expected to be drawn.

These are the possible actions if a mark falls outside the box or area where it is expected to be drawn clipped: The mark is clipped to fit in the box and printed.

- Do not Print: The mark is ignored.
- Fail: The job will be aborted. The notify action is selected and an error is displayed for the job.

NOTE: You can choose to be notified by selecting the **Notify** check box.

Overlaps

These are the possible actions if a mark overlaps with Page Content (Trim), Page Bleed or another mark.

- Print: The mark is printed even if it falls outside the box.
- Do not Print: The mark is ignored.
- Fail: The job will be aborted. The notify action is selected and an error is displayed for the job.

NOTE: You can choose to be notified by selecting the **Notify** check box.

Include knock-out for conflict checking

When selected, the knock-out area is included for conflict checking.

Mark Repeat

In the Repeat tab of the Details section, you can choose to repeat a mark by selecting the **Repeat mark** check box. The fields are disabled if this check box is not selected.

NOTE: The Repeat tab is only available for File Marks and these settings are used to repeat color bars.

Step Area

The Step Area is the area where a Mark is repeated.

Orientation

Choose Horizontal or Vertical to define the orientation for repeating the Mark.

Number of Steps

You have the following options to define how many times the mark is repeated:

- Fit within available space: the mark is repeated within the available space
- Fit within fixed length: choosing this option enables an extra field where you can enter the length of the step area
- Fixed: in the extra field that is displayed, enter the number of times (steps) you want to repeat the mark

Stepping

Direction

- If Horizontal orientation is chosen, then the direction is Left to right and Right to left; if Vertical orientation is chosen, then the direction is Bottom to top or Top to bottom;
- Inside/Out: positions the mark on each side of the center of the Step Area and repeats the mark in both directions
- Centered: positions the mark in the middle of the Step Area and repeats in both directions

Mirror mark around center

Option to mirror the mark when repeating Inside/Out.

Center Gap

The gap between the two center marks when repeating Inside/Out and the number of steps is even.

Spacing

The gap between repeating marks; this option has no effect on Center Gap.

Partial last step

This option defines what happens when the last step extends beyond the available area:

- Draw clipped: the mark is clipped at the end of the available area
- Omit: the mark is not drawn and consequently not clipped

Mark Special

In the Special tab of the Details section, you can choose to apply special settings to the mark.

Apply curves

- Linearization
- Calibration
- Simulation

NOTE: The Apply Curves option is only available for File Marks.

Finishing

Include in cut file: Draws the mark in the cut file if applicable.

Do not print: The mark is not drawn on the printed sheet.

Print mark in overprint

Select the Overprint check box to print a text mark in overprint. The default printing method for marks is knockout.

NOTE: The Apply Curves option is only available for Text Marks.

Mark Pens

Pens are used to define a thickness and style for lines and borders used to draw certain Marks.

Width

The width of the line in points.

Color/Depth

The drop-down list lets you choose a color or, for certain applications, you can choose to define the Depth of the pen.

- Color: Click the associated variable button, and select one or more options to determine on which plate(s) the mark will be printed:

See “About Colors and Depth for Printing Marks” on page 657 for more information on using colors to print marks.

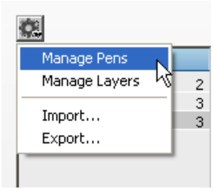
- Depth: Enter a value to set the depth of the engraving in micron (mu).

Knock-out around pen Select to knock out the area under the pen line.

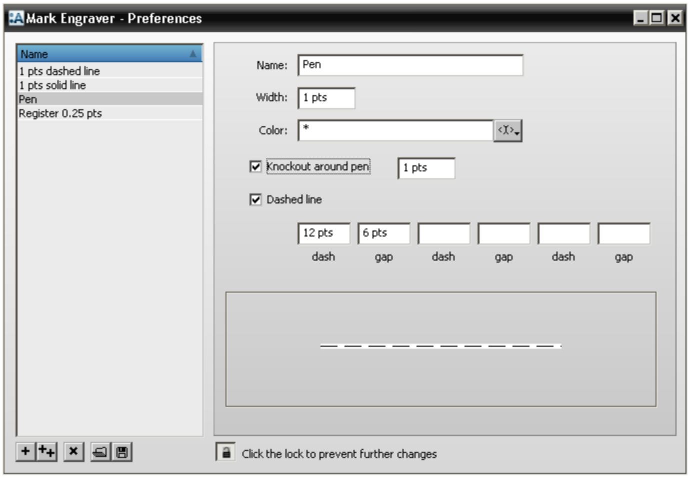
Dashed line Select this check box for a pen with a dashed line. Enter the size in points of the dash and the distance between the dashes. The default values are 12pt for the dash and 6pt for the gap.

To create/edit Mark pens

1 In the Mark Engraver, click the cogwheel in the top left corner and choose **Manage Pens**.



2 Click the **New** button and a new Pen appears in the list.



3 Enter a name in the **Name** field.

4 Complete the fields as required.

Mark Layers

Layers are used to arrange marks in a certain order, with the highest layer having the highest priority.

Layers are controlled at the bottom of the Position tab. There are three default layers which cannot be deleted:

Top marks Marks to be printed on top of the Page content, e.g. crop marks

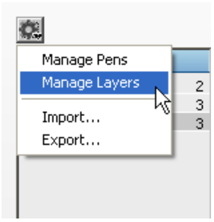
Middle (Page Content) The reference layer.

Bottom marks Contains marks to be printed below the page content, e.g. all marks except crop marks.

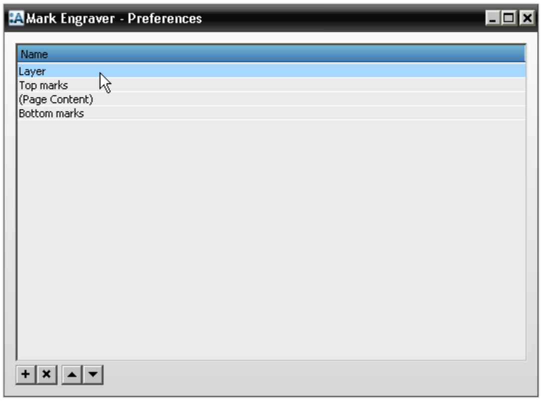
Additional layers can be created and deleted.

▷ To create Mark Layers in the Engraver

1 In the Mark Engraver, click the cog wheel in the top left corner and choose **Manage Layers**.



2 Click the **New** button and a new Layer appears in the list.



3 Click this new **Layer** to edit its Name.

4 Use the **arrow** buttons to move the new Layer in the list and change the order.

About Colors and Depth for Printing Marks

Certain marks have a Color (default) or in certain applications a Depth. One of these options can be chosen from the drop-down list.

Color

For certain marks you can choose in which color they will be printed. You do this by choosing the plates and optionally also specifying the density.

In the Color field you choose one of the plates or create a comma-delimited list with several plates.

- Click the associated variable button, and select one or more options to determine on which plate(s) the mark will be printed:

The default is an asterisk (*) which means that the mark will be printed on all plates; in the drop-down list this corresponds to Registration (All Plates). You can also choose from the following:

- Process Colors: C, M, Y, K plates only, not spot colors
- Darkest Color
- Cyan
- Magenta
- Yellow
- Black
- White, Varnish, Primer
- Spot colors

You can also specify the density for printing the mark and combine colors, for example:

- *:50 means print on all plates at 50%
- Cyan:40 means print on Cyan plate at 40%
- Cyan:40, Magenta:50 means print on Cyan at 40% and Magenta at 50%

Depth

Enter a value to set the depth of the engraving in micron (mu).

Marks

In the Marks Resource category, you can manage the file marks used in the Mark Engraver and Borders Resource categories. In Apogee Impose, these file marks are included in the Mark Sets.

The Marks can be EPS or PDF files. You import them or delete them.

Associated Task Processors

The Marks resource category is available for:

- All Output Task Processors except for Export and RPC
- All Print Task Processors except for the Generic Press.

Administrator access level only!

Marks Overview

The Marks overview lists all available marks.

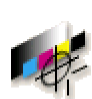
You can import, export or delete marks.

Related topics:

- To create, duplicate, edit, delete, import or export Resources on page 438

To import marks

1. In the System Overview Window, select the Output Task Processor for which you want to import the Mark.
2. Double-click the Marks icon in the Resources pane.



The Marks dialog box appears, containing an overview of all the available Marks.

3 Click the import button.

4 Locate the folder from which you want to import the marks, and click Open.

5 Close the Marks dialog box.

After adding a mark, Asecuri will try to calculate it's bounding box. This will be displayed in the Dimensions column.

Media

In the Media resource category, you can manage the media for imagesetters, platesetters, and proofers.

The Media Resource category for proofers is similar to the one for imagesetters or platesetters. The main difference is that proofers do not report which medium is loaded. You have to manually enter this information.

The loading of media is executed automatically by Asecuri.

Associated Task Processors

The Media Resource category is available for the following Task Processors:

- All of the Imagesetter, Platesetter, and Proofer Task Processors
- Commercial digital Print Task Processors

Media Overview

In the Media overview, you can check which media is currently loaded, as well as the details of any other available media. You can unload, load, and delete media, and edit media settings.

For both imagesetters and platesetters, you can create, edit or delete media types and media sizes. For platesetters, you can also import the media database file generated by the output device.

Available Media

The Available Media pane displays the available media for the selected engine. The displayed media is compatible and fits on the widest tray. The pane consists of two tables: media type and the available media of that type.

The first table shows the known types. If you select a type, the second table shows the available media of that type, displaying the size and the batch number. For imagesetters and platesetters, you will also see the thickness.

With the buttons below the table, you can add, edit or delete media for the selected media type.

Loaded Media (Imagesetters and Platesetters only)

The Loaded Media pane displays the trays and the medium that is loaded in each of them. The tray table shows the tray status icon, the tray name, the name of the currently loaded medium, and the amount of media available (if the device can report it).

You may see the following status icons in the Display Cassette Name column:

- If the icon is followed by a name: There is a cassette in the tray but it is not loaded (not active). However, it can be activated by Asecuri.
- If the icon is followed by a name in bold: There is a cassette in the tray and the cassette is loaded (active). Note that some devices (e.g. Galileo) may have more than one tray active at the same time.

The icon is followed by a name: There is a cassette in the tray but it is not loaded (not active). Furthermore, it cannot be activated by Asecuri (manual intervention on the engine is required).

There is no cassette in the tray.

There is an unknown problem with the tray.

The loading of media is executed automatically by Asecuri according to the media attributes film or paper, thickness and width as reported by most imagesetters and platesetters.

Asecuri may not always find a match, for instance if there is no media record. In this case, Asecuri sends a notification.

Conflict table (Imagesetters and Platesetters only)

If Asecuri has several records that match the reported media attributes, there is a media conflict. In this case, the Loaded Media panel displays <multiple> as Media name. If you click on this, the Conflict table displays all the matching records that were found. You then need to select the media that is actually loaded and click the Load button.

NOTE: Devices that can report loaded media will send a message to the Message Board in case of an unknown medium.

Media Editor

If you click the Add button, the media editor opens, where you can specify various media settings.

NOTE: The media editor fields differ according to the selected device. For example, some devices have a predefined set of media properties that cannot be changed (e.g. substrate, roll, polarity, etc.).

Type

This field contains the name of the media type. Media with the same type are grouped in the type table and should have the same type attributes (substrate, thickness and device compatibility).

Polarity (Imagesetters and Platesetters only)

The polarity of a medium is an internal and invisible setting. For film and paper, the polarity is always positive. For plate, it is always negative.

Dimensions (Proofers only)

Specify whether the dimensions apply to sheet media or roll media.

Select the Roll Media check box, if the media comes in rolls.

NOTE: For roll media you can only specify the width.

Substrate

Select the substrate from the drop-down list. The substrate is associated with the type. You have three options:

- Film
- Plate
- Paper

Width

Specify the media width. This value must be smaller than the widest tray.

Height

Specify the height of the plate. This setting only applies when you are using a platesetter.

NOTE: This does not apply to roll media.

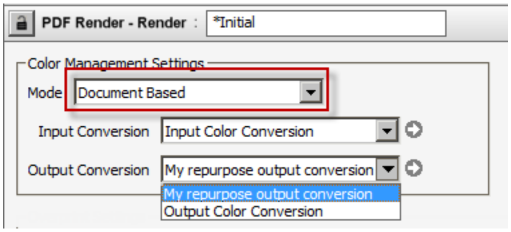
Thickness (Imagesetters and Platesetters only)

Specify the thickness. This value is associated with the type.

Output Color Conversions

The Output Color Conversions resource converts the color values of the document output intent to the printing profile of the output device. The actual output conversion is performed by the PDF Render task processor where you select the Output Conversion preset in the Render operation.

To select your output color conversion in the Render operation of PDF Render, you must choose Document Based mode in the color management settings.



Associated Task Processors

- Apogee Preflight
- PDF Render

Output Color Conversions Overview

Administrator access level only!

The Output Color Conversions overview lists all available conversions.

Output Color Conversion list

This is the list of all the available output conversions. Select a conversion in the list to see more information in the pane on the right.

Convert Process Colors

Here you choose when and how to convert process colors.

Color Conversion method

Choose a conversion from the drop-down list:

- Don't Convert: Choosing this option hides all the options for process color conversions.
- Repurpose: Choose this method to repurpose for different output devices. Repurposing triggers a specific output conversion that preserves the GCR of the input colors while applying a color conversion. If you choose this method, you can only set the Rendering Intent.
- ICC-based conversion: Choosing this option shows all the process color conversion options. This output color conversions triggers the standard ICC conversion that applies the GCR of the output press profile.
- Use device link: Choose a device in the drop-down list. This list is empty by default and device links can be added in the Device Link Profiles resource.

Rendering Intent

If you selected ICC-based color conversion, choose a rendering intent from the drop-down list:

Relative Colorimetric: A colorimetric conversion, tries to maintain the exact relationship (Smallest Delta E), between in-gamut colors, while out of gamut colors will be clipped. With Relative Colorimetric RI the white point from source color space is mapped to the white point of destination, this means that white stays white. No ink will be placed in white areas.

Perceptual: Perceptual aims to preserve the visual relationship between colors so it is perceived as natural to the human eye. The relationship between out of gamut colors is maintained. This can result in inaccuracies for in gamut colors as well.

Saturation: Saturation tries to produce vivid colors in an image at the expense of color accuracy.

Absolute Colorimetric: Absolute Colorimetric rendering intent is similar to Relative except that here the white point of the two profiles is preserved. White of source color space is simulated with CMYK values from the destination color space. The consequence is that every white object/area is covered with certain ink amounts.

Absolute Colorimetric + Preserve White: By default, Absolute Colorimetric + Preserve White is the Output Color Conversion setting for spot colors. This rendering intent uses absolute colorimetric rendering for the solid spot color tints and smooths out towards relative colorimetric rendering for the highlights tints of the spot color, ensuring that no background simulation is present in the output (typically for white objects when rendering absolute colorimetric).

NOTE: The result of choosing a rendering intent depends on the graphical content of documents and on the profiles used to specify color spaces. Some profiles produce identical results for different rendering intents. Differences between rendering intents are apparent only when you print a document or convert it to a different working space.

Black Point Compensation Asecuri uses a built-in algorithm to adjust for differences in the black points. Choose On or Off.

Profile Link Exceptions If you selected ICC-based color conversion or Repurpose, choose an exception from the drop-down list:

- None
- Keep 100% K
- Normal
- Preserve K
- Preserve Pure Colors
- other exceptions as listed in the Profile Link Exceptions resource

Prevent Overprint issues Select this option to preserve zero CMYK. For ICC based conversions, this option prevents overprint changes during color conversion. This option is always enabled for repurposing conversions.

Convert Spot Colors using Color Books

Accurate spot color mixing This improves spot color overlaps significantly. Choose Off or maximum 2, or 3 colors.

deltaE calculation Select the method to calculate the deltaE:

- deltaE*ab: Use the ΔE_{ab} method, the first internationally endorsed color difference formula as published by the CIE Committee. This is the default value for reasons of compatibility.
- deltaE*00: Use the ΔE_{00} method, a revision of the ΔE_{94} formula. ΔE_{00} is the industry standard formula to be used.
- default: Use the default method.

Paper white If ‘Use white point from Press Profile’ is selected, the paper white of the document profile is used in the color calculation. If this option is not selected, the paper white of the color book is used in the calculation of the spot colors.

Output Sizes

The Output Sizes Resource category defines the different available output sizes that can be used for printing the image on a particular imagesetter or platesetter. This also allows you to define a punch calibration, and link it to the used output device.

Punch Calibration defines how the sheet is being “punched” to ensure a correct sheet position. There are two punching methods supported by Asecuri: head punching and tail punching.

Associated Task Processors

The Output Sizes Resource category is available for the following Task Processors:

- All of the Imagesetter, Platesetter, and Proofer Task Processors
- Commercial digital Print Task Processors

Administrator access level only!

Output Sizes Overview

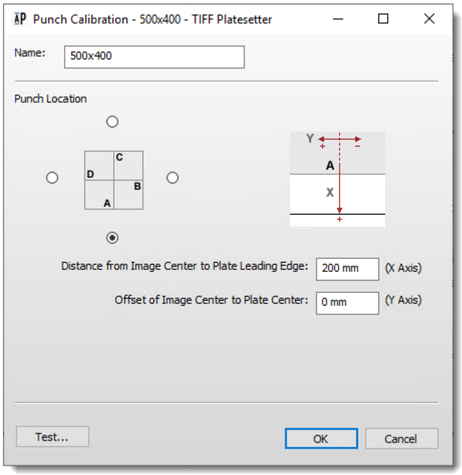
The Output Sizes overview lists the available Output Sizes. You can create, duplicate, edit, delete, import or export Output Sizes.

Output Sizes Editor

The Output Sizes Editor allows you to create or modify an Output Sizes. You can specify a height, width, orientation and punch calibration.

Punch Calibration Editor

In this window, you can specify the punch settings for the imagesetters or platesetters and print a test page in order to measure the offsets.



Name

The name of the punch calibration. This field cannot be left empty.

Punch Location

The location of the Punch (virtual or real) on the test image. This can be the device punch or the transfer punch.

X Axis The distance between the center of the test image and the punch reference (punch center for film and leading edge for plate).

Y Axis The offset between the center of the test image and the punch center for films. This option is disabled for platesetters.

Plate Exposure Unit Pin Bar (Imagesetters only)

Specify the distance between the film punch and the edge of the plate when both the film and the plate are mounted on the pin bar. This option is disabled for platesetters. The initial value is the last entered value.

Test Page

You can print a test page in order to measure the offsets. Proceed as follows:

1 In the Punch Calibration dialog box, click the Test button.

The Punch Calibration Test Page dialog box is displayed.

2 Select the Output Size that you want to associate with the Punch Calibration.

3 Click the On list and select the media you want to print the test page on.

4 Select any Parameter Sets you may have created for the Image and Output operations.

5 Click Print.

A test job is composed and automatically submitted to the device, and a progress indicator appears. You are notified when the job has been successfully submitted.

NOTE: The OK button is disabled if you have not selected a valid tray.

▷ To create and edit an output size

1 In the System Overview, select the Output Task Processor for which you want to create or edit an Output Size.

2 Double-click the Output Sizes icon in the Resources pane.

The Output Sizes overview appears.

3 Do one of the following to create or edit an Output Size.

- Click the New button to create a new Output Size.

- Select the Output Size that you want to edit in the Output Size list in the upper pane and click the Edit button.

The Output Size editor appears.

4 Type the name for the Output Size and specify the width, height and orientation.

5 Select a punch calibration from the Punch Calibration list.

NOTE: You can select None if you do not want to use a Punch Calibration. In that case, no offsets are applied.

---

6 Click OK.

Your settings are saved. The newly created Output Size appears in the list.

7 Close the Output Sizes dialog box.

▷ To create and edit a new punch calibration

1 In the System Overview, select the Output Task Processor for which you want to create or edit a punch calibration.

2 Double-click the Output Sizes icon in the Resources pane.

The Output Sizes overview appears.

3 In the lower pane, do one of the following to create or edit a Punch Calibration.

- Click the New button to create a new Punch Calibration.

- Click the Edit button to edit a Punch Calibration.

The Punch Calibration editor appears.

4 Specify the Punch Calibration settings.

5 Click OK to save your settings.

The settings are saved. The newly created Punch Calibration appears in the lower pane. You can select the required Punch Calibration in the Output size dialog box when creating or editing an Output Size.

6 Close the Output Sizes dialog box.

To delete a punch calibration

1 In the System Overview, select the Output Task Processor for which you want to delete a punch calibration.

2 Double-click the Output Sizes icon in the Resources pane.

The Output Sizes dialog box appears.

3 In the lower pane, select the Punch Calibration that you want to delete and do one of the following:

- Press Delete.
- Click the Delete button.

4 Click Yes to confirm the deletion.

5 Click either Yes or No depending on whether you want to delete the linked Output Size.

The Punch Calibration is deleted and no longer appears in the lower pane.

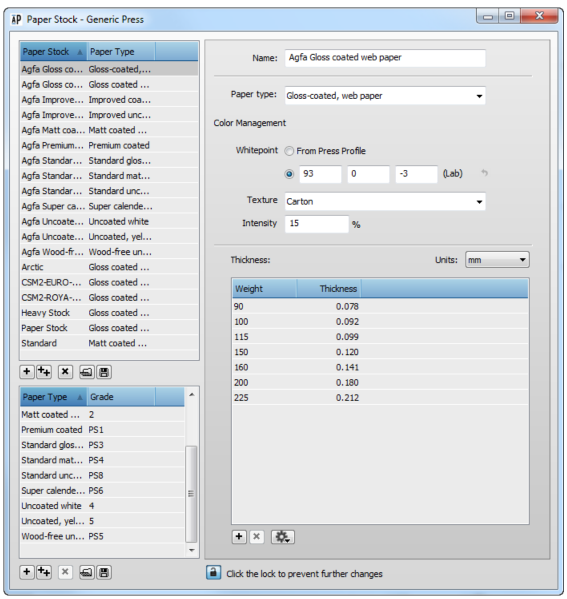
6 Close the Output Sizes dialog box.

Paper Stock

This resource category groups the paper that you can use for all presses, and is used to describe the surface type and weight of the paper. The choice of paper has a serious impact on the processing of a job. The paper type defines the profile and calibration to be used, and also selects the ink books. If a specific paper behaves other than expected, you should create a new paper type for it.

A Paper Stock is mapped to one of the standard Paper Types and a series of weights.

- Click the Paper Stock icon in the Generic Press Resources pane to open the Paper Stock dialog box.



Associated Task Processors

The Paper Stock resource is available for the following Task Processors:

- Press
- Generic Press

Administrator access level only!

Paper Stock Overview

The Paper Stock dialog box lists all available Paper Stocks in the top list and the available Paper Types in the bottom list.

- Click a Stock to display the Paper Type and Weight in the panel on the right.

Paper Stock

Name A unique and meaningful name such as the brand of the paper, what it will be used for (e.g. cover), or a generic description (e.g. Matt-coated)

Paper Type The type that describes the surface of the paper. The paper types you see and can select in the drop-down are managed in the Paper Type list in the bottom left corner. These types are mapped to the JDF grades as explained below.

Color Management

You can set the white point and the texture of the stock, and this information is used by proofing color management to mimic the final print on this specific stock:

Whitepoint Here you can choose the source of the white point to be used:

- From Press Profile: This is the default value used for the paper type associated with the press selected for the job.
- LAB: Specify a different value for the white point; use the revert button to go back to the default.

Texture 4 textures are provided (Carton, Coated paper, Newspaper, Uncoated paper) which are images of unprinted paper stock.

Intensity Enter a percentage to control the intensity of the selected texture.

Weight and Thickness This table displays the available Weights with corresponding Thickness in mm or mil.

Paper Type

Paper types are mapped to **JDF grades** for automatic selection by Apogee Impose or to **Not mapped** for manual selection.

Name A unique and meaningful name that refers to the grade

JDF grade A number from 1 to 5 for the following JDF paper grades:

- 1 for gloss-coated paper
- 2 for matt-coated paper
- 3 for gloss-coated, web paper
- 4 for uncoated, white paper
- 5 for uncoated, yellowish
- 0 for Not mapped: manual selection, no JDF mapping selected

▷ To work with Paper Stocks

You can create, edit or delete a Paper Stock, map it to a Paper Type and then choose the Weights you want to make available for your production. This is done with the usual procedures for working with resources.

You can also import a .txt file with the weights and thicknesses for a particular Paper Stock.

NOTE: The Paper Type determines the profile, calibration and the ink books. When a specific paper behaves differently, you should create a new Paper Type.

▷ To add a Paper Weight

1. Click the new button below the Thickness box.

   OR

   Click the cogwheel and choose **Copy from** and then select the Paper Stock you want to copy the Paper weight from.

   A new Weight and Thickness appear at the top of the list.

2. Edit these two settings as required.
3. Lock the Paper Stock settings.

▷ To import a Paper Stock from a tab-delimited text file

You can import a paper stock database from a plain text file. The text file must be formatted with paper records on each line, and each paper record containing tab-delimited values for stock name, weight, thickness, thickness units and paper type.

- Click the import button under the Paper Stock table and choose the .txt file you want to import.

```
NewStock1	90	0.078	mm	Gloss coated wood free
NewStock1	100	0.092	mm	Gloss coated wood free
NewStock1	115	0.099	mm	Gloss coated wood free
NewStock1	150	0.120	mm	Gloss coated wood free
NewStock1	160	0.141	mm	Gloss coated wood free
NewStock1	200	0.180	mm	Gloss coated wood free
NewStock1	225	0.212	mm	Gloss coated wood free
NewStock1	260	0.230	mm	Gloss coated wood free
NewStock1	300	0.254	mm	Gloss coated wood free

NewStock2	90	0.077	mm	Matt coated wood free
NewStock2	100	0.090	mm	Matt coated wood free
NewStock2	115	0.098	mm	Matt coated wood free
NewStock2	150	0.118	mm	Matt coated wood free
NewStock2	160	0.131	mm	Matt coated wood free
NewStock2	200	0.170	mm	Matt coated wood free
NewStock2	225	0.201	mm	Matt coated wood free
NewStock2	260	0.215	mm	Matt coated wood free
NewStock2	300	0.234	mm	Matt coated wood free
```

The file is checked for validity and if applicable a report is generated indicating how to remedy import issues.

The above example creates two new Paper Stocks, each with its own thickness table and the values from the records you imported.

Preflight Action Lists

Action lists are especially useful when there are sequences of tasks, which you have to do a number of times, either within a single PDF document or in multiple PDF documents.

To simplify repetitious tasks, you can group a series of tasks into an Action List. Once you have created an Action List, you can re-use it to perform these tasks in the predefined sequence.

Administrator access level only!

Associated Task Processors

The Preflight Action Lists Resource category is available for the following Task Processors:

- Raster Impose

Preflight Action Lists Overview

The Preflight Action Lists overview lists all available Preflight Action Lists.

You can import, export or delete Preflight Action Lists.

By default, the following action lists are provided.

Black2RichBlack

Finds all black fills (except for text < 24pts) and sets these objects to 100% black and 40% cyan.

ChangeTrimboxToCropboxSize

Changes the trimmed page size (the size of the paper in the desktop printer; the size of the pages after folding/binding and cutting in a production house) to the page size in Acrobat.

CMYK100toRegistration Color

Finds all colors with 100% Cyan, 100% Magenta, 100% Yellow and 100% Black, and sets them to registration colors.

FailIfCourier

Displays an error message if the Courier font is found in the file. This often means that font substitution has been used. This action will result in the Preflight process failing.

FailIfTransparent

Displays an error message if transparent images are found in the file. This action will result in the Preflight process failing.

Hairline=.25pts

Finds all rules less than ¼ of a point, and changes them to ¼ of a point.

NonBlack2Knockout

Finds all non-black fills set to overprint, and changes them to knockout.

NonBlackText2Knockout

Finds all “non-black type” set to overprint, and changes them to knockout.

RemoveAllICCProfiles

Removes any ICC profiles found in the PDF file.

RemoveHalftoneInformation

Removes any Halftone information found in the PDF file.

RemoveOPIComments

Removes any OPI comments found in the PDF file.

RemoveTransferFunction

Removes any transfer functions found in the PDF file.

White2Knockout

Find all “white objects” set to overprint, and change them to knockout.

Related topics:

- To create, duplicate, edit, delete, import or export Resources on page 438

Profiles

ICC Profiles are standards for describing color characterizations of different output devices. Asecuri provides you with a set of standard ICC color profiles. You can import additional color profiles (*.icm or *.icc files), and delete profiles.

You can also import (and delete) color exceptions, in tab-delimited format (*.dat files) and in MIME format (*.mime files). The colors will then appear in the Color Exceptions table, together with their process value percentages.

You can create auto-select maps to make a profile available for automatic selection. For more information, see “” on page 691.

Administrator access level only!

Associated Task Processors

The ICC Profiles Resources are available for:

- All Proofer Task Processors
- All Print (Press) Task Processors
- Apogee Preflight

Profile Selection Maps Editor (Press)

You can specify which job settings the automatic selection of the profile will depend on. For Press, these are as follows.

Printing Stock

Paper Type Select the appropriate paper type from the drop-down list. For example:

- Gloss coated wood free
- Matt coated wood free
- Uncoated white

Ink Set Select the ink set from the drop-down list. You can choose from the available Ink Sets in the Ink Sets Resource category that have the same color space as the profile.

Workflow

Displays the polarity (for information only):

- CTP or Positive CTF
- Negative CTF

NOTE: Computer to Plate printing is always positive.

Halftone Screen

Specify the halftone screen settings:

Screen Select the screen type from the drop-down list.

- ABS
- Adobe Accurate
- Rational Tangent

For more information on these screen types, see “PDF Render - Screen Settings” on page 502.

Resolution Specify the screen resolution from the drop-down list.

Frequency Select the line frequency (lpi) from the drop-down list.

Dot Shape Select the dot shape from the drop-down list.

Profile Selection Maps Editor (Proofers)

You can specify which job settings the automatic selection of the profile will depend on.

Media

Media Type Select the Media type from the drop-down list.

Output

Inkset The ink set corresponds to the Color Space of the Profile.

Quality

Quality Select the required output quality from the drop-down list.

Quality

Administrator access level only!

Associated Task Processors

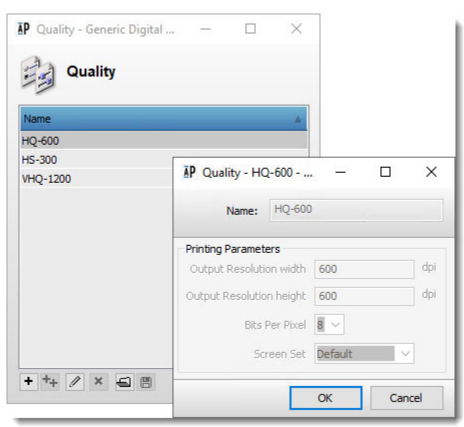
The Quality Resource category is available for the following Task Processors:

■

Quality Overview

Quality dialog box lists all the available Qualities.

♦ Double-click a Quality in the list to display its settings.

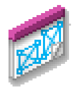


Name Name of the Quality

Printing Parameters

- Output Resolution width
- Output Resolution height
- Bits per pixel
- Screen type

Sheet Layout Templates



This resource lists the Sheet Layout Templates you create in the Layout Editor.

- Double-click the Sheet Layout Templates icon for an overview of the available templates.

  You can only delete the templates you create in the Layout Editor. This resource cannot be used to create templates.

Associated Task Processors

The Sheet Layout Templates resource is available for the following Task Processors:

- Impose
- Raster Impose

Administrator access level only!

Open the Sheet Layout Templates

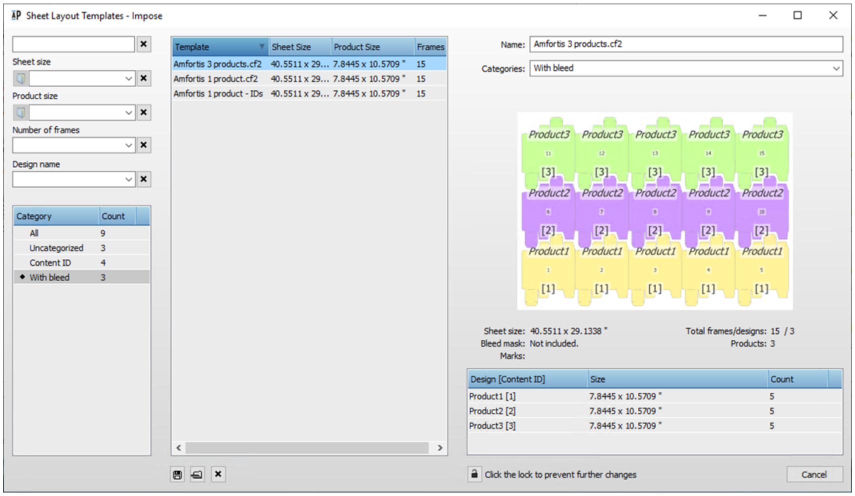
- In the Layout Editor, choose Window > Resources and select Sheet Layout Templates, or go to System Overview, choose Impose or Raster Impose and double-click the Sheet Layout Templates.

Sheet Layout Templates Overview

The Sheet Layout Templates window is used to rename, change their category, import, export, and delete the Sheet Layout Templates as resource editor. You can also manage the categories by adding, removing and renaming them.

For more information about the Sheet Layout Templates, refer to “Sheet Layout Templates” on page 354.

NOTE: You cannot edit the layout of a Sheet Layout Template in this Sheet Layout Templates resource window.



WebGrowth Profiles

Administrator access level only!

What is Web Growth?

Web Growth is the deformation (stretch) of the paper as it is printed on the various color units on a web press. The physical deformation occurs as the paper absorbs ink and water, and is accelerated with pressure and tension.

Factors contributing to web growth include: type of press, press configuration, paper stock, humidity, ink coverage and conditions of the blanket. Heaters may cause paper to shrink on press.

Using marks and profiles to compensate for Web Growth

Web Growth Compensation profiles allow printers to compensate for press mis-registration due to distortion of the printed media. This most frequently occurs on web presses where the paper may expand or shrink slightly after running through a specific press-station, causing subsequent colors to misalign. This also occurs less frequently with higher-grade paper.

The WebGrowth Profiles resource allows you to import, export or delete ANSI WebGrowth Profiles (*.wgc files). You can link a web growth profile with a paper type in your Press settings.

You can also create your own WebGrowth profiles for any combination of press, ink, stock, etc. and special marks can be placed on the Press Sheet to measure and monitor web growth. The WebGrowth mark is a special file mark (.pdf) that needs to be placed on the Press Sheets.

NOTE: Deferring this image compensation to the film/plate phase of the workflow allows the user to use a regular pre-press workflow without compromising proofing and preview job approval features.

Associated Task Processors

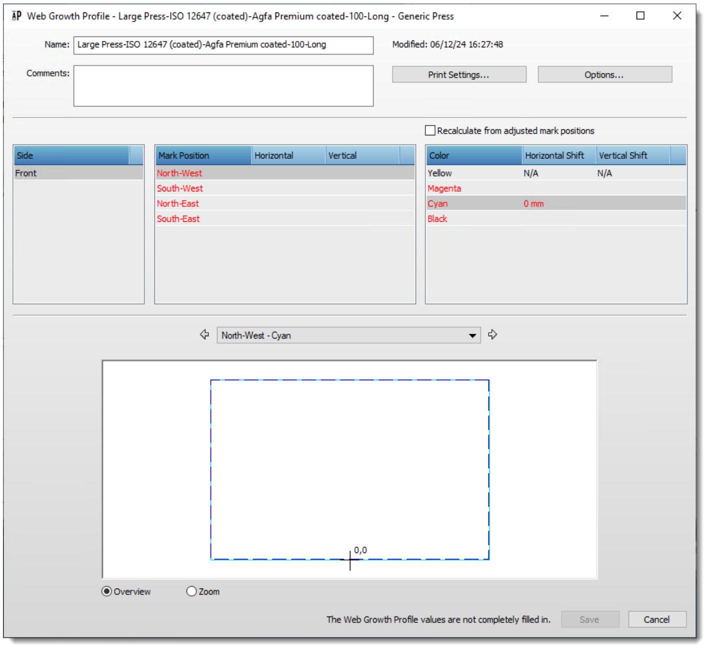
The WebGrowth Profiles Resources are available only for Press and Generic Press Task Processors.

WebGrowth Profiles Overview

When you open this resource you will see a list of the available WebGrowth Profiles. The table shows the Press, Ink Set, Paper Stock and Weight for which the profile has been created.

WebGrowth Profiles Editor

You can edit any of the listed profiles or create new ones from scratch in the editor.



Name The initial name filled in here is taken from the initial Print settings but you can change it to suit your needs

Print Settings button

Click this button to open the initial Print settings dialog if you want to modify the settings; **Press Name, Ink set**, **Stock**, **Weight**, and **Grain/Flute**).

Options button

Here you choose whether you want to set up compensation for the different inks and how to measure the shift.

Inks

- Measurements: One compensation per color or One compensation for all colors. For the latter, you can also specify if spot colors will be used and then you can enter values for these colors too.
- Spot colors: Number of spot colors.

Measurements

- Back side compensation: choose whether you want to enter dedicated values for the back of the press sheet (Custom back) or Same as Front or Mirrored to Front.
- Measurement type: If you chose One compensation per color you can specify here to which color (yellow or black) the measurement relate; Relative to theoretical position should be chosen if you can measure the distance to all colors exactly in relation to the reference zero point with a digital meter.

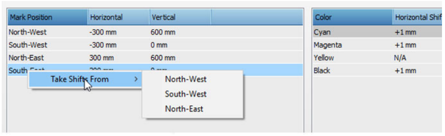
Settings Table per Web

The second panel in this dialog box is a table that gives the mark position and the measured growth values per web and per web side.

Side Select the side in the left column.

Mark Position Specify the position of the WebGrowth mark in the center column. The four corners of the sheet are indicated with North-West, South-West, North-East, South-East and the Horizontal and Vertical values specify the exact distance from the center. The values are red until all values have been entered per mark. You can see the selected mark in the overview panel at the bottom of the editor.

Shift The column on the right is where you enter the web growth values that you measured on a printed test using a WebGrowth mark. The horizontal and vertical shift must be entered for all inks or for each ink separately – process inks and spot colors (S1, S2, etc.). These values can be positive (shrinking) or negative (expanding). The values are red until all values have been entered per mark. Context-click a Mark Position to take shifts from other positions.



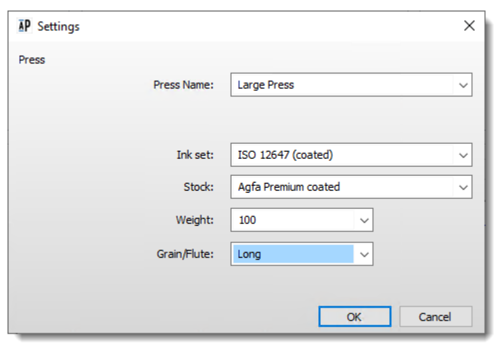
Overview/Zoom panel

In this panel you can see where the WebGrowth marks are positioned on the sheet as you select them in the Mark Position panel. The sheet is indicated with a dashed blue line. The mark and deformation are shown in the ink color or in black if the same compensation applies for all inks. The drop-down list provides quick access to all the marks per web and per color. Use the arrows on the left (up) and right (down) to move up and down the marks in the Mark Position table and per color. Select the Zoom button and use the slider if you need to zoom into an area to see the mark.

▷ Create and Test a WebGrowth Profile

1 Click the New button in the WebGrowth Profiles overview:

A new untitled Resource dialog box is displayed.



2 Enter the initial Print settings for the profile:

- Press Name: choose a web-fed press from the list of your presses
- Ink set, stock, weight
- Grain/Flute: always set to Long for web presses

3 Click OK to confirm these initial settings and then you can continue in the WebGrowth Profiles Overview.

4 Click Save when all the measurement values have been entered.

5 The profile is displayed in the WebGrowth Profiles resource.

6 Select this new profile in the list and click Test in the bottom right corner to generate a test page and verify that the web growth is OK.

CHAPTER 16

Calibrating Your Output Devices

This section explains the theory behind calibration and provides more in-depth information on the various settings in the Curve Editors for Calibration, Linearization and Simulation.

- What is Calibration? 694
- Calibration and Linearization Settings 696
- Curve Editor 700

What is Calibration?

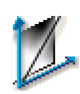
Every output device may have a certain discrepancy between the desired result and the actual result. This discrepancy is caused by dot gain. To compensate for this discrepancy, you need to calibrate your output device.

In practice, this happens in the Curve Editor, where Asecuri calculates a dot gain compensation curve so that your output device produces the desired results. The resulting curve may be irregular to produce the desired dot gain.

Depending on the type of output device, you may have to calibrate it regularly. The print results may differ for instance because of climatic changes.

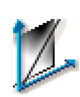
In Asecuri, Calibration is only used for the press. For imagesetters and platesetters, Asecuri uses Linearization.

Calibration for Press Task Processors



Linearization for Imagesetters and Platesetters.

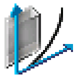
What is Linearization?



Linearization is a special case of calibration. It is especially used for imagesetters and platesetters. Through linearization, you can adjust the Stimuli values so that they equal the Wanted values during output. In other words, you linearize the Stimuli values with the Wanted values, unlike Calibration, where the curve is not necessarily linear.

Before Asecuri can linearize your output device, you need to print a test page. The test page is based on the Stimuli values. These are the measuring points that will be used to calculate the linearization curve. They will appear on the test page as printing blocks. If you measure the printing blocks with a densitometer, you obtain the Measured values. The Wanted values are the desired results. The difference between the Measured values and the Wanted values is the dot gain of your output device. In the Curve Editor, you need to fill in those values in the Values table or import them from an existing file.

What is Simulation?



Simulation can be considered as Calibration for special needs. This means that you are free to use Simulation curves anyway you want. You can for instance purposely use a nonlinear curve to obtain a certain dot gain or other special effects.

This is why there are no Measured values for Simulation. The curve is solely based on Wanted values, which is the desired curve.

This simulation technique is very common in packaging, where flexography is used.

NOTE: The Simulation curves are only used for the Press.

Calibration and Linearization Settings

This part elaborates on the different settings for creating and editing Calibration and Linearization curves. The creation and editing process for Calibration consists of a series of dialog boxes eventually followed by the Curve Editor.

- You start with the General Settings, where you need to specify various settings concerning the print job. See “Calibration Print Settings” on page 696 and “Linearization Print Settings)” on page 697.
- In the second dialog box, you need to specify how you are going to enter the necessary values to calculate the calibration curve. See “Create Table” on page 698.
- If you have chosen to create your table manually, you need to select the number of Stimuli values or measuring points to specify the accuracy of the calibration curve. See “Stimuli Selection” on page 698.
- In the Wanted settings dialog box, you have different options for the Measured and the Wanted values. See “Wanted Selection” on page 699.
- Finally, you enter the Curve Editor from where you can print a test page or where you can enter the Measured and Wanted values. See “Curve Editor” on page 700.

NOTE: The settings for Simulation are almost identical to those for Calibration and Linearization. Simulation has no Measured values and therefore no options for them.

Calibration Print Settings

Opens the print job details regarding stock and screen type.

Printing Stock

Paper type

Select a paper type from the drop-down list.

Ink set

Select an ink set from the drop-down list. The drop-down list shows all of the available Ink Sets in the Ink Sets Resource category.

Screen

The screen polarity is taken from the selected Press.

Positive/Negative

Specify the polarity.

Halftone Screen

Select the screening details from the various drop-down lists:

Screen Apogee Balanced Screening, Adobe Accurate, and Rational Tangent (for more information on the screen types, see "PDF Render - Screen Settings" on page 502).

Resolution Choose a resolution.

Frequency Choose a line frequency.

Dot shape Elliptical or round.

Linearization Print Settings)

This dialog box contains the print job details regarding surface and screen type.

Media Type

Select the appropriate medium from the drop-down list.

Workflow

Specify the polarity of the print job by selecting the appropriate check box:

- Positive CTF
- Negative CTF

Halftone Screen

Select the screening details from the various drop-down lists:

Screen Apogee Balanced Screening, Adobe Accurate, and Rational Tangent (for more information on the screen types, see "PDF Render - Screen Settings" on page 502).

Resolution Choose a resolution.

Frequency Choose a line frequency.

Dot shape Elliptical or round.

Create Table

In this dialog box, you specify how you want to initialize the values table. The values table contains the Stimuli, Measured and Wanted values.

Depending on the type of densitometer, you will either have to enter the Measured values manually or import them from a file that is generated by the densitometer. You can also import an existing curve, created in an external application.

Manually

Select this option if you want to type the values manually in the table. This means that you will have to enter the values based on the measured results of the test page.

Import from File

Select this option if you want to import the values from a specific file.

You can import:

- an existing curve that was created in an external application and saved as an ASCII file
- a curve from an older version of Calibrator (not for Linearization).

NOTE: Asecuri warns you when it does not recognize the file format.

Stimuli Selection

In this dialog box, you specify how many Stimuli values (in dot percentages) you want for the table and the curve. The number of Stimuli values determines the accuracy of the curve. An accurate compensation curve will result in an accurate calibration of your output device.

You have the following options:

Standard 3

Select this option if you want the three standard values from 0 to 100: 0, 50 and 100.

Standard 13

Select this option for the 13 standard values: 0, 5, 10, 20,... 90, 95, 100.

Standard 21

Select this option for the 21 standard values: 0, 5, 10, 15,... 90, 95, 100.

Standard 31

Select this option for the 31 standard values: 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 10, 15, 20,... 85, 90, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98, 99, 100.

0 to 100 Steps

Select this option if you want to enter the number of Stimuli values yourself.

Wanted Selection

In this dialog box, you define the Wanted values.

Wanted Values

Linear

Select this option if you want the Wanted values to be the same as the Stimuli values. This option will result in a linear curve.

Simulate dot gain

Select this option if you want the Wanted values to correspond to a certain dot gain. You can use this option if you want to calibrate your output device to produce a certain dot gain and not to compensate the dot gain.

Compensate for dot gain

The Wanted values will compensate for the specified dot gain.

Dot gain

Type the dot gain percentage for which you want the Wanted values to compensate.

Highest dot gain at

Specify the stimuli for the highest dot gain.

NOTE: For Linear curves, only the Linear option is available.

Curve Editor

The Curve Editor is where you enter the Stimuli, Measured and Wanted values to view the associated curves. You also have options to adjust the curves, select the ink and further specify the Measured values. Under the curve name you can see when the curved was modified the last time and enter comments.

Ink

Select the curve in the curve set that you are going to edit or view. Each curve corresponds to an ink in the ink set and an ink table.

You can create calibration curves for each of the separation inks and also for spot colors. For more information on Ink options, see “Table Options” on page 700.

NOTE: This option is only available for Calibration, and when measurements is one per ink.

Ink Values Table

The ink values table contains the Stimuli, Measured and Wanted values in three columns. The values determine how the calibration curve will look like in the diagram next to the table. At the top of this table you can choose the ink curve you want to see from the drop-down list or using the arrows, if you have more than one ink curve.

You manually edit the values (in dot percentages) to make further adjustments to the curve. The values may be displayed in dot percentages or in densities, depending on the curve options.

Stimuli values These are the number of measuring points of dot percentages for the test page.

Measured values These are the values that are measured on the test page, either entered manually or imported from a file.

Wanted values These are the desired dot gain values in dot percentages for the final print result.

Adding or Deleting Values Use the Add or Delete buttons to either add or delete a value.

Table Options

This dialog box allows you to specify the required table options for the curve, the inks and the measured values.

Copy/Paste

Use these commands to copy all the data of a table and paste it in another table. You can only copy data from a single table but you can paste this data into multiple tables by selecting multiple tables in the ink table list.

Curve Options

Apply to all Select this check box to save the settings in the **Always applied to all** section to all tables or deselect it to save the settings for the selected curves only. Apogee Prepress remembers the state of this option between sessions.

Smooth curve This option will smoothen the curve around the measuring points. If this option is not selected, the measuring points will be connected with straight lines.

Curve through measurements This option forces the curve to go exactly through the measured points.

Smooth curve + Curve through measurements If you select both these options, Asecuri generates a smooth curve that goes through the measured points.

Minimum Select this option if you want to have a minimum value at which the compensation curve starts. All values below that one will be clipped to the minimum value (Wanted values).

Clip to 0 below Every value in the compensation curve below the specified percentage in the field, will become 0 (Wanted values).

Maximum Select this option if you want a maximum value for the compensation curve. All values that are higher, will be clipped to the maximum value (Wanted values).

Always keep 100 All the 100% values will be kept as 100 in the transfer curve.

Apply limits to Select the curve that you want to apply the minimum and maximum limits to.

- Wanted curve: Limit the compensated curve so that the resulting printed output reaches the specified limit. As a result, the values for the limit you will see on the compensated curve will be different than the ones specified.
- Compensated curve: Limit the compensated curve to the specified values.

Resolution Select the resolution of the curve: Standard or High (slower).

Reset

Choose this option if you want to fill the table with new values. You will have to go through the Initialize dialog boxes again to specify whether you will manually enter the values or import them. See “Create Table” on page 698.

CAUTION: Clicking this button will delete the previous table values.

Import/Export Data Sets

You can exchange the table data with other applications such as PressTune. The main difference with the other exchange methods is that this method exports and imports a multi-set data XML file, only containing the data points of the different inks and possible front/back sides.

Print Settings Button)

Opens the print job details regarding stock and screen type. See “Calibration Print Settings” on page 696 and “Linearization Print Settings)” on page 697.

Options Button

Click this button to access the Global Options dialog box. You can make further adjustments to the curve sets and access the different options for the Measured values.

Sets

First you can select whether you want curves *One for all sides* or *One per side* of a sheet, and you can also specify the number of webs. Then you specify settings for the curves you want per ink.

NOTE: This tab appears only for calibration curves, not for linearization curves.

Measurements

You can either select an ink set per Ink or an Ink Set for all Inks. Select the required option from the drop-down list:

- One set per ink: Allows you to edit the CMYK curves separately.
- One set for all inks: The values for the three columns only need to be entered once - the curve will be applied to all separations.

Compensation

Select the appropriate compensation curve option from the drop-down list:

- One for all inks: Asecuri will calculate the average of the four compensation curves (C+M+Y+K/4)to create one compensation curve for all separations. This option can only be selected if ‘one set per ink’ is chosen from the Measurements list.

- One per ink: Creates a separate compensation curve for each ink.
- One for black, one for the rest: Calculates the CMY average to create a compensation curve for these inks, and creates a separate compensation curve for black.

Weighted average This check box is displayed if Measurements is set to ‘one set per ink, and Compensation is set to ‘one for all inks’. You only need to enable the weighted average option when working with Sublima screens (for better results).

Compensate unknown colors as Select a process ink or spot color whose compensation curve will be used for spot colors. Choosing Spot Colors in this list adds this option to the Ink drop-down list in the Curve Editor so a dedicated curve can be created for spot colors.

Measurements

The values in the Measured column are in Specify how the Measured values will be expressed. You have two options.

Dot %: Express the Measured values in dot percentages.

Density (more accurate): Express the Measured values in densities.

Dmin and Dmax: Specify the minimum and maximum densities.

Maximum density settings that are too low, will clear up the printed images. Dark areas will not appear dark enough.

Maximum density settings that are too high will blur the printed images in the darker areas.

Refer to the user manual of your output device to see what the appropriate maximum density level is.

NOTE: These options do not apply to Simulation curves.

Print Button

Click this button to either print a test page or a verification page.

Not compensated Test page with non-compensated values: Select this option if you want to print a test page. You can use this test page to measure the dot gain with a densitometer. This way you will obtain the Measured values that you can enter in the Values table.

Compensated Test page with compensated values: Select this option to print a verification page. This page already contains compensated values. You can use this page to check whether the output devices have been calibrated correctly.

On Select the tray which the test page will be printed.

NOTE: This button is only available for Linearization.

Chart Panel

This part of the editor displays the curve as selected in the Display drop-down list below. See Display Curve Options for more information on the display options.

The different curves reflect the entered values in the Values table and are displayed on a X-Y axis system.

Every curve in the chart has a specific color. The curve that you selected in the drop-down list below, will be highlighted.

- Wanted curve: Black
- Measured curve: Blue
- Compensation curve: Green
- Error curve: Red

Display Curve Options

In this drop-down list, you can select which curve you want to see. For every of the four options, the selected curve will be highlighted.

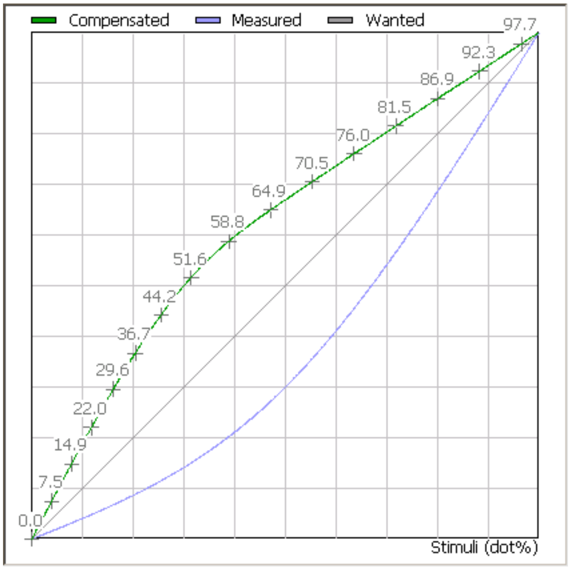
Wanted This option highlights the curve for the Wanted values as specified in the Wanted column.

Measured This option highlights the curve for the Measured values as specified in the Measured column.

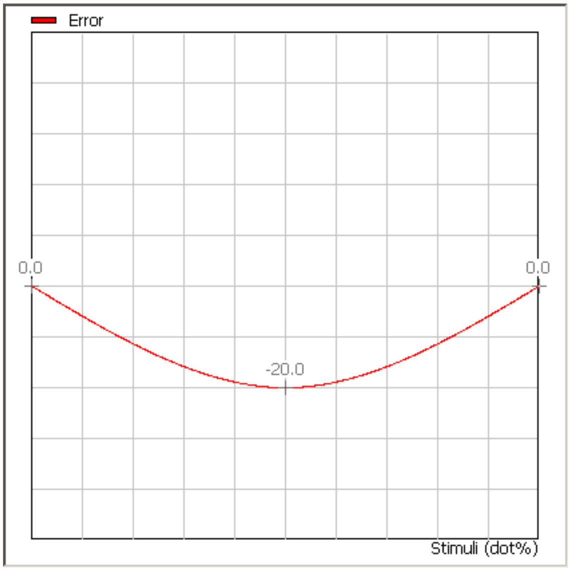
If there is a difference between the Measured values and the Wanted values, the curve will not be linear. This deviation is then compensated by the Compensation curve.

Compensated This option highlights the Compensation curve (green) for the discrepancy between the Measured (blue) and the Wanted values (black). Both curves neutralize each other resulting in a linear curve producing the desired results.

The screenshot below shows a compensation curve for a 20% difference between the Wanted and the Measured values.



Error This option displays the deviation curve between the Measured values and the Wanted values. The screenshot below shows a deviation curve for a 20% difference between the Wanted and the Measured values.



APPENDIX

A

System Variables

This section provides a list of all System variables. It also defines their syntax, and rules on how to use them.

- Generic Variables 708
- Mark Engraver Variables 719

Generic Variables

You can use variables in a number of different areas to replace parameter and resource settings. These variables are automatically replaced by a text string, or are assigned a text string.

Variable	Description
$BOOKSIGNATURE	The prefix-based name of the book signature when used in a split-for-proof flow using Apogee Impose. Otherwise resolves to $SIGNATURE.
$CALCURVE	The name of the calibration curve used to print a separation. If a separation contains several objects with different curves, only the name of the first one is used.
$CIP3PAPERTYPE	The CIP3 paper type derived from the paper type that corresponds with the press sheet paper stock. (same as HDMPaperTypeFront or CIP3AdmPaperGrade)
COLLECT_TEMPLATENAME	The name of the ticket template that is to be used for a job created by the collecting hot ticket.
$COMMENTS	The “Remarks” field in the Administration tab.
$COMMENTS_1-10	The “n”-th paragraph of text in the Remarks field of the Administration tab. A paragraph is a single line of text, delimited by paragraph marks or by the start or end of the text.
$COMPANY	The “Company” field in the Customer Contact information.
$COMPANYADDRESS	The “Address” field of the customer’s company.
$COMPANYCITY	The “City” field of the customer’s company.
$COMPANYCOUNTRY	The “Country” field of the customer’s company.
$COMPANYPHONE	The “Phone” field of the customer’s company.
$COMPANYSTATE	The “State” field of the customer’s company.
$COMPANYZIP	The “Zip” field of the customer’s company.
$COMPUTER	The name of the Hardware System on which the current Task Processor (or service) is running.
$CONTACTEMAIL	The “E-mail” field of the customer’s contact person.
$CONTACTFIRST	The “First” field of the customer’s contact person.
$CONTACTLAST	The “Last” field of the customer’s contact person.
$CONTACTMOBILE	The “Mobile” field of the customer’s contact person.
$CONTACTPHONE	The “Phone” field of the customer’s contact person.
$CONTACTTITLE	The Title field of the customer’s contact person.
$COPYCOUNT	The Requested Copy Count of an Image (S&D jobs only, sets number of copies of the part that is associated with that image).
$CPM	The Calibrated Printing Mode used for the job.
$CUTTER	The name of the cutting device set for the job.
$DATE	The current date (i.e. the date when the variable is resolved). Insert a space when combining this variable with other variables, e.g. \\$SYSTEMCOMPUTER\ArchiveRoot\$DATE:%Y%m \$JOB\
$DESCRIPTION	The Description field in the Administration tab.
$DEVICE	The name of the output device.

Variable	Description
$DEVICEGROUP	The name of the device group to which the used output device belongs. For system device groups, $DEVICE and $DEVICEGROUP are identical.
$DOCPAGE	The page number (index) of a page in its document, starting at 1.
$DOCPAGELABEL	The (text) label of a page in its document. Defaults to $DOCPAGE if there is no label.
$DOCPAGETRIMBOX	The trim box of a page, expressed as "<W> x <H>", whereby <W> and <H> are "<value> <units>". The units are determined by the international settings of the server, and can be in mm or inches.
$DOCUMENT	Document title (set by %%Title).
$DOCUMENTAUTHOR	The author of the (PDF) document.
$DOCUMENTBASENAME	The filename of a document, excluding path and extension. Defaults to $DOCUMENT for documents arriving via streamed input channels.
$DOCUMENTCREATOR	The creator of the (PDF) document.
$DOCUMENTEXTENSION	The extension of a document, excluding the separation point. Defaults to $FORMAT for documents arriving via streamed input channels.
$DOCUMENTFILENAME	The filename of a document, including extension but excluding path. Defaults to $DOCUMENT.$FORMAT for documents arriving via streamed input channels.
$DOCUMENTLIST	A set of document names in a multi-page result, such as a flat.
$DOCUMENTPATH	The pathname of a document (excluding the file name) relative to the Hot Folder path. Does not contain the leading or trailing backslash (\). Empty for documents input via streamed input channels. Contains the common path of pre-separated input documents where the separations arrive in different subfolders.
$DOCUMENTPRODUCER	The producer of the (PDF) document.
$DOCUMENTREV	Document revision. Empty for the original. "1" for the first revision, etc.
$FLOWNAME	New SplitJDF; resolves to the Flow Name if there is more than one flow.
$FLOWTYPE	New SplitJDF; resolves to the Flow Type if there is more than one flow.
$FORMAT	The 3-letter extension associated with the type of data being processed.
$HSCALE	The horizontal scale used by the Render Task Processor, expressed as a percentage. See also $SCALE and $VSCALE.
$HOTFOLDERROOT	Root for all PS/PDF Hot Folders (default in Hot Folder Task Processor).
$IMPSIGNATURENAME	The name of the selected signature.
$IMPTEMPLATENAME	The name of the imposition template (name only, no path).
$INKSET	The name of the inkset as selected in the Generic Press.
$JDF_ASSEMBLYIDS	The JDF assembly IDs.
$JDF_CUSTOMERID	The JDF customer ID.
$JDF_CUSTOMERJOB	The JDF name of the customer job.
$JDF_CUSTOMERORDER	The JDF name of the customer order.
$JDF_DESCRIPTIVENAME	Descriptive name per separation.
$JDFIMPORTROOT	The root for all JDF Hot Folders. (default in JDF Input Task Processor)
$JDF_JOBDESCRIPTION	The JDF job description.
$JDF_JOBNAME	The JDF job name.

Variable	Description
$JDF_JOBPARTID	The JDF part ID.
$JDF_OPERATOR	The operator name in the JDF file.
$JDF_ORDERDESCRIPTION	The JDF order description.
$JDF_ORDERNUMBER	The JDF order number.
$JDF_PARTNAME	The JDF part name.
$JDF_PARTVERSION	The JDF part version.
$JDF_PRODUCTID	The JDF product ID.
$JDF_PROJECTID	The JDF project ID.
$JDF_SEPARATION	The JDF separation name.
$JDF_SHEET	The name of the sheet in the JDF layout.
$JDF_SIGNATURE	The JDF signature.
$JOB	The “Job name” field in the Administration tab.
$JOBDATE	The date when the job was submitted.
$JOBID	A unique job identifier (intended mainly for internal use).
$JOBNR	A unique job sequence number.
$JOBTIME	The time when the job was submitted.
$LINCURVE	The name of the linearization curve used to print a separation. If a separation contains several objects with different curves, only the name of the first one is used.
$MEDIANAME	The name of the media.
$MEDIATYPE	The type of media.
$MEDIATHICKNESS	The thickness of the media used.
NONE	Overrides the default behavior of generating no text if the specified variable is not used. To be used without the $ sign and between pipe characters. Example: $COMPANY|NONE| generates the text string NONE if the specified company variable is not used.
$OPERATOR	The “Operator” field in the Administration tab.
$ORDER	The “Order number” field in the Administration tab. This is the “Name” field in the Hot Ticket Editor.
$OUTPUTSIZE	The size of the rendered image for a sheet/plate. For DQS, the size of the bounding box of all rendered elements on that sheet.
$PLATEID	The platecounter PLATEID. Only supported as a TextMark in the Border which in turn becomes a DeviceMark, which can only be resolved in TP_Output.
$PAPERGRADE	The paper grade that corresponds with the paper type of the press sheet paper stock.
$PAPERSTOCK	The name of the press sheet paper stock.
$PAPERTYPE	The paper type that corresponds with the press sheet paper stock.
$PAPERWEIGHT	The weight of the press sheet’s paper stock.
$PART	The name of the part. If it contains pages of different parts, the part name of the page with the lowest Run List index is used.
$PRESS	The name of the press.
$PRESSPROFILE	The profile of the press.
$PRINTDATE	The date the job was printed.

Variable	Description
$PRINTMODE	The date the job is printed (yyyymmdd) This format is best suited for creating pathnames that sort properly by name. It also follows the ISO guidelines for date and time formats.
$PRINTTIME	The time the job was printed.
$PRODSET	The name of the production set.
$PRODSETPREFIX	The sheet prefix associated with the production set to which the current sheet belongs.
$PRODUCTDISPLAYNAME	E.g. 'Asecuri'
$PRODUCTNAME	E.g. 'APOGEE Prepress' (guaranteed to contain NO special characters)
$PRODUCTVENDOR	E.g. 'ECO3'
$PRODUCTVERSION	E.g. 3.0
$PRODUCTVERSIONMAJOR	E.g. 3
$PRODUCT_CODE	The code of a product. Resolves to a comma-separated list when the context addresses multiple products.
$PRODUCT_GRAIN	The grain direction of a product. Resolves to a comma-separated list when the context addresses multiple products.
$PRODUCT_NAME	The name of a product. Resolves to a comma-separated list for multiple products.
$PRODUCT_ORDER	The order number of a product. Resolves to a comma-separated list for multiple products.
$PRODUCT_COPYCOUNT	The requested copy-count of a product. Resolves to a comma-separated list for multiple products.
$PRODUCT_TOTALPAGES	The number of pages in a product. Resolves to a comma-separated list for multiple products.
$QUALITY	The output quality as specified in the Layout Editor
$RESOLUTION	The resolution of the image.
$RLCOMMENT	Run List comment
$RLINDEX	The index of the position of a page in the Run List, starting at 1. Do not confuse this with RLPAGE.
$RLPAGE	The number associated with the position of a page in the Run List. The number of the first position in the Run List is specified by the value of First page at: in the Run List Task Processor. Not to be confused with $RLINDEX.
$RLPAGE@m	A string of digits of any size, offset from the first page by <m> page positions (you must replace 'm' by an offset number).
$RLPAGE:n	A string of exactly <n> digits.
$RLPAGE:n@m	A string of exactly <n> digits, offset from the first page by <m> page positions (you must replace 'm' by an offset number).
$RULINGMAP	Name of the RulingMap in case of Application screening, otherwise empty.
$RUNLENGTH	The run length of the job.
$SCALE	The scale used by the Render Task Processor, expressed as a percentage. This is replaced by $HSCALE ' x ' $VSCALE when the image is scaled disproportionally.
$SCREEN	The name of the screen that was used to screen the separation. If a separation contains several objects with different screens, only the name of the first one is used.
$SCREEN_ANGLE	The angle that was used to screen the separation. If a separation contains several objects with different screens, it is resolved in the same way as the $SCREEN variable.
$SEPARATION	The color name of the separation.

Variable	Description
$SEPARATIONSHORT	The color name of the separation, but the primary colors are 'C', 'M', 'Y' and 'K'. Other names are abbreviated in the same way they are abbreviated by the custom color bar mark.
$SHEET	Evaluates to $SIGNATURE for single or no web impositions. Evaluates to $SIGNATURE $WEB for multi-web impositions.
$SHEET_GRAIN	The grain of the sheet.
$SHEETVERSION	The `SV<n>' version number of a sheet version, with <n> being the $SHEETVERSIONINDEX. When used on a result that has the default single-version set-up, <n> is the same as the $VERSIONINDEX.
$SHEETVERSIONINDEX	The index <n> of the sheet version in the sheet version table, starting at 1, per sheet. When used on a result that has the default single-version set-up, <n> is the same as the $VERSIONINDEX.
$SIDE	The Press Sheet side ("F" for Front, "B" for Back). Note that the SIDE variable maps either to the SIDE or the SIDEA Asecuri variables, depending on the setting of the Imposition Service.
$SIDEA	The name of the web (starting from A). $SIDEA produces a letter that uniquely defines a side (front or back) on a web. The front of web 1 is referred to as A, the back as B; the front of web 2 is C, the back is D, and so on. This does not depend on the imposition template - If the imposition only uses the fronts of two webs, they will be referred to as A (web 1 Front) and C (web 2 front). This variable produces an empty string if the result is not an imposed flat or if the imposition template is not multi-web.
$SIGNATURE	The number of the signature including the prefix. Produces an empty string if the result is not an imposed flat.
$SIGNATURENUMBER	The number of the signature without the prefix. Produces an empty string if the result is not an imposed flat.
$SIGNATUREINDEX	The index of the signature without the prefix. Produces an empty string if the result is not an imposed flat.
$SIGNATURE_MAIN	Same as $SIGNATURE of the main imposition. Can be used in a 1-up S4P flow to refer to the results of the main imposition.
$SIGNATURENUMBER_MAIN	Same as $SIGNATURENUMBER of the main imposition Can be used in a 1-up S4P flow to refer to the results of the main imposition.
$SIGNATUREINDEX_MAIN	Same as $SIGNATUREINDEX of the main imposition Can be used in a 1-up S4P flow to refer to the results of the main imposition..
$SIMCURVE	The name of the simulation curve used to print a separation. If a separation contains several objects with different curves, only the name of the first one is used.
$SLUG1	First slug-line specified in the output parameters of an output device.
$SLUG2	Second slug-line specified in the output parameters of an output device.
$SLUG3	Third slug-line specified in the output parameters of an output device.
$SLUG4	Fourth slug-line specified in the output parameters of an output device.
$SYSTEM	The name of the Asecuri System.
$SYSTEMCOMPUTER	The name of the Hardware System.
$TICKETNAME	See $ORDER.
$TICKET_TEMPLATENAME	The name of the ticket template that is to be used for a job created by the collecting hot ticket.

Variable	Description
$TIME	The current time (i.e. the time when the variable is resolved).
$TOTALPAGES	The total number of pages of a job. I.e. the size of the Run Lists when Run Lists are present. Value is -1 when no page count established or no Run List is present.
$TOTALSHEETS	The total number of press sheets in a job.
$TOTALPRODUCTS	The total number of products in a job.
$TRAY	The display name of the engine's current tray that is used. Note that this may change during the course of a job.
$VERSION	The name of the product version of a result. This is the contents of the second column in the product version table (even if that column is renamed). Can be used for input and output. Note that $VERSION always refers to the second column in the table (i.e. the one after the '#' column), even if you have renamed it. Resolves to a comma separated list of product versions when used on a press sheet that contains multiple product versions. Can be used in read-syntax in Page Assembly of Versioning TP.
$VERSIONELEMENT<i>	Used in Versioning jobs: the content of the *i*th version element in the version table.
$VERSIONELEMENTNAME<i>	Used in Versioning jobs: the name (value of the column header) of the *i*th version element in the version table.
$VERSIONINDEX	Used in Versioning jobs: the index of the version in the version table, i.e., its row number, starting at 1.
$VERSIONSHORT	The `V<n>' short version number of a product version, with <n> being $VERSIONINDEX. I.e., the content of the first column in the product version table. Evaluates to a comma separated list of product versions short names when used on a result that contains multiple product versions. Can be used in read-syntax in Page Assembly of Versioning TP.
$VSCALE	The vertical scale used by the Render Task Processor, expressed as a percentage. See also $SCALE and $HSCALE.
$WEB	The number of the web (starting from "1"). Evaluates to an empty string if the result is not an imposed flat or if the imposition template is not multi-web.
$WEB_MAIN	Same as $WEB of the main imposition. Can be used in a 1-up S4P flow to refer to the results of the main imposition.
$WEBGROWTHPROFILE	The name of the web-growth profile used for a job (i.e. press parameter).
$WHITEMODE	The white application mode (pre-white, post-white or sandwich-white) used to print the white on the sheet/layout. Empty if no white.
$WORKSTYLE	The workstyle used by imposition. Resolves to any of the strings Sheetwise, Work and Turn, Work and Tumble, Single Sided, Perfector.
$WPS	The displayname of the WebProductionScheme resource.

NOTE: You can use a drop-down menu in the various contexts to see which variables are supported in which context.

You can also use system variables to automatically print information about a job, a template, or the part of a job that is being printed, since the information that prints varies from one sheet of media to the next.

Variable Syntax

This section explains the variable syntax, and describes how variables are interpreted and replaced by Asecuri. Any variable that cannot be appropriately interpreted in a given context will be replaced by an empty string.

NOTE: Variables are case sensitive! For example, **$system** will not be recognized as the **$SYSTEM** variable: Instead, it will be interpreted as literal text.

Start and End

Variables always start with a dollar sign ($), immediately followed by the variable name. Any non-alphanumerical character (including space or tab) marks the end of the name.

NOTE: The RLPAGE variables that are used in the Run List settings for automatic page placement do not use the dollar sign. They are delimited using the less than/greater than symbols. For example, <RLPAGE:n>. This is also the case when they are used in an input filename template (Open Connect, Hot Folder).

Braces

The variable name should be enclosed between braces { } when other alphabetical text immediately follows the variable name.

Square Brackets

Square brackets should be used to prevent unwanted gaps when variables cannot be resolved because the value is nil, out of context, or only one value is possible.

For example:

```
$JOB[-$PART][-$BOOKSIGNATURE][-$RLPAGE][-v$VERSION][-$FLOWNAME]
```

Width Modifier

Variables can have a width modifier (a colon followed by a number, such as **:3**). This causes the variable to be substituted with exactly the specified number of characters. If the content is longer than the specified width, Asecuri truncates it: If the content is shorter than the specified width, Asecuri pads the remainder with blanks. You can customize the padding by inserting a plus (+) or minus (-) sign before the width modifier:

- Inserting a "+" before the width modifier specifies that the padding or truncation will be at the end of the variable. Any character you enter after the + will be used as the padding character for the specified number of spaces. For example, **+Y12** will result in a 12-character name, padded out at the end with Ys where necessary (e.g. ECO3YYYYYYYY).

- Inserting a “-” before the width modifier specifies that the padding or truncation will be at the beginning of the variable. Any character you enter after the + will be used as the padding character for the specified number of spaces. For example, -**X12** will result in a 12-character name, padded out at the beginning with Xs where necessary (e.g XXXXXXXXECO3).

When omitted, Asecuri assumes "+ " (plus, followed by a space), in which case the padding is done with the “?” wildcard character.

When the string following a $ is not recognized as a variable, it is printed as a literal (e.g. $SITE becomes "$SITE"). To overrule the meaning of the $ character when followed by a legal variable name, you need to prefix the $ with another $: For example, $$SIDE then becomes "$SIDE".

In the following examples, we assume that the job has the following attributes:

- Order number ($ORDER) = 0106G0001
- Customer contact ($CUSTOMER) = ECO3

<table>
<tr><th>Variable Example</th><th>Substitution Result</th></tr>
<tr><td>$CUSTOMER$ORDER</td><td>ECO30106G001</td></tr>
<tr><td>$CUSTOMER</td><td>ECO3</td></tr>
<tr><td>$CUSTOMER:3</td><td>ECO</td></tr>
<tr><td>$CUSTOMER:6</td><td>ECO3</td></tr>
<tr><td>$CUSTOMER:+ 6</td><td>ECO3??.</td></tr>
<tr><td>$CUSTOMER:+_6</td><td>ECO3__</td></tr>
<tr><td>$CUSTOMER:-_6</td><td>__ECO3</td></tr>
<tr><td>$RLPAGE:-03</td><td>001, 002, 003,... 010, ... (3 character nos, padded up front with 0s)</td></tr>
<tr><td>$CUSTOMERX</td><td>$CUSTOMERX</td></tr>
<tr><td>${CUSTOMER }P</td><td>ECO3P</td></tr>
<tr><td>$CUSTOMER|NO NAME|</td><td>ECO3</td></tr>
<tr><td>$CUSTOMER|NO NAME|</td><td>NO NAME (when Customer contact is empty)</td></tr>
<tr><td>$ORDER-P</td><td>0106G0001-P</td></tr>
<tr><td>$ORDER:>4</td><td>0001</td></tr>
<tr><td>$ORDER[:4]</td><td>0106 (takes first 4 characters)</td></tr>
<tr><td>$ORDER[5:]</td><td>G0001 (takes characters starting from the 5th character)</td></tr>
<tr><td>$ORDER[-2:]</td><td>01 (takes last 2 characters)</td></tr>
<tr><td>$ORDER[:-2]</td><td>0106G000 (takes all characters that precede the last 2 and includes the last but two character)</td></tr>
</table>

Use NONE without the $ sign and between pipe characters to override the default behavior of generating no text if the specified variable is not used.

Example: $COMPANY|NONE| generates NONE if the specified company variable is not used.

Date and Time Variable Formats

The date and time variables by default print the date and time according to the regional settings of the computer that evaluates the variable. However, in some cases you may want to have it printed differently.

NOTE: When you use format strings, the date and time variables (DATE/TIME and PRINTDATE/PRINTTIME) produce the same result: Asecuri only uses the format to see what has to be printed.

You can modify the behavior of some format codes by prefixing them with #.

Format Code	Description
%#a, %#A, %#b, %#B, %#p,%#X, %#z, %#Z, %#%	# flag is ignored.
%#c	Long date and time representation, appropriate for current locale. For example: Tuesday, August 05, 2008, 12:41:29.
%#x	Long date representation, appropriate to current locale. For example: Tuesday, August 05, 2008.
%#d, %#H, %#I, %#j, %#m, %#M, %#S, %#U, %#w, %#W, %#y, %#Y	Remove leading zeros (if any).

When you specify no format string, $DATE and $TIME default to $DATE:%x and $TIME:%X.

You need to enclose the variable name and format string in braces if you want to print spaces (see examples below).

When you specify an unknown format string, Asecuri prints it as a literal (without the %). A width modifier is therefore also printed literally.

Date and Time formatting options	
%a	Abbreviated weekday name (first 3 chars).
%A	Full weekday name.
%b	Abbreviated month name (first 3 chars).
%B	Full month name.
%c	Date and time representation appropriate for locale.
%d	Day of month as decimal number (01 - 31).
%j	Day of year as decimal number (001 - 366).

Date and Time formatting options	
%m	Month as decimal number (01 - 12).
%U	Week of year as decimal number, with Sunday as first day of week (00 - 53).
%w	Weekday as decimal number (0 - 6; Sunday is 0).
%W	Week of year as decimal number, with Monday as first day of week (00 - 53).
%x	Date representation for current locale.
%y	Year without century, as decimal number (00 - 99).
%Y	Year with century, as decimal number.
%z, %Z	Time-zone name or abbreviation; no characters if time zone is unknown.
%c	Date and time representation appropriate for locale.
%H	Hour in 24-hour format (00 - 23).
%I	Hour in 12-hour format (01 - 12).
%M	Minute as decimal number (00 - 59).
%p	Current locales A.M./P.M. indicator for 12-hour clock.
%S	Second as decimal number (00 - 59).
%X	Time representation for current locale.
%z, %Z	Time-zone name or abbreviation; no characters if time zone is unknown.
%%	Percent sign.

Other characters not prefixed with % are printed as literals.

NOTE: You can control the width of the replacement string by using the appropriate format codes. Most of them have a fixed width. Use %a and %b to retrieve the abbreviated day and month names, fixed to 3 characters wide.

Combinations with $DATE

Insert a space when combining this variable with other variables, e.g.
\\$SYSTEMCOMPUTER\ArchiveRoot\$DATE:%Y%m \$JOB\

Examples

Format String	Result	Remarks
$DATE	07/09/03	Depends on locale. Equivalent to %x.
$TIME	11:14:45	Depends on locale. Equivalent to %X.
$DATE:%	A Wednesday	
$DATE:%c	Wed Jul 9 11:16:49 2003	Depends on locale.
${DATE:Week %j}	Week 190	
$DATE:%A%f	Wednesdayf	%f printed as literal.
${DATE:Hello World}	Hello World	Printed as literal.

Format String	Result	Remarks
$DATE:+ 5	+ 5	Width modifier printed as literal.
$DATE:%y%m%d	030709	
$DATE:%Y%m%d	20030709	Case matters!

Mark Engraver Variables

These variables can only be used in the Mark Engraver.

Table legend:

- C = The variable can be used as a condition.
- T= The variable can be used to insert data in Text Marks.
- V = The variable can be resolved in the specified view.
- X = The variable cannot be resolved in the specified view, however, the output will be OK even it is not resolved in the view.
- Generic Variables: This column lists the corresponding variables that can be used in Border, File Name Template, etc.
- Preps Variables: This column lists the corresponding variables that can be used in Preps templates

Mark Engraver Variables	Page	Fold Sheet	Press Sheet	Image	Sheet	Sheet View	Generic Variables	Preps Variables
$product								
$product.binding_edge	CT	CT	CT			V		
$product.binding_options.assembly_type	CT	CT	CT			V		
$product.binding_options.name	CT	CT	CT			V		
$product.code	T	T	T	T	T	V	PRODUCT_CODE	
$product.copy_count	T	T	T	T	T	V	PRODUCT_COPYCOUNT	
$product.design	T	T	T	T	T	V		
$product.finished_trim_size.height	CT	CT	CT	T	T	V		
$product.finished_trim_size.name	T	T	CT	T	T	V		
$product.finished_trim_size.width	CT	CT	CT	T	T	V		
$product.grain	T	T	T	T	T	V		
$product.name	CT	CT	CT	T	T	V	PRODUCT_NAME	
$product.order	T	T	T	T	T	V	PRODUCT_ORDER	
$product.sub_type	CT	CT	CT			V		
$product.total_pages	T	T	T			V	PRODUCT_TOTALPAGES	
$product.type	CT	CT	CT			V		
$product.type_name	CT	CT	CT			V		

Mark Engraver Variables	Page	Fold Sheet	Press Sheet	Image	Sheet	Sheet View	Generic Variables	Preps Variables
$page								
$page.book_signature.index	CT					V		
$page.book_signature.number_pages	C					V		
$page.document_base_name	T					X	DOCUMENTBASENAME	
$page.document_filename	T					X	DOCUMENTFILENAME	
$page.document_name	T					X	DOCUMENT	
$page.document_page	T					X	DOCPAGE	
$page.document_page_label	T					X	DOCPAGELABEL	
$page.finished_trim_size.height	CT					V		
$page.finished_trim_size.name	T					V		
$page.finished_trim_size.width	CT					V		
$page.part.comments	T						PARTCOMMENTS	
$page.part.copy_count_actual	T					V		
$page.part.copy_count_requested	T					V	COPYCOUNT	
$page.part.finished_trim_size.height	CT					V		
$page.part.finished_trim_size.name	T					V		
$page.part.finished_trim_size.width	CT					V		
$page.part.name	CT					V	PART	
$page.part.number_colors	CT					V		
$page.part.process_colors	CT					V		
$page.part.range	CT					V		
$page.part.spot_colors	CT					V		
$page.part.type	CT					V		
$page.rlindex	CT					V	RLINDEX	
$page.rlpage	CT					V	RLPAGE	
$image								
$image.copy_count_actual				T		V		
$image.copy_count_requested				T		V	COPYCOUNT	
$image.document_base_name				T		X	DOCUMENTBASENAME	
$image.document_filename				T		X	DOCUMENTFILENAME	
$image.document_name				T		X	DOCUMENT	
$image.document_page				T		X	DOCPAGE	
$image.document_page_label				T		X	DOCPAGELABEL	
$image.finished_trim_size.height				CT		V		
$image.finished_trim_size.name				T		V		

Mark Engraver Variables	Page	Fold Sheet	Press Sheet	Image	Sheet	Sheet View	Generic Variables	Preps Variables
$image.finished_trim_size.width				CT		V		
$image.horizontal_scale				CT		V		
$image.product_size.height				T		V		
$image.product_size.name				T		V		
$image.product_size.width				T		V		
$image.scale				T		V		
$image.station_number				T		V		
$image.tile_number				T		X		
$image.tile_rc				T		X		
$image.total_tiles				T		X	TOTALTILES	
$image.vertical_scale				CT		V		
$assembly								
$assembly.number_fold_sheets		T	T			X		
$fold_sheet								
$fold_sheet.binding_options.assembly_type		CT				V		
$fold_sheet.binding_options.name		CT				V		
$fold_sheet.bottom_page.finished_trim_size.height		CT				V		
$fold_sheet.bottom_page.finished_trim_size.name		T				V		
$fold_sheet.bottom_page.finished_trim_size.width		CT				V		
$fold_sheet.bottom_page.part.copy_count_actual		T				V		
$fold_sheet.bottom_page.part.copy_count_requested		T				V	COPYCOUNT	
$fold_sheet.bottom_page.part.finished_trim_size.height		CT				V		
$fold_sheet.bottom_page.part.finished_trim_size.name		T				V		
$fold_sheet.bottom_page.part.finished_trim_size.width		CT				V		
$fold_sheet.bottom_page.part.name		CT				V	PART	
$fold_sheet.bottom_page.part.number_colors		T				V		
$fold_sheet.bottom_page.part.process_colors		T				V		
$fold_sheet.bottom_page.part.range		CT				V		
$fold_sheet.bottom_page.part.spot_colors		T				V		
$fold_sheet.bottom_page.part.type		CT				V		
$fold_sheet.bottom_page.rlindex		CT				V	RLINDEX	
$fold_sheet.bottom_page.rlpage		CT				V	RLPAGE	
$fold_sheet.folding_scheme		CT				V		IMPSIGNATURE-NAME

Mark Engraver Variables	Page	Fold Sheet	Press Sheet	Image	Sheet	Sheet View	Generic Variables	Preps Variables
$fold_sheet.highest_folio_page.finished_trim_size.height		CT				V		
$fold_sheet.highest_folio_page.finished_trim_size.name		T				V		
$fold_sheet.highest_folio_page.finished_trim_size.width		CT				V		
$fold_sheet.highest_folio_page.part.copy_count_actual		T				V		
$fold_sheet.highest_folio_page.part.copy_count_requested		T				V	COPYCOUNT	
$fold_sheet.highest_folio_page.part.finished_trim_-size.height		CT				V		
$fold_sheet.highest_folio_page.part.finished_trim_-size.name		T				V		
$fold_sheet.highest_folio_page.part.finished_trim_-size.width		CT				V		
$fold_sheet.highest_folio_page.part.name		CT				V	PART	
$fold_sheet.highest_folio_page.part.number_colors		T				V		
$fold_sheet.highest_folio_page.part.process_colors		T				V		
$fold_sheet.highest_folio_page.part.range		CT				V		
$fold_sheet.highest_folio_page.part.spot_colors		T				V		
$fold_sheet.highest_folio_page.part.type		CT				V		
$fold_sheet.highest_folio_page.rlindex		CT				V	RLINDEX	
$fold_sheet.highest_folio_page.rlpage		CT				V	RLPAGE	
$fold_sheet.imposition_type		CT				V		
$fold_sheet.index		CT				V		SIG (Multi Section)
$fold_sheet.lowest_folio_page.finished_trim_size.height		CT				V		
$fold_sheet.lowest_folio_page.finished_trim_size.name		T				V		
$fold_sheet.lowest_folio_page.finished_trim_size.width		CT				V		
$fold_sheet.lowest_folio_page.part.copy_count_actual		T				V		
$fold_sheet.lowest_folio_page.part.copy_count_requested		T				V	COPYCOUNT	
$fold_sheet.lowest_folio_page.part.finished_trim_-size.height		CT				V		
$fold_sheet.lowest_folio_page.part.finished_trim_size.name		T				V		
$fold_sheet.lowest_folio_page.part.finished_trim_size.width		CT				V		
$fold_sheet.lowest_folio_page.part.name		CT				V	PART	
$fold_sheet.lowest_folio_page.part.number_colors		T				V		
$fold_sheet.lowest_folio_page.part.process_colors		T				V		
$fold_sheet.lowest_folio_page.part.range		CT				V		
$fold_sheet.lowest_folio_page.part.spot_colors		T				V		
$fold_sheet.lowest_folio_page.part.type		CT				V		
$fold_sheet.lowest_folio_page.rlindex		CT				V	RLINDEX	

Mark Engraver Variables	Page	Fold Sheet	Press Sheet	Image	Sheet	Sheet View	Generic Variables	Preps Variables
$fold_sheet.lowest_folio_page.rlpage		CT				V	RLPAGE	
$fold_sheet.name		T				X		SIG
$fold_sheet.number		T				X		
$fold_sheet.number_pages		CT				V		
$fold_sheet.top_page.finished_trim_size.height		CT				V		
$fold_sheet.top_page.finished_trim_size.name		T				V		
$fold_sheet.top_page.finished_trim_size.width		CT				V		
$fold_sheet.top_page.part.copy_count_actual		T				V		
$fold_sheet.top_page.part.copy_count_requested		T				V	COPYCOUNT	
$fold_sheet.top_page.part.finished_trim_size.height		CT				V		
$fold_sheet.top_page.part.finished_trim_size.name		CT				V		
$fold_sheet.top_page.part.finished_trim_size.width		CT				V		
$fold_sheet.top_page.part.name		CT				V	PART	
$fold_sheet.top_page.part.number_colors		T				V		
$fold_sheet.top_page.part.process_colors		T				V		
$fold_sheet.top_page.part.range		CT				V		
$fold_sheet.top_page.part.spot_colors		T				V		
$fold_sheet.top_page.part.type		CT				V		
$fold_sheet.top_page.rlindex		CT				V	RLINDEX	
$fold_sheet.top_page.rlpage		CT				V	RLPAGE	
$press_sheet								
$press_sheet.cad_layout_name			CT			V		
$press_sheet.cutter.name			CT			V	CUTTER	
$press_sheet.fold_sheet.index			T			V		
$press_sheet.grain			CT			V		
$press_sheet.imposition_type			CT			V		
$press_sheet.index	T	T	CT			V	SIGNATUREINDEX	
$press_sheet.name	T	T	T			V	SHEET	SIG (No Multi Section)
$press_sheet.number	T	T	T			V	SIGNATURENUMBER	
$press_sheet.number_fold_sheets	T	T	CT			V		
$press_sheet.number_images			T	T		V		
$press_sheet.run_length	T	T	T			V	RUNLENGTH	
$press_sheet.side.inksave_set_name			T			X	INKSAVESETNAME	
$press_sheet.side.inkset			T			X	INKSET	

Mark Engraver Variables	Page	Fold Sheet	Press Sheet	Image	Sheet	Sheet View	Generic Variables	Preps Variables
$press_sheet.side.number_colors	T	T	CT			V		
$press_sheet.side.press.name	T	T	CT			V	PRESS	PRESS
$press_sheet.side.press.sidelay			C			V		
$press_sheet.side.press_profile			T			X	PRESSPROFILE	
$press_sheet.side.process_colors	T	T	CT			V		
$press_sheet.side.production_set.name	T	T	T			X	PRODSET	
$press_sheet.side.production_set.prefix	T	T	T			X	PRODSETPREFIX	
$press_sheet.side.side	T	T	CT			V	SIDE	SIDE
$press_sheet.side.side_a	T	T	CT			V	SIDEA	
$press_sheet.side.spot_colors	T	T	CT			V		
$press_sheet.size.height	T	T	CT			V		
$press_sheet.size.name	T	T	CT			V		
$press_sheet.size.width	T	T	CT			V		
$press_sheet.stock.name	T	T	CT			V		
$press_sheet.stock.weight	T	T	CT			V		
$press_sheet.web_index	T	T	CT			V		
$press_sheet.web_number	T	T	T			V	WEB	
$press_sheet.wps			CT			V		
$press_sheet.work_style	T	T	CT			V	WORKSTYLE	WORKSTYLE
$sheet								
$sheet.cad_layout_name					CT	V		
$sheet.cutter.name					CT	V	CUTTER	
$sheet.cutter.type					C	V		
$sheet.finishing_margins					CT	V		
$sheet.grain					CT	V		
$sheet.media.name					CT	V	MEDIANAME	
$sheet.media.thickness					CT	X	MEDIATHICKNESS	
$sheet.media.type					CT	V	MEDIATYPE	
$sheet.name				T	T	V	SIGNATURE - SHEET	SIG
$sheet.number_images				T	CT	V		
$sheet.press.name				T	CT	V	PRESS	PRESS
$sheet.press.sidelay					C	V		
$sheet.run_length				T	CT	V	RUNLENGTH	
$sheet.side.side				T	CT	V	SIDE	
$sheet.size.height				T	CT	V		

Mark Engraver Variables	Page	Fold Sheet	Press Sheet	Image	Sheet	Sheet View	Generic Variables	Preps Variables
$sheet.size.name				T	T	V		
$sheet.size.width				T	CT	V		
$sheet_side								
$sheet_side.side				T	CT	V	SIDE	SIDE
$output								
$output.calibration_curve	T	T	T			X	CALCURVE	
$output.cpm					CT	X	CPM	
$output.device	T	T	T			X	DEVICE	
$output.horizontal_scale	T	T	T			X	HSCALE	
$output.linearization_curve	T	T	T			X	LINCURVE	
$output.printdate	T	T	T	T	T	X	PRINTDATE	DATE
$output.printmode					CT	X	PRINTMODE	
$output.printtime	T	T	T	T	T	X	PRINTTIME	TIME
$output.quality					T	X	QUALITY	
$output.resolution	T	T	T		T	X	RESOLUTION	
$output.scale	T	T	T			X	SCALE	
$output.separation	T	T	T			X	SEPARATION	COLOR - SEPARA-TION
$output.sheetversion.index			T			X	SHEETVERSIONINDEX	
$output.sheetversion.name			T			X	SHEETVERSION	
$output.simulation_curve	T	T	T			X	SIMCURVE	
$output.size.height			T		T	V		
$output.size.name			T		T	V		
$output.size.width			T		T	V		
$output.slug<i>	T	T	T			X	SLUG<i>	
$output.tray	T	T	T			X	TRAY	
$output.version.element<i>	T	T	T			X	VERSIONELEMENT<i>	
$output.version.element_name<i>	T	T	T			X	VERSIONELEMENT-NAME<i>	
$output.version.index	T	T	T			X	VERSIONINDEX	VERSIONINDEX
$output.version.name	T	T	T			X	VERSION	VERSION
$output.version.short_name	T	T	T			X	VERSIONSHORT	VERSIONSHORT
$output.vertical_scale	T	T	T			X	VSCALE	

Mark Engraver Variables	Page	Fold Sheet	Press Sheet	Image	Sheet	Sheet View	Generic Variables	Preps Variables
$administration								
$administration.comments	CT	CT	CT	CT	CT	X	COMMENTS	COMMENT
$administration.comments_<i>	CT	CT	CT	CT	CT	X	COMMENTS_<i>	REMARK_LINE_<i>
$administration.contact.email	T	T	T	T	T	X	CONTACTEMAIL	CONTACTEMAIL - CONTACTMAIL
$administration.contact.first	T	T	T	T	T	X	CONTACTFIRST	CUSTOMER
$administration.contact.last	T	T	T	T	T	X	CONTACTLAST	CUSTOMER
$administration.contact.mobile	T	T	T	T	T	X	CONTACTMOBILE	CONTACTMOBILE
$administration.contact.phone	T	T	T	T	T	X	CONTACTPHONE	
$administration.contact.title	T	T	T	T	T	X	CONTACTTITLE	CONTACTTITLE
$administration.customer.address	T	T	T	T	T	X	COMPANYADDRESS	ADDRESS
$administration.customer.city	T	T	T	T	T	X	COMPANYCITY	CITY
$administration.customer.country	T	T	T	T	T	X	COMPANYCOUNTRY	COUNTRY
$administration.customer.name	CT	CT	CT	CT	CT	X	COMPANY	COMPANY
$administration.customer.phone	T	T	T	T	T	X	COMPANYPHONE	PHONE
$administration.customer.state	T	T	T	T	T	X	COMPANYSTATE	STATE
$administration.customer.zip	T	T	T	T	T	X	COMPANYZIP	POSTCODE - POSTALCODE
$administration.description	CT	CT	CT	CT	CT	X	DESCRIPTION	DESCRIPTION
$system								
$system.date	T	T	T	T	T	X	DATE	
$system.time	T	T	T	T	T	X	TIME	
$jdf								
$jdf.customer_id	T	T	T			X	JDF_CUSTOMERID	
$jdf.descriptive_name			T			X	JDF_DESCRIPTIVENAME	
$jdf.job_description	T	T	T			X	JDF_JOBDESCRIPTION	
$jdf.job_name	T	T	T			X	JDF_JOBNAME	
$jdf.order_description	T	T	T			X	JDF_ORDERDESCRIPTION	
$jdf.order_number	T	T	T			X	JDF_ORDERNUMBER	
$jdf.part_version	T	T	T			X	JDF_PARTVERSION	
$jdf.product_id	T	T	T			X	JDF_PRODUCTID	
$jdf.project_id	T	T	T			X	JDF_PROJECTID	
$jdf.separation	T	T	T			X	JDF_SEPARATION	

Mark Engraver Variables	Page	Fold Sheet	Press Sheet	Image	Sheet	Sheet View	Generic Variables	Preps Variables
$jdf.sheet	T	T	T			X	JDF_SHEET	
$jdf.signature	T	T	T			X	JDF_SIGNATURE	
$job								
$job.date	T	T	T	T	T	X	JOBDATE	JOBDATE
$job.id	T	T	T	T	T	X	JOBID	
$job.name	CT	CT	CT	CT	CT	V	JOB	JOBNAME - JOB_TI-TLE
$job.nr	T	T	T	T	T	X	JOBNR	
$job.operator	CT	CT	CT	CT	CT	V	OPERATOR	OPERATOR
$job.order	CT	CT	CT	CT	CT	V	ORDER	JOBID
$job.ticket_name	T	T	T			X	TICKETNAME	
$job.time	T	T	T	T	T	X	JOBTIME	JOBTIME
$job.total_pages	T	T	T			V	TOTALPAGES	
$job.total_products	T	T	T			V	TOTALPRODUCTS	
$job.total_sheets	T	T	T			V	TOTALSHEETS	
$apogee								
$apogee.computer	T	T	T	T	T	X	COMPUTER	
$apogee.displayname	T	T	T	T	T	X	PRODUCTDISPLAY-NAME	
$apogee.name	T	T	T	T	T	X	PRODUCTNAME	PRODUCTNAME
$apogee.system	T	T	T	T	T	X	SYSTEM	SYSTEM
$apogee.systemcomputer	T	T	T	T	T	X	SYSTEMCOMPUTER	SYSTEMCOMPUTER
$apogee.vendor	T	T	T	T	T	X	PRODUCTVENDOR	
$apogee.version	T	T	T	T	T	X	PRODUCTVERSION	PRODUCTVERSION
$apogee.version_major	T	T	T	T	T	X	PRODUCTVERSIONMA-JOR	
$apogee.version_minor	T	T	T	T	T	X	PRODUCTVERSIONMI-NOR	

APPENDIX B

Keyboard Shortcuts

This section lists the shortcut keys that can be used on Windows workstations.

▷ Job Ticket Editor 730
▷ Jobs Window 732
▷ Layout Editor and Product Editor 737

Job Ticket Editor

Switch Tabs

The following shortcut keys can be used to switch between tabs in the Jobs and Job Ticket Editor windows.

To switch between tabs...	Press (Windows)
Select the next tab.	CTRL + Tab
Select the previous tab.	SHIFT + CTRL + Tab

Job List Shortcuts

The following shortcut keys can be used in the Job List.

To...	Press (Windows)
Expand all jobs.	CTRL + click the '+' icon of a collapsed job
Collapse all open jobs.	CTRL + click the '-' icon of a collapsed job or simply CTRL + F5
Purge a job (complete 1-step delete)	SHIFT + Delete or Delete
Edit a job.	CTRL + Enter (Numeric keypad)
Move cursor to Quick Filter text field (Find job).	CTRL + F

Page Store/Run List Shortcuts

The following shortcut keys can be used in the Pages tab, when editing the Run List.

To...	Press (Windows)
Fill a placeholder with a blank page.	CTRL + B
Jump to a specific Run List position.	# + Run List position number (do not press simultaneously)

When dragging pages from the Page Store to the Run List...	Press (Windows)
To replace pages in the Run List.	SHIFT + drag
To insert pages in the Run List.	ALT + drag
To reverse the order of the pages when dragging in the Run List.	Drag and briefly press R
To reverse the order of the selected placed pages in the Run List.	CTRL +SHIFT + R
To select even placeholders	E
To select odd placeholders	O

When dragging pages within the Run List...	Press (Windows)
To replace pages in the Run List.	SHIFT + drag
To insert pages in the Run List.	ALT + drag
To copy pages in the Run List.	CTRL + drag

Plate Set-up (versioning jobs)

These shortcuts are available in the plate set-up tab of the Versioning task processor in the Plan tab.

To...	Press (Windows)
Switch to a next version, or the first one if on \`all versions'. Does not wrap around, and does not select \`all versions' if on the last version.	CTRL +]
Switch to a previous version, or the last one if on \`all versions'. Does not wrap around, and does not select \`all versions' if on the first version.	CTRL + [
Show all versions.	CTRL + \
To select/clear a range of version-dependent plates.	ALT + click a plate
To set every version in the selected rows to a specific version.	ALT + select a specific version in the Version list
To set every version in the selected rows to its own version.	ALT + select Own Version at the top of the Version list

To...	Press (Windows)
Expand a selection.	SHIFT
Exclude from a selection.	CTRL
Clear a selection.	CTRL + SHIFT + A

Imposition and From Template Shortcuts

The following shortcut keys can be used in the Signature Selection section of the Imposition settings.

To...	Press (Windows)
Refresh all templates.	ALT + Refresh
In the Available Signatures list: • Select a single signature.	Enter
In the Selected Signatures list: • Find in Available Signatures list.	Enter
In the Selected Signatures list: • Move selected Signatures.	CTRL + Up/Down arrow

Resource Editors

To...	Press (Windows)
To lock and unlock the settings of a resource (padlock button)	CTRL + l

Jobs Window

NOTE: Refer to the separate section for the Apogee Impose menu shortcuts.

Asecuri Menu Shortcuts

The following Asecuri menu shortcut keys can be used.

To...	Press (Windows)
Quit the Asecuri Client.	ALT + F4
Display Preferences.	CTRL + ,

File Menu Shortcuts

The following File menu shortcut keys can be used.

To...	Press (Windows)
Open a new print layout.	CTRL + N
Open the Ticket Template dialog box.	CTRL + N
Open the JTE with the default ticket template selected.	CTRL + ALT + N
Open the Layout Editor with the default wide format job ticket template	CTRL + SHIFT + ALT + N
Select and open a previously saved ticket (*.ajt).	CTRL + O
Close the current window. Close all windows.	ALT + F4
Save the current ticket (Ticket Editor only).	CTRL + S
Save the ticket with a different name (Ticket Editor only).	CTRL + SHIFT + S
Save the ticket as a Ticket Template (Ticket Editor only).	CTRL + ALT + S
Submit a new Ticket to the Asecuri System, or submit the changes you've made to an existing job (Ticket Editor only).	CTRL + SHIFT + G
Log on to an Asecuri System, or to log off from one.	CTRL + K
Upload a document.	CTRL + U
Open in WebApproval	CTRL + SHIFT + M

Edit Menu Shortcuts

The following Edit menu shortcut keys can be used.

To...	Press (Windows)
Undo the last Cut, Copy, or Paste operation.	CTRL + Z
Delete the selected text, and copy it onto the clipboard.	CTRL + X
Copy the selected text onto the clipboard.	CTRL + C
Paste the contents of the clipboard at the selected location.	CTRL + V
Delete the current selection.	Delete
Delete Task Processor and Following.	ALT + Delete
Edit the selected item.	CTRL + ENTER
Display the selected item using the default viewer.	ENTER
Edit job's imposition	CTRL + SHIFT + ENTER

To...	Press (Windows)
Duplicate a job.	CTRL + D
Merge Jobs.	CTRL + Y
Rename the selected item.	F2
Select all items in the current view.	CTRL + A
Deselect all items in the current view.	CTRL + SHIFT + A
Find in Page Store.	CTRL + ALT + F
Find the selected page in the Results pane.	CTRL + ALT + SHIFT + F
Find plate identity.	CTRL + H
Open the “Create Part” dialog box for creating a new part (Product tab only).	CTRL + N
Set the page size of the selected/associated part(s) to the size of the first placed page in the part’s range in the run list (Product tab only).	CTRL + SHIFT + Z
Set the name of the selected/associated part(s) to the file name of the first placed page in the part’s range in the run list (Product tab only).	CTRL + SHIFT + X
Set the page size and name of the selected/associated part(s) (Product tab only).	CTRL + SHIFT + C
Open the “Adjust Offset” dialog box for the selected page(s)/placeholder(s).	CTRL + ALT + SHIFT + O
Open the “Adjust Scale” dialog box for the selected page(s)/placeholder(s).	CTRL + ALT + SHIFT + S
Open the “Adjust Rotation” dialog box for the selected page(s)/placeholder(s).	CTRL + ALT + SHIFT + R
Remove all adjustments to a page at once.	Delete
Put a blank page in the selected placeholder(s).	CTRL + B
Enter Run List position comments	ALT + ;
Reverse Page Order	CTRL + SHIFT + R
Preferences	CTRL + ,

Control Menu Shortcuts

The following Control menu shortcut keys can be used.

To...	Press (Windows)
Continue	CTRL + G

View Menu Shortcuts

The following View menu shortcut keys can be used.

To...	Press (Windows)
Display thumbnail images of all pages in the Job Layout pane.	CTRL + SHIFT+ T
View Flats Only.	CTRL + SHIFT + F
View Extra information.	CTRL + T
Scale Small.	CTRL + -
Scale Normal.	CTRL + 0
Scale Large.	CTRL + +
Scale Fit to Window.	CTRL + ALT + 0
View Page Labels.	CTRL + SHIFT + L
Display the run list indexes next to the numbers in run list.	CTRL + SHIFT + N
View Extended Page Adjustments.	CTRL + SHIFT + E
Columns Front or Back	N/A
Columns Fill Width	N/A
Show/hide Devices pane	CTRL + ALT + 1
Show/hide Job List pane	CTRL + ALT + 2
Show/hide Flow Activity pane	CTRL + ALT + 3
Show/hide Production Sets pane	CTRL + ALT + 4
Show/hide Separations pane	CTRL + ALT + 5
View All Versions	CTRL + \
View Previous Version	CTRL + [
View Next Version	CTRL +]

Raster Preview View Menu Shortcuts

The following Raster Preview menu shortcut keys can be used.

To...	Press (Windows)
Zoom In.	CTRL + +
Zoom Out.	CTRL + -
Size to Fit.	CTRL + 0
Show Actual Pixels.	CTRL + ALT + 0
Toggle full screen mode	F or F11
Show Info.	CTRL + I
Show / Hide Grid.	CTRL + ALT + ‘
Next Sheet.	Right arrow

To...	Press (Windows)
Previous Side.	Left arrow
First Side.	Home
Last Side.	End
Turn Sheet.	CTRL + T
Previous Version	CTRL + [
Next Version	CTRL +]
Color-Managed.	ALT + C
Light Table.	ALT + L
Toggle depth-map mode	ALT + H
Toggle Web-growth compensation mode	ALT + G
Display annotations	ALT + A
Toggle the display of the selected Rule-ups.	ALT + R
Press Sheet.	ALT + P
Device Output.	ALT + D
Transform -> Rotate 90 CW.	ALT + T
Transform -> Rotate 90 CCW.	ALT + SHIFT + T
Transform -> Flip Horizontal.	ALT + F
Transform -> Flip Horizontal.	ALT + SHIFT + F
Invert	ALT + SHIFT + I

Raster Preview Tool Toggle Shortcuts

The following Raster Preview tool toggle shortcut keys can be used.

To...	Press (Windows)
Toggle on/off the Marquee tool.	M
Toggle on/off the Hand tool.	H
Toggle on/off the Zoom tool.	Z
Toggle on/off the Measurement tool.	I

Window Menu Shortcuts

The following Window menu shortcut keys can be used.

To...	Press (Windows)
Minimize the current window.	N/A
Display the System Overview.	CTRL + 1
Display the Hot Tickets window.	CTRL + 2
Display the Jobs window.	CTRL + 3

To...	Press (Windows)
Display the Message Board.	CTRL + 4
Display Info for <selected item>.	CTRL + I
Display Activity for <selected item>.	CTRL + J
Display Remarks	CTRL + R
Palettes: Show Navigator	CTRL+ ALT+ A
Palettes: Show Inks	CTRL+ ALT+ I
Palettes: Show Rule-ups	CTRL+ ALT+ U
Palettes: Show Versions	CTRL+ ALT+ V
Palettes: Hide Tools	CTRL+ ALT+ T
Display the Log for <selected item>.	CTRL + L
Cycle forward through Windows or Raster Preview palettes.	TAB
Cycle backward through Windows or Raster Preview palettes.	N/A
Display Problem Report for selected job.	CTRL + SHIFT + I
Display Preflight Report for selected job.	CTRL + E

Help Menu Shortcuts

The following Help menu shortcut keys can be used.

To...	Press (Windows)
Display the Asecuri Help.	F1
Display the What's This? Help.	SHIFT + F1

Layout Editor and Product Editor

Menu Shortcuts

To	Press
Add Product	CTRL + SHIFT + O
Get Info	CTRL + I
Show Preflight Report	CTRL + E
Open in Production Center	CTRL + SHIFT + M
Open in Production Dashboard	CTRL + SHIFT + D
Submit	CTRL + SHIFT + G
Undo last action	CTRL + Z

To	Press
Redo last undone action	CTRL + Y
Remove selected object(s) and store in clipboard	CTRL + X
Copy selected object(s) to pasteboard	CTRL + C
Paste contents of pasteboard: frame or group onto a sheet, separation on a product.	CTRL + V
Delete selected object(s).	Del
Place additional copy of the placed items on the sheet in the next available position. If there is not enough room, the items will be added into a new sheet.	CTRL + D
Step and Repeat	CTRL + ALT + S
Create or Edit Grid.	CTRL + ALT + G
Select All	CTRL + A
Select None	CTRL + SHIFT + A
Group the selected items	CTRL + G
Ungroup the selected items	CTRL + U
Auto-Layout Products	CTRL + N
New Empty Sheet Layout/Printer Layout	CTRL + SHIFT + N
Rearrange frames on a sheet layout/sheet layouts on a printer layout	CTRL + SHIFT + F
Rearrange all frames in job	CTRL + ALT +SHIFT + F
Reapply marks	CTRL + ALT + SHIFT + M
Reapply all mark sets in Job	CTRL + SHIFT + M
Fix bleed overlaps	CTRL + ALT + M
Zoom into layout	CTRL + + OR CTRL + mouse wheel
Zoom out of layout	CTRL + - OR CTRL + mouse wheel
Zoom to fit layout in window	CTRL + 0 (zero)
Display the System Overview.	CTRL + 1
Display the Jobs window.	CTRL + 3
Open the Media Hub	CTRL + ALT + 1
Open the Finishing Hub	CTRL + ALT + 2
Open the Mark Engraver	CTRL + ALT + 3
Open the Sheet Sizes	CTRL + ALT + 4
Open the Page Sizes	CTRL + ALT + 5
Open the Color Books	CTRL + ALT + 6
Open the Sheet Layout Templates	CTRL + ALT + 7

To	Press
Align pin sets	CTRL + ALT + 8
Show/hide the Snag List	CTRL + R
Show/hide View Options	CTRL + SHIFT + E
Show/hide Presets	CTRL + SHIFT + P
Show/hide Inspector Panel	CTRL + SHIFT + I
Show/hide Product Panel	CTRL + ALT + I
Open the Job Set-up Inspector	ALT + 1
Open the Frame Inspector	ALT + 2
Open the Color Inspector	ALT + 3
Open the Mark Sets Inspector	ALT + 4
Open the Sheet Inspector	ALT + 5

Placing and arranging images on a sheet

NOTE: Some of these shortcuts can also be used for placing sheets on printer layouts.

To	Drag the image and
Place one or more images at the cursor position without ganging them.	Hold SHIFT and release
Switch between snapping to margins (magenta snap guides) and snapping to edges (blue snap guides).	Press ALT
Restrain movement horizontally and vertically.	Hold SHIFT
Cancel the image placement.	Press ESC
Rotate one or more images 90° counterclockwise, while moving them	Press space bar once
Copy a selected image.	Press CTRL + C
Paste a copied image.	Press CTRL + V
Center an image on the current sheet or on a new sheet if the current one is not empty. Multiple selected images are centered on individual sheets.	Press C
Center an image on the current sheet even if it is not empty. Multiple selected images are centered on individual sheets.	Press SHIFT + C
Duplicate one or more selected images according to the copy count and gang the images on the current and new sheets.	Press N
Duplicate one or more selected images according to the copy count and gang the images on the current and new sheets but starting at the cursor position.	Press SHIFT + N

To	Drag the image and
Duplicate one or more selected images according to the copy count and center the images on the current sheet if empty and on new sheets.	Press N + C or Press SHIFT + N + C
Duplicate the selected image and fill the current sheet if empty. Fill one sheet for each image if multiple images are selected.	Press F
Duplicate a selected image and gang the images with existing images on the current sheet to fill the sheet. Selecting multiple images fills multiple sheets.	Press SHIFT + F
Duplicate the selected image and fill and center on the current sheet if empty. Fill one sheet for each image if multiple images are selected.	Press F + C or Press SHIFT + F + C
Rotate the selected image or images clockwise.	Press R
Rotate the selected image or images counterclockwise.	Press SHIFT + R
Mirror the selected image or images clockwise.	Press M
Mirror the selected image or images counterclockwise.	Press SHIFT + M

Toolbar tools

Selection tool: To select a component or area and display its properties. This is the default tool.	A
Single Instance Selection tool: To select a single instance of marks which are placed at various locations, or part of a compound mark. In the Paths inspector: selects a path and its anchor points.	D
Pan tool: To pan layouts in the Layout Editor.	H
Zoom tool: To zoom into a specific area of a layout.	Z
Frame tool: To draw empty frames on a sheet.	F
Measurements tool. Use this tool to make measurements on the Press Sheet.	ALT+ M
Clear Measurements tool (only activated if the sheet has measurements). Click to remove all measurements displayed on the Press Sheet.	CTRL + ALT+ M
View Options palette button: Shows/hides the View Options palette.	CTRL SHIFT+E
Marks palette button: Shows/hides the Marks palette.	CTRL+M
Presets (Licensed feature): To open the Presets dialog box.	CTRL SHIFT+P
Crop image: Activates the crop mode to crop an image (Image inspector in the Product Editor).	K
Split tool: Activates the Split tool to split an image into tiles (Tiling inspector in the Product Editor).	K
Pen tool: Activates the Pen for drawing free-form paths on an image and adding/deleting points of existing paths (Paths inspector in the Product Editor).	P

Ellipse Path tool: Activates the Ellipse Path tool to draw ellipse and circle paths on an image (Paths inspector in the Product Editor).	L
Rectangle Path tool: Activates the Rectangle Path tool to draw rectangle paths on an image (Paths inspector in the Product Editor).	R
Zoom slider with Zoom to fit and Zoom to maximum buttons, and drop-down list with zoom presets	CTRL +/-

Split Tool Shortcuts

Activate the Split tool by pressing K with the Tiling inspector selected. To control the splitting of tiles selected with the Split tool, use the following shortcuts.

To	Press
Change the splitting orientation (the magenta splitting line)	Space bar or TAB key once
Extend the splitting action across all tiles	Hold SHIFT
Repeat the split.	CTRL
Cancel the image splitting	ESC

Path Editing Shortcuts

In the Paths inspector, activate the Pen tool by pressing P, the Rectangle tool with R and the Ellipse tool with L. To draw paths with these tools, use the following shortcuts.

To	Press
Draw a square with the Rectangle tool	R
Draw a circle with the Ellipse tool	L

Positioning Toolbar Shortcuts

To control the Positioning toolbar when a tile is selected with Selection tool:

To	
Open the Split Tile dialog box	CTRL + U
Mirror the tile vertically when placed on a sheet	SHIFT + M
Mirror the tile horizontally when placed on a sheet	M

To	
Rotate the tile clockwise in steps of 90°	SHIFT + R
Rotate the tile anticlockwise in steps of 90°	R
Merge the selected tiles	CTRL+ G
Place the cursor in the first Overlap box of the Positioning toolbar	O
Place the cursor in the first Gap box of the Positioning toolbar	G
Jump to next box in the Positioning toolbar	TAB

APPENDIX C

Icons Overview

This section contains a list of icons that appear in the user interface.

▷ Main Windows 744
▷ Layout Editor and Product Editor 763

Main Windows

Job Notification Icons

 The Asecuri system issued a critical system message.

 The job has stopped pending user interaction.

 The job has generated an error, and has stopped.

 The job has generated a warning.

 WebApproval remark: A remark on this job (or results) has been received from WebApproval.

 The job has generated an information message.

Job Status Icons (including Page Store jobs)

 The job is being archived or dumped.

 The job is being imported from archive.

 The job is being deleted.

 Asecuri is queuing all commands for this job.

 The document is being edited (it is ‘checked out’).

 The job is being edited by another user.

 The Run List is being edited by another user.

 You are editing the job.

 You are editing the Run List.

 The job is finished.

 The job was broken during editing. You can remove this icon by opening the job for editing.

- The job has been manually put on hold.
- The job output is waiting for the correct media to be loaded on the output device.
- The job is waiting for a Task Processor (none currently available).
- A group of results is complete, and is waiting to be printed (blue icon).
- The result is waiting for a hard proof.
- The result is waiting for a web proof.
- The job is waiting for a soft proof.
- A task has been aborted.
- The task has been manually put on hold.
- New (unplaced) documents are available in the (Private) Page Store.
- The job is waiting for results.
- Not all the results of a group are yet available (green icon).
- The job is waiting for After Hours processing.
- Some results have been rejected by the user.
- The layout/imposition is not yet defined.
- The job has reached a Milestone: The Run List is not complete. This Milestone was set up in the Options tab.
- The job has reached a Milestone: The job deadline has been reached. This Milestone was set up in the Options tab.
- The job has reached a Milestone: The result is not available in time. This Milestone was set up using a Milestone Action in the Production Plan.
- The job is managed by PlateMaker (ready to plate). The PlateMaker client will take care of further plate production.
- A job that has been merged

 A merged job: The job resulting from the merging of two or more other jobs.

 Job is a recurring job.

 A StoreFront job: The job was generated by StoreFront.

Job Status Icons in Tab Area (JTE only)

 The job is being viewed by you or by another user (JTE only).

 The job is being edited by another user.

 You are editing the job.

 The selected job was being edited by you or by another user, but the edit session was broken (Jobs window only). You can remove this icon by opening the job for editing.

 The job has remarks.

Job List Icons

 Job group.

 Commercial job with incomplete Run List.

 Commercial job with complete Run List.

 Rush job (Commercial jobs only).

 Commercial job with disabled input channel.

 Commercial job is scheduled to be archived when it is finished (Options tab).

 Commercial job has been archived.

 Commercial job is scheduled to be deleted when it is finished (Options tab).

 Commercial job has been deleted.

 Commercial job is scheduled to be archived and deleted when it is finished (Options tab).

 Commercial job has been archived and deleted.

Hot List Icons

 Commercial Hot Ticket.

 Commercial Hot Ticket with a disabled input channel.

 Job that requires set-up by Printer (WebApproval jobs only)

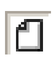
 Collecting Hot Tickets (tickets grouped in separate panel)

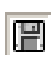
Flow Icons

 Main Output to a high resolution output device.

 Main Output to a Sign and Display output device.

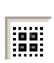
 Imposition Proof: An optional flow which may be added to the Main Output flow, and is used for output to an imposition proofing device.

 Page Proof: An optional flow which may be added to the Main Output flow, and is used for output to a page proofing device.

 Export: An optional or alternate flow to the Main Output flow, used for exporting job results to file in PDF or PostScript format.

 Public Page Store: An optional or alternate flow to the Main Output flow, used for storing job results in a Public Page Store.

 Display: An optional or alternate flow to the Main Output flow, used to create job results for high-resolution soft proofing.

 Digital Quick Strip (DQS): An alternate mode of operation which supports the PrintDrive DQS mode of Apogee Series3. In this mode, Asecuri creates and renders the flat backgrounds and pages separately. These are then sent as separate items to PrintDrive. PrintDrive assembles the pages onto the backgrounds, and then outputs the results as an integral job.

 Collecting Hot Ticket: Uses the Collect TP to collect images and create special Hot Tickets.

Flow Icon Color Coding


A white background color indicates that this flow is idle.


A green background color indicates that this flow is currently active.


A blue background color indicates that this flow is on hold.


A yellow background color indicates that this flow contains tasks which are queued and waiting to be processed.


A white background color with a green checkmark indicates that this flow has finished.


A red background color indicates that this flow has generated an error.


A purple background color indicates that further handling of this flow has been taken over by PlateRunner (Main flow only). For more details, refer to the PlateRunner documentation.

Filter Buttons

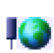

Job Filter not applied.


Job Filter applied.

Flow Control Actions


Discard


Wait for Results


Web Proof


Soft Proof


Hard Copy Proof


Collect for Output


After Hours

Result Actions

 Keep Result

 Archive Result

 Notify

 Milestone

Page Store / Run List Icons

 PDF / PostScript composite document.

 PDF / PostScript composite page.

 PDF / PostScript pre-separated document.

 PDF / PostScript pre-separated page.

 Raster composite document.

 Raster composite page.

 Raster pre-separated document.

 Raster pre-separated page.

 A red-colored icon indicates that the document or page has been processed with errors.

 An icon with a red stripe indicates that the document or page has been rejected.

 A blue-colored icon indicates that the document or page is on hold.

 A Public Page Store (Page Store only).

 Empty placeholder (Run List only).

 Blank page (Run List only).

 Job processing is not yet complete in the Production Plan before the Run List.

 Unknown document.

 Page imposition has been adjusted (Run List only).

 (in Run List status column of normal job). The page has a preflight report. Clicking on the icon will open the report in your PDF viewer.

 (in Run List status column of versioning job). One or more pages in this row have a preflight report. Clicking on the icon will bring up a menu which contains the titles of the objects to which the preflight reports are attached. Selecting one of the menu items opens the report in your PDF viewer.

 (in Run List status column of job). The page has generated a preflight error. Clicking on the icon will open the Problem Report.

 (in Run List status column of job). The page has generated a preflight warning. Clicking on the icon will open the Problem Report.

 PDF is certified.

 PDF is not certified.

 Document is being edited interactively within Asecuri using the Check-Out plug-in for Acrobat or any other PDF Viewer/Editor application such as the Amfortis Editor.

 Document has been edited interactively within Asecuri using the Check-Out plug-in for Acrobat or any other PDF Viewer/Editor application such as the Amfortis Editor.

 Document page size does not match the page trim size set for the product or part.

PDF Layer icons (Versioning jobs)

 A single PDF layer from a page, without errors.

 A single PDF layer from a page, with errors.

 A single PDF layer from a page, on hold before reaching the Run List.

 A single PDF layer from a page, which has been rejected.

Plate Set Indicators (Versioning jobs)

A full bar indicates that one or more of the side versions to which this page contributes will have a full set of plates made.

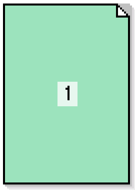
A half full bar indicates that one or more of the side versions to which this page contributes will have a partial set of plates made.

An empty bar indicates that none of the side versions to which this page contributes will have any plates made.

Extended Page Adjustment Icons

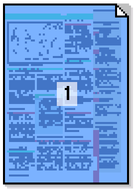
	Center	Offset	Scale	Rotate
Horizontal				
Vertical				
Both				
Auto-center				
90				
180				
270				

Results - Job Layout Thumbnails



A thumbnail view of this page is either not available, or is currently being retrieved from the Asecuri System (green background color).

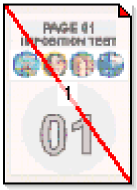
Page has been processed successfully (no background color).



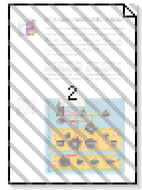
Page has been processed successfully, and is on hold pending approval (blue background color).

Page has been processed with errors (red background color).

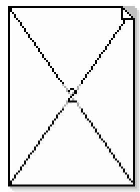
Page is managed by the PlateMaker Client, and is ready to plate (purple background color).



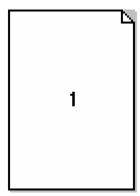
Page has been processed successfully, but has been rejected.



Page has been discarded.



An empty page in the Run List (white background with a cross).



A blank page in the Run List (white background).

Results - Data Indicators

The page/flat belongs to a proofing workflow or a layout job, and is a composite file (i.e., not a separation). The page/flat has been rendered, and is ready for output.

The page/flat belongs to a proofing workflow or a layout job, and is a composite file (i.e., not a separation). The check mark indicates that it has been successfully printed.

A square gray-colored indicator in the lower right corner of the page indicates that all separations have been fully rendered and are ready for previewing or output. Visible for DQS and Raster Impose results when you choose View > Show > Page Rendered.

A small fold in a corner of a page indicates the orientation. The position of the fold tells you where the top of the page is.The orientation of a page may vary in an imposition layout.

The job or flow is finished.

Results - Job Layout Action Icons

The job's Production Plan contains an After Hours Action. When this point is reached, the job results are held (written to disk) pending the specified time.

The job's Production Plan contains a Soft Proof Action. When this point is reached, the job results are held (written to disk) pending approval/rejection of a Digital Film preview by the user.

The job's Production Plan contains a Hard Copy Proof Action. When this point is reached, the job results are held (written to disk) pending approval/ rejection of a hard copy proof by the user.

The job's Production Plan contains a Ready for Plating Action. When this point is reached, the job results are taken over and managed by PlateRunner (ready to plate).

The job's Production Plan contains a Collect for Output Action. When this point is reached, the job results are held (written to disk) pending user intervention.

The job's Production Plan contains a Waiting for Results Action. When this point is reached, the job results are held until the target flow or required pages are finished.

The job's Production Plan contains a Discard Action. When this point is reached, the job results are held until the specified pages have been automatically discarded.

The job's Production Plan contains a Web Proof Action. When this point is reached, the job results are held (written to disk) pending approval/rejection of a Digital Film preview by the remote user.

Result will be frozen once it has been approved by the remote user.

Result has been frozen because it has been approved by the remote user.

Results - Job Layout Action Icon Status

The page or flat has not yet reached this Action.

The page or flat has reached this Action (blue background).

The page or flat has passed this Action (dimmed icon).

Results - Separation/ Composite Indicators in a Normal job

Square outlined separation indicator:
- A process color separation is expected (it has not yet been rendered). In this example, it is the magenta separation.
- The background is available for an Asecuri DQS job.

Square solid separation indicator: A process color separation has been rendered, and is ready for output. In this example, it is the magenta separation.

Checked separation indicator: The separation has been rendered, and has been successfully output. In this example, it is the magenta separation.

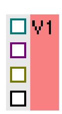
Dimmed separation indicator: The separation has been discarded, and will not be output.

Round outlined separation indicator: A spot color separation is expected (it has not yet been rendered). The outline color is the color of the expected spot color.

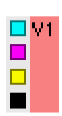
Round solid separation indicator: A spot color separation has been rendered, and is ready for output. The solid color is the spot color.

Checked separation indicator: The spot color separation has been rendered, and has been successfully output.

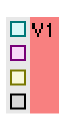
Results - Separation/ Composite Indicators in a Versioning job



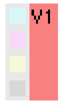
Process colors known but not rendered (round separation indicators for spot colors).



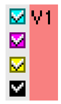
Process color plates from this version to be output (round separation indicators for spot colors).



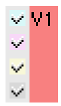
Process color plates from other version to be remade for this version (round separation indicators for spot colors).



Process color plates from other version reused, but not remade (round separation indicators for spot colors).



Process color plates from this version made (round separation indicators for spot colors).



Process color plates from reused (but not remade) version output (round separation indicators for spot colors).

Versioning Icons in the Results Tab

Full bar at the side of the box: A full set of plates will be made for this side.

Half bar at the side of the box: A partial set of plates will be made for this version.

One or more version pages used by the side is not yet available (empty placeholder).

The background and all version pages used by the side are available, but the render data for the whole side is not yet complete.

All render data for the side is available, but not all plates have yet been produced.

Finished state: All plates for the side have been produced.

Error state: Processing of this side has been stopped by an error.

On Hold state: Processing of this side is waiting at a hold point.

This side or one of its separations or pages has been rejected.

This side has been discarded and will not be processed further.

Render - Separate - Color Separation Icons

The color definition was found in the Asecuri Color Books.

The Emulate Overprint option is always on.

The Emulate Overprint option is always off.

The Emulate Overprint option is selected automatically.

The color contains version-specific content.

The color does not contain version-specific content.

The color was found in the job.

The color was manually entered.

The color was manually entered and was found in the job.

The color is directly linked to the selected color

The color is indirectly linked to the selected color.

The color was found in the border or the imposition template.

The color was manually entered, with marks.

Mapped color name as defined by the Pantone mapping settings.

Special color: corresponds with an operation other than the contour-defining one.

Special color: varnish.

Special color: die line.

Special color: other.

Imposition Linked Icon

Indicates that this section is part of a multiple-section signature.

Monitor Status

The monitor status is up to date and the overall display rating is equal or greater than 90% (Excellent).

The monitor status is up to date and the overall display rating is between 80% and 90% (Medium).

The monitor status is up to date and the overall display rating is less than 80% (Bad).

There is no monitor status, or it is out of date (Undefined).

Remark Origin

 Customer remark (WebApproval jobs only).

 Printer remark (WebApproval jobs only).

Remark Type

 An annotation remark created in WebApproval. Click the associated (blue -encircled) annotation number to jump directly to the referenced location in Raster Preview.

 The job has been approved by the corresponding reviewer (printer, customer).

 The job has been rejected by the corresponding reviewer (printer, customer).

 A job remark.

 A page remark.

 Preflight remark

 Preflight remark - warning

 Preflight remark - error

 Internal remark which cannot be seen by the customer

 Remark has attachment (customer remarks only)

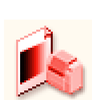
 View file produced after preflight

 View report produced by preflight

Task Processor Color Coding

 The Task Processor is ready, and is currently idle.

 The Task Processor turns green when it is processing a task. For example, the Avantra Task Processor is busy processing a separation.

 The Task Processor turns red if a processing error occurs. In this case an error notification is sent to the Message Board, explaining the nature of the error.

The Task Processor turns blue if it is offline.

When the Task Processor has been stopped (inactive), the icon will have horizontal stripes running through it. You can re-activate it by context-clicking on the icon and selecting Start from the context menu.

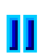
The Task Processor is starting up (moving horizontal stripes).

The Task Processor is locked, because you do not have a license to use it.

A purple arrow is attached to the Task Processor icon if:

- You have a remote license. This means that this Task Processor is not licensed to execute tasks: These tasks are processed remotely on another Asecuri System. However, you can use this Task Processor to specify the settings in the Production Plan.
- A remote proofer is installed (as specified in the installer). The remote proofer is combined with the Remote Proofer Controller Task Processor.

Output Task Processor Hardware Status



Paused: The output engine is able to communicate, but cannot process any tasks. A user interaction has taken place on the device itself to trigger this status.

Disconnected: The output engine's cable has been unplugged.

Warning: The hardware engine requires attention (e.g. ink low), but can still receive tasks.

This platesetter is managed by PlateRunner. The yellow 'sun' patch indicates that the device is in attended state (i.e. A user is logged in to the PlateRunner application).

This platesetter is managed by PlateRunner. The gray 'moon' patch indicates that the device is in unattended state (i.e. no one is logged in to the PlateRunner application).

Error: The hardware engine requires attention - it cannot continue to receive and process tasks until the problem has been resolved (e.g. no ink).

Resource Status Icons

Media: The icon is followed by a name: There is a cassette in the tray but it is not loaded (not active). However, it can be activated by Asecuri. If the name is in bold, the cassette is loaded (active).

Media: The icon is followed by a name: There is a cassette in the tray but it is not loaded (not active). However, it cannot be activated by Asecuri (manual intervention on the engine is required).

Media: There is no cassette in the tray.

Media: There is an unknown problem with the tray.

Dedicated Resource linked uniquely to a specific device: This Resource is not shared between other devices of the same type.

Asecuri Archive Icons in Windows Explorer

Archived Commercial job (.arch)

Archived Public Page Store job (.arch)

Asecuri Ticket Icons in Windows Explorer

Saved Commercial Job Ticket(.ajt)

Saved Commercial Hot Ticket(.aht)

Asecuri Toolbar

Submit job or submit changes to a job.

Delete the selected item.

Edit job.

View <selected item> (Job Ticket Editor only).

Make Blank (page in Run List - Job Ticket Editor only).

Give priority to processing the selected job (Rush job).

 Hold job, or put device offline (System Overview).

 Resume a job on hold, or put device online (System Overview).

 Continue processing <selected item>.

 Reject <selected item>.

 Reprocess job from first.

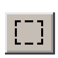
 Re-image <selected item>.

 Enables the selected Hot Ticket (Hot Tickets window only).

 Disables the selected Hot Ticket (Hot Tickets window only).

 Display information about <selected item>.

Preview Palette Tools

 Marquee tool. Allows you to draw a rectangle in the Preview window by clicking and dragging. The ink values for the selected region are measured and displayed in the Inks palette.

 Hand tool. Pans the image, allowing you to view a page that exceeds the size of the Preview window. With this tool selected, click inside the Preview window and drag the image around.

 Zoom tool. Zooms in to the next zoom level in the Preview window. You can zoom out by holding down the Alt key. Alternatively, you can click and drag to zoom into a specified area.

 Measure tool. Measures raster angles, and distances between the raster points. You can also use it to calculate the line ruling of a separation.

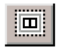
 Next tool: Displays the next side result (e.g. Cover Sig 1 Front > Cover Sig 1 Back > Cover Sig 2 Front > Cover Sig 2 Back etc.). If you hold down the 'C' key while clicking the tool, Asecuri displays the next sheet result (e.g. Cover Sig 1 Back > Cover Sig 2 Back > Cover Sig 3 Back).

 Previous tool: Displays the previous side result. If you hold down the 'C' key while clicking the tool, Asecuri displays the previous sheet result.

 Turn Sheet tool. If your results have 2 sides (front and back), Raster Preview can switch between the two sides. Click this tool (Ctrl-T) to toggle the view (front or back). This tool is disabled if the result only contains one side.

 Info tool. Display information about the selected item.

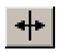
 Light Table tool. Displays or hides blended front and back views of your raster data. This feature only works on the front and backs of the same signature/page.



Rule-Ups tool. Displays or hides additional layers of information on top of the Raster Preview image. The Rule/ups palette contains a table which lists the layers you can display.

Rotate clockwise tool. Rotates the current view 90 degrees clockwise.

Rotate counterclockwise tool. Rotates the current view 90 degrees counterclockwise.

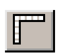


Flip vertical tool. Flips the current view vertically.

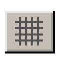
Flip horizontal tool. Flips the current view horizontally.

Invert tool. Inverts the current view (negative).

Color Managed tool. Activates color-managed raster preview. This allows you to preview the rendered result using color management to convert the press color space to the monitor color space (based on ICC profiles).



Show/Hide rulers tool. Shows/Hides ruler coordinates in the units set in your Preferences.



Show/Hide grid lines tool. Shows/Hides grid lines for every major and minor division of the ruler. The default setting is specified in your Preferences.

Approve tool. Approves a previewed result. This tool is disabled if no soft preview has been requested.

Reject tool. Rejects a previewed result. This tool is disabled if no soft preview has been requested.

Other Buttons

Task Processor Settings lock.

Edit

Create New

Delete

Set as default

Duplicate

Export

Import

Auto-fill (Versioning): Automatically fills the version table either with the names of the PDF layers or the names of the documents in the Page Store.

Insert variable

Customer Contact

Approver

Uploader

Viewer

Candidate CSR (Customer Service Representative)

Preferred CSR (Customer Service Representative)

WebApproval account is inactive: the account exists but is not enabled.

WebApproval account is active: the account exists and is enabled.

PrintSphere account is inactive: the account exists but is not enabled.

PrintSphere account is active: the account exists and is enabled.

Layout Editor and Product Editor

Product Status

The design of the product has a contour-defining operation (other than the frame or trim-box).

The product is double-sided.

At least one of the product’s artworks was rejected. In addition, the thumbnail of the rejected artwork is shown with a red diagonal line.

At least one of the product’s artworks has remarks other than rejected.

At least one of the product’s artworks could not be aligned to the design.

At least one of the product’s artworks could not be aligned to the design with great confidence.

The product is Locked or Uniform.

The product requires vertical or horizontal Grain/Flute and there are no placed instances that violate that requirement.

The product requires vertical or horizontal Grain/Flute, but at least one placed instance violates that requirement.

The product has white content, either from the artwork or generated.

The product has varnish content, either from the artwork or generated.

The product has primer content, either from the artwork or generated.

The image is being edited via an external editor.

Indicates that full-gamut color management is applied.

'F' shows the effects of the rotation and mirror attributes (here shown with 90 degrees rotation and no mirroring.

Indicates a preflight report has been generated for the image.

Image preview has been generated (gray) or is being processed (green).

Color adjustments (saturation, contrast, curves) have been made in Preview.

The product has Image Operations that prevent changing the product's size (tiling, canvas extensions, etc.).

There is a notification or snag message present on the product. The icon depicts the severity of the status: error, warning or intervention required.

Colors Inspector

The color will be printed/output ('Print as' check box selected).

The color will not be printed/output ('Print as' check box not selected).

The color is a process color or will be printed as a process color.

The color is a spot color, varnish or white.

The color is mapped to a color from a color book.

The color is taken from the application.

-  The color is mapped to a finishing operation.
-  The color is mapped to a custom color.
-  The color is mapped automatically as defined for the colors of the device.
-  The color is mapped to and depends on another color in the list.

Tools

-  Selection tool: To select a component or area and display its properties. This is the default tool.
-  Single Instance Selection tool: To select a single instance of marks which are placed at various locations, or part of a compound mark. In the Paths inspector: selects a path and its anchor points.
-  Pan tool: To pan layouts in the Layout Editor.
-  Zoom tool: To zoom into a specific area of a layout.
-  Frame tool: To draw empty frames on a sheet.
- Measurements tool. Use this tool to make measurements on the Press Sheet.
-  Clear Measurements tool (only activated if the sheet has measurements). Click to remove all measurements displayed on the Press Sheet.
-  View Options palette button: Shows/hides the View Options palette.
-  Marks palette button: Shows/hides the Marks palette.
-  (Licensed feature) Presets: To open the Presets dialog box.
-  Crop image: Activates the crop mode to crop an image (Image inspector in the Product Editor).
-  Split tool: Activates the Split tool to split an image into tiles (Tiling inspector in the Product Editor).
-  Pen tool: Activates the Pen for drawing free-form paths on an image and adding/deleting points of existing paths (Paths inspector in the Product Editor).


Ellipse Path tool: Activates the Ellipse Path tool to draw ellipse and circle paths on an image (Paths inspector in the Product Editor).


Rectangle Path tool: Activates the Rectangle Path tool to draw rectangle paths on an image (Paths inspector in the Product Editor).


Zoom slider with Zoom to fit and Zoom to maximum buttons, and drop-down list with zoom presets

Sheet Layout

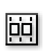

Unlocked sheet layout/frame

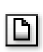

Locked sheet layout/frame.

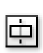
Mark Types


Circle Mark: draws a circle with or without fill color

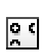

Collation Mark: stepped blocks with the signature number which are used to inspect the correct collation order of folded sheets


Cut-off Mark: lines at the cut-off between Web Production Schemes, on the left and right sides of the web


File Mark: places a specific EPS or PDF file as a mark


Fold Line: draws a set of vertical or horizontal lines that indicate where to fold the sheet


Fotoba Mark: draws horizontal and vertical lines to enable cutting with a Fotoba cutting device.


Grommet Mark: draws sequential marks along the sides of an image or layout. These marks are printed on the layout and indicate where reinforced eyelets can be produced.


Cutter Registration Mark: draws reference dots to enable cutting with X/Y cutting devices.


Line Mark: draws a line


Crop Mark: a horizontal and a vertical line to indicate where the page has to be cropped


Rectangular Mark: draws a rectangle with or without fill color


Registration Mark: draws a series of marks which are used to check that the registration of the different printing colors is correct


Station Number Mark: indicates the station of an instance of a product, i.e. its position on the sheet

Text Mark: prints the job name, order number, color name, etc. on the Press Sheet

Slit Mark: draws a line to indicate where a press sheet is to be cut in ribbons for web printing

Color Bar Mark: generates a bar of color patches, using the colors that are present on the press sheet (offset and wide-format) or in the product.

Density Bar: draws bars of equal density across the full width of the press sheet or along the edges.

Ink-Eater Mark: places a background mark between the products or on the outside of the fold sheets.

Mark Set Conditions

Mark Set is always applied

Mark Set is only applied manually

Mark set is applied when all/some criteria are met

Mark set is applied partially (mark deleted manually for example)

None of the marks of the mark set are applied (marks deleted manually for example).

APPENDIX

D

Context Menu Commands

This section lists the context menu commands.

NOTE: If a menu item is not available in a particular context, it is displayed as grayed-out.

- Job List Context Menu Commands 770
- Job List Filter Context Menu Commands 772
- Layout Editor 772
- Product Editor - Presets 773
- Hot Ticket List Context Menu Commands 774

Job List Context Menu Commands

You can directly issue commands by context-clicking on items in the Job List. The following table lists the items that may be displayed when you context-click a Job Folder or Job.

Context Menu Item	Description
New From Selected	Opens the Job Ticket Editor with an empty Administration tab but with the same plan, imposition, etc.
Save As...	Allows you to save the job with a different name
Save As Template...	Allows you the save the job as a Ticket Template.
Upload Document	Allows you to add a file or a folder containing files to a job or Public Page Store. When you upload a folder, Asecuri uploads all files and folders in that folder recursively. The uploaded folder appears as a subfolder in the Page Store.
Invite PrintSphere Uploader	Invites a collaborator to upload files for the job to the PrintSphere cloud server. Only for a PrintSphere job.
Submit Changes	Submits the changes you have made to a job.
Archive Job	Saves the selected job items to file (.arch).
Stop Archiving/Importing	Stops archiving or importing the selected job.
Export...	• Run List - Exports the entire run list as a single PDF file. A "Save As' dialog prompts for a location and file name (job name as default). Run list must be complete (blanks allowed). • Job Dump - Similar to Archive Job, but only accessible by administrators for troubleshooting purposes (only for jobs, not for Hot Tickets). • Job Log - Exports the log file for the selected job. • Input JDF - Exports the input JDF that created the job. • CAD Files - Export all CAD files (layout and 1-up) that were imported in the job. • InkDrive - Exports the InkDrive files for the selected job (only available when the job has InkDrive files). • File list - Exports a tab-delimited text file listing the used pages/products. • Imposition Layout - Exports the Imposition Layout and Marks files for the selected job (only available when the job has received layout information 'from Input').
Open in ProductionCenter	Opens the selected job in the ProductionCenter web application.
Open in Production Dashboard	Opens the selected job in the Production Dashboard web application
Delete Job	Deletes the current job(s).
Edit Job	Displays the selected job using the default editor (Job Ticket Editor or Layout Editor), where you can modify it.

Context Menu Item	Description
Edit Production Plan	Opens the JTE Window in Production Plan tab for the selected job (Service access level only).
Edit Imposition	Opens the Apogee Impose module to edit the imposition of the job.
Export Imposition Report	Opens the Imposition Mock-up and Report dialog.
Duplicate Job	Duplicates the selected job.
Select	• All - Selects all jobs in the current view. • None
Rush Job	Upgrades the selected job to a Rush job.
High priority, Normal priority, Low priority	Changes the priority of the job as set in the Options tab to one of the three priorities.
Hold Job	Suspends all processing of the selected job(s) after the current activity for the items has been allowed to finish. This option is disabled if all items are already on hold.
Resume Job	Resumes processing of the selected job(s). This option is disabled if all items are already running.
Clear and Rebuild Run List	Removes all pages from the run list and places them again according to the file name conventions.
Restart Job Processing At	Remakes all the existing job results which follow the selected point in the Production Plan. You may want to re-render a job if you have changed your resources (new fonts, color books, etc.) or if you want to remake aborted results, or remake output when no raster data is available
Enable Inputs	Re-activates all input channels for the selected job(s). By default, input channels are enabled. This option is disabled if all job(s) have their inputs enabled.
Disable Inputs	De-activates all input channels for the selected job(s). This option is disabled if all job(s) have their inputs disabled.
Mark as Finished	Marks the selected job as finished, aborting all current processing and removing all outstanding tasks.
(Re)make Cut File for Job	(Re)Makes the Cut file(s) for the selected item(s). Job must use cutter that expects cut files.
Reveal Cut File for Job	Open the directory containing the cut file and select the cut file(s) for the selected item (Disabled if there is no cut file for the selected item).
Send Cut File	Sends the cut file of a layout job to the cutter.
Log for Job	Opens a Log window for the selected job(s). You can open multiple Log windows.
Problem Report for Job	Opens a Problem Report window for the job. You can open multiple Problem Report windows (PDF documents only).
Help	Opens context-sensitive help for the currently selected item. If no specific help is available for the selected item, then more general context help is displayed.

Job List Filter Context Menu Commands

Context Menu Item	Description
Save As...	Allows you to create a new custom job filter from the initial Custom Filter.
Edit	Opens the Job Filter settings.
Rename	Allows you to rename the selected custom job filter.
Duplicate	Allows you to duplicate the selected custom job filter.
Delete	Deletes the selected custom job filter.
Insert Divider	Inserts a group divider under the last custom job filter.
Move Up/Down	Moves the selected filter up or down in the list.

Layout Editor

The context menu commands are explained in the relevant section about the Layout Editor: see “Context Menus” on page 371.

Product Editor - Presets

The following commands are available in the Presets dialog by context-clicking a preset in the list:

Context Menu Item	Description
Apply	Applies the selected image preset to the open image
Apply to New Images	Applies the default preset to all new images.
Edit Preset	Unlocks the presets so you can edit them; in this edit mode you can clear or select the settings check boxes and update the preset to match the settings of the current image; any changes you make to a preset in edit mode are saved automatically
Rename Preset	Lets you edit the name of the selected preset
Edit Description	Places the cursor in the Description box of the selected preset
New Folder	Creates a new folder where you can put new presets
New Job Preset	Creates a new job preset
Duplicate Preset	Duplicates the selected preset
Delete Preset	Deletes the selected preset
Import Preset	Opens a file browser where you can select a preset for importing
Edit Description	Places the cursor in the Description box of the selected preset

Hot Ticket List Context Menu Commands

You can directly issue commands by context-clicking on Hot Tickets in the Hot Ticket List. The following table lists the items that may be displayed when you context-click a Hot Ticket.

Context Menu Item	Description
Save As...	Allows you to save the ticket with a different name.
Save As Template...	Allows you the save the ticket as a Ticket Template.
Export Hot Ticket PPD	Create PPD for Hot Ticket - Allows you to create a PPD file for the selected Hot Ticket.
Upload Document	Allows you to add a file to a Hot Ticket.
Invite PrintSphere Uploader	Shows the dialog box where you can invite someone to upload documents via PrintSphere.
Delete Hot Ticket	Deletes the selected Hot Ticket.
Edit Hot Ticket	Displays the selected Hot Ticket using the default editor, where you can modify it.
Edit Production Plan	Opens the JTE Window in Production Plan tab for the selected job (Service access level only).
Edit Imposition	Opens the Apogee Impose module to edit the imposition of the job.
Duplicate Ticket	Duplicates the selected job and opens the result with the most appropriate editor.
Select	• All - Selects all Hot Tickets in the current view. • None
Enable Inputs	Re-activates all input channels for the selected Hot Ticket(s). By default, input channels are enabled. This option is disabled if all Hot Ticket(s) have their inputs enabled.
Disable Inputs	De-activates all input channels for the selected Hot Ticket(s). This option is disabled if all Hot Ticket(s) have their inputs disabled. A Hot Ticket cannot produce any jobs while disabled.
Log for Hot Ticket	Opens a Log window for the selected Hot Ticket.
Help	Opens context-sensitive help for the currently selected item. If no specific help is available for the selected item, then more general context help is displayed.

APPENDIX E

Glossary

This glossary defines many of the terms used in this document with which the user may not be familiar.

Action There are 2 types of Actions: Flow Control Actions control the flow of job data through a Production Plan; Result Actions keep track of job results in the processing chain.

Asecuri System The Asecuri System manages all data and processing functionality, and runs on one or more dedicated Windows servers.

Archive A job which has been saved as a .arch file. In the Job Ticket Options you can define which parts of the job are archived (input files, marked results, all results, imposition resources, Preflight profiles, etc.).

Assembly The arrangement of signatures which are bound to create a finished printed product.

Bleed Margin The distance that a printed image extends beyond the trim size of a page, in order to avoid white space at the edges of pages in the trimmed product.

Binding Style The method used to bind the signatures of a printed product. See *Saddle Stitch*, *Perfect Bound*, *Come and Go*, *Cut and Stack*, *Flat Work*, *Mechanical*.

Book Signature A section of a book formed by folding and trimming a Press Sheet with 4 or more pages. Each book signature consists of the pages for both the front and the back of the press sheet. Jobs with more pages than can print on a single press sheet are comprised of many book signatures.

Bottling The adjustment required to compensate for the undesired rotation of pages as a result of folding a press sheet to obtain a signature.

Calibration The process of calculating and compensating for irregularities in the output of a press or imaging system due to dot gain. Dot gain occurs when the ink dots that make up a printed image are larger (for example, due to spreading on paper) than in the halftone screen.

CID Font The CID-keyed font file format is designed for fonts with large character sets, and can be used with PostScript printing software. It is the ideal format for Chinese, Japanese, or Korean fonts, and may also be used for Roman fonts with very large character sets. “CID” refers to the Character ID numbers that are used to index and access the characters in the font.

CIELab CIELab is the color space that ICC Profiles and CMMs often use as an intermediary space when converting colors. So a monitor to printer match translates colors from the monitor’s space (RGB) into Lab and then into the printer's color space (CMYK for example). The L component is the lightness of the color. The a component is the red/green scale (+a is red, -a is green) The b component is the blue/yellow scale (+b is yellow, -b is blue).

Client The Asecuri Client application allows you to access and control the Asecuri System remotely from any PC on the network.

CMYK Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, and Black - the standard ink colors used in four-color printing. CMYK is a color model based on the subtractive color theory, and is used by professional printers to reproduce color using offset lithography.

Coated Stock Any paper that has a mineral coating applied after the paper is made, giving the paper a smoother finish.

Color Bar A color test strip that is printed on the waste portion of a press sheet. It allows a pressman to determine the quality of the printed material relative to ink density, registration and dot gain. It also includes the Star Target, which is a similar system designed to detect ink problems.

Color-managed Display Proofing Displays the job data on-screen in Raster Preview. However, in this case you have a preview of the rendered result using color management to convert the press color space to the monitor color space based on ICC profiles. With a calibrated monitor environment and correctly configured monitor profile, contract-proofing quality should be achieved.

Color Separation In traditional prepress, the separation of a color image into four layers corresponding to the four process colors (CMYK) used in process printing.

Come and Go A term used to refer to a binding style whereby the bound signature contains two complete products; the bound signature is subsequently cut in two.

Composite A term used to refer to multi-color files (i.e. composite printing).

Copy Dot High resolution scanning software which produces files suitable for input to the Asecuri System.

CPSI Configurable PostScript Interpreter.

Creep The undesired result of the nesting of pages inside each other whereby the inside pages extend slightly beyond the outside pages.

Crop Marks Short vertical and horizontal lines, printed on an output medium which is larger than the page size of a document, to indicate the finished page area.

CSA A Color Space Array is the PostScript profile for a color. The CSA has the information to translate the color data from the origin space to the XYZ space. It is either inserted into the PostScript print stream when the image is printed or is resident in an EPS image. CSA colors are referred to as device-independent, or CIEBased colors.

CSR Customer Service Representative: The person who works for a print service provider and who is the main point of contact for one or more customers of the print service provider.

CtF Computer-to-Film: An analog graphical workflow solution in which the rendered data is sent first to an imagesetter to produce films. These films are then used to generate the plates for printing.

CtP Computer-to-Plate: A fully digital graphical workflow solution in which no film is produced. Instead "Digital Film" is sent directly from the Render Task Processor to the platesetter.

Cut and Stack A term used to refer to a binding style whereby print sheets are cut and the halves are stacked to create a product.

DCS Desktop Color Separation. This is essentially an enhancement to the EPS definition for pictures that can hold the four-color separations of an image in one file or in 5 separate PostScript files.

Dead cut A single cut that separates adjacent elements on the sheet of an unbound job.

Densitometer An optical device used by printers and photographers to measure and control the density of color.

Density The degree of tone, weight of darkness or color within a photo or reproduction; measurable by the densitometer.

Digital Film The results of documents that have been rendered by the Asecuri System. This high resolution Digital Film can be previewed as 1-bit data (where each raster point is represented by a single display pixel), and can be output directly to a platesetter.

Display Resolution The actual dimensions of the area (expressed in pixels x pixels), that the operating system's display driver is set to. Several display resolutions may be available (e.g. 1920 x 1080, 1680 x 1050, 1344 x 800).

Dot The smallest individual element of a halftone.

Dot for Dot Proofing Allows you to print "screened" proofs. These are different from the normal error-diffused proofs (which place ink droplets anywhere in the image). Screened proofs can only place ink droplets where the dots are, which means more ink is applied to a small area. These small areas (the dots) need to be color managed to produce the correct color. Dot for dot processing should only be done on 7+ color pigment proofers.

Dot Gain Terms to describe the occurrence whereby dots are printing larger than they should.

Dot Pitch The distance between two adjacent hardware pixels. The dot pitch is the inverse of the Display

Hardware Resolution (e.g., 0.258 mm corresponds to approximately 98 dpi).

Downsampling The Normalize Task Processor can downsample high-resolution bitmap images to reduce file size. Downsampling reduces the number of pixels in a file by averaging the color of pixels in a sample area and replacing that area with one pixel of the averaged color.

DQS Digital Quick Strip. In this mode, Asecuri creates and renders the components of a layout separately so these components can be replaced without re-rendering everything. This approach keeps your page workflow independent of imposition templates.

Dynamic Resubmit After you edit and submit a job, Asecuri will automatically determine which results need to be reproduced, and will process them accordingly.

Elliptical Dot Halftone screens in which the dots are actually elongated to produce improved middle tones.

EPS Encapsulated PostScript: A standard format for a drawing, image, or complete page layout, allowing it to be placed into other documents. EPS files normally include a low resolution screen preview

Flat A sheet of film used to expose one printing plate. A flat may be either a front signature or a back signature.

Flatten The Flatten operation 'flattens' multi-layered images, and converts layers that contain transparent objects into layers without transparent objects.

Flat Work A term used to refer to a binding style whereby print sheets do not have to be folded to create a product.

Flow A sequence of components (Task Processors and Actions) in a Production Plan. A Production Plan has at least one Main processing flow, but can include as many additional flows as you require. Each flow leads to a unique output device.

Font A set of letters, numbers, punctuation marks, and symbols that share a unified design. The design is called a typeface.

Font Outlining Missing or incorrect fonts often cause problems for prepress operators. The font outlining feature allows even encrypted and protected fonts to be included in the normalized PDF.

Foot to Foot Imposition layout with the bottom of the pages arranged against the bottom of other pages.

FTP File Transfer Protocol. One of the standard protocols defined for use on a TCP/IP network.

Ganging The bundling of two or more different printing projects on the same media.

Generic Devices These devices process files for imaging on non-

ECO3 physical output devices, without being directly connected to them. Generic devices can be used for testing or demo purposes. For example, they can emulate the timing of a physical output device without producing real output files.

Grayscale Shades of gray that range from black to white.

Grayscale Image A single-channel image consisting of levels of gray (up to 256 levels of gray with 8 bits of data per pixel).

Gripper Edge The grippers of the printing press move the paper through the press by holding onto the leading edge of the sheet; this edge is the gripper edge.

Halftone The reproduction of a continuous-tone image, which is made by using a screen that breaks the image into various size dots.

Halftone Screen Traditionally, continuous-tone art (such as a photograph) is reproduced by photographing the original artwork through a crossline or contact screen. The resulting halftone image is composed of a matrix of dots, ellipses, squares, or lines of various sizes that can be reproduced via offset lithography.

Head Margin from the top of a page to the type area.

Head to head Imposition layout with the top of the pages arranged against the top of other pages.

Hi-Fi Color Any process that increases the color gamut of an output imaging device (printer). Usually refers to adding extra inks and plates to the traditional CMYK set to improve the color gamut of offset lithography.

Hot Folder An input channel used for file-based input. This type of input is based on dragging files to specific folders. Asecuri polls all configured Hot Folders, and automatically picks up and processes the documents that are dropped in them.

Hot Ticket Hot Tickets automate the job creation process, creating multiple jobs on demand. When you send a document to a Hot Ticket input channel, the Hot Ticket creates a new job (by combining a copy of its ticket with the input document), and automatically submits it to the Asecuri System. No further user intervention is required.

ICC Profile The International Color Consortium was founded to create an open, vendor-independent, cross-platform standard for color management. ICC Profiles are standards for describing the color characterizations of different devices.

Imagesetter A high-resolution printer used to prepare high-quality page art on paper or film (usually at resolutions between 1,200 and 5,000 dots per inch).

Imposition The arrangement of pages on the press sheet so that when folded the pages read consecutively. How you arrange the pages on the sheet depends on the sizes of the press sheet and the pages, and how the job will be folded and bound.

InkDrive File This file contains low-resolution images to inform the Press operator how much ink he can use for the print job.

Ink Set Contains the color specifications for the process colors of the used color space. Euro, Swop, Toyo and Dic are some examples of Ink Sets. They all use the standard CMYK color space.

Input Channel A channel through which you can input your documents for processing by Asecuri (e.g. Hot Folder).

JDF JDF (Job Definition Format) technology is an extensible, XML-based format based on Adobe's Portable Job Ticket Format (PJTF), providing compatibility with a greater variety of job creation utilities. Asecuri can import JDF files generated by Apogee Series3, or 3rd-party applications, and convert them to Asecuri Job Tickets. Asecuri interprets JDF instructions for end-to-end job ticket specification, streamlining print production from creation to delivery.

Job Ticket Job Tickets define how the pages of a single job are to be assembled, the processing features to be used (imposition, separation, trapping, overprinting, rasterization, etc.), and the output device to which the rendered job will be sent. A Job Ticket is always associated with one or more unique input channels (Hot Folders, AppleTalk Channels, etc.).

Jog A term used in binding to refer to the evening up of stacked pages to prepare them for binding.

Keep Results By default, when a Task Processor passes on its results, it does not retain a copy of them. However, the Keep Result Action instructs Asecuri to keep this Task Processor's results. This ensures that these intermediate results are saved and kept on the system.

Lay An indication of how a press sheet is to be fed into a press.

Lay edge The edge of the press sheet that is fed into a press. See also *Gripper Edge*.

Layout job A job that's created using the Layout Editor.

Linearization This is a type of calibration, especially used for imagesetters and platesetters. Through linearization, you can adjust (linearize) the Stimuli values so that they equal the Wanted values during output. Unlike Calibration, where the curve is not necessarily linear.

LPR LPR/LPD is the printing method most commonly used in TCP/IP networks. The LPR/LPD protocol is broken into two parts, LPR and LPD. LPR (Line Printer Request) is the client part of the protocol that submits the print request. LPD (Line Printer Daemon) is the server part that receives and processes the request.

Mechanical A term used to refer to a binding style whereby spiral, coils, rings, etc. are used to bind the signatures of a product together.

Milestone A Milestone Action passes on the intermediate job results from the associated Task Processor to the next Task Processor in the flow without interruption. However, a notification is generated if the associated Task Processor does not deliver all intermediate job results by a predefined date and time.

MIME Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions. An Internet standard which allows transfer of binary files (word-processing documents, spread sheets, images, sounds, etc.) between any compliant mailers.

Milling A term used in the binding process that refers to preparing the spine edge of folded signatures so the glue has a firmer grip on the pages.

Moiré An undesirable halftone pattern produced by the incorrect angles of overprinting halftone screens.

Multi-part job This type of job typically comprises a number of sections (cover, editorial, sports section, etc.) each with different properties (paper type, color or B&W, binding style, etc.). Different signatures may be combined onto a single sheet, separations may be combined on a single plate, different sheets may be printed on different presses, and so on.

Nesting A type of imposition which optimizes the use of media.

Normalize Convert PostScript, EPS or PDF-files to standardized or "normalized" PDF files. This process generates a PDF file that is suitable for reliable high-end prepress production.

Opaque Ink Ink that completely covers any ink under itself.

OPI Open Prepress Interface. A specification that describes how a document refers to external images (low or medium resolution) without actually including them in a document. At print time, an OPI server replaces these low or medium resolution images by their high-resolution counterparts.

Output Device A hardware device that writes raster data onto media such as film, plate or paper. There are two types of output devices: Generic (non-physical) output devices and physical output devices. A typical output device may be a printer, sign and display device, proofer, platesetter, or imagesetter.

Overprinting A printing technique where a darker color prints on top of a lighter color (i.e. black text on a light colored background), thus eliminating the need for trapping.

Overfold A small flap on one of the sides of a folded signature which is used by the stitching machine to grasp the signature.

Packaging Job A job that uses a CAD layout and which is prepared in the Layout Editor.

Parameter Set Each Task Processor is installed with initial settings that are automatically assigned by Asecuri, and cannot be changed or deleted. However, you can define additional groups of settings based on the initial settings, and save them under different names. These are referred to as Parameter Sets.

PDF Portable Document Format. A file format used to describe cross-platform documents which are created using Adobe Acrobat Exchange or Distiller, and which can be viewed on-screen and printed, using Adobe Acrobat Reader.

PDF Job Both job ticket information and the referenced pages can be saved in a single composite PDF file, referred to as a PDF Job. When a PDF job is opened, the embedded job ticket references point no longer to local PDF files, but to the PDF job itself. You can then specify the necessary processing and output parameters, and submit the job for processing.

Perfect Bound A term used to describe the binding process where the signatures of a book are held together by a flexible adhesive.

Perfecting A workstyle whereby both sides of a press sheet are printed in a single pass through the press. See also *Perfecting Press*

Perfecting Press A printing press than can print both sides of a press sheet at once.

Pica A typesetting unit of measurement equaling 1/6th of an inch.

PJTF Imposition is the arrangement of pages on the press sheet so that the pages can be correctly folded and read consecutively. How you arrange the pages on the sheet depends on the sizes of the press sheet and the pages, and how the job will be folded and bound. All imposition information can be gathered in one PJTF file (Portable Job Ticket Format). The PJTF file defines the complete imposition for your job.

Placeholder A reserved space within a job ticket in which you can place one page of a document, or a blank page.

Plane A single separation in a color image.

Platesetter A high-output computer-to-plate imaging system, which produces full-page images from computer directly onto plate, ready for offset printing.

Point A basic unit of typographic measurement. A point is approximately equal to 1/72 of an inch.

PostScript The language developed originally by Adobe to communicate high-level graphic information to digital laser printers. PostScript expresses complex digital graphics in a device-independent manner. Powerful typesetting features are built into the language for sophisticated handling of letter forms and graphics.

PPD PostScript Printer Description: A readable, machine-parsable text file that provides a uniform approach to using the special features of devices that contain PostScript interpreters. These features include different page sizes, different methods of paper and film handling, memory size, font availability, duplex printing and stapling. All devices do not have the same set of features, and even devices with the same features do not necessarily invoke those features in the same way. The PPD file contains the PostScript language code to invoke each feature.

Preflight The process of checking a PDF document against various criteria to ensure that the document meets all the requirements for output or publication. Typically, the criteria vary depending on the output or publishing process.

Preflight Profile A set of criteria matching the requirements of a particular output or publishing process.

Pre-separated A pre-separated PDF or PostScript file contains a separate plate for each color in the document. A standard process color job would have four plates (pages) containing just the color information for each color of CMYK. For spot colors, there is a page for each spot color.

Print Buyer The person in an organization who is responsible for purchasing the services of a print service provider and as such is the customer of the print service provider.

Print Center Printing companies or other service providers belonging to the same organization and that can use Asecuri independently from each other.

Print Service Provider An organization that provides printing and related services, also referred to as a printer or printing company.

PrintSphere A cloud service hosted by ECO3 Graphics that allows easy file transfer between the different collaborators of a job

Private Page Store The Page Store is a repository of pages available for a single job. When you input documents to Asecuri, the document pages are stored in the Private Page Store associated with the job input channel you selected.

Process Color Any color (except cyan, magenta, yellow, black, white, and certain Pantone colors) can be specified as spot colors or process colors When separations are printed, all process colors on a page are broken down into their cyan, magenta, yellow, and black components, each of which is printed on its own separation plate. When combined during offset printing, the process colors can reproduce full-color page art.

Product A book, magazine, brochure, flyer, etc. that a print-buyer wants a printer to produce.

Production Plan A series of components (Task Processors and Actions) linked together to form one or more processing flows. These components can be configured to define exactly how jobs are to be input, processed, and output.

Proof A set of job results produced before the final results are output to a plate- or imagesetter. This allows you to verify and correct different aspects of a job before submitting it to press. In Asecuri, you can generate a page proof, an imposition proof, or a production proof.

Proofer A high-resolution printer (such as the Sherpa Proofer) for printing hard copy color proofs.

Public Page Store A repository of pages available for all jobs. To input documents to a Public Page Store, you must use an input channel that was configured using a blank Page Store job template.

Punch Calibration This allows Asecuri to calculate the exact position of the imagesetter punches in order to ensure the correct positioning of the printed image on the output media.

QMS ECO3's Quality Management Software ensures an identical tonal behavior for the different Sherpas, and verifies the output accuracy. This guarantees the same output quality for every Sherpa model.

Registration Marks Reference marks that appear on camera-ready art, generally for CMYK color separations, which help align the overlaying printing plates.

Remote Proofer Controller The RPC Task Processor provides a low-cost proofing solution for customers working off-site. These customers require only an ECO3 proofing device and the RPC software package to print proofs. The prepress shop, equipped with a full Asecuri System, creates and exports the RPC files. These files are then sent to the remote site, where they are imported into the customer's RPC application.

Render A Render Task Processor converts a PostScript or PDF document into a matrix of dots, ready for output to a specific output device such as an imagesetter, platesetter, proofer, or color printer.

Render Resolution The ratio of pixels per inch that the Render Task Processor uses when generating an image (expressed in dpi).

Resolution A measure of the fineness of spatial detail that a device can record or produce. The higher the resolution, the finer the detail. Resolution is expressed in elements per unit length; for example, pixels per inch (ppi) for scanners and monitors (refer also to dpi).

Resource A collection of objects (such as fonts, preflight profiles, or calibration curves) that are required by selected devices or Task Processors. By default, Asecuri provides you with some basic resources for each of the available Resource categories. You can also add your own resources to those supplied.

Result A result is the tangible output that is produced by a Task Processor component. It can be a document (PDF, TIFF or other file) or an image on a piece of film, plate or paper. A result can be intermediate or final. A final result is the result produced by the last component in the Production Plan flow. All other results are intermediate; they are passed from one component to another; and can be deleted when no longer required.

RGB Red, Green, Blue Refers to the primary colors, namely Red, Green, Blue, in the additive color model. The RGB model is used in color televisions, monitors, scanners, and color film recorders.

Rule-up A press sheet with rules to indicate the various components such as the imposed pages, the fold sheet, bleed area, etc.

Run List A Run List determines which pages of a job will be processed. If you insert a Run List in your Production Plan, a list of placeholders appears in the Pages tab. You can then select PDF pages from the Page Store and drag them across to the Run List. Not all placeholders need to be filled. A placeholder can be empty, or can contain a blank page. Every Job Ticket needs a Run List whereas a Hot Ticket can contain one, but it is not necessary.

Rush Job You can upgrade any job in the Job List to a “rush” job. This puts the job to the top of the queue of jobs waiting to be processed by Asecuri. A rush job is processed as soon as Asecuri has finished processing the current job.

Saddle Stitch The binding of booklets or other printed materials by stapling the pages on the folded spine; also called saddle wire.

Screening The conversion of continuous-tone images to halftone dots. The resulting images are Bitmap files ready to be sent to an output device.

Screen Angles The angles at which halftone screens are placed in relation to one another.

Screen Font A bitmap representation of a font that is used to display the characters on-screen.

Screen Frequency The density of dots on the halftone screen, commonly measured in lines per inch (also known as screen ruling).

Screen Ruling A measurement equaling the number of lines or dots per inch on a halftone screen.

Seamless Printing used in packaging jobs for printing a repetitive design, as in wallpaper or gift wrapping paper. These are usually printed in flexo.

Separation Before an image can be output via an output device, it is split up into separation colors. The most common used separation colors are Cyan, Magenta, Yellow and Black (CMYK). When combining these separations, the Press produces the final image.

Server In the context of Asecuri, this is the Windows 2003/2008 Server on which the Asecuri System is running (represented by the 2nd icon in the System Overview window). In future releases, you will be able to deploy the Asecuri System over several Servers.

Sheetwise A workstyle whereby a print sheet has different content on the front and back sides. The sheets are turned in such a way that the gripper edge is kept at the same side.

Shingling An adjustment applied to template pages and jobs to compensate for the creep that occurs when signatures are folded and nested inside each other.

Signature See *Book Signature*.

Simulation This is a type of calibration which you can use to simulate or test different types of output results. You can for instance purposely use a non-linear curve to obtain a certain dot gain, or attempt other special effects. There are no Measured values for Simulation. The curve is solely based on Wanted values (i.e. the desired curve).

SISR Smart Input Space Recognition.

Soft Proofing This method does not physically output the proof to a printer. Instead, the job data is displayed on-screen. Raster or PDF soft proofs show trapping and overprint information. These can be sent to customers and verified using Acrobat or Photoshop.

Spot Color Any color (except cyan, magenta, yellow, black, white, and certain Pantone colors) can be specified as spot colors or process colors. When separations are printed, each spot color on a page is printed onto its own separation plate. In contrast, process colors are broken down into their cyan, magenta, yellow, and black components, each of which is printed on its own separation plate.

Task Processor Task Processors are software components that perform one or more tasks (specified by the Ticket), such as input via Hot Folder, Normalization, Preflight, Trapping, rendering, etc. A sequence of Task Processors can be linked together to form a Production Plan.

TCP/IP Transmission Control Protocol / Internet Protocol: This is a communications “language” which is used to enable two different computers to exchange data over a network, particularly over the Internet.

TIFF Tagged Image File Format: This is a standard file format used for exchanging bitmapped images between applications or platforms.

Trapping A printing technique where adjoining colors are made to overlap slightly to compensate for misregistration on the printing press. Usually the darker color is used to define the edges of an element while the lighter color spreads into it.

Type area Area within the margins of a page.

Versioning Allows you to create jobs which contain several different versions, typically for some or all of the text (for example, using different languages or prices), and to choose the optimal set of plates to be made. If, for example, you want to publish a brochure in six different languages, you can include the Versioning Task Processor in your Production Plan, and then print several different language versions of the brochure using a single job. The basic Production Plan is straightforward, using Versioning instead of a Run List Task Processor.

VLF Very Large Format platesetter, which can produce plate sizes up to 80 x 58" (2030 x 1475mm).

Web browser Software for navigating and viewing web documents.

Web Growth The deformation (stretch) of the paper as it is printed on the various color units on a web press. The physical deformation occurs as the paper absorbs ink and water, and is accelerated with pressure and tension.

Wide-Format Job A job prepared for a a wide-format printing device such as used for sign and display printing.

Work And Tumble A workstyle whereby a press sheet has the same content on the front and back sides. The sheets are turned in such a way that the gripper edge is at the opposite side.

Work And Turn A workstyle whereby a press sheet has the same content on the front and back sides. The sheets are turned in such a way that the gripper edge is kept at the same side.

Workstyle A term that refers to how print sheets are printed on a press; see also *Sheetwise*, *Work And Turn*, *Work And Tumble*, *Perfecting*.

Index

Symbols

$ 714

A

aborting tasks 401
Actions 36
- ->After Hours 226
- ->Archive Results 228
- ->Collect for Output 224
- ->Discard 215
- ->Hard Copy Proof 222
- ->Keep Results 227
- ->Milestone 229
- ->Notify 228
- ->Soft Proof 221
- ->Wait for Results 223
- ->Web Proof 219
- adding 246, 247
- definition 779
- flow control 215
- result 214
- tab 214
- thumbnail indicators 147
- using 251

Activity
- Indicator 60
- pane 143
- toolbar 400
- window layout 398

adding
- flow control actions 246
- result actions 247
- screens to ruling maps 603
- spot colors 497
- systems 44
- Task Processors to plan 243

Administration tab 202
- settings 202
- viewing 138

After Hours 226
- settings 227

Apogee Prepress
- definition 22

Apogee Prepress Client
- definition 780
- description 22
- menus 47
- navigation bar 60
- toolbar 59
- workflow 26

Apogee Prepress menu
- keyboard shortcuts 732

Apogee Prepress System
- configuration 405
- definition 779
- icon 391
- settings 405

Apogee StoreFront 419
approving
- jobs 102
- rejected items 104

archive
- definition 779
- icons in Explorer 167
- importing 167

Archive Result 228
archiving
- job manually 167
- jobs 166, 409
- marking 209
- schedule 168

assembly
- definition 779

auto-fit, fitting options 288
automatic
- archiving schedule 168
- job deletion 164
- log on at start up 72
- page placement 513

auto-select maps
- calibration 587

B

binding style
- come and go 780
- cut and stack 781
- definition 779
- flat work 782
- mechanical 785
- perfect bound 786
- saddle-stitched 789

bleed margin
- definition 779

book signature
- definition 779

books
- color 346, 495

border mark sets
- creating 583
- managing 583

Borders 577, 582
- mark editor 578
- overview 578

bottling
- definition 779

braces 714

C

Calibration
- auto-select maps 587
- creating a table 698
- creating curves 587
- Curve Editor 700
- curves 586
- definition 694, 779
- editor 696, 702
- fallback 587
- settings 586
- stimuli selection 698
- Table options 700
- wanted and measured values 699

changing
- screen angles 603

channel

disabling 165
enabling 165
enabling automatically 165
checking
Hot Ticket/Template consistency 192
ink coverage 92, 94
screen angles 95
CID fonts
definition 779
CIELab
definition 779
clearing
rejected results 176
Client
starting 42
CMYK
definition 780
coated stock
definition 780
Collect for Output 224
settings 225
Color
books 346, 495
converting 492
managing in color books 593
mapping 496
policy 491
color bar
definition 780
Color Books 589
color editor 591
creating 592
editor 589
importing 593
managing colors 593
overview 589
renaming 592
color exceptions
creating 594
deleting 595
editing 594
color separation
definition 780
color-managed
display proof 40
display proof definition 780
preview 73, 97
come and go
definition 780
comments 203
components
deleting 248
composite
definition 780
Conditional
Decision settings 457
configuration
Apogee Prepress System 405
Task Processor 35, 434
connectors
data-in 244
data-out 244
Task Processor 244
consistency
Hot Ticket/ Template 192
Content Profiles 596
overview 596
context menus 769
Hot Ticket List 774
Job List 770
Job List filter 772
continuing
aborted, rejected, error results 159
jobs 157
multiple results 160
results waiting on an Action 158
Control menu 52
converting
colors 492
copy dot
definition 780
corner fold indicators
thumbnails 151
CPSI
definition 780
create date column 111, 183
creating
a new ticket 240
border mark sets 583
calibration curves 587
color books 592
color exceptions 594
ink sets 608
jobs 32
main flow 246
multiple flows 248
output sizes 671
parameter sets 435
PPD files 395
PPD for Hot Ticket 191
punch calibration 672
Resources 438
ruling maps 602
Run List rules 514
storage sets 432
creep
definition 780
critical messages 67
crop marks
definition 780
CSA 473
CSR
definition 781
CtF/CtP
definitions 781
Curve Editor
calibration 700
custom job filter
create 117
delete 118
duplicate 118
edit 118
rename 118
customer 203, 337
customer contact 203, 337
cut and stack
definition 781

D

DCS
definition 781
dead cut
definition 781
default
parameter sets 435
defining
page placement rules 516
deleting
color exceptions 595
components from

plan 248
Hot Tickets 191
jobs 163, 410
jobs (automated) 164
jobs permanently 163
marking for 210
parameter sets 435
punch calibration 673
Resources 438
Run List rules 515
spot color angles 605
spot colors 498
storage sets 432
systems 44
densitometer
definition 781
density
definition 781
Device Link Profiles 597
Device Screens 597
Digital Film
definition 781
proof 39
Digital Film Proof 460
settings 460
Digital Step&Repeat
settings 462
disabling
input channel 165
Discard 215
settings 216
discarding
results 177
disk storage 428
settings 429
display resolution
definition 781
documents
inputting 255
dot
definition 781
dot gain
definition 781
dot pitch
definition 781
dot-for-dot proofing 461
definition 781
downsampling
definition 782
DQS 151
definition 782
duplicating
jobs 161
parameter sets 435
dynamic resubmit
definition 782

E

Edit menu 51
keyboard shortcuts 733, 734
editing
calibration 696, 702
color exceptions 594
colors 591
ink sets 607, 608
linearization 697
media (imagesetters/platesetters) 664
output sizes 671
parameter sets 435
Preferences (Raster Preview) 105
punch calibration 672
Resources 438
Run List rules 515
spot colors 497
storage sets 432
tickets 241
elliptical dot
definition 782
enabling
input channel 165
input channel (automatically) 165
EPS
definition 782
exceptions
creating 594
deleting 595
editing 594
Export 546
settings 546
exporting
job results 253
exposure test 395
extra information
showing/hiding 170

F

fallback
calibration 587
File menu 49
keyboard shortcuts 732
file types 442
filter
custom job filter 117
Job Log 130
pane (message board) 62
quick 115
System Log 133
filtering
fonts 599
Job List using a job filter 116
Job List using output device 118
the Message board 65
flat work
definition 782
flats
definition 782
thumbnail labels 152
thumbnails 145
Flatten
definition 782
flipping
previewed images 89
flow control Actions 215, 246
flows
creating 246
definition 782
icons 123
identifier 230
imposition proof 249
main 249
multiple 248
page proof 250
selection icons 143
flushing
job results 402
Fonts 598
definition 782
filtering 599
outlining 782
overview 598
foot to foot

definition 782
frequency 96
FTP
definition 782
full-screen mode 80

G

ganging
definition 782
Generic Press 556
print settings 556
grayscale
definition 783
grayscale image
definition 783
grid
showing/hiding in preview 92
gripper edge
definition 783
grouping jobs 71

H

halftone
definition 783
Halftone Screens 600
definition 783
editor 601
Hard Copy Proof 39, 222
settings 223
hardware pane 391
hardware status 396
Hardware System
icon 391
scalability 391
head
definition 783
head to head
definition 783
Help menu 58
keyboard shortcuts 737
hiding
thumbnails 170
Hi-Fi color
definition 783
hold state
showing/hiding 170
holding tasks 401
Hot Folder 442
definition 783
job input 256
settings 442
Hot Ticket List
context menus 774
layout 183
Hot Tickets
consistency 192
creating PPDs 191
definition 783
deleting 191
description 31
icons 184
list 183
selecting 190
selecting multiple 190
sorting 184
using 31
window 44, 182
with Run Lists 509
housekeeping 408
settings 409

I

ICC profiles 681
definition 783
icons
color coding 124
combinations 122
Flow 123
flow selection 143
Hot Ticket list 184
Job 121
job notifications 118
notification 118
Status 119
Image settings
->TIFF Platesetter 537
imagesetters
definition 783
importing
archived job 167
color books 593
marks 660
Resources 438
Impose 462
settings 462
imposition
definition 783
proof 39
proof flow 249
system resource 419
including
results 177
ink coverage
measuring 92, 94
Ink Sets 607
creating 608
definition 784
editing 608
editor 607
overview 607
inkdrive file
definition 784
Inks
palette (preview) 81
Trap settings 484
input
file-based 255
stream-based 255
tab 213
Task Processors 441
input channel 210
definition 784
disabling 165
enabling 165
enabling automatically 165
inputting
documents 255
inverting
previewed images 90

J

JDF
definition 784
job input 256
JDF Import 447
job filter 116, 125
job input
Hot Folder/JDF 256
Public Page Store 256
Job Layout
pane 144, 236
Job List 111
context menus 770
filtering 114
grouping jobs 113
layout 111
rearranging 112

show/hide columns 112
sorting 112
Job List filter
context menus 772
Job Log
dialog box 129
filter 130
opening from Jobs window 166
job tickets
definition 784
description 30
using 30
jobs
approving 102
archiving 166, 409
archiving manually 167
automated deleting 164
continuing 157
creating 32
deleting 163, 410
deleting permanently 163
duplicating 161
flushing results 402
grouping 71
housekeeping 408
icons 121
importing archives 167
log 412, 414
maintenance 409
monitoring 155
name 202
notification icons 118
purging 164
re-exporting 174
re-imaging 173
rejecting 102
resuming 157
rush 160
selecting 155
selecting multiple 155
status icons in Tab area 61
viewing 155
viewing results 174
Jobs window 44, 108
jog
definition 784

K

Keep Results 227
definition 784
keyboard shortcuts 729
Apogee Prepress menu 732
Edit menu 733, 734
File menu 732
Help menu 737
Preview menu 735, 736
View menu 735
Window menu 736

L

Lay
definition 784
lay 784
lay edge
definition 784
layout job
definition 784
Linearization
definition 694, 784
editor 697
log
job 412, 414
system 411
logging 129, 411
on 42
settings 411
LPR
definition 784

M

main flow 249
creating 246
maintenance
jobs 409
managing
border mark sets 583
Task Processors 393
template folder 415
ticket templates 416
mapping colors 496
Marks 660
importing 660
overview 660
Measured values
calibrating 699
measuring 96
ink at cursor point 94
ink coverage 92, 94
screen angles 95
mechanical
definition 785
Media
editor (imagesetters/platesetters) 664
imagesetters/platesetters 662
overview 662
menus 47
Control 52
Edit 51
File 49
Help 58
preview 86
Processor 53
View 54
View (raster preview) 55, 57
Window 57
Message board 62
filter dialog box 66
filtering 65
opening 62
using 65
Message indicator 60
Milestone 207, 229
definition 785
settings 229
milling
definition 785
MIME
definition 785
modified date column 111, 183
moiré
definition 785
monitoring
jobs 155
Task Processors 396, 400
multi-part job
definition 785
multiple flows
creating 248

N

navigation bar 60
Navigator palette (preview) 81
negative images
 previewing 90
nesting
 definition 785
Normalize 468
 definition 785
 settings 468, 477
notifications 209, 211
 icons 118
 job icons 118
Notify 228
 settings 228

O

offline
 Task Processors 394
online
 Task Processors 394
opaque ink
 definition 785
Open Connect 447
 settings 447
opening
 Job Log (from Jobs window) 166
 Preferences 76
 Preferences (Raster Preview) 105
 System Log 166
 the Message board 62
 tickets 254
operator 203
OPI
 definition 785
Options tab 206
 viewing 139
order number 202
Output
 tab 214
output device
 definition 785
 job filtering 118
 list 110
Output settings
 ->TIFF Platesetter 542
Output Sizes 582, 669
 creating 671
 editing 671
 editor 669
 overview 669
Output Task Processors 525
 hardware status 396
 software status 397
overfold
 definition 785
overprinting
 definition 785
overriding
 rejected items 104

P

packaging job
 definition 786
page number
 showing/hiding 170
page proof flow 250
Page Sizes 417, 418, 423
Page Store 37, 234
pages
 automatic placement 513
 numbers 170
 outlines 170
 placement rules 516
 proofs 39
 thumbnail numbers 152
 thumbnails 145
Pages tab 233
 viewing 143
panes
 resizing 76
panning
 previewed images 88
parameter sets 34
 creating 435
 definition 786
 deleting 435
 duplicating 435
 editing 435
 setting default 435
parts 139
PDF
 preview 78
 proof 39
PDF files
 definition 786
PDF job
 definition 786
PDF Render 479
 Render settings 498
 Screen settings 502
 Separation settings 490
 Trap settings 480
PDF viewer
 specifying 72
perfect
 definition 786
perfect bound
 definition 786
perfecting
 definition 786
perfecting press
 definition 786
pica
 definition 786
PJTF
 definition 786
placeholders
 definition 786
Plan 141
Plan tab 213
 using 213
 viewing 141
plane
 definition 786
PlateMaker Client 145
platesetters
 definition 786
 TIFF 537
point
 definition 786
PostScript
 color management 472
 definition 786
PPD
 definition 787
 options 402
PPD files
 creating 395
 for Hot Tickets 191
Preferences
 dialog box 71
 opening 76
 opening (Raster Preview) 105

preferences
  imposition editor 74
  validation 75
Preflight 454
  Action Lists 573, 678
  definition 787
  settings 454
Preflight Action Lists
  overview 573, 678
Preflight Profiles
  definition 787
  overview 609, 666
Prepare settings
  TIFF Render 521
pre-separated
  definition 787
Press
  paper white 74
press sheet
  raster data preview 91
Preview
  color-managed 73, 97
  full-screen mode 80
  window 80
Preview menu
  keyboard shortcuts 735, 736
previewing
  flipping images 89
  full-size images 90
  Inks palette 81
  inverting images 90
  main windows 79
  measuring ink at cursor point 94
  measuring ink coverage 92, 94
  menus 86
  Navigator palette 81
  options 79
  panning 88
  pdf 78
  Preview window 80
  raster data 78
  raster data as imaged output 91
  raster data as press sheet 91
  rotating 89
  Rule-ups palette 83
  scale to fit 89
  separations 91
  showing/hiding grid 92
  showing/hiding ruler 92
  soft 78
  tools palette 84
  zooming 86
Print buyer
  definition 787
Print Center
  definition 787
Print service provider
  definition 787
Print settings
  ->Generic Press 556
Print Task Processors 555
Printing Stock 674
priority jobs 160
Private Page Store 112
  definition 787
Problem Report dialog box 134
Process
  tab 213
process color
  definition 787
Processing Task Processors 453
Processor menu 53
product
  definition 787
Production Plan
  components page 213
  definition 788
  description 33
  pane 141, 230
  preparing 238
production proof 39
production sets 139
Profiles 681
  editor (Press) 681
  editor (Proofers) 683
proofers 526
  definition 788
  image settings 528
  output settings 533
proofing data indicators
  thumbnails 150
proofing flows
  creating 248
proofs 39
  color-managed display 40
  definition 788
  Digital Film 39
  dot-for-dot 461
  hard 39
  imposition 39
  page 39
  PDF 39
  production 39
  soft 39
Public Page Store 38, 255
  definition 788
  job input 256
punch calibration
  creating 672
  definition 788
  deleting 673
  editing 672
  editor 670
purging
  jobs 164

Q

QMS
  definition 788
quick filtering 115
quickproof 179

R

raster data
  indicator 151
  previewing as imaged output 91
  previewing as press sheet 91
Raster Impose 462
  settings 462
Raster Normalize 508
raster preview 78
  preferences 105
raster viewer
  default settings 73
re-exporting jobs 174
registration marks
  definition 788
re-imaging jobs 173
rejected results

approving 104
clearing 176
rejecting
jobs 102
results 175
remarks 68
Remote Proofer Controller
definition 788
removing
systems 44
renaming
color books 592
Render
definition 788
Screen settings 502
render resolution
definition 788
Render settings
PDF Render 498
re-rendering
results 161, 172
resizing
panes 76
resolution
definition 788
Resources 37, 571
-> Media (imagesetters/ platesetters) 662
->Borders 577
->Calibration Curves 586
->Color Books 589
->Content Profiles 596
->Device Link Profiles 597
->Device Screen 597
->Fonts 598
->Halftone Screens 600
->Ink Sets 607
->Marks 660
->Output Sizes 669
->Page Sizes 417, 418, 423
->Preflight Action Lists 573, 678
->Printing Stock 674
->Profiles 681
->Webgrowth Profiles 609, 666, 684, 687
creating 438
definition 788
deleting 438
editing 438
importing 438
pane 405
restarting
Task Processors 394
result Actions 214, 247
results
clearing rejected 176
continuing 158, 159
continuing multiple 160
definition 789
discarding 177
exporting 253
flushing 402
including 177
rejecting 175
re-rendering 161, 172
scaling view 171
viewing 174
Results tab 236
resuming
jobs 157
tasks 401
revisions 512
RGB
definition 789
rotating
previewed images 89
ruler
showing/hiding in preview 92
rules
page placement 516
Run List 514
Rule-up
definition 789
Rule-ups
palette (preview) 83
ruling maps 600
adding screens 603
creating 602
Run List 234, 509
creating rules 514
definition 789
deleting rules 515
editing rules 515
settings 510
with Hot Tickets 509
rush jobs 160
definition 789

S

saddle stitch
definition 789
saving
tickets 254
scaleability
hardware system 391
scaling
preview size to screen size 89
results view 171
scheduled archiving 168
screen angles 95
changing 603
definition 789
screen font
definition 789
screen frequency
definition 789
screen ruling
definition 789
Screen settings 502
PDF Render 502
Render 502
TIFF Render 523
screening
definition 789
screens
adding to ruling maps 603
seamless printing
definition 789
settings 503
selecting
a job 155
front and back sides 171
Hot Tickets 190
multiple Hot Tickets 190
multiple jobs/ items 155
tickets 241
Separation
definition 789
indicators 149
Separation settings 496

->PDF Render 490
->TIFF Render 523
separations
pane 153, 237
previewing 91
showing/hiding 172
Server
definition 790
Settings
->After Hours 227
->Border Marks 578
->Calibration 586
->Collect for Output 225
->Conditional Decision 457
->Digital Film Proof 460
->Digital Step&Repeat 462
->Discard 216
->Disk Storage 429
->Export 546
->Hard Copy Proof 223
->Hot Folder 442
->Milestone 229
->Normalize 468
->Notify 228
->Open Connect 447
->Preflight 454
->punch calibration 670
->Raster Impose 462
->Run List 510
->Screen 502
->Separation 496
->Soft Proof 222
->Trap 487
->Wait for Results 224
Apogee Prepress configuration 405
pane 142, 231
profiles (press) 681
profiles (proofer) 683
proofers (image) 528
proofers (output) 533
Task Processor 34
Sheet Prefixes 420
sheetwise
definition 790
Sherpa 526
shingling
creep 780
definition 790
shortcuts
keyboard 729
showing/hiding
hold state 170
page data type 170
page number 170
page numbers 170
page outlines 170
separations 172
thumbnails 170
signature
definition 779
signatures
thumbnails 152
viewing 171
Simulation
definition 695, 790
slug lines 542
soft preview 78
Soft Proof 39, 221
definition 790
settings 222
software status 397
sorting
Hot Tickets list 184
Job List 112
spot colors
adding/editing 497
definition 790
deleting 498
deleting angles 605
specifying angles 604
square brackets 714
starting
Client 42
Task Processors 393
Status icons 119
stimuli
selecting 698
stopping
Task Processors 394
Storage Sets 428
creating 432
deleting 432
editing 432
editor 431
StoreFront
system resource 419
submitting
tickets 253
supported file types 442
System
icon 391
log 132, 411
variables 708
system
adding/removing 44
System Log
filter 133
opening 166
System Overview 390
window 45

T

Tab area 61
Table options
calibration 700
tagging 455
Task Processors
->Digital Film Proof 460
->Export 546
->Generic Press 556
->Hot Folder 442
->Impose 462
->JDF Import 447
->Normalize 468
->Open Connect 447
->PDF Render 479
->Preflight 454
->Proofer Devices 526
->Raster Impose 462
->Raster Normalize 508
->Run List 509
->TIFF Platesetter 537
->TIFF Render 520
adding to Production Plan 243
Configurations 35
configuring 434
connecting 244
definition 790
description 34
input 441
managing 393
monitoring 396, 400
output 525
pane 393
parameter sets 34

PPD files 395
Print 555
processing 453
put offline 394
put online 394
restarting 394
Settings 34
starting 393
stopping 394
tasks
aborting 401
holding 401
resuming 401
TCP/IP
definition 790
template folders
managing 415
templates
ticket 414
thumbnails
action indicators 147
corner fold indicators 151
extra information 147
flat labels 152
page numbers 152
page/flat 145
proofing data indicators 150
separation indicators 149
showing/hiding 170
signatures 152
Ticket Editor 200
window 46
ticket template folders
managing 415
ticket templates 414
consistency 192
managing 416
tickets
creating 240
editing 25
icons 254
opening 254
saving 254
selecting/editing 241
submitting 253
TIFF
definition 790
TIFF Platesetter 537
Image settings 537
Output settings 542
TIFF Render 520
Prepare settings 521
Screen settings 523
Separation settings 523
toolbars
Activity 400
standard 59
tools
preview 84
Trap
definition 790
inks 484
settings 487
Trap settings
->PDF Render 480
Type area
definition 790

U

units of measurement
specifying 71
upload
supported file types 442
using
Actions 251
hot tickets 31
job tickets 30
the Message board 65

V

variables 708
$ 714
braces 714
dollar sign 714
square brackets 714
syntax 714
versioning
definition 791
View menu 54
keyboard shortcuts 735
raster preview 55, 57
viewers 73
PDF 72
viewing
Administration tab 138
columns 171
job results 174
jobs 155
Options tab 139
Pages tab 143
Plan tab 141
remarks 68
signatures 171
VLF
definition 791
VPN connections 23

W

Wait for Results 223
settings 224
Wanted values
calibrating 699
watermarks editor 431
web browser
definition 791
web growth
definition 791
Web Proof 219
WebApproval 427
Webgrowth Profiles 609, 666, 684, 687
overview 688
wide-format job
definition 791
Window menu 57
keyboard shortcuts 736
Windows Explorer
ticket icons 254
work and tumble
definition 791
work and turn
definition 791
workstyle
definition 791
perfecting 786
sheetwise 790
work and tumble 791
work and turn 791

Z

zooming
previewed images 86
using the Navigator 87
zooming in on a point 87
zooming in on an area 88

zooming out on a point 87
zooming out on an area 88

Published by ECO3 BV, Belgium.

doc. version 13.1.1

YOU PRINT. WE CARE.